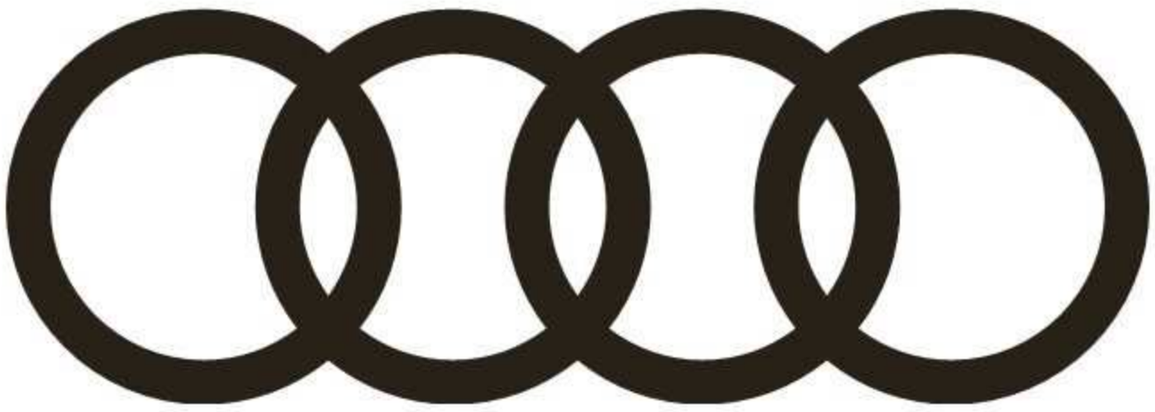


Owner's Manual

2020 A3

Audi Vorsprung durch Technik

Foreword

Thank you for choosing an Audi – we value your trust in us.

Your new Audi will allow you to experience the best in groundbreaking technology and premium quality equipment that a vehicle has to offer. We recommend that you read your Owner's Manual thoroughly so that you quickly become acquainted with your Audi and make use of all of its features.

In addition to explaining how the different features work, we provide many useful tips and information concerning your safety, how to care for your vehicle, and how to maintain your vehicle's value. We also give you useful tips and information on how to drive your vehicle more efficiently and in an environmentally-friendly manner.

We hope you enjoy driving your Audi and we wish you safe and pleasant motoring.

AUDI AG

WARNING

Operating, servicing and maintaining a passenger vehicle or off-highway motor vehicle can expose you to chemicals including engine exhaust, carbon monoxide, phthalates, and lead, which are known to the State of California to cause cancer and birth defects or other reproductive harm. To minimize exposure, avoid breathing exhaust, do not idle the engine except as necessary, service your vehicle in a well-ventilated area and wear gloves or wash your hands frequently when servicing your vehicle. For more information go to www.P65Warnings.ca.gov/passenger-vehicle.

8V2012721BK

Table of contents

About this Owner's Manual 6

Summary 8
Quick access 8
Controls at a glance 8
Indicator lights overview 10

Display and operation 14
Instrument cluster 14
Instrument cluster overview 14
Coolant temperature display 15
Tachometer 15
Power meter 16
Odometer 17
Outside temperature display 17
Multifunction steering wheel plus 17
Multifunction steering wheel 20
Vehicle functions 21

Starting and driving 25
Opening and closing 25
Central locking 25
Luggage compartment lid 31
Child safety lock 33
Power windows 33
Panoramic glass roof 35

Power top 36
Automatic power top 36
Wind deflector 39
Power top emergency operation 39

Lights and Vision 43
Exterior lighting 43
Interior lighting 46
Vision 47
Windshield wipers 49
Digital compass 52

Seats 54
General information 54
Front seats 54
Head restraints 56
Steering wheel 58

Stowing and using 59
Power sources 59
Storing 59
Luggage compartment 60
Roof rack 63

Warm and cold 65
Climate control system 65
Steering wheel heating 68
Auxiliary climate control 68
Fluids in the A/C system 69

Driving 71
Starting the vehicle 71
When driving 73
Drive system 78
Start/Stop system 83
Brakes 85
Electromechanical parking brake 87
Releasing the parking lock using the emergency release 88
Special driving situations 89

Driving dynamic 91
Audi drive select 91
Suspension 92
Steering 92
All wheel drive (quattro) 93
Electronic Stabilization Control 93

High-voltage system 96
General information 96
Charging the high-voltage battery 97
Charging at public charging stations 100
Charging the battery with the Audi charging system 101
Audi e-tron compact charging system . . . 105
Indicator lights and messages 111
Emergency release 112

Trailer towing 113
Driving with a trailer 113

Driver assistance 115
Assist systems 115
Speed warning system 115
Cruise control system 115
Lap timer 117
Audi adaptive cruise control 118
Audi pre sense 125

Audi active lane assist 128
Audi side assist 131

Parking aid 136
General information 136
Parking system plus 137
Rearview camera 138
Park assist 140
Adjusting the parking aid 144
Error messages 145

Infotainment system 146
Multi Media Interface 146
Traffic safety information 146
Introduction 146
MMI On/Off knob with joystick function . . 146
Infotainment system display 147
MMI operation 147
MMI touch 149
Control knob with joystick function 151
Letter/number speller 153
Free text search 154
Menus and Symbols 155

Multifunction steering wheel 157
Introduction 157
Radio 157
Media 157
Telephone 158
Navigation 159

Voice recognition system 162
General information 161
Operating 162
Command overview information 162
Commands 163
External voice operation 168

Telephone 169
Introduction 169
Setup 169
Using the Audi phone box 171
Using the telephone 173
Favorites 175
Messages 175
Listening to voicemail 178
Directory 178

Additional settings 180
Troubleshooting 181

Audi connect 182
General information 182
Audi connect Infotainment 182
Using a Wi-Fi hotspot 183
Audi connect Infotainment services 183
Audi connect e-tron services 185
Settings 187
Troubleshooting 188

Navigation 189
Opening navigation 189
Entering a destination 189
Personal route assistance 195
Home address 196
Favorites 196
Directory contacts 196
Alternative routes 197
Additional settings 197
Map 199
Satellite map 202
Map update 202
Accessing traffic information 204
Troubleshooting 205

Radio 206
Opening the radio 206
Radio functions 207
Radio menu 209
Presets 209
Additional settings 209
Troubleshooting 210

Media 211
Introduction 211
Notes 211
Media drives 212
Bluetooth audio player 214
Wi-Fi audio player 214
Online media and Internet radio 215
Multimedia connections 217
Playing media 219
Additional settings 222
Supported media and file formats 224
Troubleshooting 226

8V2012721BK

Audi smartphone interface 228
Setup 228
Operating 229
Troubleshooting 229

System settings 230
Setting the date and time 230
MMI settings 230
Connection manager 231
System update 234
Sound settings 234
Volume settings 234
Restarting the MMI 235
Software license information 235

Safety first 237
Driving safety 237
Basics 237
Correct passenger seating positions 238
Driver's and front passenger's footwell . . 241
Pedal area 241
Active rollover protection system 242

Safety belts 245
General notes 245
Why use safety belts? 246
Safety belts 248
Belt tensioners 252

Airbag system 253
Important information 253
Front airbags 257
Monitoring the Advanced Airbag System . 265
Knee airbags 269
Side airbags 271
Side curtain airbags 274

Child safety 278
Important information 278
Child safety seats 284
Securing child safety seats 289
LATCH system (lower anchorages and tethers for children) 292
Additional information 297

Maintenance and Care 298
Checking and Filling 298
Fuel 298
Refueling 299
Refueling 302
Emissions control system 303
Engine compartment 304
Engine oil 307
Cooling system 311
Brake fluid 313
Electrical system 314
Battery 315
Windshield washer system 317
Service interval display 318

Wheels 319
Wheels and Tires 319
Tire Pressure Monitoring System indicator . 337
Tire pressure monitoring system 339

Care and cleaning 342
General information 342
Car washes 342
Cleaning and care information 343
Taking your vehicle out of service 347

Troubleshooting 348
Emergency assistance 348
Trunk escape latch 348
General information 348
Equipment 348
Tire mobility kit 349
Replacing wheels 352
Spare tire 357

Fuses and bulbs 360
Fuses 360
Bulbs 362

Emergency situations 364
General 364
Starting by pushing or towing 364
Jump starting 364
Towing with a tow truck 367
Raising the vehicle 369

Customer information 371
Data privacy 371
Image recording 371
Data memories 371
Transmitted information 372

Accessories and technical changes 374
Warranty 374
Audi Literature Shop 374
Driving in other countries 374
Maintenance, repairs, and technical modifications 374
Accessories and parts 376
Reporting Safety Defects 376
Declaration of compliance for telecommunications equipment and electronic systems 377

Technical data 379
Identification data 379
Vehicle data 379

Index 381

8V2012721BK

This Owner's Manual applies to all versions of this model. It contains important information, tips, suggestions, and warnings for using your vehicle.

KEEP THIS GUIDE

Keep this manual in your vehicle at all times. This is especially important if you loan your vehicle to others or sell it.

This owner's manual describes the **equipment range** specified for this model at the time of printing. Individual equipment options described may only be available at a later date or may only be offered in certain countries.

Some sections in this manual do not apply to all vehicles. When this is the case, the beginning of the section indicates the **validity**, for example “Applies to: vehicles with cruise control system”. Optional or vehicle-specific equipment is also identified with an asterisk “*”.

The **illustrations** in this manual are a guide. Some of the details in your vehicle may differ from the illustration.

All **directions**, such as “left”, “right”, “front” and “rear”, are based on the vehicle's direction of travel.

* Optional or vehicle-specific equipment

▶ The section continues on the next page.

⇨ ⚠ Cross reference to a “WARNING” within a section. If a page number is indicated, the WARNING is located outside of the section.

WARNING

Text with this symbol contains information about safety and how to reduce the risk of serious personal injury or death.

Note

Text with this symbol contains information about reducing the risk of damage to your vehicle.

For the sake of the environment

Text with this symbol contains information on protecting the environment.

Tips

Text with this symbol contains additional useful information.

Quick access

Controls at a glance

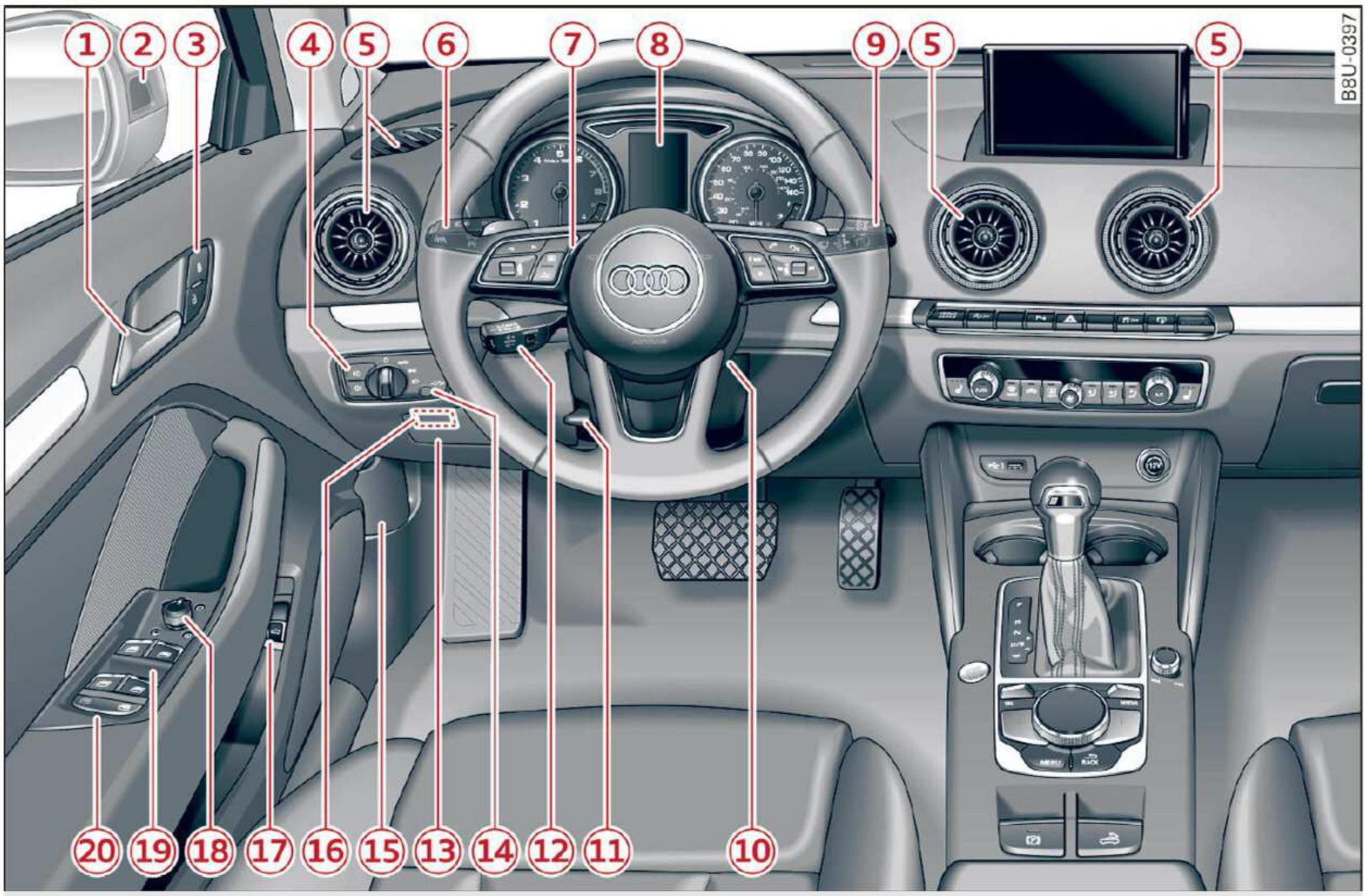


Fig. 1 Cockpit: left section

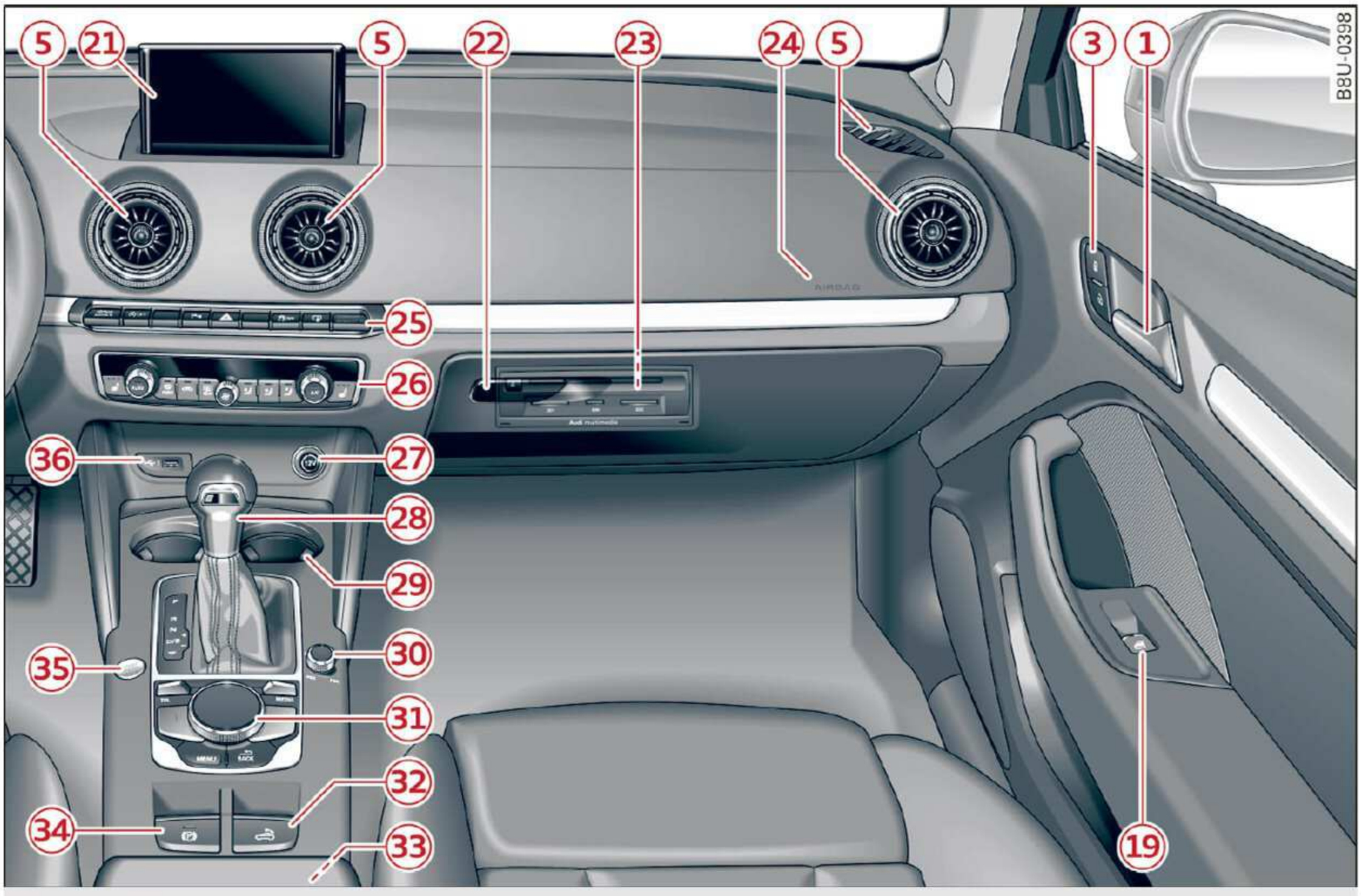


Fig. 2 Cockpit: right section

① Door handle

② Side assist 131

③ Central locking switch 29

④ Light switch 43

⑤ Vents 65

⑥ Lever for:

– Turn signals and high beams 44

– High beam assistant 44

– Active lane assist 128

⑦ Multifunction steering wheel with:

– Horn

– Driver's airbag 257

– Driver information system controls 17, 20

– Audio/video, telephone, navigation, and voice recognition controls 19, 20

– Button ✳/steering wheel heating . 19, 20

– Shift paddles 76

⑧ Instrument cluster 14

⑨ Windshield washer system lever . . 49

⑩ Steering column, with the following, depending on equipment:

– Ignition lock 72

– Starting the engine when there is a malfunction 73

⑪ Adjustable steering column 58

⑫ Lever for:

– Cruise control system 115

– Adaptive cruise control 118

⑬ Knee airbag 269

⑭ Instrument illumination 47

⑮ Hood release 305

⑯ Data link connector for On Board Diagnostic System (OBD II) 371

⑰ Switch (depending on the equipment) for:

– Luggage compartment lid 31

– Fuel filler door (plug-in hybrid drive) 302

⑱ Power exterior mirror adjustment . 47

⑲ Power windows 33

⑳ Depending on equipment:

– Child safety lock 33

– Central power window switch . . . 33

㉑ Infotainment system display 147

㉒ Glove compartment 60

㉓ Drives for CD, DVD, SIM cards 212

㉔ Front passenger's airbag 257

㉕ Depending on equipment, buttons for:

– Drive select 91

– Start/Stop system 83

– EV button (plug-in hybrid drive) . 79

– Park assist 140

– Parking aid 137

– Emergency flashers 45

– Electronic Stabilization Control (ESC) 93

– Infotainment system display 147

– Front passenger airbag off indicator 265

㉖ Deluxe automatic climate control . 66

㉗ Socket 59

㉘ Selector lever (automatic transmission) 75

㉙ Cup holders 59

㉚ Infotainment system on/off button . 146

㉛ Infotainment unit 146

㉜ Power top operation 36

㉝ Center armrest with storage compartment. Depending on vehicle equipment, it may have:

– Audi music interface 217

– Audi smartphone interface 228

– Audi phone box 171

㉞ Electromechanical parking brake . . 87

㉟ START ENGINE STOP 71

㊱ Audi music interface 217

Tips

Some the equipment listed here is only installed in certain models or is available as an option.

8V2012721BK

Indicator lights overview

Description

The indicator lights in the instrument cluster blink or turn on. They indicate functions or malfunctions.

With some indicator lights, messages may appear and warning signals may sound. The indicator lights and messages may be covered by other displays. To show them again in the driver information system, select the second tab for messages with the multifunction steering wheel ⇨ *page 17* or ⇨ *page 20*.

Some indicator lights in the display can display in several colors.

⚠ Central indicator light

If the ⚠ or ⚠ indicator light turns on, check the instrument cluster display for more information.

Applies to: vehicles with monochrome display

If a message appears together with a central indicator light ⚠ or ⚠, the central indicator light will indicate the priority of the warning. If a white indicator light also appears, the central indicator light will have its own color. For example, if appears together with ⚠, read the description for .

Overview

Some indicator lights turn on briefly as a function check when you switch the ignition on. These systems are marked with a ✓ in the following tables. If one of these indicator lights does not turn on, there is a malfunction in that system.

The following indicator lights may be available, depending on the vehicle equipment:

Red indicator lights	
	Central indicator light ⇨ *page 10*, Audi pre sense ⇨ *page 126*, instrument cluster ⇨ *page 14*
	Safety belt ⇨ *page 245*
	Transmission ⇨ *page 77*
	Drive system ⇨ *page 82*
e-tron	Drive system ⇨ *page 82*
PARK	Electromechanical parking brake ⇨ *page 87*
	Electromechanical parking brake ⇨ *page 87*
BRAKE	Brake system ✓ ⇨ *page 86*, ⇨ *page 88*, ⇨ *page 313*
	Brake system ✓ ⇨ *page 86*, ⇨ *page 88*, ⇨ *page 313*
	Engine stop while driving ⇨ *page 82*
	Steering ✓ ⇨ *page 92*
	Steering lock ⇨ *page 92*
	Electrical system ⇨ *page 314*
	Engine oil pressure ⇨ *page 308*
	Cooling system ⇨ *page 311*
	Hood ⇨ *page 306*
	Charging system ⇨ *page 111*
	Adaptive cruise control ⇨ *page 120*

Yellow indicator lights	
	Central indicator light ⇨ *page 10*
	Safety systems ✓ ⇨ *page 238* ▶

	Transmission ⇨ *page 77*
	Drive system ⇨ *page 82*
	Drive system ⇨ *page 82*
POWER LIMIT	Drive system ⇨ *page 82*, ⇨ *page 302*
POWER LIMIT	Drive system ⇨ *page 82*, ⇨ *page 302*
EPC	Drive system ⇨ *page 82*
	Vehicle sound ⇨ *page 82*
	Electromechanical parking brake ⇨ *page 88*
	Hill hold assist ⇨ *page 88*
	Engine start system ⇨ *page 73*
	Keys ⇨ *page 73*
	Electronic Stabilization Control (ESC) ✓ ⇨ *page 93*, ⇨ *page 95*
	Electronic Stabilization Control (ESC) ✓ ⇨ *page 93*
ESC OFF	Electronic Stabilization Control (ESC) ⇨ *page 94*, ⇨ *page 93*
ABS	Anti-lock braking system (ABS) ✓ ⇨ *page 95*
	Anti-lock braking system (ABS) ✓ ⇨ *page 95*
	Steering ⇨ *page 92*
	Steering lock ⇨ *page 92*
	Suspension control ⇨ *page 92*

	Engine speed limitation ⇨ *page 16*
	Tank system ⇨ *page 300*
	Electrical system ⇨ *page 314*
	Engine oil level (MIN) ⇨ *page 308*
	Engine oil sensor ⇨ *page 308*
	Malfunction Indicator Lamp (MIL) ✓ ⇨ *page 303*
	Washer fluid level ⇨ *page 317*
	Windshield wipers ⇨ *page 52*
AC	Charging system ⇨ *page 111*
	Tire pressure ⇨ *page 337*, or ⇨ *page 339*
TPMS	Tire pressure ⇨ *page 337*, or ⇨ *page 339*
	Bulb failure indicator ⇨ *page 45*
	Headlight range control system ⇨ *page 45*
	Adaptive light ⇨ *page 45*
	Light/rain sensor ⇨ *page 45*, ⇨ *page 52*
	Driver's door ⇨ *page 29*
	Battery in remote control key ⇨ *page 27*
	Power top ⇨ *page 38*
	Side assist ⇨ *page 135* ▶

	Active lane assist ⇨ *page 129*
	pre sense ⇨ *page 128*

Other indicator lights

	Start/Stop system ⇨ *page 83*
EV	Electric drive ready mode ⇨ *page 79*
	Charging system ⇨ *page 111*
	Turn signals ⇨ *page 44*, ⇨ *page 45*
CRUISE	Cruise control system ⇨ *page 116*
	Cruise control system ⇨ *page 116*
	Adaptive cruise control ⇨ *page 120*
	Adaptive cruise control ⇨ *page 120*
	Adaptive cruise control ⇨ *page 120*
	Adaptive cruise control ⇨ *page 121*
	Active lane assist ⇨ *page 129*
	High beams ⇨ *page 44*
AUTO	High beam assistant ⇨ *page 44*
	Drive system ⇨ *page 82*
PARK BRAKE	Electromechanical parking brake ⇨ *page 88*
PARK BRAKE	Electromechanical parking brake ⇨ *page 88*
(P)	Electromechanical parking brake ⇨ *page 88*,

	Hill hold assist ⇨ *page 88*
A	Start/Stop system ⇨ *page 83*
A	Start/Stop system ⇨ *page 83*
	Convenience key ⇨ *page 73*
EV	Electric drive ready mode ⇨ *page 79*
	Combustion engine ⇨ *page 79*
	Plug-in-hybrid modes ⇨ *page 79*
	Plug-in-hybrid modes ⇨ *page 79*
	Charging system ⇨ *page 111*
AC	Charging system ⇨ *page 111*
	Tank system ⇨ *page 302*
P	Park assist ⇨ *page 140*
P OFF	Park assist ⇨ *page 140*
A AUTO	High beam assistant ⇨ *page 44*
MPH	Speed warning system ⇨ *page 115*
Km/h	Speed warning system ⇨ *page 115*
CRUISE	Cruise control system ⇨ *page 116*
	Cruise control system ⇨ *page 116*
	Side assist ⇨ *page 135*
	Adaptive cruise control ⇨ *page 121* ▶

	Adaptive cruise control ⇨ *page 121*
	Active lane assist ⇨ *page 129*
	pre sense ⇨ *page 128*

8V2012721BK

Instrument cluster

Instrument cluster overview

The instrument cluster is the central information center for the driver.



Applies to: vehicles with Audi virtual cockpit

Fig. 3 Instrument cluster overview



Applies to: vehicles with analog instrument cluster

Fig. 4 Instrument cluster overview

Depending on the vehicle equipment, the following items may appear in the instrument cluster:

① Display
- – Engine coolant temperature . . 15
- – Boost indicator 23
- – High-voltage battery charge level

② Left dial
- – Tachometer 15
- – Power meter 16

③ Tab area 17, 20

④ Central area 17, 20

⑤ Status line (one or two lines)

⑥ Trip odometer reset button 17

⑦ Right dial
- – Convenience display
- – Speedometer

⑧ Display
- – Fuel level 300

⑨ Right additional display with speedometer

⑩ Left additional display with: ▶

– Gear 75
– Audi drive select mode 91

WARNING

Applies to: vehicles with Audi virtual cockpit

If there is a severe malfunction in the instrument cluster, the display may turn off. The indicator light may also turn on. Stop the vehicle safely. See an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility for assistance.

Tips

– The following pages will primarily show illustrations of the multi-color analog instrument cluster*. The display and/or position of the element shown may vary in monochrome instrument clusters or in the Audi virtual cockpit*.
– You can select the units used for temperature, speed, and other measurements in the Infotainment system ⇨ *page 230*.
– Speeds are displayed in mph (miles per hour) or km/h (kilometers per hour).
– If there is a malfunction in the instrument cluster, **DEF** will appear in the trip odometer display. Have the malfunction corrected as soon as possible.
– Depending on vehicle equipment, the instrument illumination (needles and gauges) may turn on when the lights are off and the ignition is switched on. The illumination for the gauges reduces automatically and eventually turns off as brightness outside increases. This function reminds the driver to turn the low beams on at the appropriate time.

Coolant temperature display

Applies to: vehicles with a coolant temperature indicator

The coolant temperature display ① ⇨ *page 14* only functions when the ignition is switched on. To reduce the risk of engine damage, please observe the following notes about the temperature ranges.

Cold range

If only the LEDs at the bottom of the gauge turn on, the engine has not reached operating temperature yet. Avoid high engine speeds, full accelerating and heavy engine loads.

Normal range

The engine has reached its operating temperature once the LEDs up to the center of the gauge turn on. If the indicator light in the instrument cluster display turns on, the coolant temperature is too high ⇨ *page 311*.

Note

– Auxiliary headlights and other accessories in front of the air intake impair the cooling effect of the coolant. This increases the risk of the engine overheating during high outside temperatures and heavy engine load.
– The front spoiler also helps to distribute cooling air correctly while driving. If the spoiler is damaged, the cooling effect will be impaired and the risk of the engine overheating will increase. See an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility for assistance.

Tachometer

The tachometer ② ⇨ *page 14* displays the engine speed in revolutions per minute (RPM). The beginning of the red zone in the tachometer indicates the maximum permissible engine speed for all gears once the engine has been broken in and when it is warm. Before reaching the red zone, you should shift into the next higher gear, choose the "D" or "S" selector lever position, or remove your foot from the accelerator pedal.

Displaying the tachometer

Applies to: vehicles with plug-in hybrid drive

▸ Open the first vehicle functions tab using the ◁ / ▷ button on the multifunction steering wheel.
▸ Applies to: vehicles with analog instrument cluster: Turn the left thumbwheel on the multifunction steering wheel until the **Tachometer** appears in the instrument cluster. ▶

- Applies to: vehicles with Audi virtual cockpit: Select on the multifunction steering wheel: right control button > **Left dial** > **Tachometer** or **Combination view**.

Engine speed limitation

Applies to: vehicles with engine speed limitation

If the indicator light turns on, the engine will be automatically limited to the RPM displayed in the instrument cluster. This will protect the engine components, for example during a cold start or from overheating.

The engine speed limitation deactivates once the engine is no longer in the critical temperature range and you have released the accelerator pedal once.

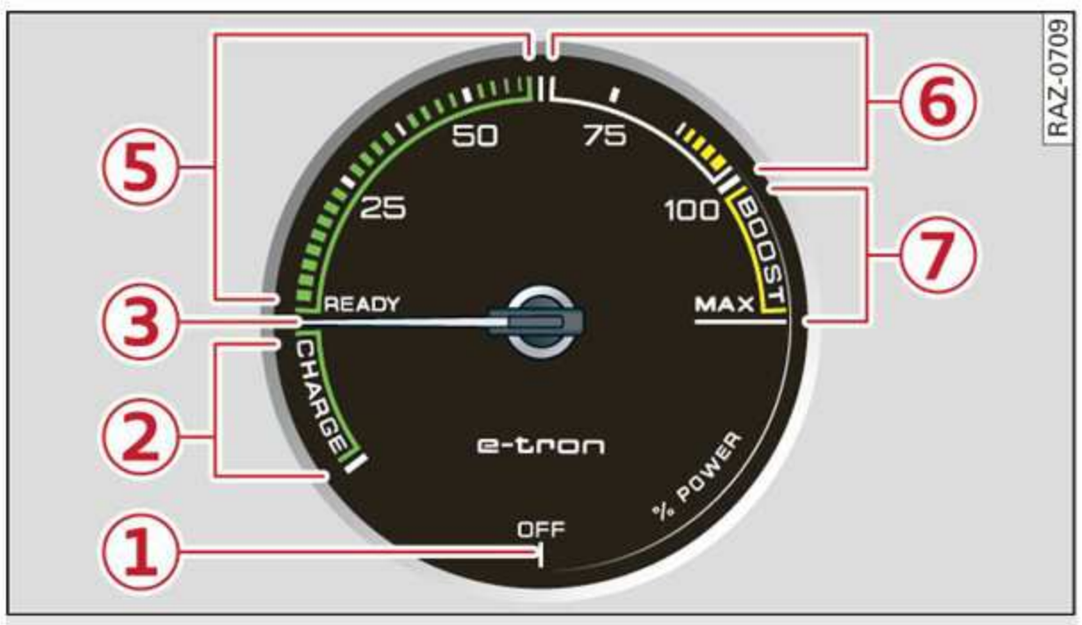
If the engine speed limitation was activated by an engine control malfunction, the or EPC indicator light also turns on. Make sure the engine speed does not go above the speed displayed, for example when downshifting. Drive to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility immediately to have the malfunction corrected.

Note

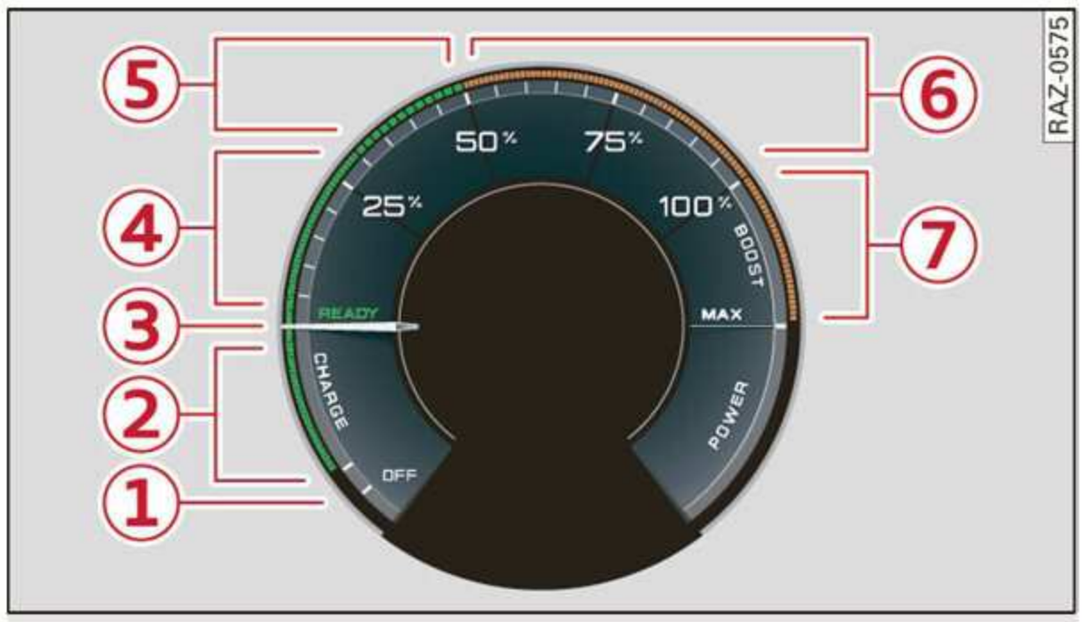
The needle in the tachometer ② may only be in the red area of the gauge for a short period of time before there is a risk of damaging the engine. The location where the red zone begins varies depending on the engine.

Power meter

Applies to: vehicles with plug-in hybrid drive



Applies to: vehicles with analog instrument cluster
Fig. 5 Instrument cluster: power meter



Applies to: vehicles with Audi virtual cockpit
Fig. 6 Instrument cluster: power meter

Displaying the power meter

Applies to: vehicles with Audi virtual cockpit

- Open the first vehicle functions tab using the ◁ / ▷ button on the multifunction steering wheel.
- Select on the multifunction steering wheel: right control button > **Left dial** > **Power meter** or **Combination view**.

The power meter ② ⇨ *page 14* gives feedback about the usage capacity of the drive system. The power meter needle displays the current usage capacity.

Applies to: vehicles with Audi virtual cockpit: A colored border indicates how much the drive system can be currently utilized. The colored borders may vary depending on the selected driving program and the electric power currently available.

Depending on the vehicle equipment, the power meter displays the following driving statuses:

① Drive system switched off
② Vehicle recovering electrical energy
③ Drive system switched on
④ Vehicle is driving with the electric motor (green)
⑤ Vehicle is driving with the electric motor, the combustion engine can switch on automatically (green dash)
⑥ Vehicle is driving with the combustion engine (orange)
⑦ Vehicle is driving with maximum power from the electric motor and ▶

combustion engine for a brief period of time

Odometer



Fig. 7 Instrument cluster: odometer

The trip odometer and odometer are displayed in the status line ⑤ ⇨ *page 14*.

The trip odometer shows the distance driven since it was last reset. It can be used to measure short distances. The odometer shows the total distance that the vehicle has been driven.

Resetting the trip odometer

▸ To reset the trip odometer to zero, press the reset button ⑥.

Tips

Distances are displayed in mi (miles) or km (kilometers).

Outside temperature display

The outside temperature is displayed in the status line ⑤ ⇨ *page 14*.

If your vehicle is stationary or if you are driving at very low speeds, the temperature displayed in the instrument cluster may be slightly higher than the actual temperature outside due to heat radiating from the engine.

At temperatures below 41 °F (+5 °C), a snowflake symbol appears in front of the temperature display ⇨ ⚠.

WARNING

Do not assume the roads are free of ice based on the outside temperature display. Be aware that there may be ice on roads even when the outside temperature is around 41 °F (+5 °C) and that ice can increase the risk of accidents.

Multifunction steering wheel plus

Operating

Applies to: vehicles with Audi virtual cockpit

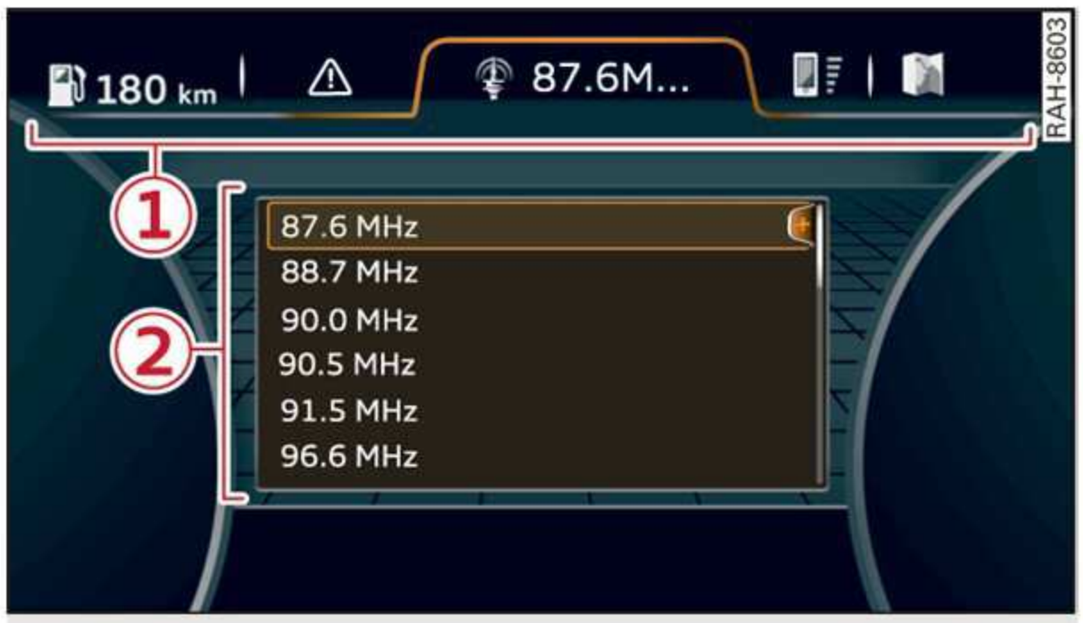


Fig. 8 Driver information system view (Audi virtual cockpit)

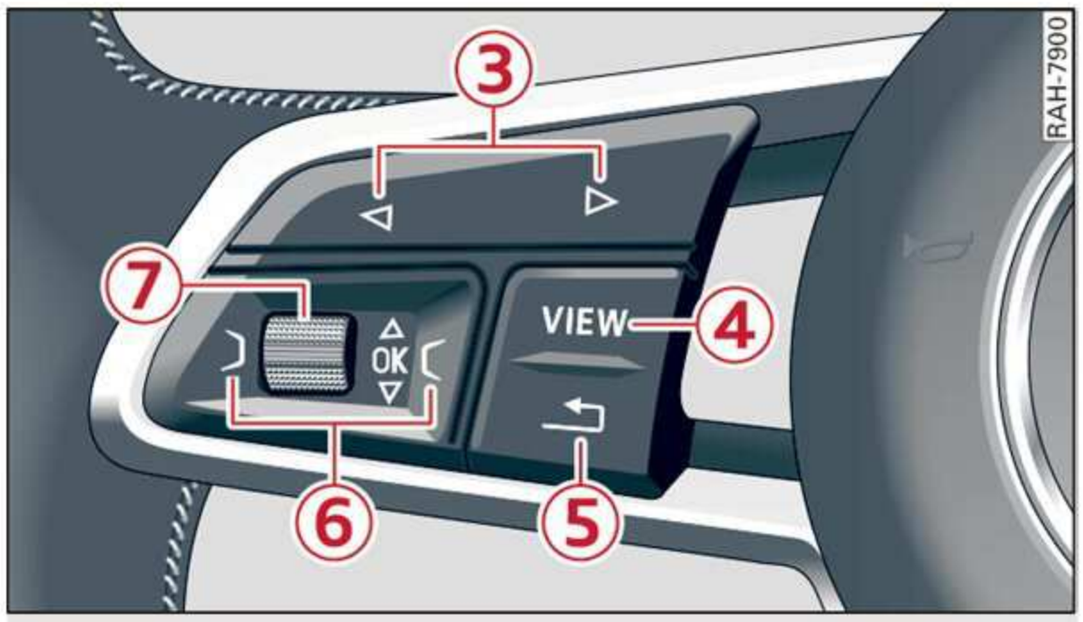


Fig. 9 Left side of multifunction steering wheel plus

Requirement: the ignition must be switched on.

The driver information system contains multiple tabs ① ⇨ *fig. 8* that display various information ②.

The following tabs may be available, depending on vehicle equipment:

First tab	Vehicle functions ⇨ *page 21*
Second tab[a)]	Messages
Third tab	Radio ⇨ *page 157* Media ⇨ *page 157*

▶

8V2012721BK

Fourth tab	Telephone* ⇨ *page 158*
Fifth tab	Navigation* ⇨ *page 159* Map* ⇨ *page 159*

a) This tab is only visible when there is at least one indicator light or message displayed.

③ Button ◁ ▷

– **Switching tabs**: press the ◁ ▷ button repeatedly until the desired tab is shown (for example, Radio).

④ VIEW button

Switching views: see ⇨ *page 19, Switching views*.

⑤ ⮌ button

Return to functions at higher levels.

⑥ ⊐ and ⊏ control buttons

Opening/closing the selection menu or options menu ⇨ *page 18*.

⑦ Left thumbwheel

– **Selecting a function in a menu/list**: turn the left thumbwheel to the desired function (for example, selecting a frequency).
– **Confirming a selection**: press the left thumbwheel ⑦ ⇨ *fig. 9*.
– **Zooming in/out on the map**: when a map is displayed, turn the left thumbwheel to zoom in and out on the map.

Control buttons

Applies to: vehicles with Audi virtual cockpit

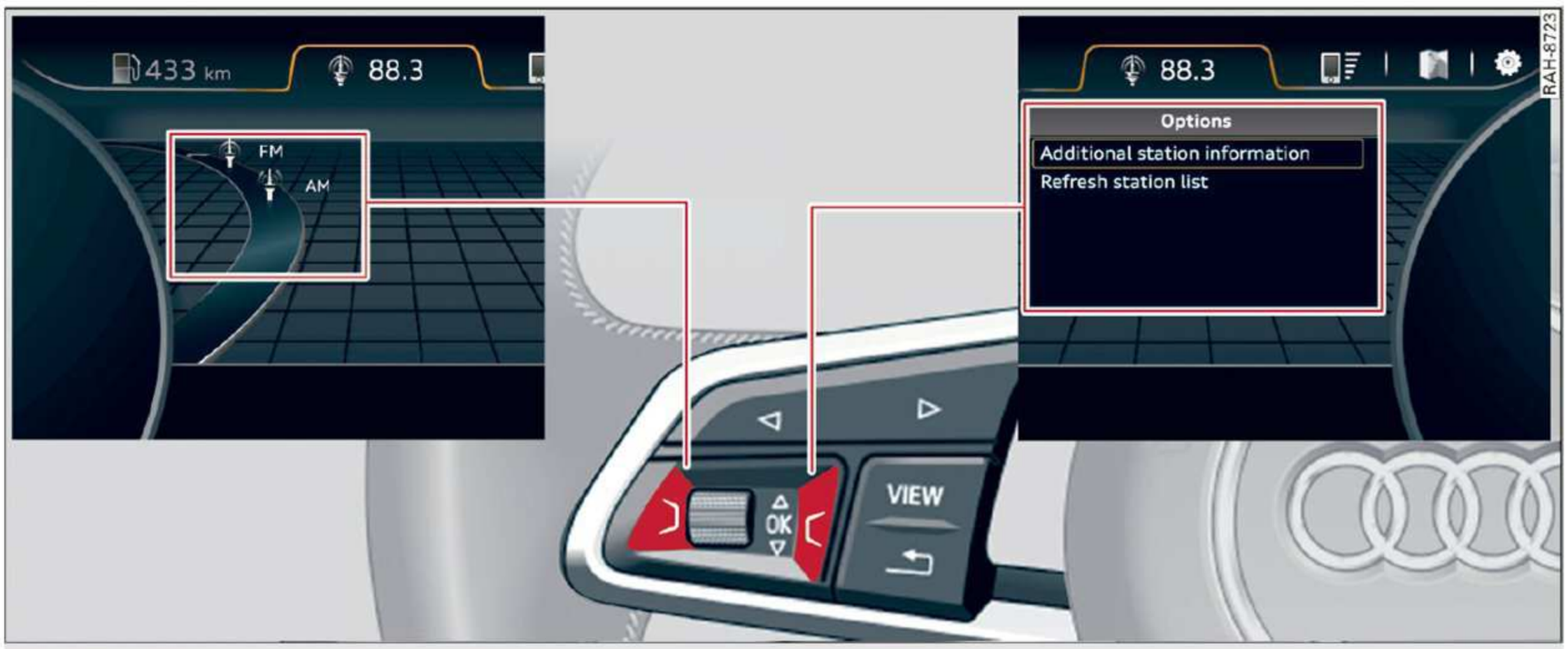


Fig. 10 Selection menu and options menu

Left control button

– **Opening/closing the selection menu**: press the respective left control button on the multifunction steering wheel ⇨ *fig. 10* . You can select and confirm a function in the selection menu using the left thumbwheel (for example, selecting a frequency band).

Right control button

– **Opening/closing the options menu**: press the respective right control button on the multifunction steering wheel ⇨ *fig. 10* . You can change any context-dependent functions and settings using the left thumbwheel (for example, additional station information).

Tips

The availability of a selection menu or options menu depends on the function that is selected.

Switching views

Applies to: vehicles with Audi virtual cockpit

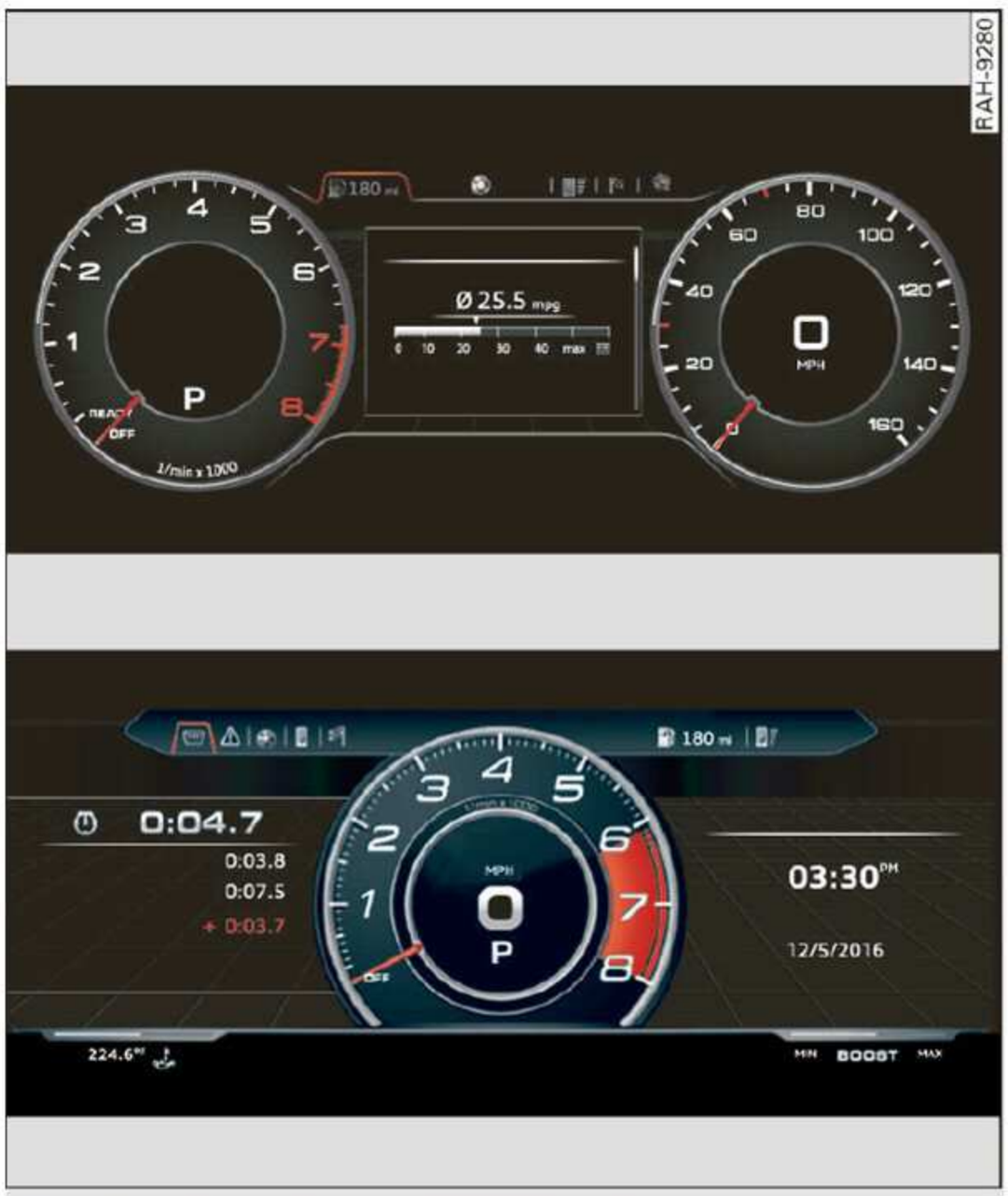


Fig. 11 Standard view: classic/sport*



Fig. 12 Enhanced view

Change view

- Press the VIEW button (4) ⇨ *page 17, fig. 9* to switch from the default view ⇨ *fig. 11* to the enhanced view ⇨ *fig. 12*. To return to the default view, press the VIEW button again.

Setting the default view

Applies to: vehicles with sport view

Depending on the vehicle equipment, you can choose between the classic and the sport view.

- Open the first vehicle functions tab using the ◁ ▷ button on the multifunction steering wheel.
- Select on the multifunction steering wheel: left control button > **Layout** > **Sport layout** or **Classic layout**.

Adjusting the additional display

Depending on the vehicle equipment, the additional displays that can be selected may vary.

- Open the first vehicle functions tab using the ◁ ▷ button on the multifunction steering wheel.
- Select on the multifunction steering wheel: right control button > **Additional display**.
- Select the desired additional display.

Tips

Applies to: vehicles with sport view

Always set the desired default view before driving, because the display functions will not be available for several seconds.

Other function buttons

Applies to: vehicles with Audi virtual cockpit

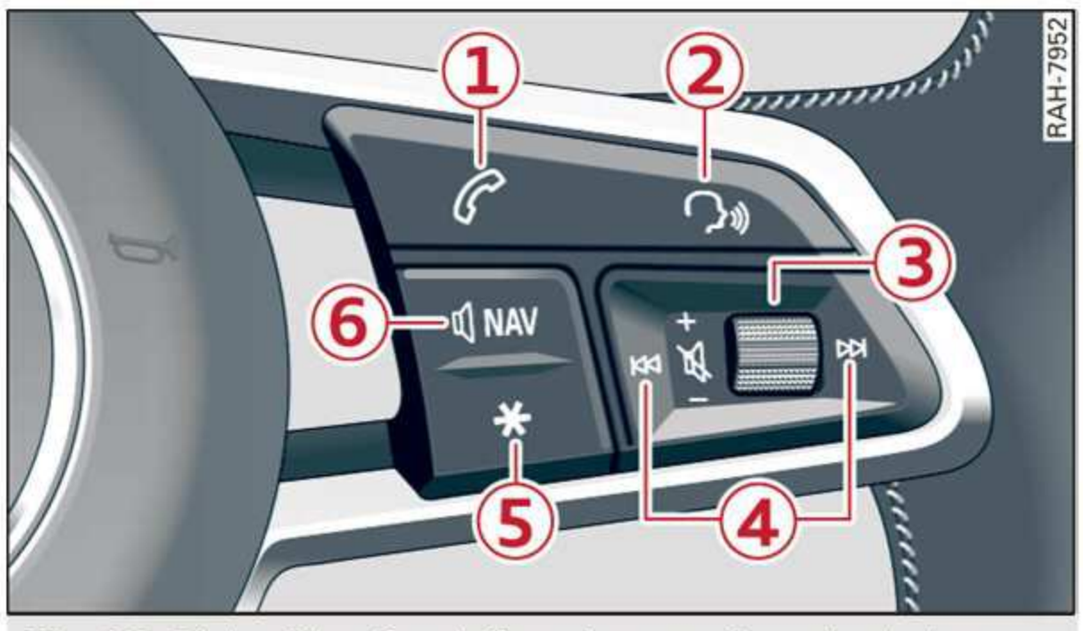


Fig. 13 Right side of multifunction steering wheel plus

(1) ☎ button

– **Accepting a call**: press the ☎ button when there is an incoming call.

– **Ending a call**: press the ☎ button during a phone call to end the call.

– **Opening the call list**: if no phone call is in progress and there are no incoming calls, press the ☎ button.

(2) button

– **Switching the voice recognition system on**: briefly press the button. Say the desired command after the **Beep**.

– **Switching the voice recognition system off**: press and hold the button. **Or**: say the command **Cancel**.

For more information about the voice recognition system, see ⇨ *page 162, Voice recognition system*.

③ Right thumbwheel

You can adjust the volume of an audio source or a system message (for example, from the voice recognition system) when the sound is playing.

– **Increasing or decreasing the volume**: turn the right thumbwheel up or down.
– **Muting or pausing**: turn the right thumbwheel down. **Or**: press the right thumbwheel.
– **Unmuting or resuming**: turn the right thumbwheel up. **Or**: press the right thumbwheel.

④ button

– **Selecting the previous/next track or station**: press the or button.
– **Fast forwarding/rewinding audio files**: press and hold the or button until the desired location in the file is reached.

⑤ button / steering wheel heating

– **Steering wheel heating***: you can find additional information in ⇨ *page 68*.
– **Programmable steering wheel button - Opening a function**: press the button on the multifunction steering wheel.
– **Programmable steering wheel button - Requesting a function**: press and hold the button.
– **Programmable steering wheel button** in the Infotainment system, select: MENU button > **Vehicle** > left control button > **Vehicle settings** > **Steering wheel button assignment**.

⑥ NAV button

– **Repeating the last navigation prompt**: press the NAV button when route guidance is active.
– **Changing the voice guidance volume**: when route guidance is active, turn the right thumbwheel upward or downward during a navigation prompt.

Multifunction steering wheel

Operating

Applies to: vehicles with analog instrument cluster



Fig. 14 Left side of multifunction steering wheel

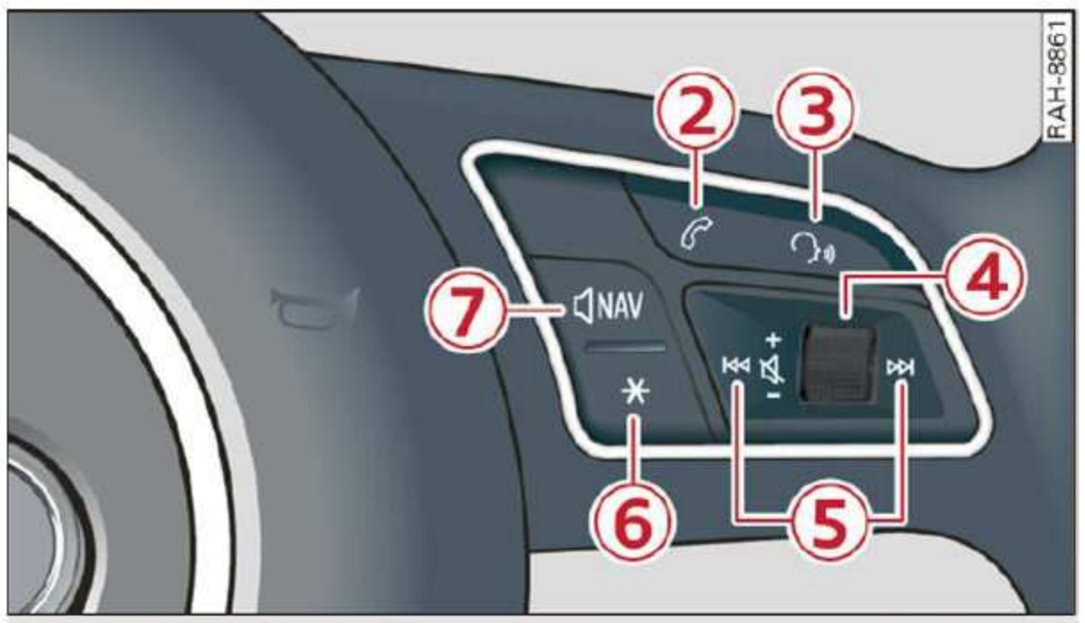


Fig. 15 Right side of the multifunction steering wheel

Requirement: the ignition must be switched on.

① Operating the driver information system

The driver information system contains multiple tabs ① ⇨ *page 17, fig. 8* that display various information ② ⇨ *page 17, fig. 8*.

The following tabs may be available, depending on vehicle equipment:

First tab	Vehicle functions ⇨ *page 21*
Second tab[a)]	Messages
Third tab	Radio ⇨ *page 157* Media ⇨ *page 157*
Fourth tab	Telephone* ⇨ *page 158*
Fifth tab	Navigation* ⇨ *page 159*

a) This tab is only visible when there is at least one indicator light or message displayed.

– **Switching tabs**: press the button repeatedly until the desired tab is shown. ▶

– **Opening/closing the menu**: press the button.
– **Selecting a function in the menu/list**: turn the left thumbwheel to the desired function.
– **Confirming a selection**: press the left thumbwheel to confirm your selection.
– **Returning to functions at higher levels**: press the button.
– **Scrolling within lists**: turn the left thumbwheel quickly.

② button

– **Accepting a call**: press the button when there is an incoming call.
– **Ending a call**: press the button during a phone call to end the call.
– **Opening the call list**: if no phone call is in progress and there are no incoming calls, press the button.

③ Button

– **Switching the voice recognition system on**: briefly press the button. Say the desired command after the **Beep**.
– **Switching the voice recognition system off**: press and hold the button. **Or**: say the command **Cancel**.

For more information about the voice recognition system, see ⇨ *page 162, Voice recognition system*.

④ Right thumbwheel

You can adjust the volume of an audio source or a system message (for example, from the voice recognition system) when the sound is playing.

– **Increasing or decreasing the volume**: turn the right thumbwheel up or down.
– **Muting or pausing**: turn the right thumbwheel down. **Or**: press the right thumbwheel.
– **Unmuting or resuming**: turn the right thumbwheel up. **Or**: press the right thumbwheel.

⑤ / Button

– **Selecting the previous/next track or station**: press the or button.
– **Fast forwarding/rewinding audio files**: press and hold the or button until the desired location in the file is reached.

⑥ button / steering wheel heating*

– **Steering wheel heating***: you can find additional information in ⇨ *page 68*.
– **Programmable steering wheel button - Opening a function**: press the button on the multifunction steering wheel.
– **Programmable steering wheel button - Requesting a function**: press and hold the button.
– **Programmable steering wheel button** in the Infotainment system, select: MENU button > **Vehicle** > left control button > **Vehicle settings** > **Steering wheel button assignment**.

⑦ NAV Button

– **Repeating the last navigation prompt**: press the NAV button when route guidance is active.
– **Changing the voice guidance volume**: when route guidance is active, turn the right thumbwheel upward or downward during a navigation prompt.

Vehicle functions

Overview

The trip computer is displayed in the first tab of the driver information system. Additional vehicle functions can be accessed depending on the vehicle equipment.

► Press either the button or the left control button depending on the vehicle equipment.

– On-board computer ⇨ *page 22*, or ⇨ *page 22*
– Efficiency program ⇨ *page 23*
– Digital speedometer
– Lap timer ⇨ *page 117*
– Assist ⇨ *page 115*
– Reduced display
– Energy flow ⇨ *page 80*
– Lap times ⇨ *page 117*
– Statistics ⇨ *page 118*
– Sport displays ⇨ *page 24*
– Layout ⇨ *page 19*

8V2012721BK

Trip computer (Audi virtual cockpit)

Applies to: vehicles with Audi virtual cockpit



Fig. 16 Instrument cluster: fuel consumption display

Resetting values to zero

Requirement: the **Fuel consumption**, **Short-term memory**, or **Long-term memory** display must be selected.

- ▸ To reset the values in the respective memory to zero, press and hold the left thumbwheel on the multifunction steering wheel for one second. Or
- ▸ On the multifunction steering wheel, select: the right control button > **Reset values***.

The following displays are available, depending on vehicle equipment:

– Date and time ⇨ *page 230*
– Plug-in hybrid drive: range ⇨ *page 81*
– Average consumption ⇨ *page 22*
– Short-term memory overview
– Long-term memory overview
– Energy consumers ⇨ *page 22*
– Driver assistance ⇨ *page 115*

The short-term memory collects driving information from the time the ignition is switched on until it is switched off. If you continue driving within two hours after switching the ignition off, the new values are included when calculating the current trip information.

Unlike the short-term memory, the long-term memory is not erased automatically. You can select the time period for evaluating trip information yourself.

Average consumption

The current consumption can be shown using a bar graph. The average consumption stored in the short-term memory is also displayed. If the bar is green, your vehicle is saving energy (for example, using recuperation).

Energy consumers*

The **Energy consumers** view lists other equipment that is currently affecting fuel consumption. The display shows up to three equipment items. The equipment using the most power is listed first. If more than three items using power are switched on, the equipment that is currently using the most power is displayed. A chart also shows you the current total of all other consumers.

Tips

The date, time of day, and time and date format can be set in the Infotainment system ⇨ *page 230*.

Trip computer (analog instrument cluster)

Applies to: vehicles with analog instrument cluster



Fig. 17 Instrument cluster: fuel consumption display

Depending on the vehicle equipment, you may be able to open various displays in the on-board computer, or a predetermined item will be displayed, such as the odometer.

Resetting values to zero

Requirement: the **Fuel consumption**, **Short-term memory**, or **Long-term memory** display must be selected.

- ▸ To reset the values in the respective memory to zero, press and hold the left thumbwheel on ▶

the multifunction steering wheel for one second.

On-board computer

In the trip computer, you can call up the following displays one after the other by turning the left thumbwheel on the multifunction steering wheel:

- Date ⇨ *page 230*
- Remaining range
- Plug-in hybrid drive*: speedometer ⇨ *page 15*, range ⇨ *page 81*, energy flow display ⇨ *page 80*
- Short-term memory 1
- Average consumption
- Long-term memory 2
- Engine oil temperature*

The short-term memory collects driving information from the time the ignition is switched on until it is switched off. If you continue driving within two hours after switching the ignition off, the new values are included when calculating the current trip information.

Unlike the short-term memory, the long-term memory is not erased automatically. You can select the time period for evaluating trip information yourself.

Tips

The date, time of day, and time and date format can be set in the Infotainment system ⇨ *page 230*.

Efficiency program

Applies to: vehicles with efficiency program

Resetting values to zero

▸ To reset the values in the respective memory to zero, press and hold the left thumbwheel on the multifunction steering wheel for one second.

The efficiency program can help you to use less fuel. It evaluates driving information in reference to fuel consumption and shows other equipment influencing consumption. Economy tips provide advice for efficient driving.

The efficiency program receives distance and consumption data from the short-term memory. If the data in the efficiency program is deleted, the values in the short-term memory are also reset.

The following additional displays may be available in the efficiency program, depending on vehicle equipment:

- **Other equipment**: other equipment that is currently affecting fuel consumption is listed in the efficiency program. The display shows up to three other equipment items. The equipment using the most power is listed first. If more than three items using power are switched on, the equipment that is currently using the most power is displayed. A chart also shows you the current total of all other consumers.
- **Economy tips**: in certain situations, economy tips appear automatically for a short time in the efficiency program. If you follow these economy tips, you can reduce your vehicle's fuel consumption. To turn an economy message off immediately after it appears, press any button on the multifunction steering wheel.

Engine oil temperature display and boost indicator

Applies to: vehicles with engine oil temperature display/boost indicator

Engine oil temperature indicator

Applies to: vehicles with analog instrument cluster: The engine oil temperature is only shown on the lap timer display ⇨ *page 117*.

Applies to: vehicles with Audi virtual cockpit: The engine oil temperature is only displayed in the enhanced view or in the sport view* ⇨ *page 19*.

When engine oil temperatures are low, the display --- °F (--- °C) appears in the instrument cluster.

The engine has reached its operating temperature when the engine oil temperature is between 176 °F (80 °C) and 248 °F (120 °C) under normal driving conditions. The engine oil temperature may be higher if there is heavy engine load and high temperatures outside. This is not a cause for concern as long as the ⇨ *page 308* or ⇨ *page 308* indicator lights do not turn on. ▶

Boost indicator

Applies to: vehicles with Audi virtual cockpit: The boost indicator is only displayed in the enhanced view or in the sport view* ⇨ *page 19*.

The current engine load (meaning the current boost pressure) is indicated by a bar.

Shift light indicator

Applies to: vehicles with shift light indicator

The shift light indicator informs the driver when the rpm limit is reached.

Accessing the shift light indicator

Requirement: tiptronic mode must be activated ⇨ *page 76*.

- ▸ Select the sport view ⇨ *page 19*. The shift light indicator is displayed with green, yellow and red ranges in the upper areas of the tachometer.

The shift light indicator will blink red when approaching the engine speed limit. Shift to the next highest gear at the right time.

Sport displays

Applies to: vehicles with Audi virtual cockpit and sport displays

Depending on the vehicle equipment, the sport displays may include the G-meter, the engine data and the tire pressure monitoring system.

Accessing the sport displays

- ▸ Open the first vehicle functions tab using the ◁ ▷ button on the multifunction steering wheel.
- ▸ Select on the multifunction steering wheel: left control button > **Sport displays**.
- ▸ Turn the left thumbwheel on the multifunction steering wheel until the desired sport display appears in the instrument cluster.

G meter*

The G meter displays the longitudinal and lateral acceleration. The maximum values that are reached are stored and displayed when the vehicle is stationary.

- ▸ To reset the stored values, select on the multifunction steering wheel: right control button > **Reset values**.

Engine data*

The engine data displays the current power and torque.

Tire Pressure Monitoring System*

The tire pressure monitoring system displays the current tire pressures and temperature. Also see ⇨ *page 339, Tire pressure monitoring system*.

Opening and closing

Central locking

Description

You can lock and unlock the vehicle centrally. You have the following options:

– Remote control key ⇨ *page 27*
– Sensors in the front door handles* ⇨ *page 28*
– Lock cylinder on the driver's door ⇨ *page 30*, or
– Interior central locking switch ⇨ *page 29*

Turn signals

The turn signals flash twice when you unlock the vehicle and flash once when you lock the vehicle.

If they do not flash when locking, check if all doors and lids are closed.

Automatic locking (Auto Lock)

The Auto Lock function locks all doors and the luggage compartment lid once the speed has exceeded approximately 9 mph (15 km/h). The vehicle will unlock again if the unlock function in the central locking switch is pressed, the “P” gear is engaged, or the ignition is switched off.

You can open the doors individually from the inside by pulling the door handle one time. To open the rear doors* individually, you must pull the door handle twice.

In the event of a crash with airbag deployment, the doors will also automatically unlock to allow access to the vehicle.

Selective door unlocking

The doors and luggage compartment lid will lock when they close. You can set in the Infotainment system whether *only* the driver's door or the entire vehicle should be unlocked when unlocking ⇨ *page 29*.

Unintentionally locking yourself out

Only lock your vehicle when all of the doors and the luggage compartment lid are closed and the remote control key is not in the vehicle. This reduces the risk of locking yourself out accidentally.

The following conditions prevent you from locking your remote control key in the vehicle:

– If the driver's door is open, the vehicle cannot be locked by pressing the button on the remote control key or by touching the locking sensor* on a door.
– If the convenience key* that was last used is inside the luggage compartment, the luggage compartment lid will automatically open again after closing it ⇨ (!).
– If the last convenience key* that was used is detected inside the vehicle, the vehicle cannot be locked from the outside for a brief time ⇨ (!).

WARNING

– If you leave the vehicle, switch the ignition off and take the vehicle key with you. This applies particularly when children remain in the vehicle. Otherwise the children could start the engine or operate electrical equipment such as power windows.
– No one, especially children, should stay in the vehicle when it is locked from the outside, because the windows can no longer be opened from the inside ⇨ *page 30*. Locked doors make it more difficult for emergency workers to get into the vehicle, which puts lives at risk.

Note

Applies to: vehicles with convenience key

– If the convenience key that was last used is detected inside the passenger compartment, then the vehicle cannot be locked from the outside using the **sensor**. Take the convenience key with you and lock the vehicle again. Otherwise, the vehicle will not be protected against unauthorized access.
– If you lock the vehicle using the **button on the vehicle key** with the front passenger's or rear door* open while accidentally placing the key in the passenger compartment and closing the door, the vehicle will not lock. The turn signals will flash several times to indicate this. If you do not open ▶

the vehicle within a short time to remove the vehicle key, then the vehicle will lock automatically. This prevents the vehicle from being left unlocked for long periods of time. The key will then be locked inside the vehicle.

– If the convenience key* that was used last is detected inside the luggage compartment, it will not be possible to lock the luggage compartment and the luggage compartment lid will open. The turn signals will flash several times to indicate this. The doors will lock. Always take the convenience key with you, or unauthorized people may be able to enter the vehicle.

Tips

– Do not leave valuables unattended in the vehicle. A locked vehicle is not a safe!
– The LED in the driver's door rail blinks when you lock the vehicle. If the LED lights up for approximately 30 seconds after locking, there is a malfunction in the central locking system. Have the problem corrected by an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility.

Key set



Fig. 18 Your vehicle key set

Remote or convenience key*

The convenience key* is a remote control key with special functions ⇨ *page 28* and ⇨ *page 71*.
You can unlock/lock your vehicle with the remote control key. To fold the key out and back in place, press the release button ⇨ *fig. 18*.

Number of keys

You can check the number of keys assigned to your vehicle in the Infotainment system. To do this, select the MENU button > **Vehicle** > left control button > **Service & checks** > **Vehicle information**. This way, you can make sure that you have all the keys when purchasing a used vehicle.

Replacing a key

If a key is lost, see an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility. Have *this* key deactivated. It is important to bring all keys with you. If a key is lost, you should report it to your insurance company.

Electronic immobilizer

The immobilizer prevents unauthorized use of the vehicle. Under certain circumstances, the vehicle may not be able to start if there is a key from a different vehicle manufacturer on the key chain.

Data in the master key

During driving, data that is relevant for service and maintenance is continuously stored on your master key. Your Audi service advisor can read out this data and tell you about the work your vehicle needs. This applies also to vehicles with a convenience key*.

Note

Protect the remote control key against high temperatures, direct sunlight, and moisture.

For the sake of the environment

Do not dispose of remote control keys in household trash. They contain materials that can be recycled. Contact an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility for more information.

Tips

– The operation of the remote control key can be temporarily disrupted by interference from transmitters near the vehicle working in the same frequency range (such as a cell phone or radio equipment). Always check if your vehicle is locked. ▶

– For an explanation on conformity with the FCC regulations in the United States and the Industry Canada regulations, see ⇨ *page 377*.

LED and batteries in the remote control key

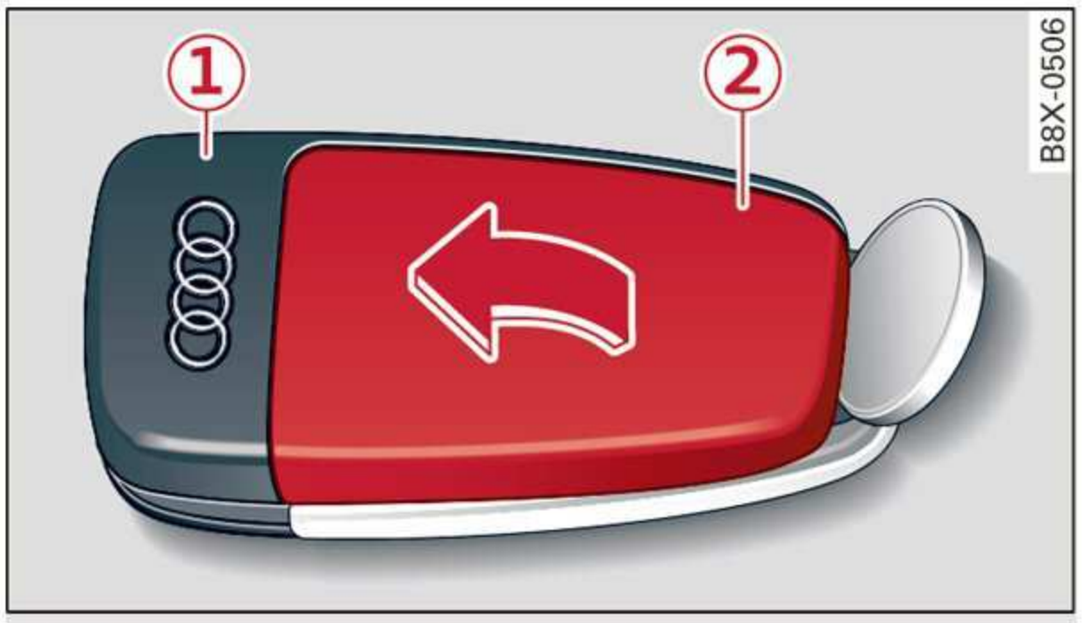


Fig. 19 Remote control key (rear side): opening the cover

LED on the remote control key

The LED in the remote control key informs you of the key operation.

- If you press a button briefly, the LED blinks once.
- If you press and hold a button (convenience opening/closing), the LED blinks several times.
- If the LED does not blink, the remote control key battery is drained. The indicator light turns on and the message **Please change key battery** appears. Replace the battery in the remote control key.

Replacing the remote control key battery

- Pry the cover (2) off of the key (1) using a coin ⇨ *fig. 19*.
- Insert the new battery with the "+" facing up.
- Press the cover back onto the key until it clicks into place.

For the sake of the environment

Discharged batteries must be disposed of using methods that will not harm the environment. Do not dispose of them in household trash.

Tips

Replacement batteries for the remote control key must meet the same specifications as the original battery.

Remote control key synchronization

The remote control key must be synchronized if the vehicle does not lock/unlock with the remote control.

- Press the remote control key button.
- Insert the key in the driver's door lock within 30 seconds ⇨ *page 30*.
- Press the button or button.

Unlocking and locking by remote control



Fig. 20 Remote control key or convenience key: button programming

- To unlock the vehicle, press the ⇨ *fig. 20* button (1).
- To lock the vehicle, press the ⇨ ⚠ button (2) **once**.
- To unlock the luggage compartment lid, press the button (3) briefly.
- To open* the luggage compartment lid, press and hold the button (3) for at least one second.
- To trigger the alarm, press the PANIC button (4). The vehicle horn and emergency flashers are activated.
- To turn off the alarm, press the PANIC button (4) again.

If you unlock the vehicle and do not open any of the doors, the hood, or the luggage compartment lid within a short period of time, the vehicle automatically locks again. This feature prevents ▶

the vehicle from being accidentally left unlocked for a long period of time. This does not apply if you press and hold the button (3) for at least one second.

You can select in the Infotainment system if the entire vehicle or only the driver's door should unlocking when unlocking the vehicle ⇨ *page 29*.

WARNING

Read and following all warnings ⇨ ⚠ *in Description on page 25*.

Tips

- Only use the remote control key when you are within view of the vehicle.
- The vehicle can only be locked when the selector lever is in the P position.
- Do not use the vehicle key to lock and unlock when you are inside the vehicle. Otherwise, you could trigger the anti-theft alarm*. If this happens, press the unlock button.
- Only use the panic function in an emergency.

Unlocking and locking with the convenience key

Applies to: vehicles with convenience key

The doors and luggage compartment lid can be unlocked and locked without using the remote control key.

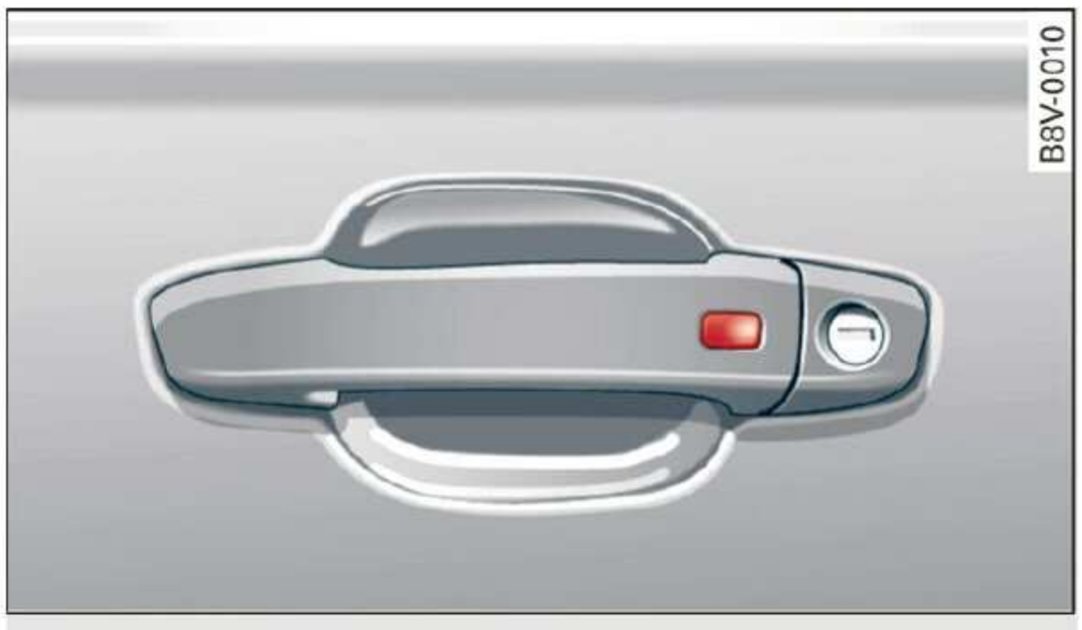


Fig. 21 Door handle: sensor for locking

Unlocking the vehicle

- Grasp the driver's or front passenger's door handle. The door unlocks automatically.
- Pull on the door handle to open the door.

Locking the vehicle

- Place the selector lever in the "P" position; otherwise, the vehicle cannot be locked.
- To lock the vehicle, close the door and touch the sensor on the door handle **once** ⇨ *fig. 21*, ⇨ ⚠. Do not hold the door handle while doing this.

Deactivating the unlock function

You can deactivate the unlock function with the convenience key (keyless access) for one locking and unlocking cycle.

- Place the selector lever in the "P" position; otherwise, the vehicle cannot be locked.
- Close the door.
- Press the lock button on the convenience key and touch the sensor on the door handle (driver's door) one time within five seconds of pressing the button ⇨ *fig. 21*. Do not grasp the door handle while locking the vehicle, or else the vehicle will not lock.
- To check if the function has been deactivated, wait at least 10 seconds and pull the door handle again. The door should not open.

After that, it will only be possible to unlock the vehicle using the remote control key or by mechanically unlocking the lock cylinder. Keyless access will be active again after the next time the vehicle is locked/unlocked.

Unlocking and locking the vehicle can only be done at the front doors. The convenience key must no be more than approximately 5 feet (1.5 meters) from the door handle. It makes no difference whether the convenience key is in, for example, your jacket pocket, purse, or briefcase.

If you hold the door handle while locking, this can impair the locking function.

The door cannot be opened for a brief period directly after locking it. This allows you the opportunity to check that the driver's door is locked.

The settings in the Infotainment system determine if the entire vehicle or only one of the doors is unlocked when unlocking the vehicle ⇨ *page 29*.

WARNING

Read and following all warnings ⇨ ⚠ *in Description on page 25*.

Tips

If your vehicle is left standing for a long period of time, note the following:

– The proximity sensor switches off after a few days to save energy. You then have to pull once on the door handle to unlock the vehicle and a second time to open it.
– To prevent the vehicle battery from discharging, the energy management gradually switches off convenience functions that are not needed. You then may no longer be able to unlock your vehicle with the sensors.

Central locking switch

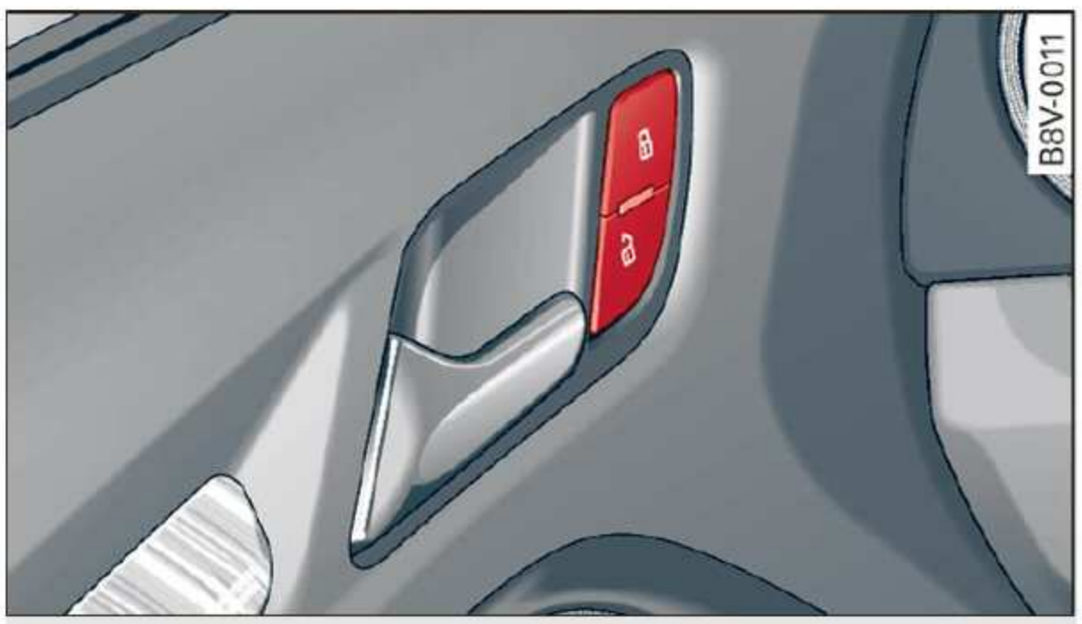


Fig. 22 Driver's door: central locking switch

► To lock the vehicle, press the 🔒 button ⇨ ⚠.
► To unlock the vehicle, press the 🔓 button ⇨ *fig. 22*.

When locking the vehicle with the central locking switch, the following applies:

– The doors and the luggage compartment lid cannot be opened from the *outside* for security reasons, such as to prevent unauthorized opening while stopped at a light.
– The LED in the central locking switch turns on when all doors are closed and locked.
– Front doors: you can open the doors individually from the inside by pulling the door handle.
– Rear doors*: pull on the door handle *once* to unlock the door. Pull on the door handle *again* to open the door.
– In the event of a crash with airbag deployment, the doors unlock automatically to allow access to the vehicle.

WARNING

– Read and following all warnings ⇨ ⚠ *in Description on page 25*.
– The central locking switch also works when the ignition is switched off and automatically locks the entire vehicle when the 🔒 button is pressed.
– The central locking switch is inoperative when the vehicle is locked from the outside.
– Locked doors make it more difficult for emergency workers to get into the vehicle, which puts lives at risk. Do not leave anyone behind in the vehicle, especially children.

Tips

Your vehicle locks automatically when it reaches a speed of 9 mph (15 km/h). You can unlock the vehicle again using the 🔓 button in the central locking switch.

Message

Driver's door: malfunction! Shift to P before leaving vehicle. See owner's manual

There is a malfunction in the driver's door. Secure the vehicle before exiting by selecting the “P” selector lever position. Drive immediately to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility to have the malfunction repaired.

Setting the central locking system

You can adjust the central locking system to your preferences. The settings depend on the vehicle equipment.

► Select in the Infotainment system: MENU button > **Vehicle** > left control button > **Vehicle settings** > **Central locking**.

Door unlocking - You can decide if **All** doors or only the **Driver's door** should unlock. The luggage compartment lid also unlocks when **All** is selected. If you select **Driver's door** in a vehicle ▶

with a convenience key*, only the door whose handle you pull will unlock.

If you select **Driver's door**, all the doors and luggage compartment lid will unlock if you press the button on the remote control key twice.

Long press to open windows - The convenience opening/closing function can be switched on/off ⇨ *page 34*.

Fold mirrors - If you switch the function on, the exterior mirrors will fold in automatically when the vehicle is locked.

Confirmation tone - When checked off ✓, a tone will sound when you lock the vehicle [1].

Mechanically unlocking and locking the doors

If the central locking fails, you must unlock or lock the doors separately.

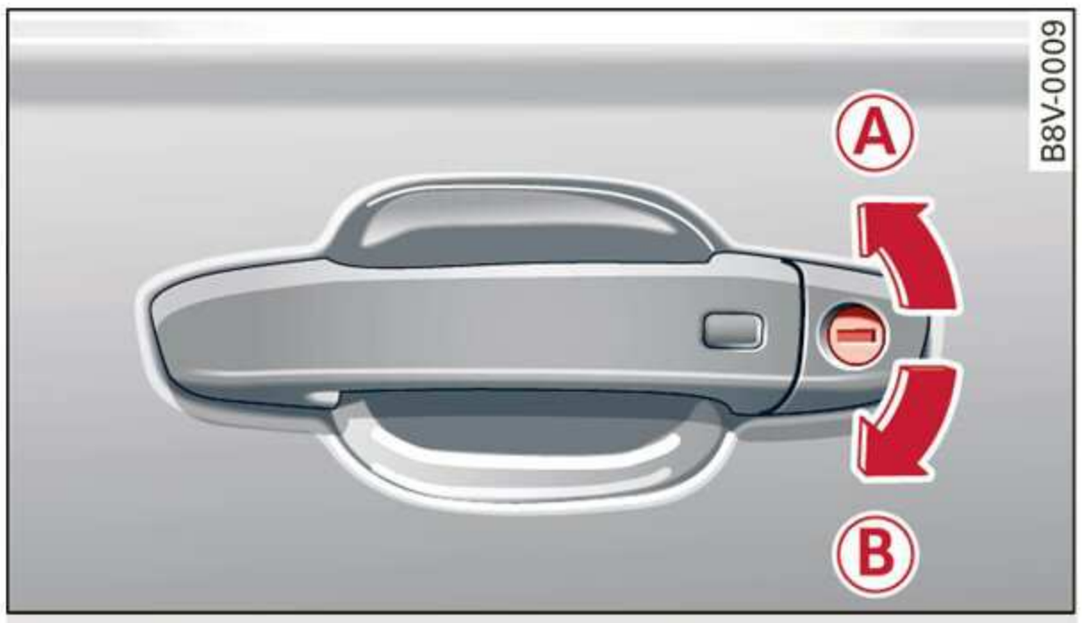


Fig. 23 Driver's door: door lock cylinder



Fig. 24 Front side of the door: emergency release

Unlocking and locking the driver's door

- To unlock the driver's door, turn the key to the unlock position Ⓐ ⇨ *fig. 23*.
- To lock the driver's door, put the selector lever in the P position and turn the key **once** to the lock position Ⓑ ⇨ ⚠.

The settings in the Infotainment system determine if the entire vehicle or only one of the doors is unlocked when unlocking the vehicle ⇨ *page 29*.

Locking the front passenger's door/rear doors*

The mechanical lock is located on the edge of the front passenger's door and the rear doors*. It is only visible when the door is open.

- Remove the cap from the opening ⇨ *fig. 24*.
- Insert the key bit in the slot inside and turn the key all the way to the right (right door) or left (left door*).

⚠ WARNING

Read and following all warnings ⇨ ⚠ *in Description on page 25*.

Anti-theft alarm system

Applies to: vehicles with anti-theft alarm system

If the anti-theft alarm system detects a vehicle break-in, audio and visual warning signals are triggered. The anti-theft alarm system is switched on or off when locking or unlocking your vehicle. If the alarm is triggered, it will shut off automatically after a certain amount of time.

Switching the alarm off manually

- To switch the alarm off, press the button on the remote control key or switch the ignition on.

Depending on the vehicle equipment, the anti-theft alarm system may have the following features:

Break-in security feature

The alarm will sound if there is a break-in at the doors, hood, and/or luggage compartment lid. ▶

[1] This function is not available in all countries.

Interior/towing protection monitor

The alarm will be triggered if there are movements detected in the vehicle interior or if there is a change in the vehicle angle.

If you leave persons/animals in the vehicle or have the vehicle transported, switch off the interior/towing protection monitoring alarm to prevent the alarm from being triggered:

- ▸ Press the button on the remote control key a second time **within 2 seconds**. Or
- ▸ Applies to: vehicles with convenience key: Touch the sensor on the door handle a second time **within two seconds**. Or
- ▸ Turn the vehicle key in the door lock to the close position a second time **within two seconds**.
- ▸ If you lock the vehicle, then the interior/towing protection monitor will stay off until the next time the vehicle is unlocked.

Tips

The interior/towing protection monitor only functions correctly when the windows, the roof*, and the power top* are closed.

Luggage compartment lid

Opening and closing the luggage compartment lid



Fig. 25 Luggage compartment lid: opening (handle)



Fig. 26 Driver's door: opening the luggage compartment lid

Opening the luggage compartment lid

- ▸ Press and hold the button on the remote control key for at least one second, or
- ▸ Move the selector lever to the "P" position and pull the * switch in the driver's door ⇨ *fig. 26*, or
- ▸ Press the handle in the luggage compartment lid ⇨ *fig. 25*.

Closing the luggage compartment lid

- ▸ Use the inside grip to pull the luggage compartment lid down and allow it to close using a gentle push ⇨ .

WARNING

- After closing the luggage compartment lid, make sure that it is latched. Otherwise the luggage compartment lid could open suddenly when driving, which increases the risk of an accident.
- Never drive with the luggage compartment lid ajar or open, because poisonous gases from the surrounding area can enter the vehicle interior and increase the risk of asphyxiation.
- Never leave your vehicle unattended when the luggage compartment lid is open. A child could climb into the vehicle through the luggage compartment. If the luggage compartment lid was then closed, the child would be trapped in the vehicle and unable to escape. To reduce the risk of injury, do not allow children to play in or around the vehicle. Always keep the luggage compartment lid and the doors closed when the vehicle is not in use.

– Always make sure no one is in the luggage compartment lid's range of motion when it is closing, especially near the hinges. Fingers or hands could be pinched.

Tips

– When the vehicle is locked, the luggage compartment lid can be unlocked separately by pressing the button on the remote control key. The luggage compartment lid locks automatically when it is closed again.
– In case of an emergency or a faulty handle, the luggage compartment lid can be opened manually from the inside ⇨ *page 32*.

Mechanically unlocking the luggage compartment lid from the inside

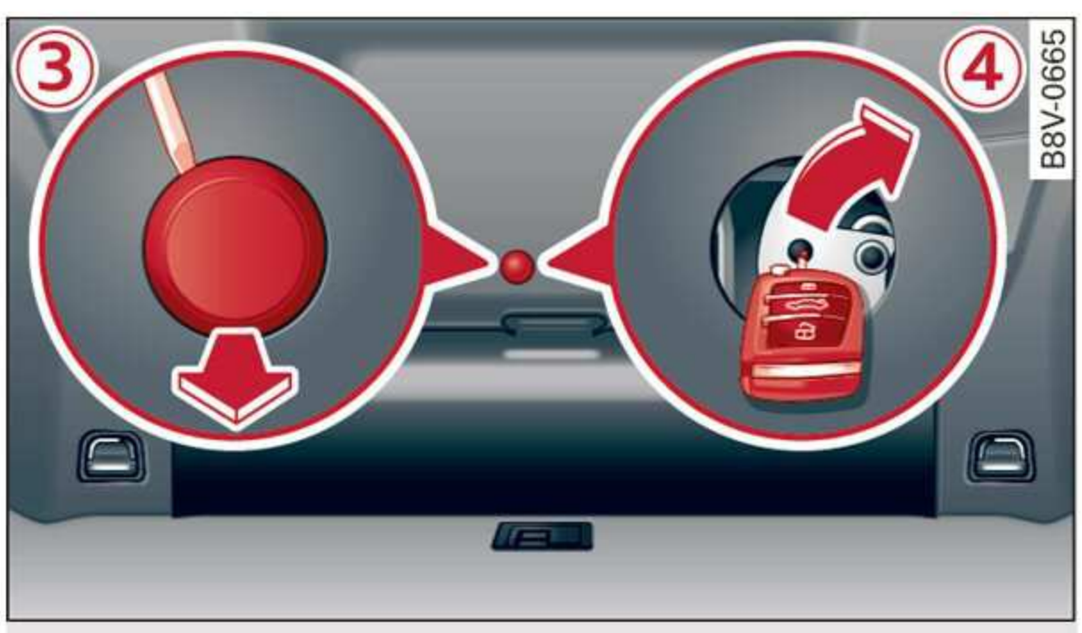
Applies to: vehicles with emergency release from inside

The luggage compartment lid can be released from the inside in an emergency.



Applies to: version 1

Fig. 27 Section of the luggage compartment: access to the emergency release



Applies to: version 2

Fig. 28 Section of the luggage compartment: access to the emergency release

Applies to: vehicles with emergency release from the outside: Note the information in ⇨ *page 32,*

Mechanically unlocking the luggage compartment lid from the outside.

Applies to: version 1

- ▸ Fold the backrest on the rear bench seat forward ⇨ *page 62*.
- ▸ Pry off the cover using the key bit on the opened vehicle key (1) ⇨ *fig. 27*.
- ▸ Press the lever with the key in the direction of the arrow (2) to release the luggage compartment lid.

Applies to: version 2

- ▸ Fold the backrest on the rear bench seat forward ⇨ *page 62*.
- ▸ Remove the screwdriver from the vehicle tool kit ⇨ *page 348*. Use the flat side of the reversible screwdriver blade.
- ▸ Use the screwdriver to pry the cover off (3) ⇨ *fig. 28*.
- ▸ Press the lever with the key in the direction of the arrow (4) to release the luggage compartment lid.

Mechanically unlocking the luggage compartment lid from the outside

Applies to: vehicles with emergency release from outside



Fig. 29 Luggage compartment lid: emergency release lock cylinder

- ▸ Insert the key into the lock cylinder near the handle.
- ▸ Turn the key counterclockwise.

Child safety lock

Applies to: vehicles with mechanical child safety locks

The child safety lock prevents the rear doors from being opened from the inside and the rear power windows from being operated.



Fig. 30 Section of driver's door: controls



Fig. 31 Rear door: manual child safety lock

- ► To activate or deactivate the child safety lock for the power window switches in the rear doors, press the switch in the driver's door ⇨ *fig. 30*. The indicator light in the button turns on/blinks.
- ► To activate or deactivate the manual child safety lock for the rear door handle, open the rear door and turn the key switch either in the direction of the arrow (to activate) or opposite the direction of the arrow (to deactivate) using with the vehicle key ⇨ *fig. 31*. This will disable the function of the rear door handle.
- ► Make sure the child safety lock is working by checking the function on the rear power window switch and door handle.

Message in the instrument cluster display

Childproof catch: malfunction! Please contact Service

There is a malfunction in the child safety lock. Press the button again.

If the message stays on, drive immediately to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility to have the malfunction repaired.

WARNING

- If you leave the vehicle, switch the ignition off and take the vehicle key with you. This applies particularly when children remain in the vehicle. Otherwise children could start the engine or operate electrical equipment (such as power windows), which increases the risk of an accident.
- A malfunction in the child safety lock could allow the rear doors to be opened from the inside, which increases the risk of an accident.

Power windows

Controls

The driver can control all power windows.

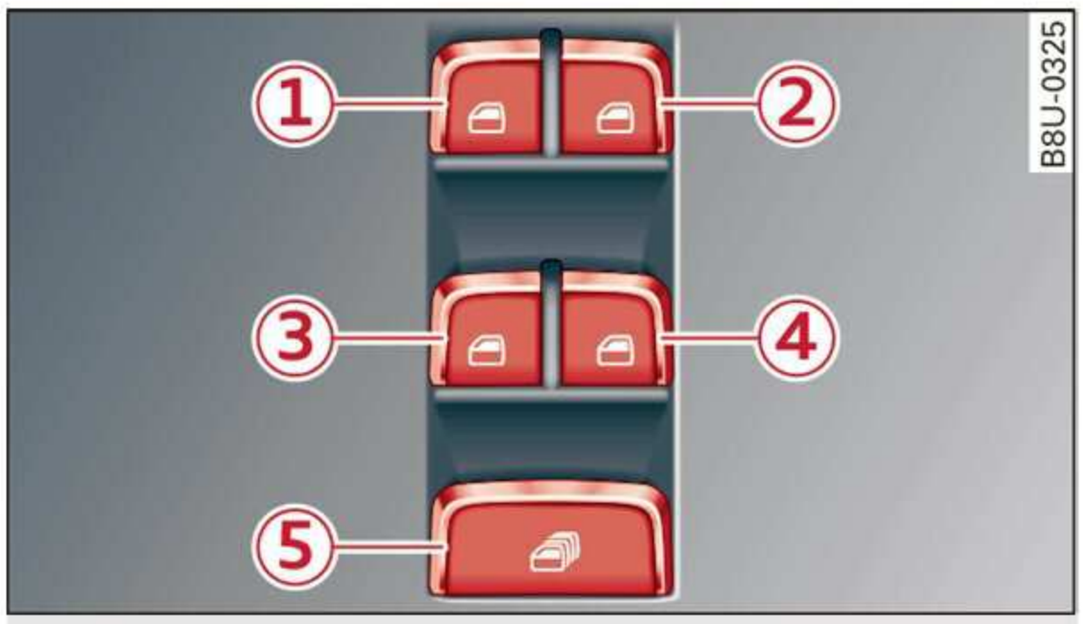


Fig. 32 Driver's door: power window controls

All power window switches are equipped with a two-stage function:

Opening and closing the windows

- ► To open or close the window completely, press the switch down or pull the switch up briefly to the second level. The operation will stop if the switch is pressed or pulled again.
- ► To select a position in between opened and closed, press or pull the switch to the first level until the desired window position is reached. ▶

Power window switches

① Left front
② Right front
③ Left rear*
④ Right rear*
⑤ Central switch* for opening or closing all side windows at the same time

WARNING

– If you leave the vehicle, switch the ignition off and take the vehicle key with you. This applies particularly when children remain in the vehicle. Otherwise the children could start the engine or operate electrical equipment such as power windows.
– Pay careful attention when closing the windows. Pinching could cause serious injuries.
– When locking the vehicle from outside, the vehicle must be unoccupied since the windows can no longer be opened in an emergency.

Tips

– You can still open and close the windows for several minutes after turning the ignition off. The power window switch is not disabled until the driver's door or front passenger's door is opened.
– The power windows are equipped with pinch protection. The automatic window may stop closing and will open all the way again even if no obstacle is detected. Pull the power window switch up until the window is completely raised.

Convenience opening and closing

Applies to: vehicles with convenience opening/closing

All of the windows and the panoramic glass roof can be opened or closed at the same time.*

For power top convenience opening and closing, refer to the information in ⇨ *page 37*.

Convenience opening feature

► Press and hold the 🔓 button on the remote control key until all windows and the panoramic glass roof* have reached the desired position. Or
► Hold the key in the driver's door lock until all windows and the panoramic glass roof* have reached the desired position.

Convenience closing feature

► Press the 🔒 button on the remote control key until all windows and the panoramic glass roof* are closed ⇨ ⚠. Or
► Applies to: vehicles with convenience key: Touch the sensor on one of the front door handles and continue touching it until all of the windows and the panoramic glass roof* are closed. Do not place your hand in the door handle when doing this.
► Hold the key in the driver's door lock in the lock position until all windows and the panoramic glass roof* are closed ⇨ ⚠.

Setting convenience opening in the Infotainment system

The function can be switched on/off in the Infotainment system ⇨ *page 29*.

WARNING

– Never close the windows or panoramic glass roof* carelessly or in an uncontrolled manner, because this increases the risk of injury.
– For security reasons, the windows and the panoramic glass roof* can only be opened and closed with the remote control key at a maximum distance of approximately 6.5 feet (2 m) away from the vehicle. Always pay attention when using the 🔒 button to close the windows and the panoramic glass roof* so that no one is pinched. The closing process will stop immediately when the 🔓 button is released.

Correcting power window malfunctions

You can reactivate the one-touch up/down function if it malfunctions.

► Pull the power window switch until the window is completely raised.
► Release the switch and pull it up again for at least one second.

Panoramic glass roof

Description

Applies to: vehicles with panoramic glass roof

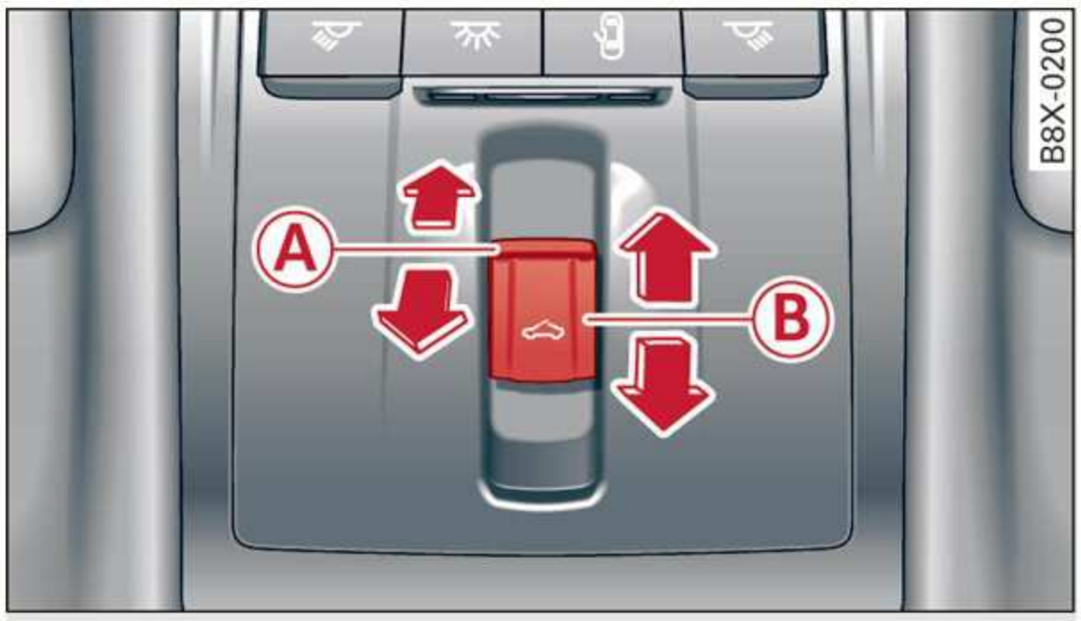


Fig. 33 Section of headliner: panoramic glass roof button

The button has two stages. In the second stage, the roof automatically runs to the end position (open/closed) when the button is operated briefly. The operation will stop if the button is pressed/pulled again.

Ⓐ Tilting/sliding

- ► To tilt the sunroof completely, press the switch briefly to the second level.
- ► To close the roof completely, pull the button down briefly to the second level or slide the button forward briefly to the second level ⇨ ⚠.
- ► To select an intermediate position, press/pull the switch in the first level until the desired position is reached.

Ⓑ Opening/closing

- ► To open the sunroof completely, slide the button back to just before the second level.
- ► To close the roof completely, push the button forward briefly to the second level or pull the button down briefly to the second level ⇨ ⚠.
- ► To select an intermediate position, press/pull the switch forward/back in the first level until the desired position is reached.

Sunshade

The sunshade can be opened and closed manually, depending on the position of the panoramic glass roof. The sunshade can be opened partially.

⚠ WARNING

To reduce the risk of injury, always pay attention when closing the panoramic glass roof. Always switch the ignition off when leaving the vehicle and always take the vehicle key with you.

Note

Always close the panoramic glass roof when leaving your vehicle. Rain can cause damage to the interior equipment of your vehicle, particularly the electronic equipment.

Tips

- – For information about convenience opening/closing, see ⇨ *page 34*.
- – You can still operate the panoramic glass roof for about 10 minutes after the ignition is switched off. The switch is deactivated once the driver's or front passenger's door is opened.
- – The panoramic glass roof can only be opened when the temperature is warmer than -4 °F (-20 °C).

Panoramic glass roof emergency closing

Applies to: vehicles with panoramic glass roof

If the panoramic glass roof detects resistance or an object in its path while closing, the roof will open again automatically. If the sunroof fails to close after removing the object and after trying to close a second time, you can perform an emergency closing.

- ► Within five seconds after the sunroof opens automatically, pull the switch until the roof closes.

If you release the switch early, the panoramic glass roof will open again.

Power top

Automatic power top

General information

Applies to: vehicles with power top

The power top opens and closes automatically. When open, the power top is stored completely in the power top compartment. The power top can be opened or closed at speeds up to 30 mph (50 km/h). The power top will not open when the temperature is below -5 °F (-15 °C).

Under normal conditions, the power top is wind- and waterproof. In rare cases, small droplets of water may form under extreme weather conditions such as torrential or prolonged rain. That is normal and no cause for concern.

Follow the care instructions to keep the power top free of leaks and to maintain its appearance ⇨ *page 342, Care and cleaning*. Also observe the following:

– Open and stow the power top only when it is clean and dry. Stowing the power top when it is damp can create imprints in it, and if it is left that way for long periods of time, mildew and other damage can form. To prevent scratching or damaging the power top, do not use any sharp-edged objects to remove ice and snow. The rear window may be cleared of ice with a standard ice scraper.
– Do not leave the power top open for several weeks or the creases in it may become discolored.
– Do not open the power top when the temperature is below 32 °F (0 °C). The fabric in the power top loses elasticity in sub-zero temperatures.

Opening and closing the power top

Applies to: vehicles with power top



Fig. 34 Center console: power top switch

Requirement: the power top storage compartment must be lowered ⇨ *page 38* and the luggage compartment lid must be closed.

- ▸ Switch the ignition on.
- ▸ To open or close the power top, pull or press and hold the switch (1) until it is completely opened or closed.

The status of the power top is shown in the instrument cluster display when operating the power top switch.

You can close the power top when the wind deflector is installed ⇨ *page 39*.

A message will appear in the instrument cluster if the power top cannot be opened or closed ⇨ *page 38*.

WARNING

– When operating the power top, make sure the function is not affected by wind or other factors and that it does not interfere with other drivers.
– Never drive when the power top is not locked correctly. The wind from driving could cause the power top to open. This can result in injuries and damage to the vehicle.
– Make sure no one will be injured by the power top supports and other moving components when opening and closing the top.
– The headroom in the rear is reduced when opening and closing the power top. Make ▶

sure the rear passengers keep enough distance from the power top to reduce the risk of injury.
– Visibility to the rear is limited when operating the power top. Avoid operating the top while driving in reverse.

Note

– To prevent damage to the power top:
  – do not store any objects in the power top storage compartment.
  – make sure there is enough space above the vehicle when opening or closing the power top.
– To reduce the risk of damage, make sure there are no sensitive objects in the power top storage compartment's range of motion.

Tips

– To prevent the vehicle battery from draining unnecessarily, do not open or close the power top repeatedly when the engine is switched off.
– A message will appear in the instrument cluster if there is a malfunction in the power top ⇨ *page 38*.
– The power top can also be operated manually temporarily if there is a malfunction ⇨ *page 39, Power top emergency operation*. An authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility should diagnose and correct the cause of the malfunction as soon as possible.
– If the vehicle is parked with the power top open, the vehicle interior is not protected from damaging weather or unauthorized access. Lock any items you leave behind in the luggage compartment. Close the power top before leaving the vehicle.
– The side windows automatically lower slightly when opening or closing the power top.

Power top convenience opening and closing

Applies to: vehicles with power top

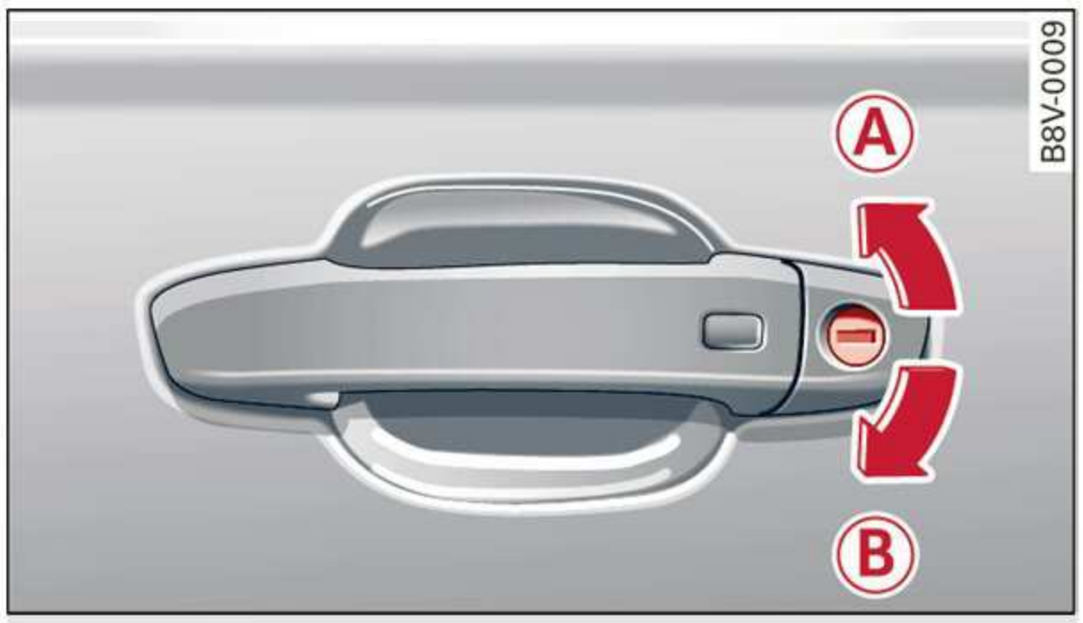


Fig. 35 Turning the key to open and close

Convenience opening with the driver door lock

▸ Turn the key once in the driver door lock to the opening position Ⓐ.
▸ Turn the key to the opening position again **within two seconds** and hold it there until the power top opens completely.

Convenience closing with the driver door lock

▸ Turn the key once in the driver door lock to the closing position Ⓑ.
▸ Turn the key to the closing position again **within two seconds** and hold it there until the power top closes completely.

Releasing the key stops the opening or closing process **immediately**.

WARNING

Read and follow the important safety precautions ⇨ ⚠ *in Opening and closing the power top on page 36*.

Power top storage compartment

Applies to: vehicles with power top



Fig. 36 Luggage compartment: power top storage compartment lowered



Fig. 37 Luggage compartment: power top storage compartment raised

The power top storage compartment must be lowered to open the power top. To avoid damage, make sure that are no sensitive objects in the storage compartment's range of motion.

Raising the power top storage compartment

- Press the trim on the handle in the direction of the arrow to raise the power top storage compartment ⇨ *fig. 36*.

Lowering the power top storage compartment

- Press the trim on the handle in the direction of the arrow to lower the power top storage compartment ⇨ *fig. 37*.

The power top storage compartment can be raised when the **power top is closed**. This provides more cargo space in the luggage compartment.

The **open power top** is stored and protected in the power top storage compartment. The power top storage compartment cannot be raised when the power top is open. Because of this, the cargo area in the luggage compartment is smaller when the power top is open than when it is closed.

Messages

Applies to: vehicles with power top

Power top: malfunction! You can continue driving with limited functionality. See owner's manual

This message appears if there is a malfunction in the system. Try to open/close the power top again. If the message still appears, then have an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility correct the malfunction. Do not drive more than 30 mph (50 km/h) until it is corrected.

Power top: malfunction! Unable to operate

This message appears when there is a malfunction. The power top can be operated manually ⇨ *page 39*.

Power top: operation currently not possible

If the power top is operated continually for a long period of time, the overload protection activates for approximately 15 to 30 minutes. You can open or close the power top again after that.

WARNING

Never drive when the power top is not locked correctly. The wind from driving could cause the power top to open. This can result in injuries and damage to the vehicle.

Wind deflector

Applies to: vehicles with wind deflector

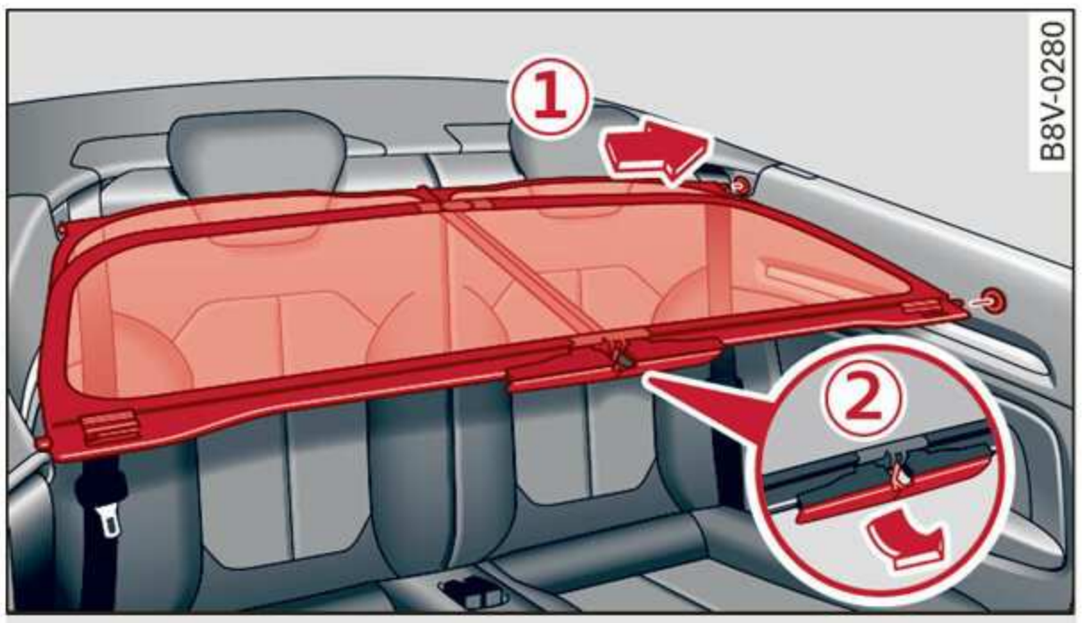


Fig. 38 Rear of the vehicle: inserting the wind deflector

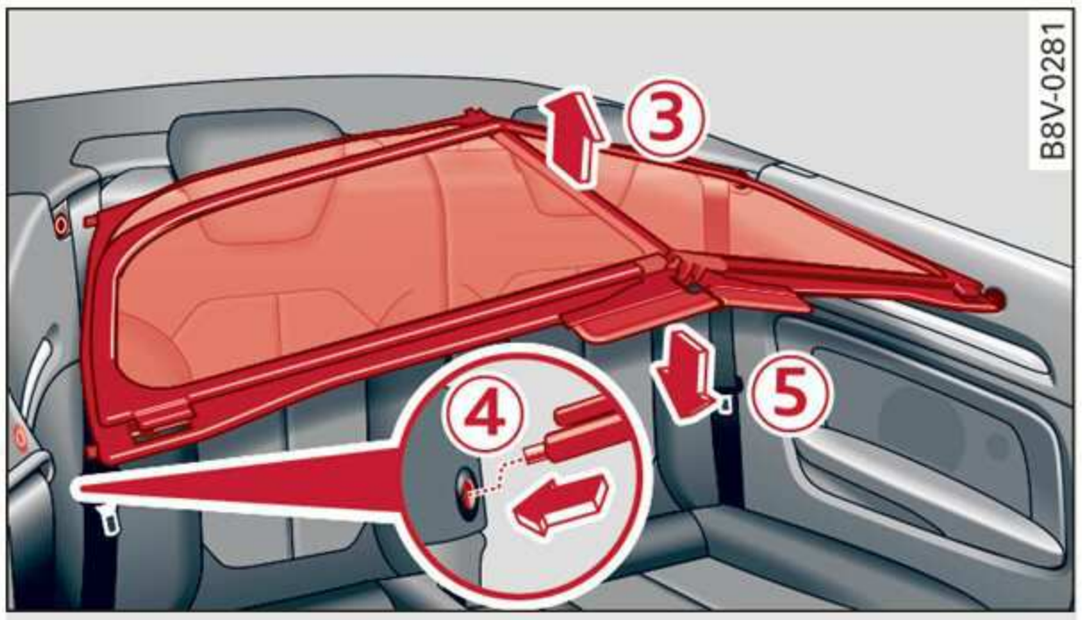


Fig. 39 Rear of the vehicle: positioning the wind deflector

The wind deflector reduces air movement in the passenger compartment in order to make driving more comfortable.

The wind deflector is located in the luggage compartment in a storage bag*.

Inserting and positioning the wind deflector

- ▸ Open the rear window on the passenger's side.
- ▸ Remove the wind deflector from the luggage compartment and fold it apart once. The wind deflector is installed in the correct position when the long side is toward the front and the wind deflector frame is at the top.
- ▸ Insert both pins on the wind deflector ① into the mounts in the side trim panel on the driver's side.
- ▸ Fold the handle ② upward and lift the center of the wind deflector slightly ③.
- ▸ Now guide the wind deflector into the mounts on the passenger's side ④ and press lightly in the middle of the wind deflector ⑤ until the handle locks in place.
- ▸ Raise the wind deflector completely.

Removing the wind deflector

- ▸ Fold the handle ② upward and fold the wind deflector frame back.
- ▸ Fold the handle ② upward and lift the center of the wind deflector slightly ③.
- ▸ Remove the wind deflector from the mounts in the side trim on the passenger's side.
- ▸ Pull the wind deflector out of the mounts on the driver side and lift it out.
- ▸ Fold the wind deflector together and store it securely.

WARNING

- – Do not use the wind deflector to secure cargo.
- – Be careful when installing so you do not pinch your fingers.
- – Pay attention to the traffic when installing the wind deflector. Install the wind deflector from the side of the vehicle that is away from traffic.

Note

Do not lean against the vehicle when installing the wind deflector. Hard objects and decorations on clothing such as belt buckles can scratch the paint.

Tips

- – The wind deflector works best when all of the windows are rolled up while driving.
- – Only store the wind deflector in the storage bag* when it is dry.

Power top emergency operation

General information

Applies to: vehicles with power top

The power top can be closed manually if there is a malfunction.

- ▸ Set the parking brake.
- ▸ Open all windows.
- ▸ Switch the ignition off.
- ▸ To reduce the pressure in the power top hydraulics, pull the switch to open the power top ▶

and hold for approximately 10 to 15 seconds ① ⇨ *page 36, fig. 34*.

Only close the power top manually in an emergency. Have a second person assist. Drive immediately to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility to have the malfunction repaired.

WARNING

– There is a risk of pinching the hands or other people during all of the power top emergency operation steps.
  – Make sure all windows are lowered during emergency operation.
  – Do not reach into the power top supports or other moving components.
– Never drive when the power top is not locked correctly. The wind from driving could cause the power top to open. This can result in injuries and damage to the vehicle.

Tips

The power top storage compartment lid is not latched after the emergency operation is complete. Drive immediately to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility to have the malfunction repaired.

Step 1: Release the power top storage compartment lid

Applies to: vehicles with power top



Fig. 40 Rear seats folded forward: release loop for the power top storage compartment lid

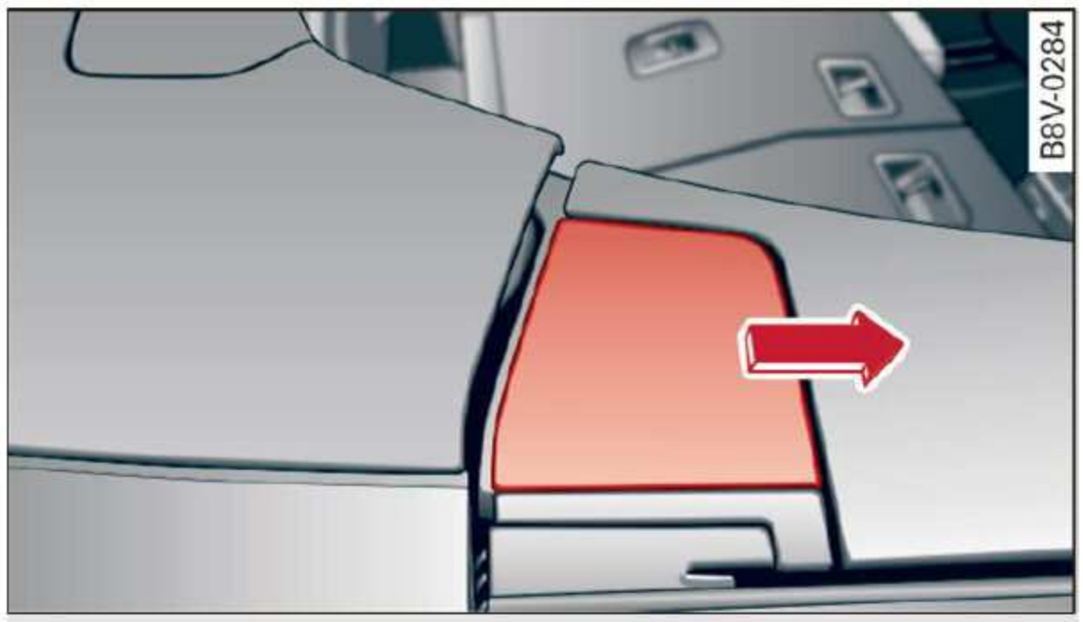


Fig. 41 Opening the side covers

- ▸ Open the luggage compartment lid.
- ▸ Fold the rear seat backrests forward ⇨ *page 62*.
- ▸ Remove the wheel wrench from the vehicle tool kit.
- ▸ Close the luggage compartment lid.
- ▸ Pull the release loop down from the rear to release the power top storage compartment lid ⇨ *fig. 40*.
- ▸ Slide the covers on both sides of the vehicle in the direction of the arrow until they lock in place ⇨ *fig. 41*.

Step 2: Lift the power top storage compartment lid out

Applies to: vehicles with power top



Fig. 42 Lifting the power top storage compartment lid out and setting up the supports



Fig. 43 Power top storage compartment lid: supports set up

- ► Raise the power top storage compartment lid out of the power top compartment and hold it in place ① ⇨ ⚠ *in General information on page 40*.
- ► Secure the power top storage compartment lid by pressing on the side supports on both sides ②.

⚠ WARNING

– Always make sure that the side supports on the open power top storage compartment lid are in place, even when the power top is not fully open or closed. Otherwise, the power top storage compartment lid could fall, which increases the risk of an accident.

– Avoid touching the support rods and other moving parts when opening the power top storage compartment lid. If do you make contact, your hands could be pinched.

Step 3: Open the locking pin

Applies to: vehicles with power top



Fig. 44 Rear of the vehicle: opening the locking pin

- ► Remove the cap on the trip and insert the wheel wrench into the opening.
- ► Turn the wheel wrench clockwise until it stops to open the locking pin.
- ► Remove the wheel wrench.

Step 4: Close the power top

Applies to: vehicles with power top

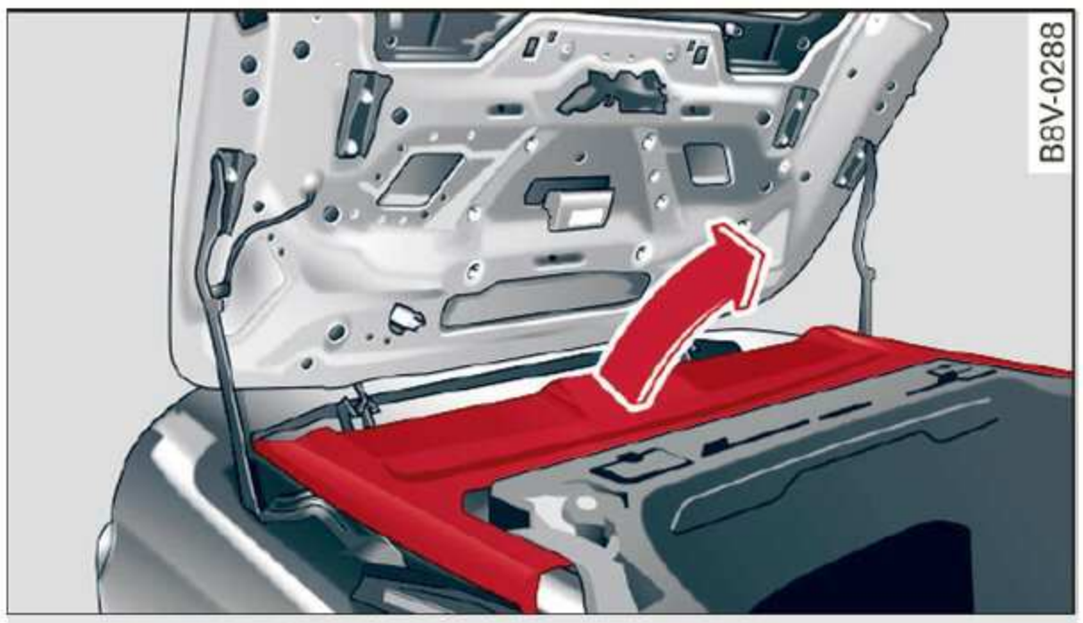


Fig. 45 Rear of the vehicle: pulling out the power top

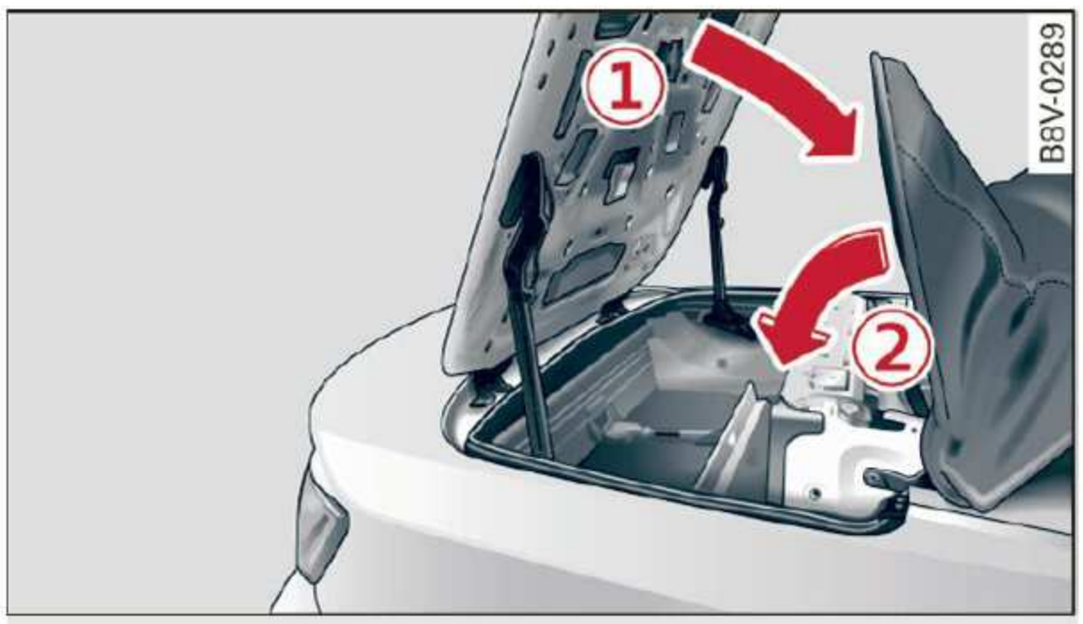


Fig. 46 Rear of the vehicle: lowering the edge of the power top

- ► Position yourself near the vehicle.
- ► Hold the power top by its front edge and pull it out completely ⇨ *fig. 45* ⇨ ⚠ *in General information on page 40*.

- ▸ Lift the rear edge of the power top.
- ▸ Release the power top storage compartment lid by pulling on the side supports to release them.
- ▸ Close the power top storage compartment lid ① and allow the rear edge of the power top to lower ②.

Step 5: Lock the power top

Applies to: vehicles with power top

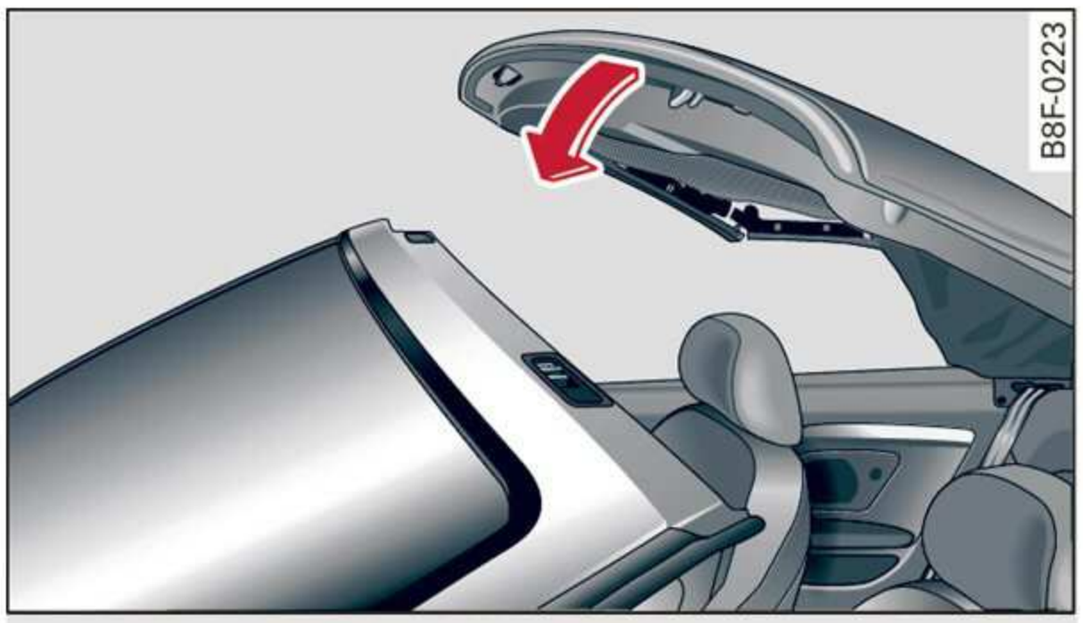


Fig. 47 Windshield: closing the power top

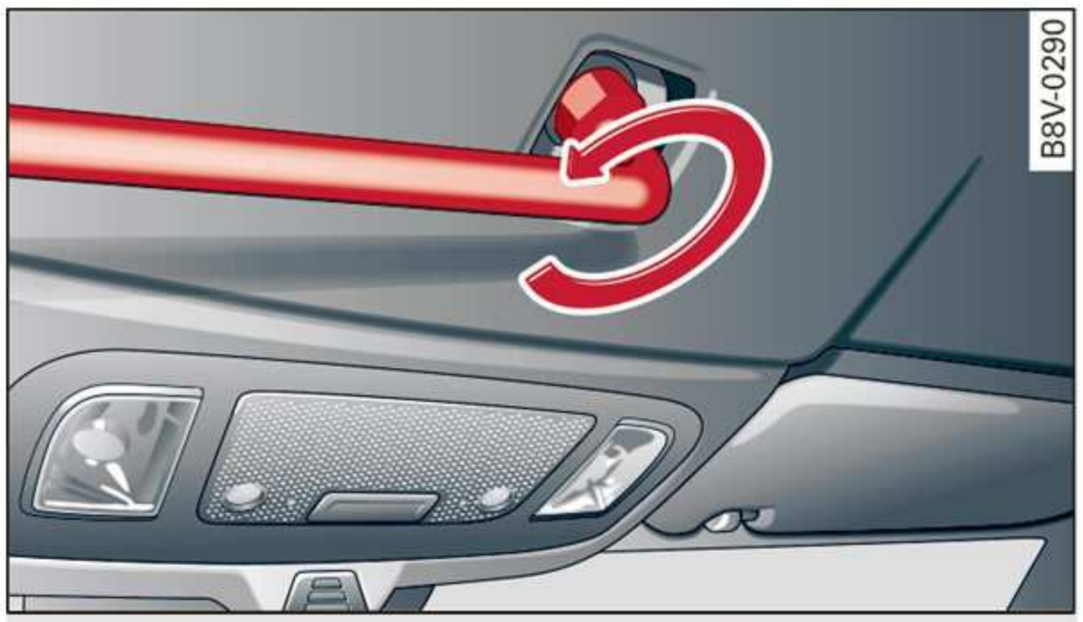


Fig. 48 Inside of the power top: locking the power top

- ▸ Press the power top onto the windshield frame ⇨ *fig. 47* ⇨ ⚠ *in General information on page 40*.
- ▸ Insert the wheel wrench into the opening and turn it counterclockwise until it stops ⇨ *fig. 48*.
- ▸ Remove the wheel wrench and seal the opening with the cap.
- ▸ Put the wheel wrench back into the vehicle tool kit.

⚠ WARNING

– When positioning the power top, avoid contact with the supports or other moving parts. Otherwise you could pinch your hands.

– When pressing the power top down onto the windshield frame, make sure that you do not pinch yourself or anyone else.

Tips

Make sure the locking mechanisms are locked securely.

Lights and Vision

Exterior lighting

Switching lights on and off



Fig. 49 Instrument panel: light switch with buttons

Light switch

Turn the light switch to the corresponding position when the ignition is switched on. and the selected position light up (except position 0).

0 - The daytime running lights* automatically turn on. In vehicles for certain markets, you can switch the automatic daytime running lights on and off in the Infotainment system.

AUTO* - The headlights automatically adapt to the surrounding brightness.

- Parking lights

- Low beam headlights

Buttons

When you turn the light switch to the AUTO* or low beam headlight position, you can activate the following:

- All-weather lights. The front lights are adjusted automatically so that there is less glare for the driver from his or her own lights, for example when roads are wet.

- Rear fog light(s)

Automatic headlight range control

Applies to: vehicles with headlight range control

Your vehicle is equipped with an automatic headlight range control system that reduces glare for oncoming traffic if the vehicle load changes. The headlight range adjusts automatically.

Audi adaptive light

Applies to: vehicles with adaptive light

Adaptive light provides better visibility when it is dark by adapting the lights to the road conditions based on speed, such as on expressways, rural roads, at intersections, and in curves. The adaptive lights only function when the light switch is in the AUTO* position and the all-weather lights are switched off.

WARNING

- Automatic headlights* are only intended to assist the driver. They do not relieve the driver of responsibility to check the headlights and to turn them on manually based on the current light and visibility conditions. For example, fog cannot be detected by the light sensors. So always switch on the low beams under these weather conditions and when driving in the dark.
- To prevent glare for traffic behind your vehicle, the rear fog lights should only be turned on in accordance with traffic regulations.

Tips

- Follow the regulations applicable to the country where you are operating the vehicle when stopping the vehicle and when using the lighting systems.
- If the vehicle battery has been discharging for a while, the parking light may switch off automatically. Avoid using the parking lights for several hours.
- The light sensor for the automatic headlights* is in the rearview mirror mount. Do not place any stickers in this area on the windshield.
- Only the front headlights turn on when the daytime running lights are switched on*. In vehicles in certain markets, the tail lights will also turn on.
- In cool or damp weather, the inside of the headlights, turn signals, and tail lights can fog over due to the temperature difference between the inside and outside. They will clear shortly after switching them on. This does not affect the service life of the lighting.

8V2012721BK

Turn signal and high beam lever

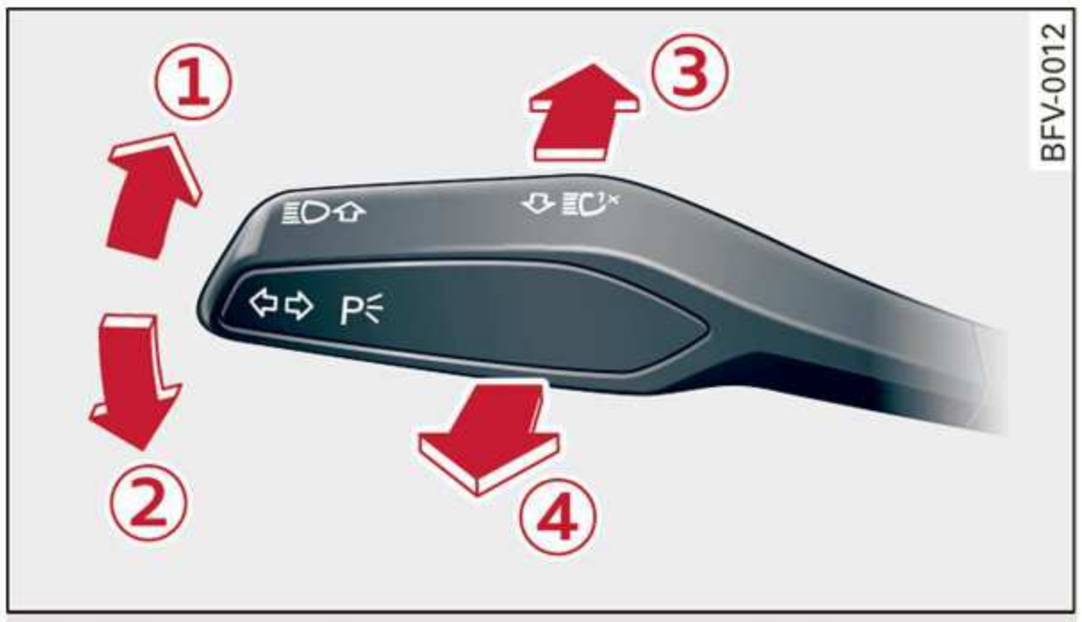


Fig. 50 Lever: switching on the turn signal and high beams

The lever operates the turn signals, the high beams and the headlight flasher.

Turn signal ⇦ ⇨

The turn signals activate when you move the lever into a turn signal position when the ignition is switched on. The respective ⇦ or ⇨ indicator light flashes.

① - Right turn signal

② - Left turn signal

The turn signal blinks three times if you tap the lever (convenience turn signal).

If an indicator light blinks twice as fast as usual, a turn signal bulb has failed. Carefully drive to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility immediately to have the malfunction corrected.

High beams and headlight flasher

▸ Move the lever to the corresponding position:

③ - High beams on (vehicles with High beam assistant* ⇨ *page 44*)

④ - High beams off or headlight flasher

The indicator light in the instrument cluster turns on.

WARNING

High beams can cause glare for other drivers, which increases the risk of an accident. For this reason, only use the high beams or the headlight flasher when they will not create glare for other drivers.

High beam assistant

Applies to: vehicles with high beam assistant

The high beam assistant automatically turns the high beams on or off depending on the surrounding conditions.

A camera on the rearview mirror mount can detect light sources from other road users. The high beams switch on or off automatically depending on the position of vehicles driving ahead and oncoming vehicles, the vehicle speed as well as other environmental factors and traffic conditions.

Activating high beam assistant

Requirement: the light switch must be set to AUTO, the low beams must be switched on and the high beam assistant must be switched on in the Infotainment system ⇨ *page 45*.

▸ To activate the high beam assistant, press the lever forward ③ ⇨ *page 44, fig. 50*. The AUTO indicator light in the instrument cluster display appears and the high beams are switched on or off automatically. The AUTO indicator light turns on if the high beams were switched on.

Switching the high beams on or off manually

If the high beams did not switch on or off automatically as expected, you may switch them on or off manually instead:

▸ To switch the high beams on manually, push the lever forward ③. The indicator light turns on. To switch the high beams off again, pull the lever back ④.

▸ To switch the high beams off manually, pull the lever back ④. The high beam assistant is deactivated.

Operating the headlight flasher

▸ To operate the headlight flasher when the high beam assistant is activated and high beams are switched off, pull the lever back ④. The high beam assistant remains active.

WARNING

High beam assistant is only intended to assist the driver. The driver is still responsible for controlling the headlights and switching them ▸

manually depending on light and visibility conditions. It may be necessary to operate them manually in situations such as:

– In adverse weather conditions such as fog, heavy rain, blowing snow or spraying water.
– On roads where oncoming traffic may be partially obscured, such as expressways.
– If there are road users with poor lighting, such as bicyclists.
– In tight curves and on steep hills.
– In poorly lit areas.
– With strong reflectors, such as signs.
– If the area of the windshield near the sensor is fogged over, dirty, icy or covered with a sticker.

Adjusting the exterior lighting

You can adjust the exterior lighting separately. The settings depend on the vehicle equipment.

The functions are adjusted in the Infotainment system.

▸ Select in the Infotainment system: MENU button > **Vehicle** > left control button > **Vehicle settings** > **Exterior lighting**.

Automatic headlights

You can adjust the following settings in the **Automatic headlights** menu:

Activation time - You can adjust if the headlights switch on **Early**, **Medium** or **Late** according to the sensitivity of the light sensor.

Headlight assistant - You can switch the high beam assistant* on and off.

Entry/exit lighting

When it is dark, the **Entry/exit lighting** illuminates the area around the vehicle when unlocking the vehicle and after switching off the ignition and opening the driver's door.

The entry/exit lighting only works when it is dark and the light switch is in the **AUTO*** position.

Daytime running lights[1)]

The daytime running lights can be turned on and off. When daytime running lights are turned on, the lights will stay on continuously whenever the ignition is switched on.

Emergency flashers



Fig. 51 Instrument panel: emergency flasher button

The emergency flashers makes other drivers aware of your vehicle in dangerous situations.

▸ Press the ⚠ button to switch the emergency flashers on or off.

When the emergency flashers are turned on, the ⇦ and ⇨ indicator lights will flash at the same time.

You can indicate a lane change or a turn when the emergency flashers are switched on by using the turn signal lever. The emergency flashers stop temporarily.

The emergency flashers also work when the ignition is turned off.

Messages

If the indicator light turns on, a bulb has failed. The message indicates the location of the bulb. Replace the bulb immediately.

Vehicle lights: malfunction! Please contact Service

There is a malfunction in the headlights or the light switch. Drive immediately to an authorized ▶

1) This function is not available in all countries.

Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility to have the malfunction repaired.

Audi adaptive light: malfunction! See owner's manual

Adaptive light* is not working. The headlights still function.

Drive immediately to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility to have the malfunction repaired.

Automatic headlights: malfunction! See owner's manual

The light/rain sensor is malfunctioning.

The low beams remain switched on at all times for safety reasons when the light switch is in the **AUTO** position. However, you can continue to turn the lights on and off using the light switch.

Drive immediately to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility to have the malfunction repaired.

Headlight range control: malfunction! See owner's manual

There is a malfunction in the dynamic headlight range control system, which may cause glare for other drivers.

Drive to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility immediately to have the malfunction corrected.

Headlight assistant: malfunction! See owner's manual

Drive immediately to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility to have the malfunction repaired. You can still switch the high beams on or off manually.

Headlight assistant: currently unavailable. No camera view

Headlight assistant: currently unavailable. Camera view restricted due to surroundings. See owner's manual

The camera view is blocked, for example by a sticker or debris. Please clean the windshield.

The sensor is located in the interior rearview mirror mount. Do not place any stickers in this area on the windshield.

WARNING

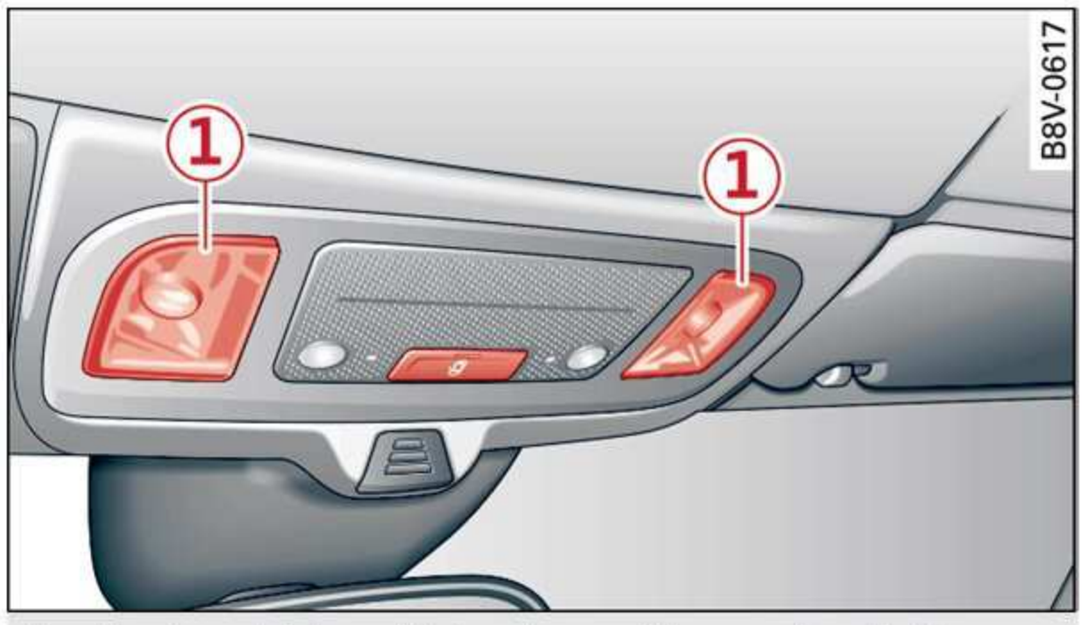
- Light bulbs are pressurized and can explode when they are replaced, which increases the risk of injury.
- To reduce the risk of fatal injury, the high-voltage component on HID headlights (xenon lights) must be handled correctly.

Interior lighting

Front interior lighting



Fig. 52 Headliner: front interior lighting



Applies to: vehicles with touch-sensitive reading lights

Fig. 53 Headliner: front interior lights

Interior lighting buttons

* - Interior lighting on/off

- Door contact switch on/off. The interior lighting is controlled automatically.

* - Reading lights on/off

Touch-sensitive reading lights*

▸ To turn a reading light on or off, touch the surface (1) briefly. ▶

► To activate the manual dimming function, touch the surface (1) when the light is switched off and keep touching it until the desired brightness is reached.

Rear interior lighting

Applies to: vehicles with rear reading lights



Fig. 54 Headliner: rear reading lights

► To turn a reading light on or off, press the or * button.

Interior lighting

Applies to: vehicles with interior lighting

The Interior lighting can be adjusted in the Infotainment system.

► Select in the Infotainment system: MENU button > **Vehicle** > left control button > **Vehicle settings** > **Interior lighting**.

You may be able to adjust the brightness of the individual zones, depending on vehicle equipment.

► Press the right control button and select one of the zones that is shown.

The interior lighting turns on when you switch the headlights on while the ignition is on.

Instrument illumination



Fig. 55 Light switch: instrument illumination

You can adjust the background brightness of the instruments and display illumination.

► Press the knob to release it.
► Turn the knob toward "-" or "+" to reduce or increase the brightness.
► Press the knob again to return it to its original position.

Tips

Depending on vehicle equipment, the instrument illumination (needles and gauges) may turn on when the lights are off and the ignition is switched on. The illumination for the gauges reduces automatically and eventually turns off as brightness outside increases. This function reminds the driver to turn the low beams on at the appropriate time.

Vision

Adjusting the exterior mirrors



Fig. 56 Driver's door: knob for the exterior mirrors

Turn the knob to the desired position:

0 - All adjustment functions are deactivated. ▶

/ - adjusting the left/right exterior mirror. Move the knob in the desired direction.

- Heat* the mirror glass depending on the outside temperature.

- Folding exterior mirrors*. To fold the mirrors out, turn the knob to one of the other positions. In the Infotainment system, you can select if the mirrors fold in automatically when you lock the vehicle ⇨ *page 29*.

Front passenger's exterior mirror tilt function*

Requirement: the knob must be in the position for the front passenger's exterior mirror.

To help you see the curb when backing into a parking space, the surface of the mirror will tilt slightly when reverse gear is selected.

You can adjust the tilted mirror surface by turning the knob in the desired direction. When you move out of reverse and into another gear, the new mirror position is stored and assigned to the key you are using.

The mirror goes back into its original position once you drive forward faster than 9 mph (15 km/h) or turn the ignition off.

WARNING

Curved mirror surfaces (for example convex) enlarge the field of vision. However, they make objects in the mirror appear smaller and farther away. When using these mirrors to estimate your distance to vehicles behind you when changing lanes, you could estimate incorrectly, which increases the risk of an accident.

Note

– Applies to: vehicles with power folding exterior mirrors: If the mirror housing was moved by outside forces (such as an impact when maneuvering), you must use the power folding function to fold the mirror all the way out. The mirrors will make a loud noise when they latch into place. The mirror housing must not be moved back into place by hand because this could impair the function of the mirror mechanism.
– Applies to: vehicles without power folding exterior mirrors: If the mirror housing was moved by outside forces (such as an impact when maneuvering), you must move it back in place by hand.
– If you wash the vehicle in an automatic car wash, you must fold the exterior mirrors in to reduce the risk of damage to the mirrors. Never fold power folding exterior mirrors* by hand. Only fold them in and out using the power controls.

Tips

If the power adjustment fails, both mirrors can be adjusted by hand by pressing on the edge of the mirror surface.

Dimming the mirrors

Your vehicle is equipped with a manual or automatic* dimming rearview mirror.

Manual dimming rearview mirror

▸ Pull the lever on the bottom of the mirror back.

Automatic dimming rearview mirror*

▸ The interior and exterior mirrors dim automatically when light shines on them, for example from headlights on a vehicle behind you.

WARNING

Applies to: vehicles with automatic dimming rearview mirror

Electrolyte fluid can leak out from broken mirror glass. This liquid can irritate the skin, eyes and respiratory system. If there is contact with the fluid, flush immediately with plenty of water. Consult a physician if necessary.
– Repeated or long-term exposure to electrolyte fluid can lead to irritation of the airways, especially in people with asthma or other respiratory conditions. Take deep breaths immediately after leaving the vehicle or, if this is not possible, open all of the doors and windows as wide as possible. ▶

– If electrolyte fluid comes into contact with the eyes, flush them thoroughly with plenty of clean water for at least 15 minutes and then seek medical attention.
– If electrolyte fluid comes into contact with the skin, flush the affected area with clean water for at least 15 minutes, and then clean with soap and water and seek medical attention. Clean affected clothing and shoes thoroughly before wearing again.
– If the fluid was swallowed and the person is conscious, flush the mouth with water for at least 15 minutes. Do not induce vomiting unless this is recommended by medical professionals. Seek medical attention immediately.

Note

Applies to: vehicles with automatic dimming rearview mirror

Electrolyte fluid can leak out from broken mirror glass. This liquid damages plastic surfaces. Clean this liquid as quickly as possible with a wet sponge.

Tips

Applies to: vehicles with automatic dimming rearview mirror

– If the light reaching the rearview mirror is obstructed, the automatic dimming mirror will not function correctly,
– The automatic dimming mirrors do not dim when the interior lighting is turned on or the reverse gear is selected.

Sun visors

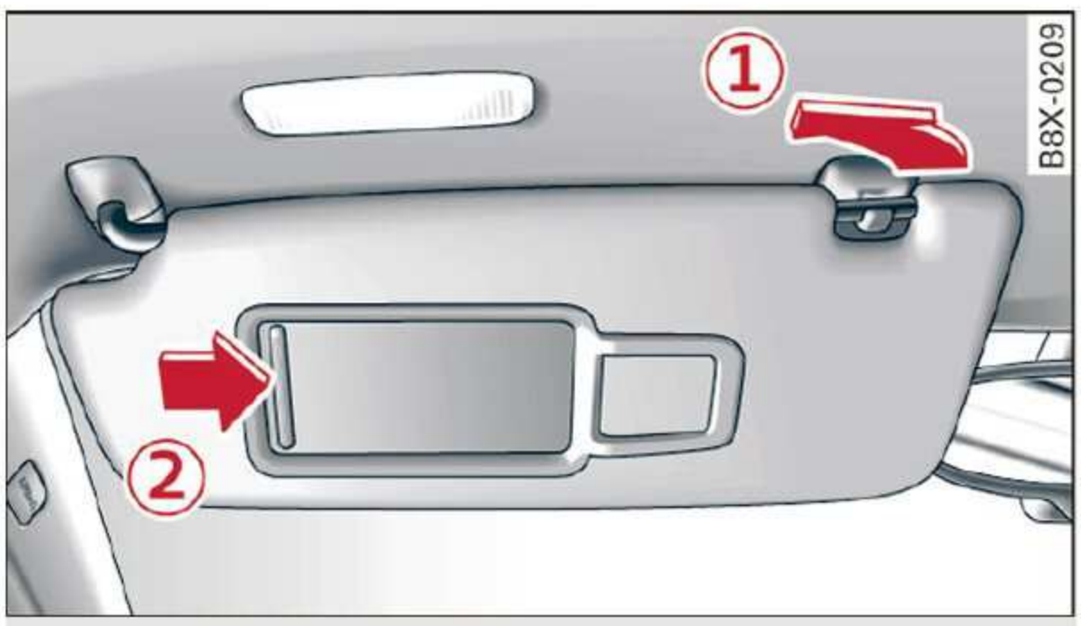


Fig. 57 Front headliner: sun visor

The sun visors can be moved out of their brackets and turned toward the doors ①. The sunshade can also be moved back and forth lengthwise in this position*.

The mirror light switches on when the cover over the vanity mirror* ② opens.

Windshield wipers

Switching the windshield wipers on

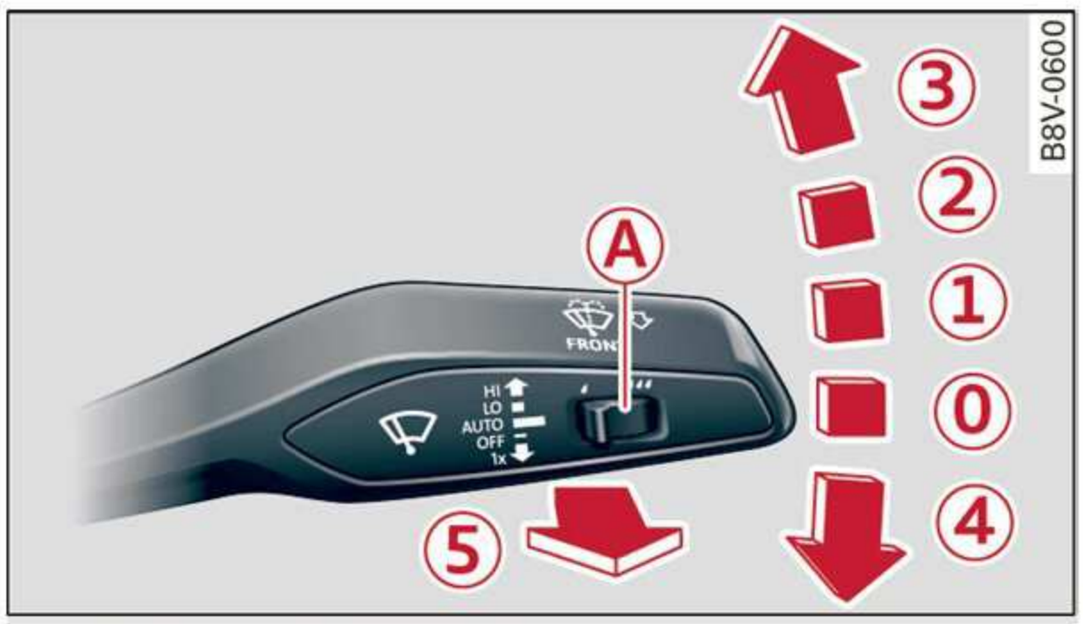


Fig. 58 Lever: windshield wipers



Fig. 59 Lever: rear window wiper*

Move the windshield wiper lever to the corresponding position:

⓪ - Windshield wipers off

① - Interval mode. To increase/decrease the wiper intervals, move the switch Ⓐ to the left/right. In vehicles with a rain sensor, the wipers turn on in the rain once the vehicle speed exceeds approximately 2 mph (4 km/h). The higher the sensitivity of the rain sensor that is set (switch Ⓐ to the right), the earlier the windshield wipers react to moisture on the windshield. You can deactivate the rain sensor mode in the Infotainment system, which switches the intermittent mode on. To do this, select: MENU button > **Vehicle** > ▶

left control button > **Driver assistance** > **Rain sensor**.

② - Slow wiping

③ - Fast wiping

④ - Single wipe. If you hold the lever in this position longer, the wipers switch from slow wiping to fast wiping.

⑤ - Clean the windshield. To eliminate water droplets, the windshield wipers perform one afterwipe after several seconds while driving in temperatures above 39 °F (4 °C). You can switch this function off by moving the lever to position ⑤ within 10 seconds of the afterwipe. The afterwipe function is reactivated the next time you switch the ignition on.

Clean the headlights. The headlight washer system operates only when the low beam headlights are switched on. If you move the lever in position ⑤, the headlights will be cleaned in fixed intervals.

Applies to: vehicles with rear window wiper

⑥ - Wipe the rear window. The rear wiper moves about every 6 seconds.

The rear wiper automatically switches on when the reverse gear is selected and the front windshield wipers are on and running.

⑦ - Clean the rear window. The number of wipes depends on how long the lever is held in position ⑦.

WARNING

- The rain sensor* is only intended to assist the driver. The driver may still be responsible for manually switching the wipers on based on visibility conditions.
- The windshield must not be treated with water-repelling windshield coating agents. Under unfavorable conditions, such as wetness, darkness, and when the sun is low, these coatings can cause increased glare, which increases the risk of an accident. Wiper blade chatter is also possible.
- Properly-functioning windshield wiper blades are required for a clear view and safe driving ⇨ *page 51, Replacing the front wiper blades*.

Note

- If there is frost, make sure the windshield wiper blades are not frozen to the windshield. Switching on the windshield wipers when the blades are frozen to the windshield can damage the wiper blades.
- The windshield wiper system must be switched off (lever in position ⓪) before using a car wash. This prevents the wipers from switching on unintentionally and causing damage to the windshield wiper system.

Tips

- The windshield wipers switch off when the ignition is switched off. You can activate the windshield wipers after the ignition is switched on again by moving the windshield wiper lever to any position.
- Worn or dirty windshield wiper blades result in streaking. This can affect the rain sensor function. Check your windshield wiper blades regularly.
- The washer fluid nozzles in the windshield washer system are heated* at low temperatures when the ignition is on.
- When stopping temporarily, such as at a traffic light, the speed of the windshield wipers automatically reduces by one level.

Cleaning the wiper blades

Clean the wiper blades when you see wiper streaks. Use a soft cloth and a glass cleaner.

Windshield wiper

- ▶ Place the windshield wiper arms in the service position ⇨ *page 51*.
- ▶ Fold the windshield wiper arms away from the windshield.

Rear window wiper

Applies to: vehicles with rear window wiper

- ▶ Fold the wiper arm away from the rear window. ▶

WARNING

Dirty windshield wiper blades can impair vision, which increases the risk of an accident.

Note

If you see streaks again after cleaning the wiper blades, the blades must be replaced ⇨ *page 51*.

Replacing the front wiper blades

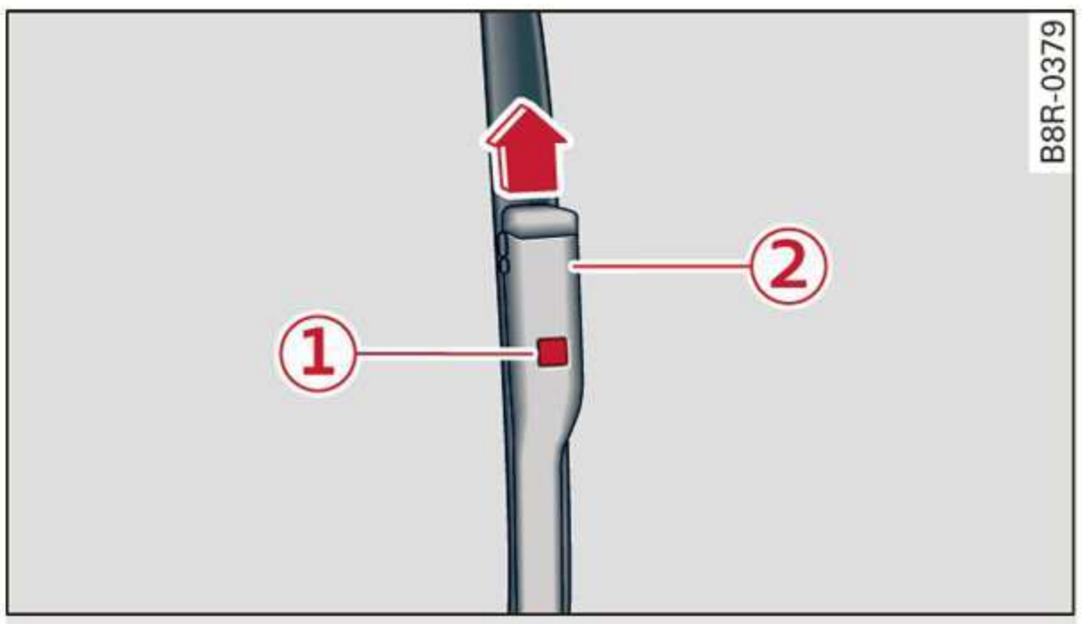


Fig. 60 Windshield wiper: removing the wiper blade

Windshield wiper service position/blade replacement position

- ► To bring the wipers into the service position, turn the ignition off and move the windshield wiper lever into position ④ for at least two seconds ⇨ *page 49, fig. 58*.
- ► To bring the windshield wipers back to the normal position, switch the ignition on and hold the windshield wiper lever in position ④ until the windshield wipers go back to the original position, or drive faster than 8 mph (12 km/h).

Removing the wiper blade

- ► Fold the windshield wiper arm away from the windshield.
- ► Press the locking knob ① ⇨ *fig. 60* on the wiper blade. Hold the wiper blade firmly.
- ► Remove the wiper blade in the direction of the arrow.

Installing the wiper blade

- ► Insert the new wiper blade into the mount on the wiper arm ② until you hear it latch into place.
- ► Place the wiper arm back on the windshield.
- ► Turn the service position off.

WARNING

For safety reasons, the windshield wiper blades should be replaced once or twice each year.

Note

– Only fold the windshield wipers away when they are in the service position. Otherwise, you risk damaging the paint on the hood or the windshield wiper motor.
– You should not drive your vehicle or press the windshield wiper lever when the wiper arms are folded away from the windshield. The windshield wipers would move back into their original position and could damage the hood and windshield.

Tips

– You can also use the service position, for example, if you want to protect the windshield from icing by using a cover.
– You cannot activate the service position when the hood is open.

Replacing rear wiper blade

Applies to: vehicles with rear window wiper

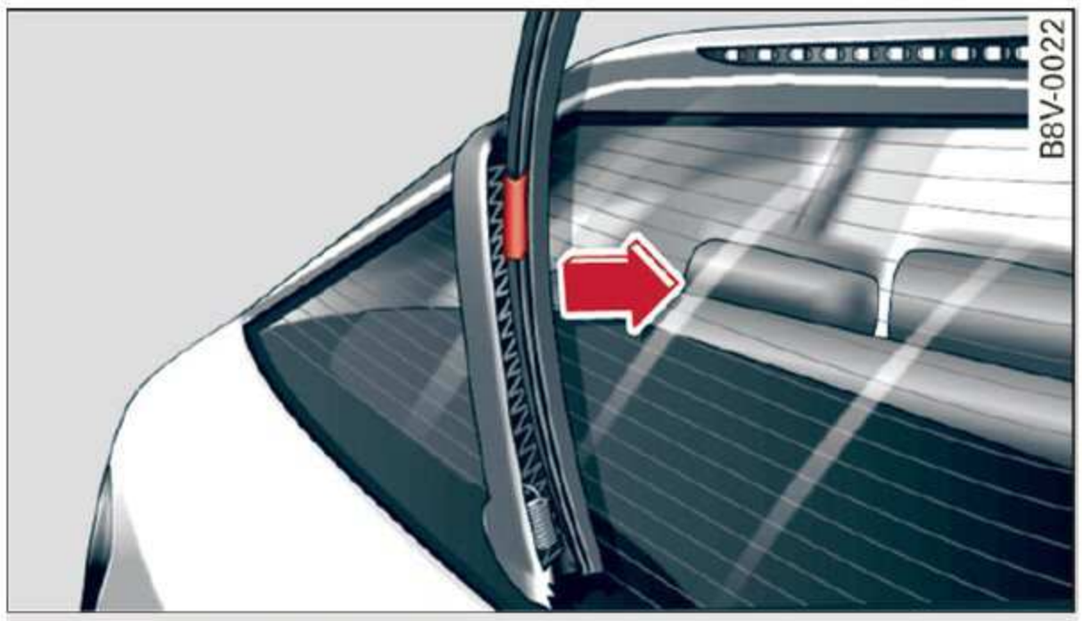


Fig. 61 Rear window wiper: removing the wiper blade

Removing the wiper blade

- ► Fold the wiper arm away from the rear window.
- ► Hold the wiper blade below the center in the direction of the arrow and pull it out of the retainer. Hold the windshield wiper arm securely while doing this. ▶

Installing the wiper blade

- ▸ Press the wiper blade mount into the retainer. Securely hold the wiper arm at the upper plastic end.
- ▸ Fold the window wiper arm back onto the rear window.

WARNING

For safety reasons, the windshield wiper blades should be replaced once or twice each year.

Messages

If the indicator light turns on, then there is a windshield wiper malfunction. Drive to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility immediately to have the malfunction corrected.

Automatic wipers: malfunction! See owner's manual

The light/rain sensor is malfunctioning.

You can still control all functions that are not controlled by the rain sensor using the windshield wiper lever.

Drive immediately to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility to have the malfunction repaired.

Digital compass

Switching the compass on and off

Applies to: vehicles with digital compass

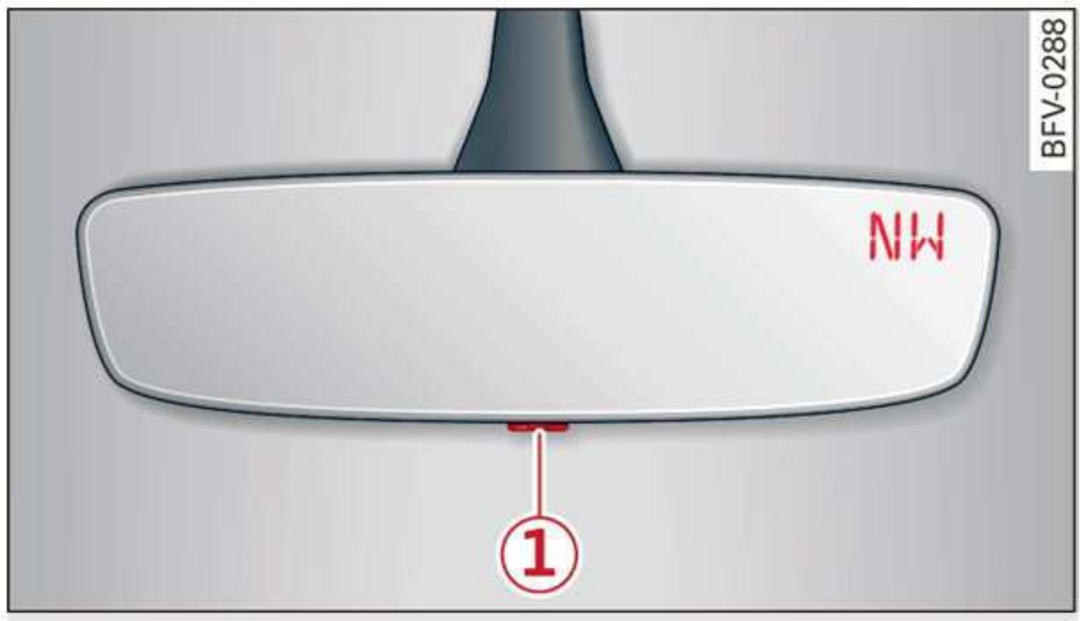


Fig. 62 Rearview mirror: digital compass is switched on

- ▸ To turn the compass on or off, press the button (1) until the compass display in the mirror turns on or off.

The digital compass only works when the ignition is turned on. The directions are indicated with abbreviations: **N** (north), **NE** (northeast), **E** (east), **SE** (southeast), **S** (south), **SW** (southwest), **W** (west), **NW** (northwest).

Tips

To prevent inaccurate compass readings, do not bring any remote controls, electrical devices or metallic objects near the mirror.

Adjusting the magnetic zone

Applies to: vehicles with digital compass

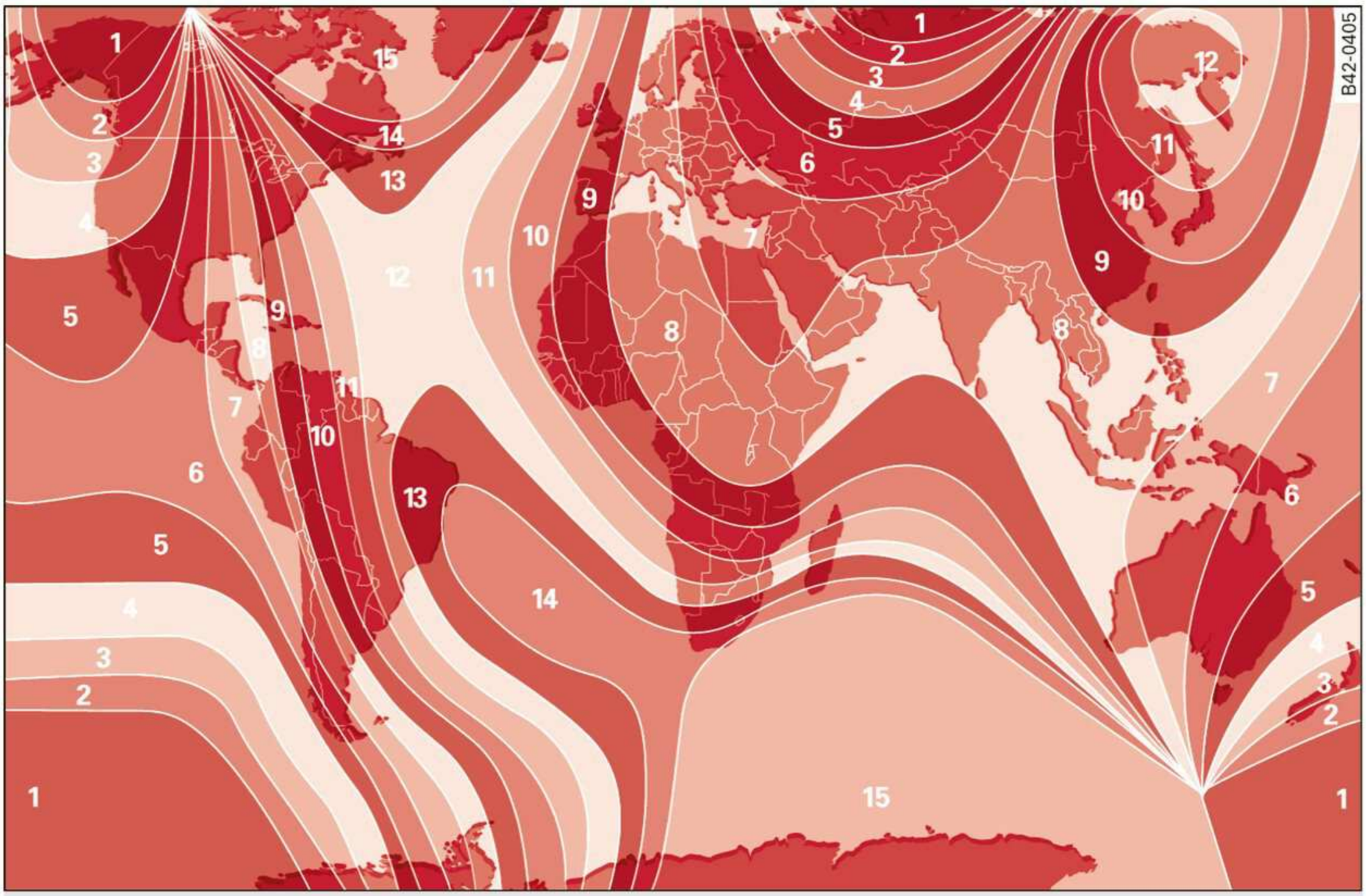


Fig. 63 Magnetic zone map

The magnetic zone must be adjusted correctly for the compass to read accurately.

- ▸ Press and hold the button (1) ⇨ *page 52, fig. 62* until the number of the magnetic zone appears in the interior rearview mirror.
- ▸ Press the button (1) repeatedly to select the correct magnetic zone. The selection mode turns off after a few seconds.

WARNING

To reduce the risk to yourself and other drivers, calibrate the compass in an area where there is no traffic.

Calibrating the compass

Applies to: vehicles with digital compass

If the display is incorrect or inaccurate, the compass must be recalibrated.

- ▸ Press and hold the button (1) until a “C” appears in the interior rearview mirror.
- ▸ Drive in a circle at about 6 mph (10 km/h) until a direction is displayed in the interior rearview mirror.

Seats

General information

WARNING

Refer to the chapter Driving Safely ⇨ *page 237, Driving safety* for important information, tips, suggestions and warnings that you should read and follow for your own safety and the safety of your passengers.

Note

Applies to: vehicles with manually adjustable head restraints

To reduce the risk of damage, be very careful when adjusting the seat to make sure the head restraints do not hit the headliner or the panorama glass roof*.

Front seats

Manual seat adjustment

Applies to: vehicles with manual adjustable seats



Fig. 64 Front seat: manual seat adjustment

The settings depend on the vehicle equipment.

Adjusting the seat position

- ▸ To adjust the seat forward or back, pull the lever ① and slide the seat.
- ▸ To adjust the seat up or down, pull or press the lever ⑥.

Adjusting the backrests

- ▸ To adjust the backrest so that it is higher or lower, turn the handwheel ⑦.

Adjusting the upper thigh support

- ▸ To increase or decrease the upper thigh support, lift the handle ② and move the upper thigh support.

Adjusting the angle of the seat surface

- ▸ To adjust the angle of the seat surface, pull or press the lever ③.

Adjusting the lumbar support

- ▸ To adjust the lumbar support, press the button ④ at the applicable location.

Adjusting the massage function

- ▸ Switching the massage function on or off ⑤.

WARNING

- To reduce the risk of an accident, only adjust the front seats when the vehicle is stationary.
- Exercise caution when adjusting the seat height. Adjusting the seat carelessly or without checking can pinch hands and fingers.
- The front seat backrests must not be reclined too far back when driving, because this impairs the effectiveness of the safety belts and airbag system, which increases the risk of injury.

Tips

The massage function switches off automatically after approximately 10 minutes.

Power seat adjustment

Applies to: vehicles with power adjustable seats

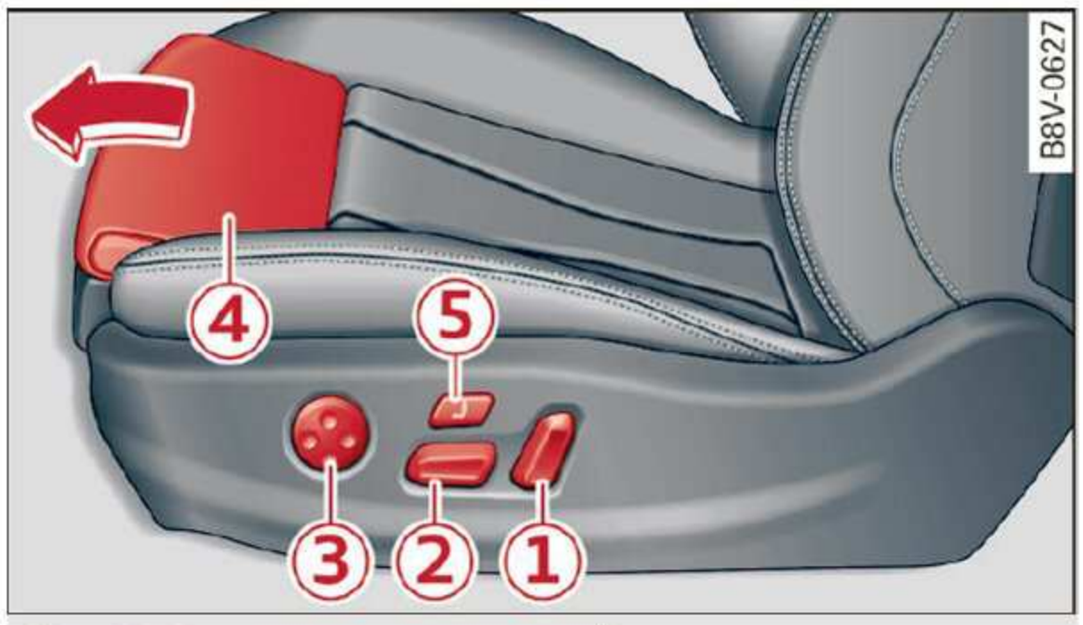


Fig. 65 Front seat: power seat adjustment

The settings depend on the vehicle equipment. ▶

Adjusting the backrests

► To adjust the backrest forward or backward, press the button ① forward or backward.

Adjusting the seat position

► To adjust the seat forward or backward, push the button ② forward or backward.
► To adjust the seat upward or downward, push the rear section of the button ② upward or downward.

Adjusting the lumbar support

► To adjust the lumbar support, press the button ③ at the applicable location.

Adjusting the upper thigh support

► To can increase or decrease the upper thigh support, lift the handle ④. A spring moves the support forward.

Adjusting the massage function

► Switching the massage function on or off ⑤.

WARNING

– To reduce the risk of an accident, only adjust the front seats when the vehicle is stationary.
– The power adjustment for the front seats also works with the ignition switched off or with the ignition key removed. To reduce the risk of injury, children should never be left unattended in the vehicle for this reason.
– Exercise caution when adjusting the seat height. Unsupervised or careless seat adjustment could cause parts of the body to get pinched, which increases the risk of injury.
– The front seat backrests must not be reclined too far back when driving, because this impairs the effectiveness of the safety belts and airbag system, which increases the risk of injury.

Tips

The massage function switches off automatically after approximately 10 minutes.

Easy seat entry

Applies to: vehicles with entry assistance

Entry assistance makes it easier for the rear passengers to enter and leave the vehicle.

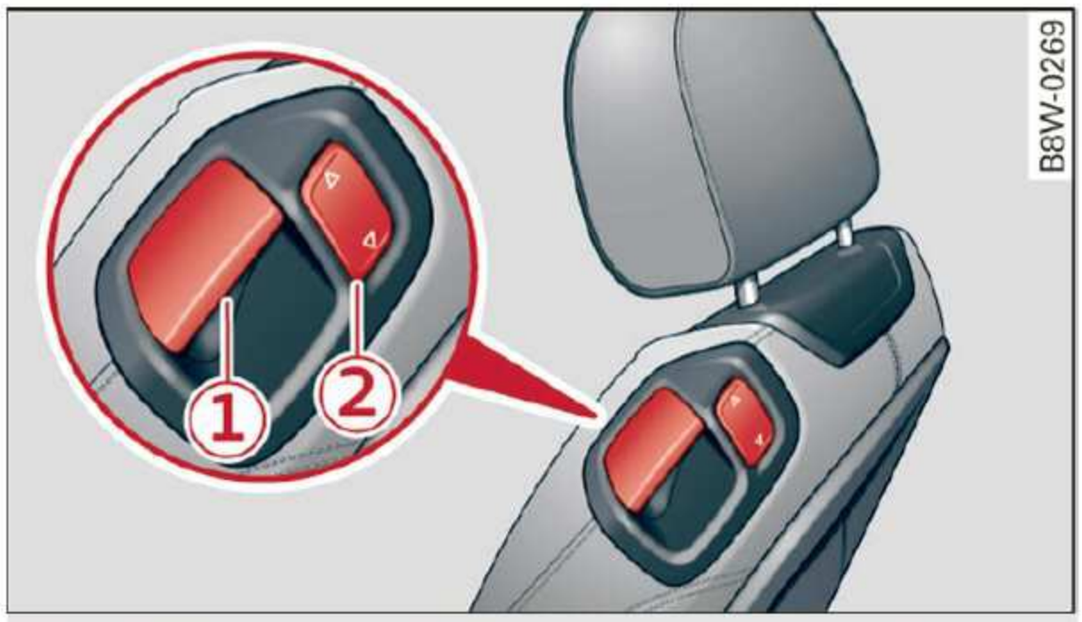


Fig. 66 Front seat: controls on the seat backrest: 1) backrest release, 2) power entry assistance

Power entry assistance

► Lift the handle ① and fold the seat backrest forward.
► To move the seat all the way forward or to the original position, press the ② button briefly. You can stop the seat by pressing the button again.
► You can move the seat all the way forward even when the backrest is upright. Press and hold the button ② until the seat reaches your preferred position.

WARNING

– Always make sure the front seats are upright and securely locked in place.
– Power entry assistance also works when the ignition is switched off[1)] or when the ignition key is removed, so that rear seat passengers can still move to the front of the vehicle in an emergency situation. To reduce the risk of injury, children should never be left unattended in the vehicle for this reason.

1) Requirement: the vehicle battery must have a sufficient charge level.

Note

Be very careful when adjusting the seats to avoid damaging the head restraints, headliner, or sunroof*.

Front center armrest

Applies to: vehicles with a front center armrest

The front center armrest is located between the front seats.

Adjusting the center armrest

The settings depend on the vehicle equipment.

- To adjust the armrest forward or backward, move the armrest in the desired direction.
- To adjust the angle, raise the armrest in stages.
- To move the armrest back into the original position, raise it slightly out of the top level and fold it downward.

WARNING

In certain positions, the front center armrest can interfere with the driver's arm movement, which increases the risk of injury.

Head restraints

Proper adjustment of head restraints

Applies to: vehicles with adjustable head restraints

Correctly adjusted head restraints are an important part of your vehicle's occupant restraint system and can help to reduce the risk of injuries in accident situations.

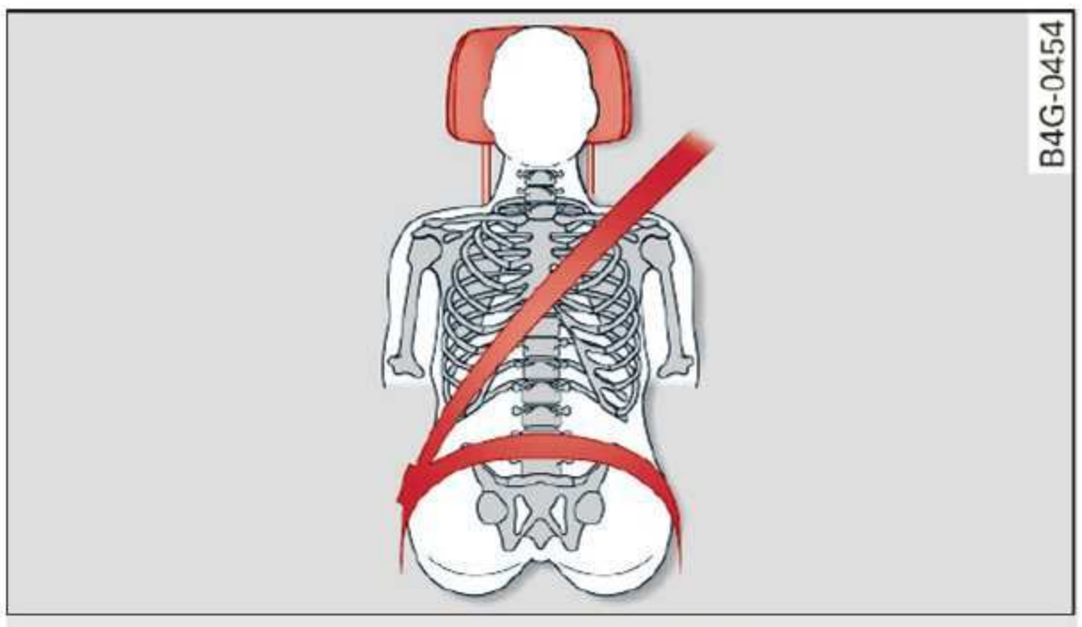


Fig. 67 Head restraint: viewed from the front

The head restraints must be correctly adjusted to achieve the best protection.

- Adjust the head restraint so the upper edge is as even as possible with the top of your head. If that is not possible, try to adjust the head restraint so that it is as close to this position as possible.
- Applies to: forward/back adjustable head restraints: Move the head restraint so that it is as close to the back of the head as possible.
- If there is a passenger on the rear center seating position, slide the center head restraint upward at least to the next notch.

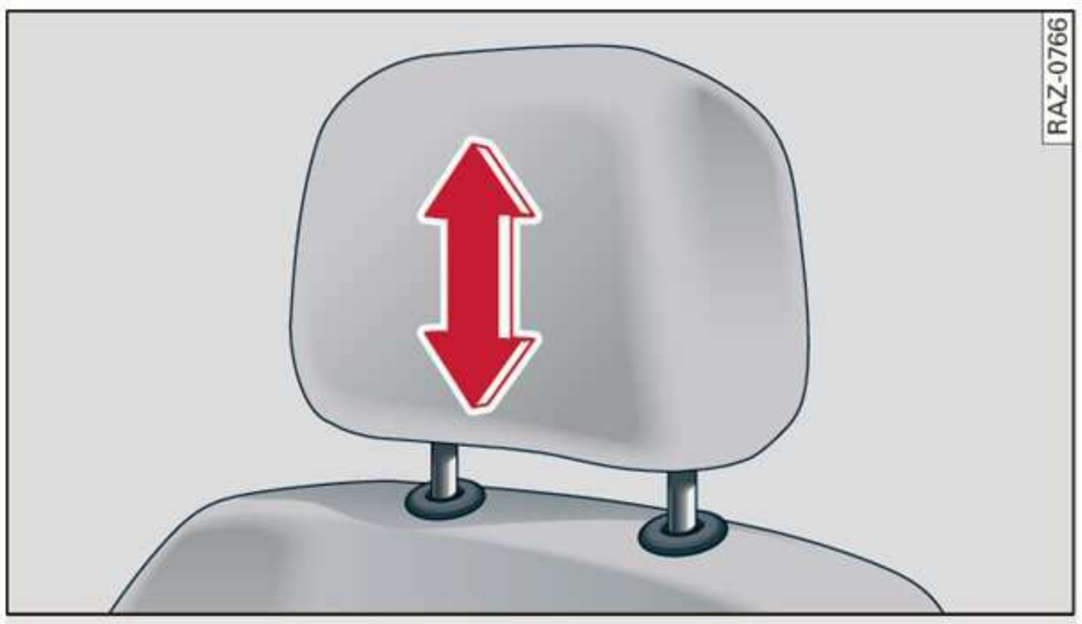
WARNING

All seats are equipped with head restraints. Driving without head restraints or with head restraints that are not properly adjusted increases the risk of serious or fatal neck injury dramatically. To help reduce the risk of injury:

- Always drive with the head restraints in place and properly adjusted.
- Every person in the vehicle must have a properly adjusted head restraint.
- Always make sure each person in the vehicle properly adjusts their head restraint. Adjust the head restraint so the upper edge is as even as possible with the top of your head. If that is not possible, try to adjust the head restraint so that it is as close to this position as possible.
- Applies to: forward/back adjustable head restraints: Move the head restraint so that it is as close to the back of the head as possible.
- Never attempt to adjust head restraint while driving. If you have driven off and must adjust the driver headrest for any reason, first stop the vehicle safely before attempting to adjust the head restraint.
- Children must always be properly restrained in a child restraint that is appropriate for their age and size ⇨ *page 278*.

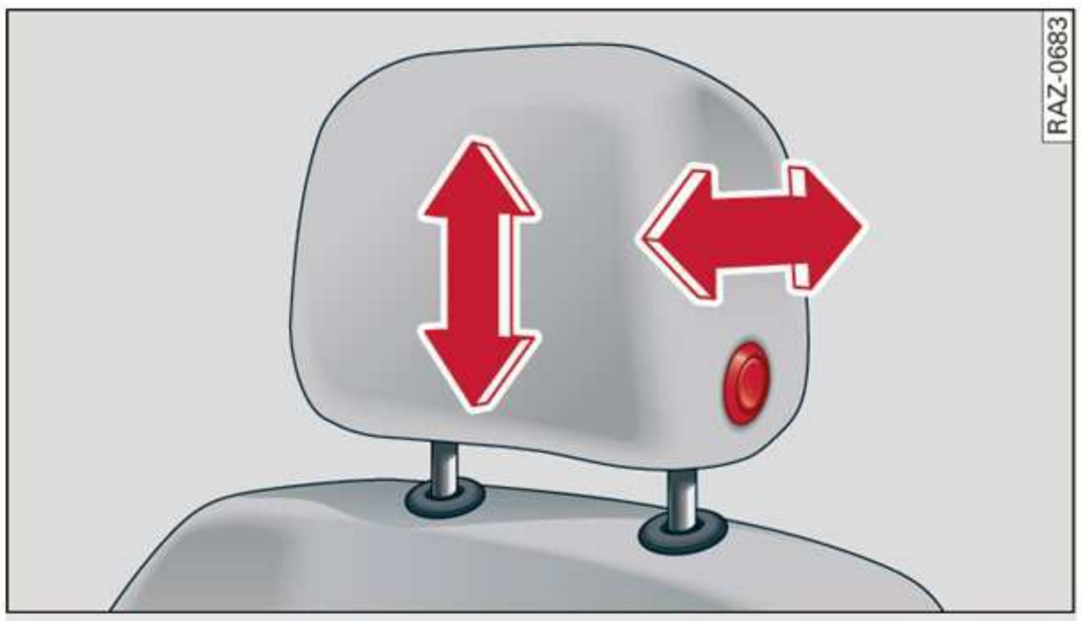
Front head restraints

Applies to: vehicles with adjustable head restraints



Applies to: version 1

Fig. 68 Front seat: adjusting the head restraint



Applies to: version 2

Fig. 69 Front seat: adjusting the head restraint

The settings depend on the vehicle equipment.

Adjusting the head restraints

- Applies to: version 1: To adjust the head restraint upward or downward, move the head restraint until it audibly engages ⇨ *fig. 68*.
- Applies to: version 2: To adjust the head restraint upward or forward, move the head restraint until it audibly engages ⇨ *fig. 69*.
- To adjust the head restraint downward or backward, press the button on the side and slide the head restraint. Release the button and slide the head restraint farther until it locks into place.

Rear head restraints

Applies to: vehicles with adjustable head restraints

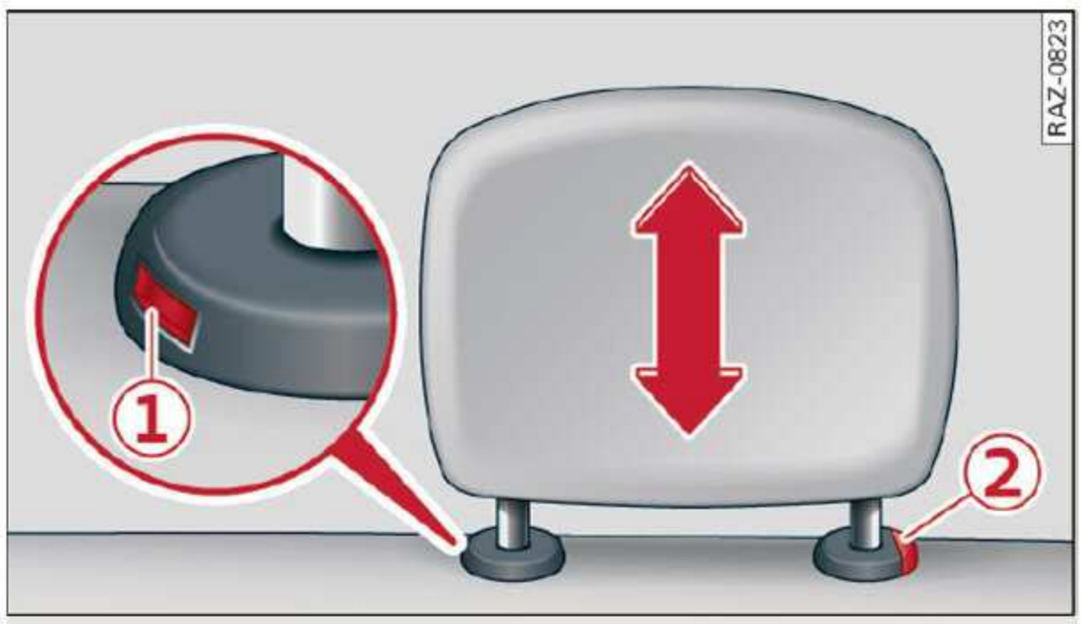


Fig. 70 Rear seat: adjusting or removing the head restraint

Adjusting the head restraints

- To adjust the head restraint upward, slide it until it locks into place.
- To adjust the head restraint downward, press the button ② and slide the head restraint. Release the button and slide the head restraint farther until it locks into place.

Removing the headrests

Applies to: vehicles with removable head restraints

- Fold the backrest forward slightly ⇨ *page 62*.
- Move the head restraint upward all the way.
- Insert a suitable object, such as the the extended vehicle key or mechanical key, into the release point ① on the inside or outside of the base.[1)]
- Press the button ② and pull the head restraint out of the backrest.

Installing the headrests

Applies to: vehicles with removable head restraints

- Fold the backrest forward slightly ⇨ *page 62*.
- Slide the posts on the head restraint down into the guides until the posts click into place.
- Press the button ② and slide the head restraint all the way down. It should not be possible to remove the head restraint from the backrest without pressing the button. ▶

1) Some versions of the center head restraints do not have a release point and can be removed without a vehicle tool kit.

WARNING

Only remove the rear seat head restraints when necessary in order to install a child safety seat ⇨ *page 278, Child safety*. Install the head restraint again immediately once the child safety seat is removed. Driving with the head restraints removed or not in the upright position increases the risk of serious injury.

Steering wheel

General information

Make sure that:

– The distance between your upper body and the steering wheel is at least 10 in (25 cm)
– Your arms are bent slightly at the elbows
– You have a sufficient view of the area around the vehicle and you have a clear view of the instrument cluster
– You are always holding the steering wheel with both hands on the outer edge at the sides (9:00 and 3:00 position) when driving

WARNING

– To reduce the risk of an accident, make sure the steering wheel is adjusted correctly and cannot be moved out of position before you start to drive.
– If you are too close to the steering wheel, the driver's airbag cannot provide optimal protection, which increases the risk of injury or fatality.
– Never hold the steering wheel in the 12:00 position or in any other way, such as holding the center of the steering wheel. Otherwise, your arms, hands, and head could be injured in the event that the driver's airbag deploys.
– If your physical characteristics prevent you from sitting at least 10 inches (25 cm) or more away from the steering wheel, see if an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility can provide adapters that will help.

Adjusting the steering wheel position

The steering wheel position is adjustable up and down and forward and back.

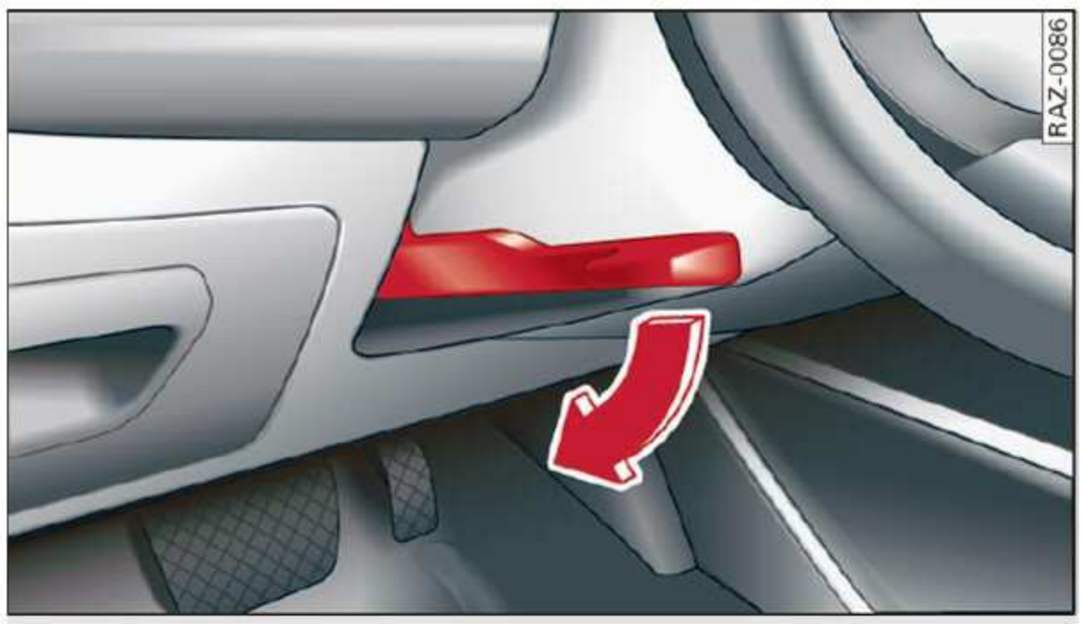


Fig. 71 Steering column: lever for adjusting the steering wheel position

► Pull the lever in the direction of the arrow.
► Bring the steering wheel into the desired position.
► Push the lever all the way up until it engages.

Stowing and using

Power sources

When the ignition is switched on, you may be able to use the electric power sources for external devices, depending on the vehicle equipment.

12 volt sockets

You can connect electrical accessories to the 12 volt sockets. The power usage must not exceed 120 watts.

The 12 volt sockets are labeled with the 12V symbol. They are located in the front center console, in the rear* and on the side trim panel in the luggage compartment*.

USB ports

Applies to: vehicles with USB input

You can charge mobile devices using the USB ports. The USB ports are labeled with the ⇠ or ⇠ symbol or CHARGE ONLY.

WARNING

- To reduce the risk of fatal injury, store all connected devices securely when driving so that they do not move around inside the vehicle when braking or in the event of an accident.
- Incorrect usage can lead to serious injuries or burns. To reduce the risk of injuries, never leave children unattended in the vehicle with the vehicle key.

Note

- Read the operating manuals for the connected devices.
- To reduce the risk of damage to the vehicle electrical system, never attempt to charge the vehicle battery by connecting accessories that provide power to the power sources.
- Do not connect any device whose network class (voltage) does not match the network class designed for the socket.
- Disconnect the connectors from the power sources carefully to reduce the risk of damaging them.

Storing

Cup holders

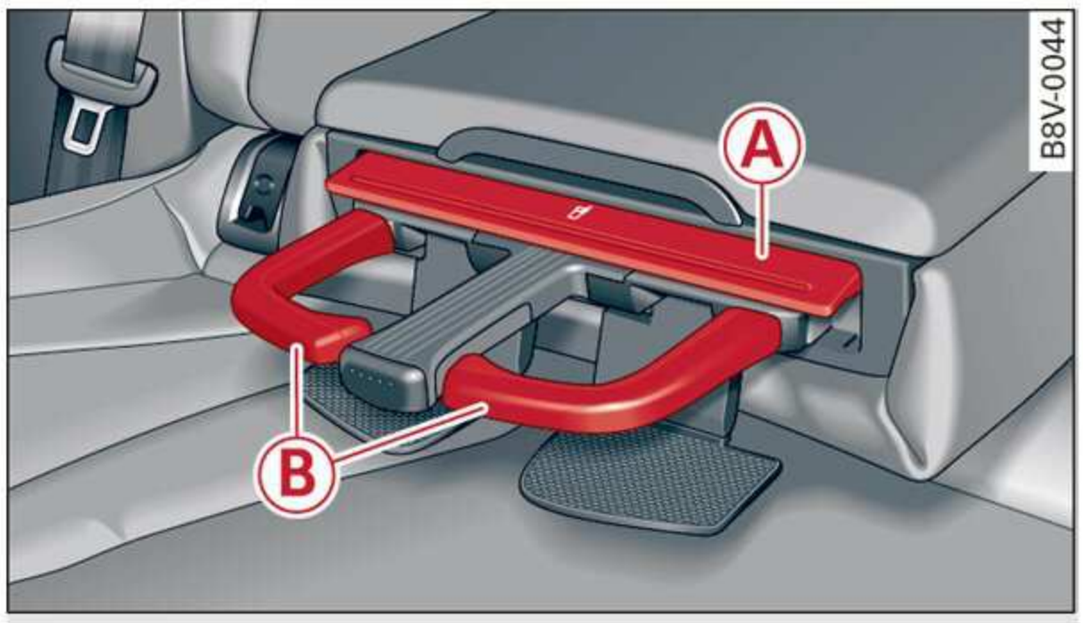


Fig. 72 Rear center armrest: cup holders*

Your vehicle has cup holders in the front center console, in the door pockets, in the rear bench seat* and/or in the rear center console*.

Rear cup holders*

- ▸ Fold the center armrest* downward.
- ▸ To open the cup holders, press inward on the trim (A).
- ▸ To place the beverage container in the cup holder, push the arm (B) outward.
- ▸ Then push the arm against the beverage container so that the arm lies closely against it.
- ▸ To close the cup holders, push them back into the slot.

WARNING

- Do not put any hot beverages in the cup holder while the vehicle is moving. Hot beverages could spill, which increases the risk of injury.
- Do not use any breakable beverage containers (for example, made out of glass or porcelain). You could be injured by them in the event of an accident.

Note

Beverage containers in the cup holders should always have a lid. Otherwise, the liquid inside could spill and cause damage to vehicle equipment.

Other storage



Applies to: sedan

Fig. 73 Luggage compartment: bag hooks*

There are additional storage compartments, compartments and holders at other locations in the vehicle:

– Glove compartment: the glove compartment can be locked* using the key.
– Retainer* for the vehicle key and cell phone in the front center console
– Storage compartment under the front center armrest*
– Storage compartment on the rear side of the front seat*
– Garment hooks* on the B-pillar
– Garment hooks* above the rear doors*
– Side bag hooks* in the luggage compartment
– Applies to: sedan: Bag hooks* under the rear shelf ⇨ *fig. 73*

WARNING

– To reduce the risk of injury, make sure all storage compartments are always closed while driving.
– Loose objects can be thrown around the vehicle interior during sudden driving or braking maneuvers, which increases the risk of an accident. Store objects securely while driving.
– Only use the storage compartments in the door trim panels to store small objects that will not stick out of the compartment and impair the function of the side airbags.
– Make sure your view toward the rear is not blocked, for example by hanging clothing or objects in the vehicle.
– No heavy or hard objects may be placed on the storage compartment behind the rear seat backrest. There is a risk of injuring the vehicle passengers when braking suddenly.
– Applies to: vehicles with garment hooks: Only lightweight clothing should be hung from the garment hooks in the vehicle. Do not use clothes hangers to hang clothing. The pockets of the clothing must not contain any heavy, breakable, or sharp-edged objects. This could impair the effectiveness of the side curtain airbags.

Note

Objects on the rear shelf that rub against the rear window can damage the rear window heating wires.

Luggage compartment

General information

All pieces of luggage or objects must be securely fastened in the luggage compartment. Note the following to maintain good vehicle handling:

► Distribute the load evenly in the luggage compartment.
► Stow heavy luggage as far forward in the luggage compartment as possible.
► Use non-elastic cords attached to the tie-downs to secure objects.

WARNING

– Applies to: sedan: The storage compartment must not be used to transport heavy objects, hard objects, or animals. Such objects endanger vehicle occupants and increase the risk of injury during sudden driving or braking maneuvers or in an accident.
– The luggage compartment cover must always be securely fastened when in use to reduce the risk of an accident.
– The luggage compartment cover is not a surface for storing objects. Objects placed on the cover increase the risk of injury to all vehicle occupants during sudden driving or ▶

braking maneuvers or in the event of an accident.
– Loose objects can be thrown around the vehicle interior during sudden driving or braking maneuvers, which increases the risk of an accident. Always stow objects securely in the luggage compartment and secure them at the tie-downs. Use straps suitable for heavy objects.
– If pieces of luggage or objects are secured to the tie-downs with unsuitable or damaged straps, this can increase the risk of injury during braking maneuvers or accidents.
– When transporting heavy objects, the vehicle characteristics will change due to the shift in the center of gravity, which increases the risk of an accident. You may need to adapt your driving style and speed to the current conditions.
– The cargo net is only strong enough to secure light objects. Heavy objects are not adequately secured. Attempting to secure heavy objects increases the risk of injury.
– Never exceed the permitted axle and load and vehicle weight ⇨ *page 380*.
– Never secure a child safety seat to the tie-downs.
– Never leave your vehicle unattended, especially if the luggage compartment lid is open. Children could enter the luggage compartment and close the luggage compartment lid from the inside. This creates the risk of fatal injury, since the children would be locked in and may not be able to escape by themselves.
– Do not allow children to play in or on the vehicle. Close and lock the luggage compartment lid as well as all other doors when you leave the vehicle.
– Never transport passengers in the luggage compartment. Every passenger must be correctly secured with the safety belts in the vehicle ⇨ *page 245*.
– Be careful when releasing the backrest and folding it forward. To reduce the risk of being pinched, pay attention and check when folding backrests forward.
– The backrest must be securely latched so objects cannot slide forward out of the luggage compartment during sudden braking.
– The backrest must be latched securely to ensure that the safety belt is protecting the center seating position.
– Always pull forward on the backrest to make sure it is check if it is correctly locked in place.

Note

– To reduce the risk of damage, move the rear head restraints down ⇨ *page 57* before folding the rear backrests forward.
– When folding the backrest forward, make sure the outer safety belts are in the belt guide recess so that they do not get pinched in the backrest lock and damaged. Other objects should be removed from the rear bench seat to protect the backrest from damage.
– If you move the front seat back when the rear seat backrest is folded forward, you could damage the head restraints on the rear seat.
– Make sure that the heating grid strips for the rear window defogger are not damaged by abrasive objects.

Tips

– The tire pressure must be adapted to the load ⇨ *page 330*.
– You can purchase straps at specialty stores.

Luggage compartment cover

Applies to: vehicles with luggage compartment cover

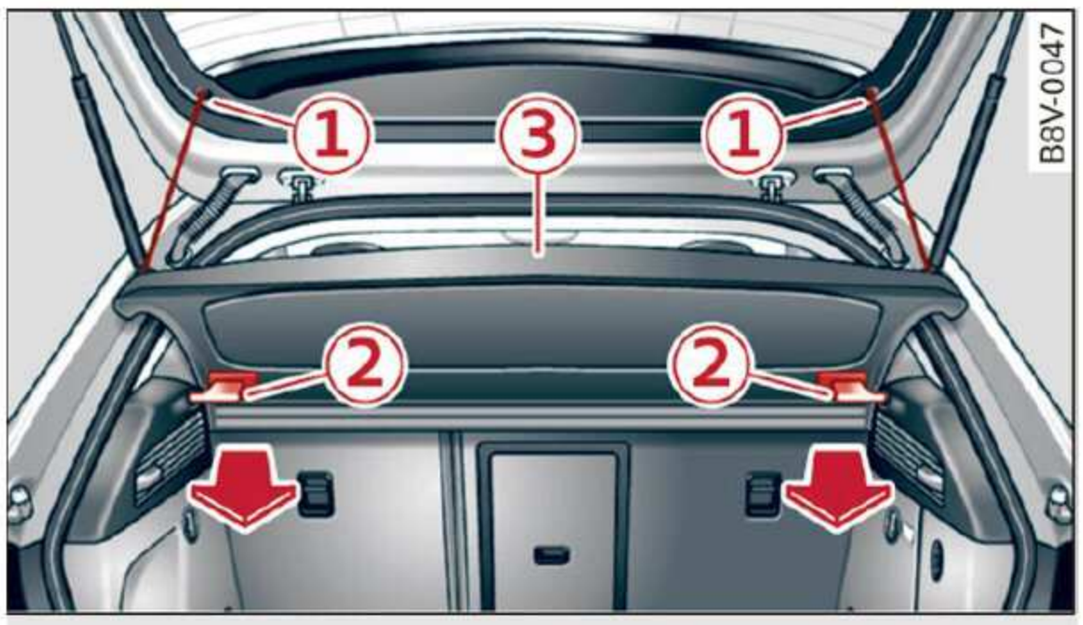


Fig. 74 Luggage compartment: luggage compartment cover

Follow the safety precautions ⇨ *page 60*.

- ▸ To remove the luggage compartment cover, unhook the straps ①.
- ▸ Pull the cover ③ out of the retainers ② in the direction of the arrow.
- ▸ To install the luggage compartment cover, slide the cover ③ horizontally into the designated holder ② in the side bracket until the cover is lined up.
- ▸ Hook the straps into the luggage compartment lid ①.

Lowering the cargo floor

Applies to: vehicles with adjustable cargo floor

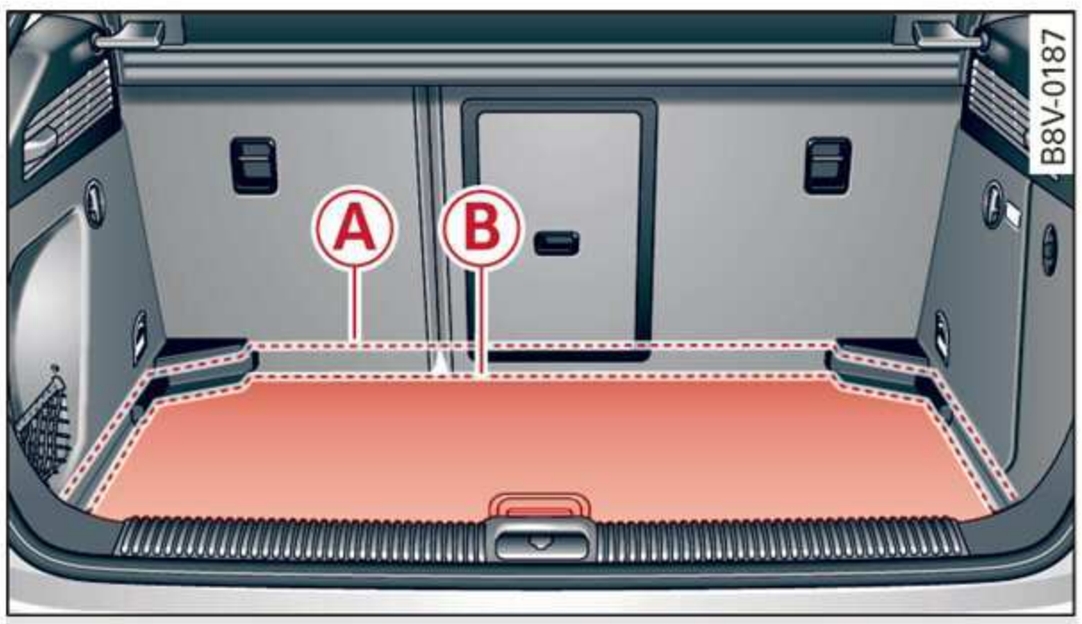


Fig. 75 Luggage compartment: lowered cargo floor

The cargo floor can lower to expand the storage area in the luggage compartment.

- ▸ Lift the cargo floor in order to lower it.
- ▸ Pull the cargo floor back slightly and insert it in the lower position Ⓑ.

To make loading and unloading easier, bringing the cargo floor back into position Ⓐ after transporting bulky items is recommended.

Tie-downs and luggage compartment net

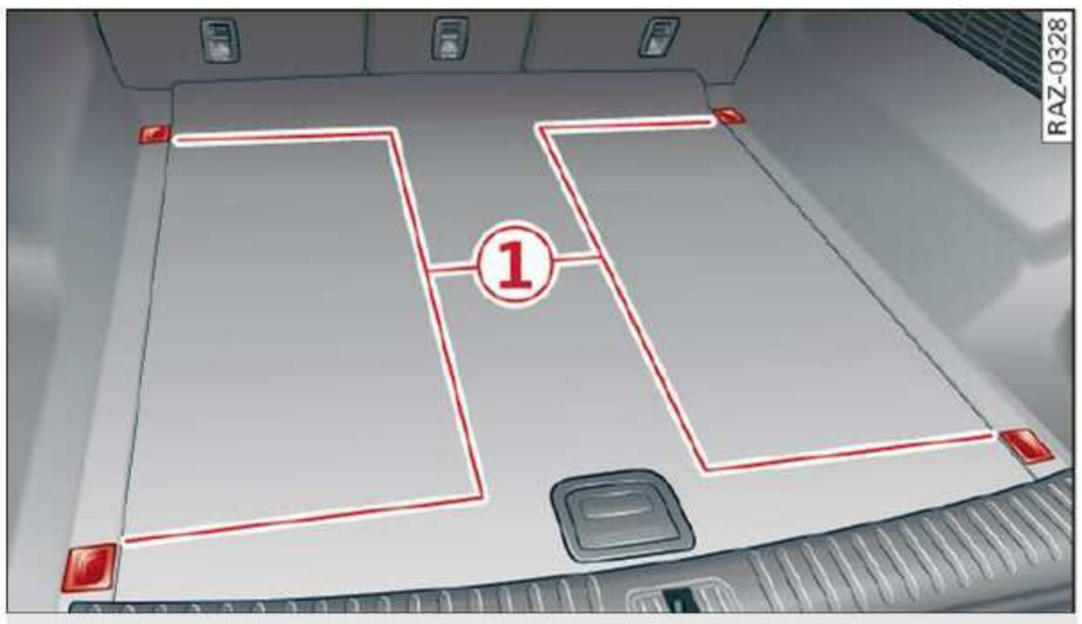


Fig. 76 Luggage compartment: location of the tie-downs

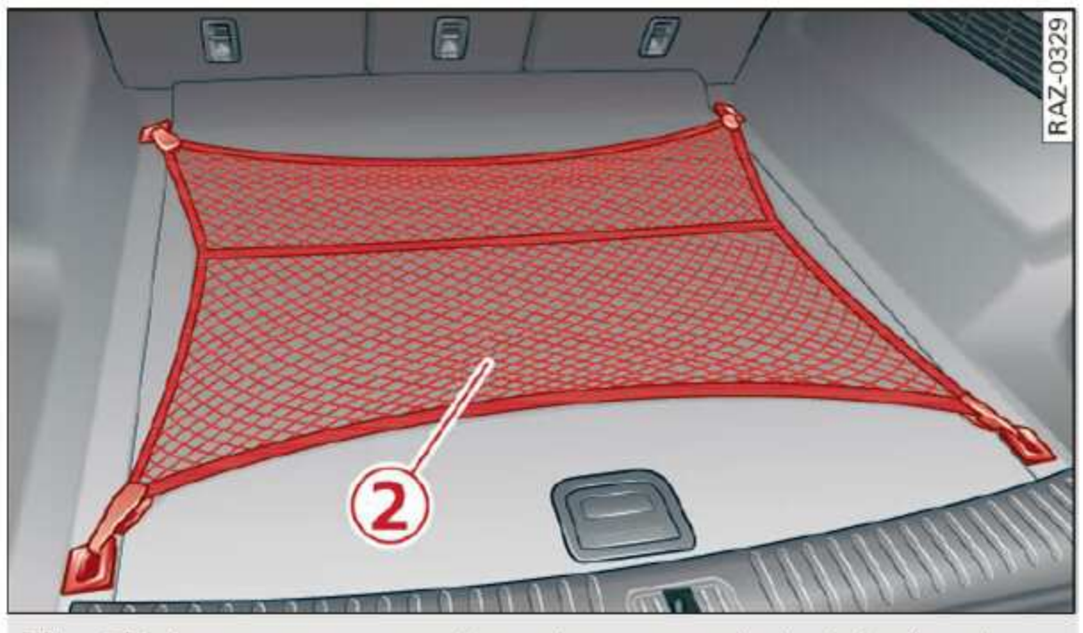


Fig. 77 Luggage compartment: cargo net stretched out

Follow the safety precautions ⇨ *page 60*.

Tie-downs

There are tie-downs ① in the luggage compartment to secure pieces of luggage and objects.

- ▸ Use the tie-downs to secure the cargo.

Cargo net

Applies to: vehicles with luggage compartment net

Use the cargo net ② to secure lighter objects in the luggage compartment

- ▸ Fold the clip for the tie-downs upward.
- ▸ Attach the hooks for the cargo net to the tie-downs.

Increasing the cargo area

Applies to: vehicles with folding backrests

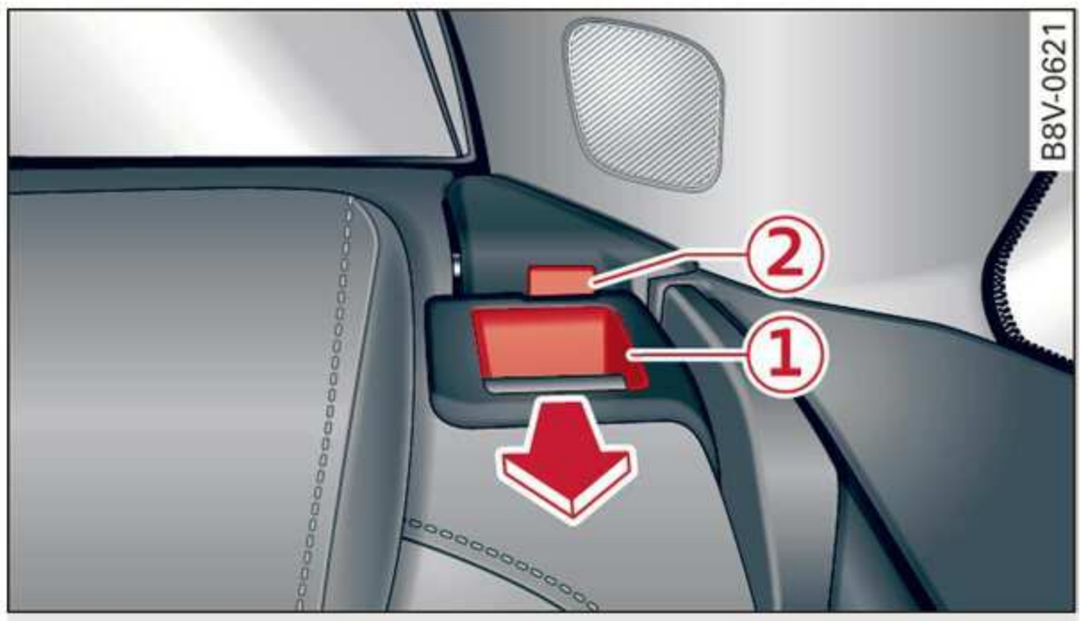


Fig. 78 Backrest: outer release lever

The rear seat backrests can be folded forward either separately or together.

Follow the safety precautions ⇨ *page 60*.

Folding the backrest forward/back

- ▸ Push the corresponding head restraint downward ⇨ *page 57*.

- ▸ Pull the release lever (1) in the direction of the arrow and fold the backrest forward.
- ▸ Fold the backrest down until it latches securely. When you can no longer see the red mark on the pin (2), the seat is latched.

Pass-through

Applies to: vehicles with pass-through

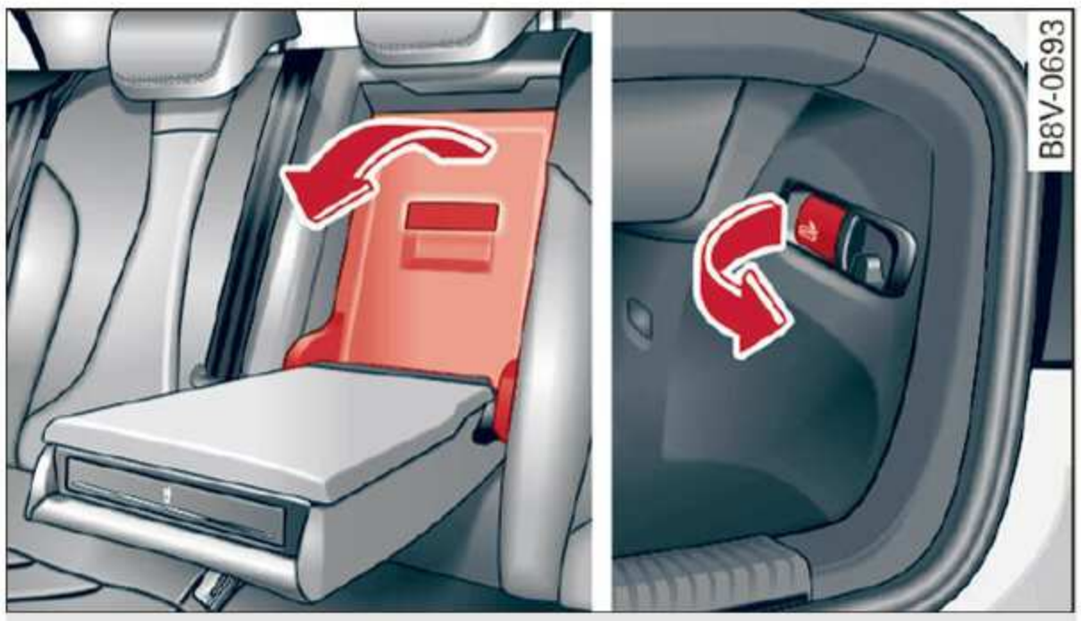


Fig. 79 Version 1: left side: backrest: pass-through cover; Version 2: right side: luggage compartment: release lever

Follow the safety precautions ⇨ *page 60*.

Opening/closing the pass-through from the vehicle interior

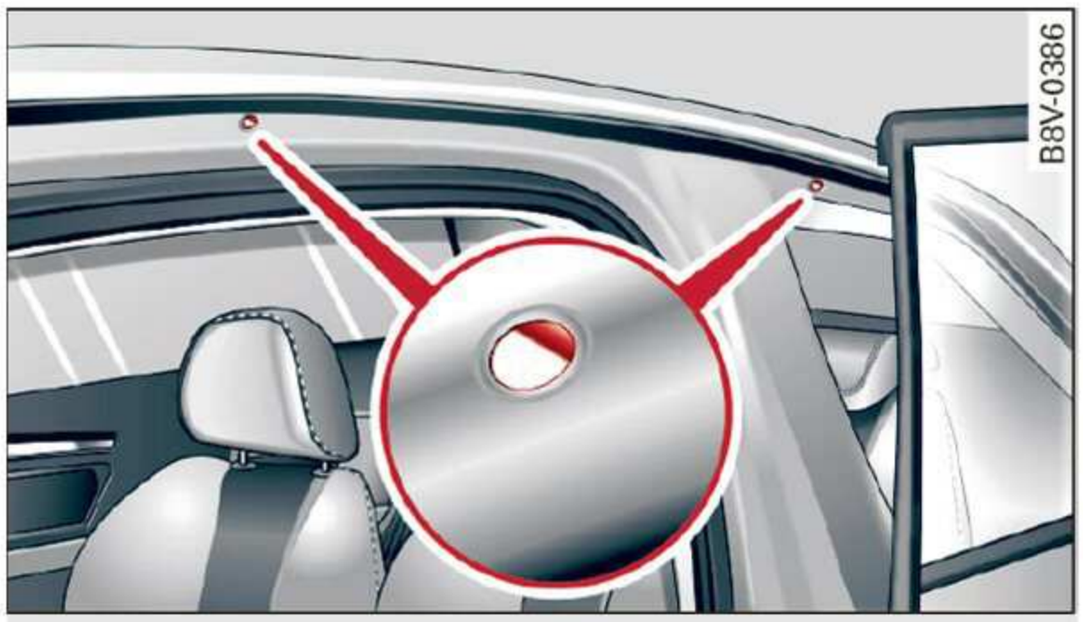
- ▸ Applies to: version 1: To open the pass-through, fold down the center armrest in the backrest and fold down the pass-through cover in the direction of the arrow ⇨ *fig. 79*.
- ▸ Applies to: version 1: To close the pass-through, fold up the pass-through cover and the center armrest ⇨ *fig. 79*.

Opening/closing the pass-through from the luggage compartment

- ▸ Applies to: version 2: To fold the backrest forward, pull the release lever on the respective seat in the direction of the arrow. The backrest will fold forward automatically after it has been released.
- ▸ Applies to: version 1: To open the pass-through, press the lever in the rear seat backrest downward.
- ▸ To close the pass-through, fold the backrest back until it latches securely.

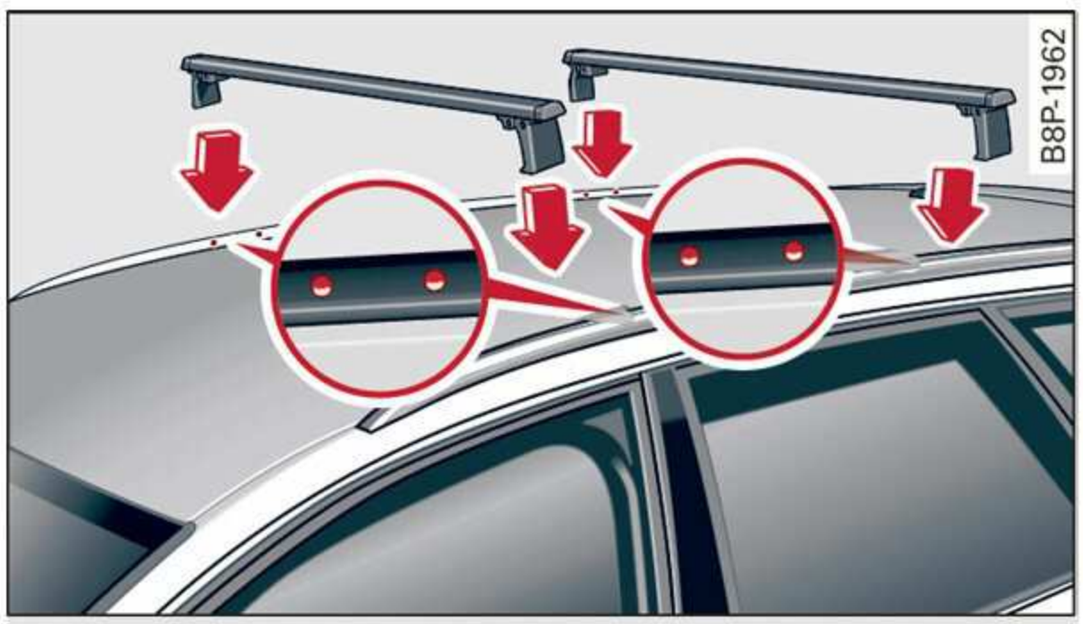
Roof rack

Applies to: vehicles with roof rack



Applies to: vehicles without roof rail

Fig. 80 Roof: mounting points



Applies to: vehicles with roof rail

Fig. 81 Roof rail: mounting points

If luggage or cargo is to be carried on the roof, you must observe the following:

- – Only approved roof racks may be used on your vehicle. These roof racks are the basis for a complete roof rack system. Additional attachments or carrier systems are needed to transport luggage and sports equipment. Roof racks and attachments from the Audi Genuine Accessories program are recommended.
- – When installing the roof rack, make sure that it is mounted only at the designated points on the roof ⇨ *fig. 80* or ⇨ *fig. 81*.
- – Note the permitted axle load, permitted total weight, and permitted roof load of your vehicle ⇨ *page 380*. The roof load is the total of the weight of the roof rack, the attachments and the cargo you are carrying. However, you must also note the permitted load of the carrier system being used. ▶

WARNING

– Follow the installation instructions provided with the roof rack system. If you do not secure the roof rack system and objects on the roof correctly, they could come loose from the vehicle and cause an accident.
– The risk of an accident increases when using a roof rack system, because it changes the driving characteristics by shifting the center of gravity and/or the increasing the surface area exposed to wind. You may need to adapt your driving style and speed to the current conditions.

Note

– If you use other roof luggage rack systems or do not install the racks as intended, any damage to the vehicle is not covered by the warranty. Carefully follow the assembly and installation instructions included with the roof rack carrier system.
– Make sure that the luggage compartment lid and the panoramic glass roof* do not come into contact with objects on the roof when they are open.

For the sake of the environment

Your vehicle will use more energy due to the increased wind resistance. Remove the roof rack when you are no longer using it.

Warm and cold

Climate control system

Description

Your vehicle has a deluxe automatic climate control system with two zones where the temperature, air distribution, and amount of air can be adjusted separately on the left and right front sides.

The climate control system circulates, warms or cools, and removes humidity from the air in the vehicle interior. It is the most effective when the windows and panoramic glass roof* or power top* are closed. If there is a build-up of heat inside the vehicle, ventilation can help to speed up the cooling process.

Pollutant filter

The pollutant filter removes pollutants such as dust and pollen from the air.

Presets

Several functions can be preset in the Infotainment system.

Select in the Infotainment system: MENU button > **Vehicle** > left control button > **Air conditioning**

WARNING

Poor visibility can lead to accidents.

- For safer driving, keep all windows free of ice, snow and fog.
- Become familiar with the correct use and function of the climate control system as quickly as possible, especially with the defrosting and defogging functions.
- When the temperature is below freezing, only use the windshield washer system after the windshield has been warmed by the climate control system. The washer fluid could freeze on the windshield and impair visibility.

Note

- If you suspect that the climate control system is damaged, switch the system off to prevent further damage and have it checked by an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility.
- Repairs to the Audi climate control system require special technical knowledge and special tools. See an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility.

For the sake of the environment

- Energy can be saved by switching off the A/C mode.
- In vehicles with the efficiency program*, you can find other consumption information and more economy tips ⇨ *page 23*.

Tips

- To prevent interference with the heating and cooling output and to prevent the windows from fogging over, the air intake in front of the windshield must be free of ice, snow, and leaves.
- Condensation from the cooling system can drip and form a puddle of water under the vehicle. This is normal and does not mean there is a leak.
- The energy management system may temporarily switch off certain functions, such as the seat heating* or rear window defogger. These systems are available again as soon as the energy supply has been restored.
- The climate control settings are automatically stored and assigned to the vehicle key that is in use. These settings are different when the power top* is open or closed.

8V2012721BK

2-zone deluxe automatic climate control

Applies to: vehicles with 2-zone deluxe automatic climate control



Fig. 82 2-zone deluxe automatic climate control: controls

The functions can be switched on and off by pressing the buttons or adjusted by turning the knob. The LED in a button will light up when the function is switched on.

The deluxe climate control system automatically maintains a temperature once it has been set. In all heating mode functions except defrost, the blower only switches to a higher speed once the engine coolant has reached a certain temperature.

AUTO **Automatic mode or eco mode***

Automatic mode maintains a constant temperature inside the vehicle. Air temperature, airflow and air distribution are controlled automatically. AUTO mode switches off once a button in the climate control system is pressed.

Applies to: vehicles with eco mode: Pressing the AUTO button briefly when automatic mode is active will activate the energy-saving mode of the climate control system. **eco** will appear on the control panel display. You can end eco mode by pressing the AUTO button again.

A/C **cooling mode**

The cooling mode only functions with the blower turned on. You can turn the cooling system on or off by pressing the A/C button. The air is not cooled and humidity is not removed when cooling mode is switched off. This can cause fog on the windows. The cooling mode switches off automatically when there are cold outside temperatures.

🔵 / 🔴 **Temperature**

The temperature for the driver's and front passenger's side can be adjusted separately with the dials ①/②. Temperatures between 60 °F (+16 °C) and 84 °F (+28 °C) can be set. If outside of this range, **LO** or **HI** will appear in the climate control system display. In both settings, the climate control runs constantly at the maximum cooling or heating level. The temperature is not regulated.

Synchronization: Pressing and holding the AUTO button for two seconds transfers the temperature setting for the driver to the front passenger's side. This applies a temperature change to the front passenger's side.

Blower

Using the dial , you can manually adjust the volume of air generated by the blower to your preference. The blower should always run at a low setting to prevent the windows from fogging and to ensure a continuous exchange of air inside the vehicle. To have the blower regulated automatically, press the AUTO button. ▶

Air distribution and vents

The air distribution can adjusted with the buttons. To have the air distribution regulated automatically, press the AUTO button.

The round air vents in the cockpit are adjustable ⇨ *page 68*.

To keep the front side windows from fogging up in damp weather, we recommend opening the side air vents and tilting them to the side.

Foot vents are located under the front seats and adjustable vents on the end of the center console to heat the rear of the vehicle.

Defrosting

The windshield and side windows are defrosted or cleared of condensation as quickly as possible. The maximum amount of air flows mainly from the vents below the windshield. Recirculation mode switches off. The temperature should be set at +72°F (22°C) or higher. The temperature is controlled automatically. In the MAX setting, the A/C cooling mode switches on automatically, depending on the outside air temperature.

The AUTO button switches the defroster off.

Recirculation mode

The recirculation mode can be turned on manually or automatically*.

– Switching manual recirculation mode on and off: press the button.
– Automatic* recirculation mode: auto recirculation needs to be activated in the Infotainment system. Select in the Infotainment system: MENU button > **Vehicle** > left control button > **Air conditioning** > **Auto recirculation**. The air quality sensor that is designed for diesel and gasoline exhaust automatically switches the recirculation mode on or off depending on the level of pollutants in the outside air.

In recirculation mode, the air inside the vehicle is circulated and filtered. This prevents the unfiltered air outside the vehicle from entering the vehicle interior. Switching recirculation mode on when driving through a tunnel or when sitting in traffic is recommended ⇨ ⚠.

Pressing the button, AUTO or the MAX button switches recirculation mode off.

REAR Rear window heating

If the rear window defogger is activated when the ignition is switched on, the battery management determines based on the battery charge if it is possible to turn on. Otherwise, the rear window defogger functions with the engine running and switches off automatically after approximately 10 - 20 minutes, depending on the outside temperature.

To prevent the rear window defogger from switching off automatically, press and hold the REAR button for more than two seconds.

Seat heating*

Pressing the button switches the seat heating on at the highest setting (level 3). The LEDs indicate the temperature level. To reduce the temperature, press the button again. To switch the seat heating off, press the button repeatedly until the LED turns off.

After approximately 10 minutes, the seat heating automatically switches from level 3 to level 2.

WARNING

– You should not use the recirculation mode for an extended period of time, because no fresh air is drawn in and the windows can fog when cooling mode is switched off. This increases the risk of an accident.
– Individuals with reduced sensitivity to pain or temperature could develop burns when using the seat heating function. To reduce the risk of injury, these individuals should not use seat heating.

Note

To reduce the risk of damage to the seat heating elements, do not kneel on the seats or place heavy pressure on one area of the seat.

Tips

If the front passenger's seat heating is turned on, it will not turn on again automatically if more than 10 minutes have passed between ▶

switching the ignition off and switching it on again.

Adjusting the vents

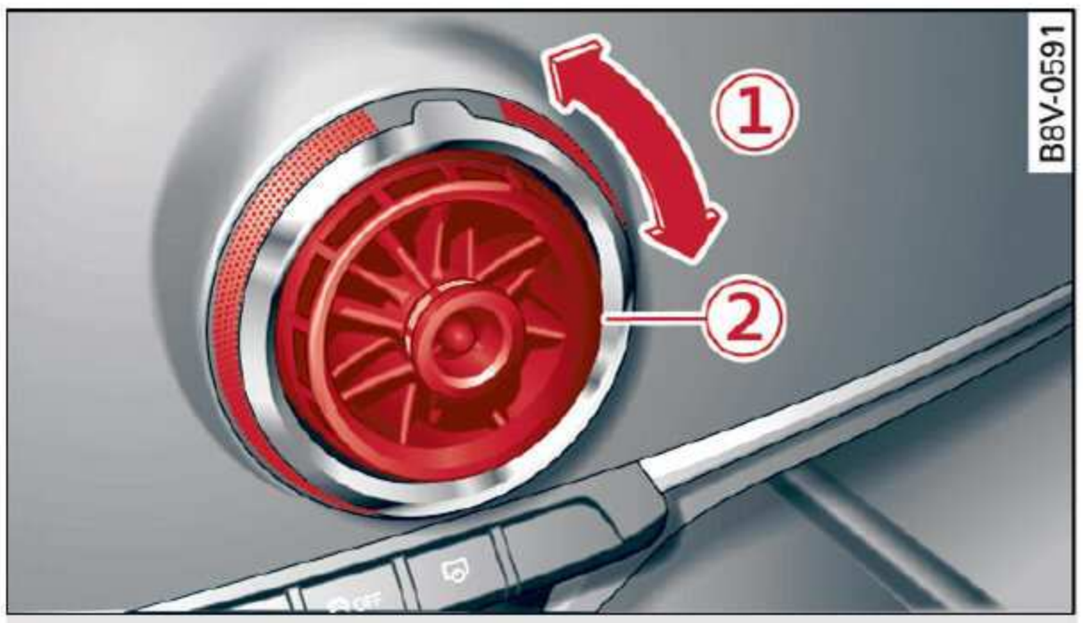


Fig. 83 Cockpit: adjusting the air vents

The following settings are possible:

– ① Air flow amount
– ② Air flow direction

To adjust the **air flow amount**, turn the ridged outer adjusting ring ①. To stop the air flow, turn the adjusting ring all the way to the right.

To adjust the **air flow direction**, turn the air vent grill insert ②.

Steering wheel heating

Switching on and off

Applies to: vehicles with steering wheel heating

▸ Press the button on the multifunction steering wheel to switch the steering wheel heating on and off.

Tips

The steering wheel heating settings are stored automatically and assigned to the vehicle key that is in use.

Messages

Applies to: vehicles with steering wheel heating

Steering wheel heating: on / Steering wheel heating: off

This message appears if you switched the steering wheel heating on or off by pressing the button on the multifunction steering wheel.

Steering wheel heating: malfunction! See owner's manual

If this message appears, there is a malfunction. Drive immediately to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility to have the malfunction repaired.

Auxiliary climate control

Description

Applies to: vehicles with auxiliary climate control

The auxiliary climate control system warms or cools the vehicle interior. The vehicle will turn on the auxiliary climate control system if needed, depending on the last temperature that was set with the climate control system controls. This function can be used when the drive system is switched off.

You can turn the auxiliary climate control system on and off immediately in the Infotainment system or set a timer.

Requirement: the high-voltage battery must have a sufficient charge level and there must be enough fuel in the tank.

Tips

– The temperature that the climate control system adjusts to depends on the last temperature you set in the climate control unit.
– Using the auxiliary climate control while charging can also reduce the charge level of the high-voltage battery.
– The auxiliary climate control system will not turn on automatically or will turn off earlier if the high-voltage battery charge or fuel supply are too low, even if the vehicle is being charged at the time.
– Starting or stopping the vehicle will not switch off the auxiliary climate control automatically.

Switching on and off

Applies to: vehicles with auxiliary climate control

Switching the auxiliary climate control on/off:

- Select the MENU button > **Vehicle** > left control button > **Auxiliary air conditioning** > **Turn on auxiliary air conditioning** or **Turn off auxiliary air conditioning**.

Tips

The auxiliary climate control can also be switched on and off immediately when a timer is set.

Setting the timer

Applies to: vehicles with auxiliary climate control

By setting the departure time, you determine when your vehicle should reach the desired temperature. You can set the timer in the auxiliary air conditioning menu in the Infotainment system.

Auxiliary climate control: setting the timer

- Select: MENU button > **Vehicle** > left control button > **Auxiliary A/C** > right control button > **Program timer**.
- Set the time and the date.
- Press the BACK button.
- Confirm the setting with the control knob to activate the timer. A ✓ appears in the box.

Error messages

- The high-voltage battery charge level is too low to heat/air condition the vehicle using only electric power. Vehicles with auxiliary heating/air conditioning* can continue to be heated or cooled using the fuel in the tank.

If one of the following symbols appears in the display, then you cannot switch on the auxiliary climate control system or auxiliary heating/air conditioning*:

- There is a system malfunction.

- The fuel level is too low.

Tips

- If you switch the ignition off, the timer settings will appear in the Infotainment system display. You can still adjust the settings for several minutes. The climate control system can be started immediately, which will maintain the desired climate control conditions while you are not in the vehicle.
- You can set the timer a maximum of seven days in advance.
- You can operate the climate control in the vehicle interior when the high-voltage battery is charging using the charging timer ⇨ *page 106*. The target climate control output depends on the power supply capacity.
- Make sure the time and date match in the Infotainment system settings so that the timer can function correctly ⇨ *page 230*.
- The auxiliary climate control can continue to run after the departure time is reached.

Fluids in the A/C system

Refrigerant in the A/C system

The sticker in the engine compartment provides information about the type and amount of refrigerant used in the vehicle's A/C system. The sticker is located in the front section of the engine compartment or at the front or back of the hood.

Symbol	Meaning
	Warning: the A/C system must only be serviced by qualified technicians.
	Refrigerant type
	Lubricant type
	Refer to the service information (only available for authorized Audi dealers or authorized Audi Service Facilities)
	The A/C system must only be serviced by qualified technicians.

Symbol	Meaning
	Flammable refrigerant
	Make sure all components are disposed of correctly and never install components in the vehicle that have been removed from old vehicles or taken from recycling.

Lubricant in the A/C system

The exact specification and amount of lubricant in the A/C system can be obtained from an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility or at https://erwin.audiusa.com/erwin.

WARNING

To ensure secure and safe operation, the A/C system must only be serviced by qualified technicians.

Tips

- Never repair the A/C system evaporator with components from old vehicles or from recycling.
- New replacement evaporators for portable A/C systems must be certified and labeled as such, so that they comply with the SAE standard J2842 HFO-1234yf and R744.

Driving

Starting the vehicle

Convenience key

Applies to: vehicles with convenience key



Fig. 84 Center console: starting the engine

Requirement: the key must be in the vehicle.

Starting the engine

- ▸ Press and hold the brake pedal.
- ▸ Press the START ENGINE STOP button. The engine will start.

Plug-in hybrid drive: the electric drive system is switched on. The combustion engine only starts when necessary. The power meter indicates if the electric drive system is switched on ⇨ *page 16*.

Equipment that uses a lot of electricity is switched off temporarily when you start the engine. If the engine does not start immediately, the starting procedure stops automatically after a short time. If this is the case, repeat the starting procedure after approximately 30 seconds.

When temperatures are low, the engine may only start in “P”.

Stopping the engine

- ▸ Bring the vehicle to a full stop.
- ▸ Press the START ENGINE STOP button. The engine will switch off.

Plug-in-hybrid drive: the electric drive system and the combustion engine are switched off.

Applies to: vehicles with steering lock: The steering is locked when you turn off the engine and open the driver's door. The steering lock helps prevent vehicle theft. “P” must be engaged on vehicles with an automatic transmission.

Stopping the engine in an emergency

If necessary in an emergency, the engine can also be stopped while driving using the emergency off function*.

- ▸ Press the START ENGINE STOP button twice in a row or press and hold it one time.

Switching on and off

If you would like to switch the ignition on or off without starting the engine, follow these steps:

- ▸ Press the START ENGINE STOP button without pressing the brake pedal.

Switching the ignition off automatically

To prevent the vehicle battery from draining, the ignition and possibly the exterior lighting may switch off automatically.

Requirements:

– Conventional drive system: the Start/Stop system must have stopped the engine.
– Plug-in hybrid drive: you must have driven the vehicle. If the gasoline engine is not running
– You must not be in the vehicle.
– The ignition must be switched on.

Among other indicators, the system detects that you have left the vehicle based on the following factors:

– The driver's door has been opened.
– The driver's safety belt has been unbuckled.
– The brake pedal is not being pressed.

WARNING

– To reduce the risk of asphyxiation, never allow the engine to run in confined spaces.
– Never turn off the engine before the vehicle has come to a complete stop. Switching it off before the vehicle has stopped may impair the function of the brake booster and power steering. You would then need to use more force to steer and brake the vehicle. The fact that you cannot steer and brake as usual may increase the risk of accidents and serious injuries.

– Plug-in hybrid drive: never leave the vehicle unattended in drive ready mode while a gear is engaged. The vehicle can start moving ("creeping") even if the gasoline engine is switched off, since the electric motor is still operating. This may cause collisions and severe or fatal injuries. When the vehicle enters drive ready mode, the status message **e-tron READY** appears briefly in the instrument cluster display and the needle in the power meter points to **READY** ⇨ *page 16*.

Note

– Avoid high engine speed, full throttle, and heavy engine load if the engine has not reached operating temperature yet. You could damage the engine.
– If the engine has been under heavy load for an extended period of time, heat builds up in the engine compartment after the engine is switched off and there is a risk of damaging the engine. For this reason, let the engine run at idle for approximately two minutes before shutting it off.

Tips

– Brief noises are normal when starting and stopping the vehicle and are no cause for concern.
– For up to 10 minutes after stopping the engine, the radiator fan may turn on again automatically or it may continue to run, even if the ignition is switched off.
– It may not be possible to start the vehicle in extremely low temperatures.

Ignition key

Applies to: vehicles with ignition lock

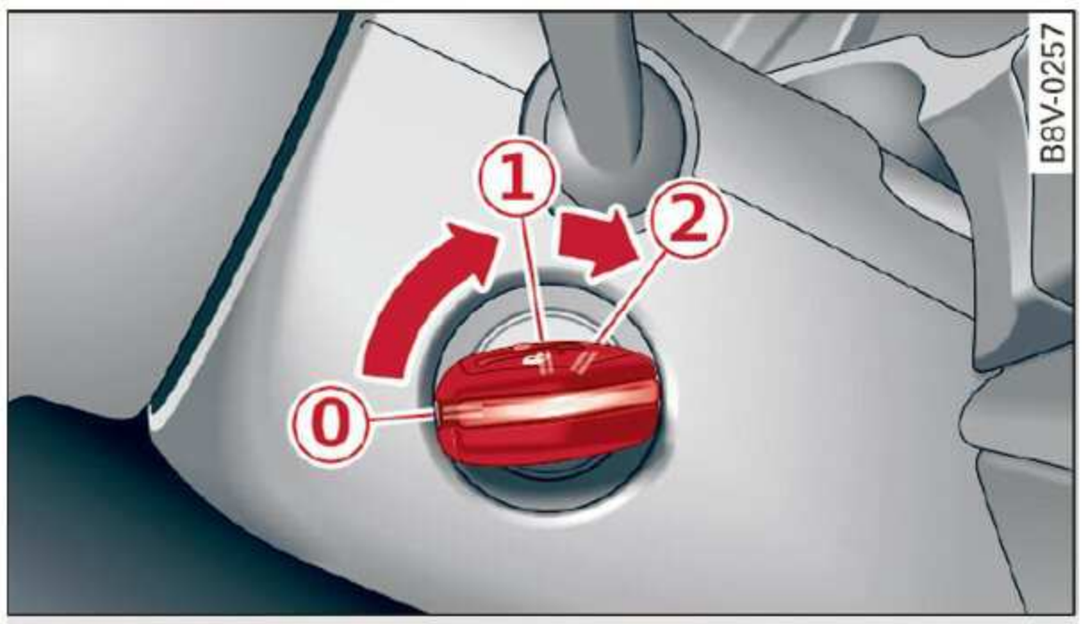


Fig. 85 Steering column: ignition lock

Starting the engine

▸ Press the brake pedal.
▸ Insert the ignition key into the ignition lock.
▸ Turn the key briefly to position ②. The ignition key automatically returns to position ①. Do not press the accelerator pedal when doing this.
▸ The engine will start and the vehicle will then be ready to drive.

Equipment that uses a lot of electricity is switched off temporarily when you start the engine. If the engine does not start immediately, stop the starting procedure by turning the ignition key to position ⓪ and repeat after 30 seconds.

When temperatures are low, the engine may only start in "P".

If it is difficult to turn the key to position ①, turn the steering wheel back and forth slightly to release the steering lock.

Stopping the engine

▸ Bring the vehicle to a full stop.
▸ Turn the key to position ⓪. The engine will switch off.

The key can only be removed when the vehicle is in "P".

Activating the steering lock

Applies to: vehicles with steering lock

The steering lock helps prevent vehicle theft.

▸ Remove the ignition key.
▸ Turn the steering wheel until the steering wheel audibly locks. ▶

Switching the ignition on or off

If you would like to switch the ignition on or off without starting the engine, follow these steps:

- ▸ Switching on: turn the key to position (1).
- ▸ Switching off: turn the key to position (0).

WARNING

- – To reduce the risk of asphyxiation, never allow the engine to run in confined spaces.
- – Never turn off the engine before the vehicle has come to a complete stop. Switching it off before the vehicle has stopped may impair the function of the brake booster and power steering. You would then need to use more force to steer and brake the vehicle. The fact that you cannot steer and brake as usual may increase the risk of accidents and serious injuries.
- – Never remove the ignition key from the ignition lock while the vehicle is moving. Otherwise, the steering lock could engage and you would not be able to steer the vehicle, which increases the risk of an accident.

Note

- – Avoid high engine speed, full throttle, and heavy engine load if the engine has not reached operating temperature yet. You could damage the engine.
- – If the engine has been under heavy load for an extended period of time, heat builds up in the engine compartment after the engine is switched off and there is a risk of damaging the engine. For this reason, let the engine run at idle for approximately two minutes before shutting it off.

Tips

- – Brief noises are normal when starting and stopping the vehicle and are no cause for concern.
- – For up to 10 minutes after stopping the engine, the radiator fan may turn on again automatically or it may continue to run, even if the ignition is switched off.
- – It may not be possible to start the vehicle in extremely low temperatures.

Messages

Engine start system: malfunction! Please contact Service

There is a malfunction in the engine starting system. Drive immediately to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility to have the malfunction repaired.

Key not in vehicle?

Remote control key: key not detected. Is the key still in the vehicle?

The vehicle key was removed from the vehicle while the engine is running. If the vehicle key is no longer in the vehicle, you cannot switch the ignition on or start the engine once you stop it. You also cannot lock the vehicle from the outside.

Key not recognized. See owner's manual

Remote control key: hold back of key against the designated area. See owner's manual

The battery in the vehicle key may be drained or there may be a malfunction. To start the vehicle, you must also hold the vehicle key against the location shown ⇨ *page 71, fig. 84*.

If the malfunction remains, drive immediately to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility to have the malfunction corrected.

When driving

Starting to drive, stopping, and parking

Starting from a stop

- ▸ Press and hold the brake pedal.
- ▸ Start the engine.
- ▸ Select a gear.
- ▸ Release the parking brake.
- ▸ Release the brake pedal. The vehicle may roll.
- ▸ Press the accelerator pedal to accelerate.

Stopping and parking

- ▸ Bring the vehicle to a full stop and press and hold the brake pedal.
- ▸ Set the parking brake. ▶

- ▸ Select the “P” selector lever position to secure the vehicle from rolling away.
- ▸ Turn the steering wheel when parking on inclines so that the wheels will roll into the curb if the vehicle starts moving.
- ▸ Switch off the ignition before leaving the vehicle.

On hills, activate the parking brake first and then shift into the "P" selector lever position. This prevents too much stress from being placed on the locking mechanism.

WARNING

– Always set the parking brake when leaving your vehicle, even if for a short period of time. If the parking brake is not set, the vehicle could roll away, increasing the risk of an accident.
– Do not leave your vehicle unattended while the engine is running, because this increases the risk of an accident.
– If the parking brake is set, it can release automatically when the accelerator pedal is pressed. To reduce the risk of an accident, do not inadvertently press the accelerator pedal and always shift into “P” when the vehicle is stopped.
– If you leave the vehicle, switch the ignition off and take the key with you. This is especially important when leaving persons or animals in the vehicle. Otherwise, the vehicle could start unintentionally, the parking brake could release, or electronic equipment could activate, which increases the risk of an accident.
– No persons or animals should be left in a locked vehicle. Locked doors make it more difficult for emergency workers to enter the vehicle, which puts lives at risk.
– If you do not begin driving immediately after releasing the brake pedal, your vehicle may begin to roll backward. Press the brake pedal or set the parking brake immediately.

Note

If you have to stop on an incline, always press the brake pedal to hold the vehicle in place to reduce the risk of the vehicle rolling backward. Do not try to hold the vehicle in place by pressing and holding the accelerator pedal. The transmission can overheat, which increases the risk of damage.

Hill hold assist

If you take your foot off of the brake pedal when driving on hills, the braking force will be held for several seconds. At that time, you can start driving without the vehicle rolling backward.

Requirement: the driver's door must be closed, the engine must be on, and the vehicle must be traveling uphill.

- ▸ To activate hill hold assist, press and hold the brake pedal for several seconds while the vehicle is stationary.

WARNING

– If you do not begin driving immediately after releasing the brake pedal, your vehicle may begin to roll backward. Press the brake pedal or set the parking brake immediately.
– The hill hold assist cannot hold the vehicle on inclines in every scenario (for example, on slippery or icy ground).

Messages

Hill hold assist: unavailable

The hill hold assist is temporarily unavailable. Press the brake pedal to secure the vehicle from rolling away unintentionally.

Manual control!

The vehicle cannot be held in place automatically. Press the brake pedal to secure the vehicle from rolling away unintentionally.

Gears and driving programs

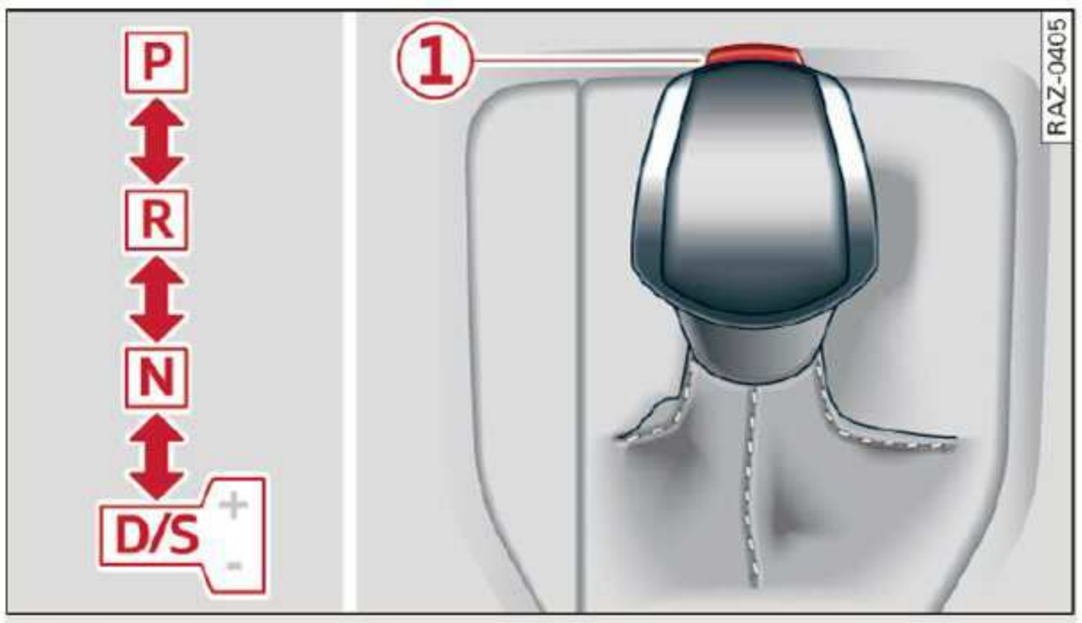


Fig. 86 Center console: selector lever

The automatic transmission shifts automatically depending on the selected gear and the current driving style. When driving with a moderate driving style, upshifting early and downshifting late will help to improve fuel economy. When driving with a sporty driving style, the transmission permits higher RPMs.

The gears are displayed next to the selector lever.

– **P** (Park): parking lock
– **R** (Reverse): driving in reverse
– **N** (Neutral)
– **D** (Drive): driving forward

Selecting a gear

Requirement: the ignition must be switched on.

– Bring the vehicle to a full stop and press the brake pedal.
– Press the release button ① on the selector lever.
– To select a gear, move the selector lever into the corresponding position.
– The label next to the selector lever for the selected gear will light up.

"N" (Neutral) gear

In the "N" gear, power is not transmitted to the driving wheels. Use the "N" gear in a car wash (with conveyor belts), for example.

If you unintentionally select "N" while driving (faster than 1 mph (2 km/h)), you can also shift back to "D" without pressing the brake pedal.

For safety reasons, the vehicle cannot be locked when the transmission is in the "N" gear.

"P" (Park) gear

The vehicle is secured from rolling away by the parking lock when in the "P" gear.

If you cannot shift out of "P", for example because the vehicle has no power, you may need to use the emergency release for the parking lock ⇨ *page 88*.

Selecting a driving program

Various driving programs can be selected when in the "D" gear. The programs influence when the transmission shifts and how the accelerator pedal responds.

The selected driving program is displayed in the instrument cluster.

– **D** (Drive): normal driving mode
– **S** (Sport): sporty driving mode

If you select the **Dynamic** mode in Audi drive select*, the "S" driving program will be activated. When the ignition is switched off, the driving program may be reset to "D".

To switch between the current driving program and "S", push the selector lever toward the rear.

Plug-in hybrid drive: if you press the EV button while in "S", the "D" driving program will be selected.

WARNING

– Before starting to drive, check if the desired gear is displayed next to the selector lever.
– Always secure your vehicle from rolling away. Press the brake pedal or shift to "P". When leaving the vehicle, also set the parking brake.
– Power is still transmitted to the wheels when the engine is running at idle. To prevent the vehicle from "creeping", you must keep your foot on the brake in all selector lever positions (except "P" and "N") when the engine is running.
– To reduce the risk of an accident, do not press the accelerator pedal when changing gears if the vehicle is stationary and the engine is running.

– Never select the “R" or "P” gears while driving. Doing so could cause an accident.
– The vehicle can roll even if the ignition is switched off.

Tips

If you shift between “D” and “R” within one second, you do not need to press the brake pedal. This makes it possible to “rock the vehicle if it is stuck”, for example.

Manual shifting

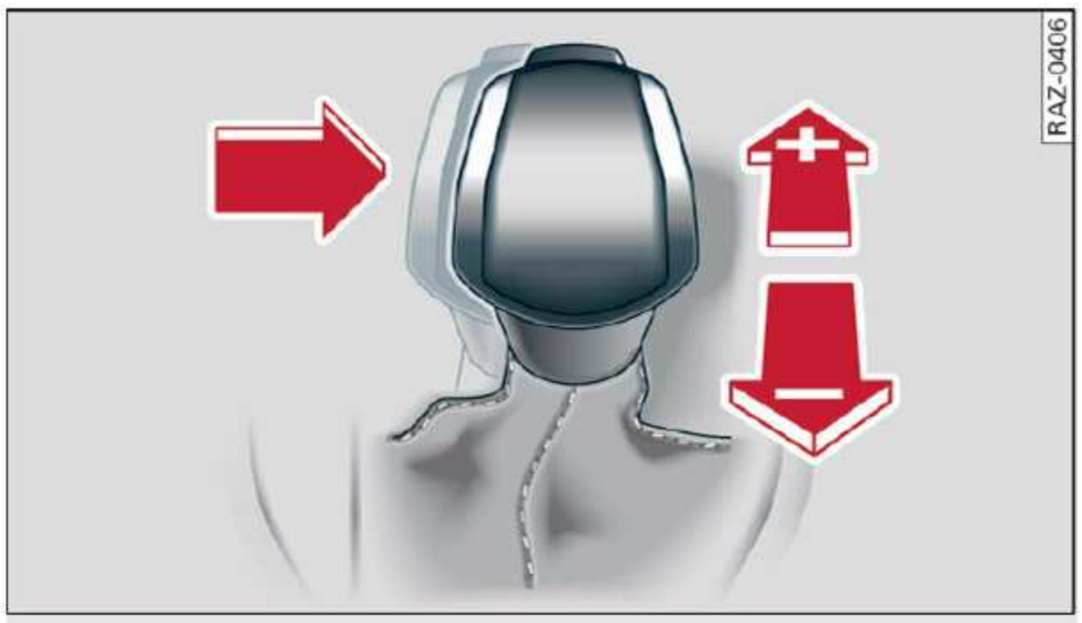


Fig. 87 Center console: shifting manually with the selector lever



Fig. 88 Steering wheel: shift paddles*

You can shift the gears manually when in “D” mode. The transmission must be in tiptronic mode.

Shifting with the selector lever

You can shift into manual shifting mode while the vehicle is stationary or while driving.

- To switch to manual shifting mode, tilt the selector lever toward the front passenger's side ⇨ *fig. 87*. “M” will be displayed in the instrument cluster.
- Upshifting: push the selector lever forward ⊕.
- Downshifting: push the selector lever toward the rear ⊖.
- To switch back to automatic mode, tilt the selector lever toward the driver's side.

Shifting with the shift paddles

Applies to: vehicles with shift paddles

- Upshifting: press the ⊕ shift paddle ⇨ *fig. 88*.
- Downshifting: press the ⊖ shift paddle.
- Applies to: RS models: To engage the lowest possible gear for maximum acceleration, press and hold the ⊖ shift paddle.
- To switch back to automatic mode, press and hold the ⊕ shift paddle or push the selector lever toward the rear.

If you stop using the shift paddles temporarily, the transmission will switch back to automatic mode. To keep shifting manually, tilt the selector lever toward the front passenger's side.

Tips

– The transmission only allows manual shifting when the engine speed is within the permitted range.
– The transmission automatically shifts up or down before critical engine speed is reached.
– Applies to: RS models: When accelerating, the transmission will **not** automatically shift to the next gear shortly before the maximum permitted engine RPM is reached. Shift to the next highest gear at the right time.

Accelerator pedal

Maximum acceleration

You can accelerate the vehicle using the accelerator pedal. If you press the accelerator pedal all the way down, the motor’s full power will be used and you will reach maximum acceleration, also called “kick-down”.

Applies to: vehicles with boost function: The electric motor can switch on for a brief period if the accelerator pedal is pressed all the way down in the “D” and “S” driving program. The availability of this function depends on the charge level of ▶

the high-voltage battery and the temperature of the drive system components, among other things.

WARNING

The driving wheels could spin and the vehicle could swerve on slick or slippery road surfaces when using kick-down, which increases the risk of an accident.

Launch Control

Applies to: vehicles with S tronic transmission and Launch Control

Launch Control provides the best possible acceleration when starting from a stop.

Requirements

- The engine must be at operating temperature.
- The steering wheel must not be turned.
- Start/Stop system* must be deactivated ⇨ *page 85*.
- ESC must be limited ⇨ *page 94*.
- Driving program "S" ⇨ *page 75* or the **dynamic** Audi drive select* mode must be selected ⇨ *page 91*.

Using Launch Control

- Press the brake pedal with your left foot and hold it all the way down for at least one second.
- With the brake pedal pressed, press the accelerator pedal all the way down with your right foot at the same time.
- Once the engine reaches a constant speed, remove your foot from the brake pedal.

Once the vehicle has started moving, reactivate the ESC so that it is fully functional.

WARNING

Only use Launch Control when road and traffic conditions allow it and other road users will not be endangered or impacted by your driving and the vehicle's acceleration. The driving wheels could spin and the vehicle could swerve, especially on slick or slippery road surfaces, which increases the risk of an accident.

Note

When accelerating using Launch Control, all vehicle components are subject to heavy loads. This can result in increased wear.

Tips

After accelerating using the Launch Control, the temperature of some vehicle components may increase greatly. If that happens, the function will not be available for a few minutes to reduce the risk of damage. After a cool-down period, Launch Control will be available again.

Messages

Transmission: malfunction! Safely stop vehicle

Do not continue driving. Stop the vehicle as soon as possible in a safe location and secure it so it does not roll. See an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility for assistance.

Transmission: too hot. Please stop vehicle

Do not continue driving. Select "P" and contact an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility for assistance.

Transmission: too hot. Please adapt driving style

The transmission temperature has increased significantly. Drive very cautiously or take a break from driving until the temperature returns to the normal range and the indicator light turns off.

Transmission: malfunction! You can continue driving. See owner's manual

There is a system malfunction in the transmission. You may continue driving. Drive to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility soon to have the malfunction corrected.

Transmission: malfunction! You can continue driving with limited function. Please contact Service

There is a system malfunction in the transmission. The transmission is switching to emergency mode. This mode only shifts into certain gears or ▶

may no longer shift at all. The engine may stall. Drive to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility immediately to have the malfunction corrected.

Transmission: malfunction! You can continue driving with limited function. No reverse gear

There is a system malfunction in the transmission. The transmission is switching to emergency mode. This mode only shifts into certain gears or may no longer shift at all. The engine may stall. You cannot engage the reverse gear. Drive to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility immediately to have the malfunction corrected.

Transmission: malfunction! You can continue driving in D until engine is off

There is a system malfunction in the transmission. The transmission is switching to emergency mode. If you turn the engine off, you will not be able to select any other gears after restarting the engine. Drive to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility immediately to have the malfunction corrected.

Danger of rolling away! P not possible. Please apply parking brake

- The parking lock was released using the emergency release ⇨ *page 88*. Or
- The parking lock can no longer be engaged. Drive to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility immediately to have the malfunction corrected.

Drive system

Breaking in

A new vehicle must be broken in within the first 1,000 miles (1,500 km) so that all moving parts work smoothly together, which helps to increase the service life of the engine and other drive components.

Do not drive higher than two-thirds of the maximum permitted engine RPM during the first 600 miles (1,000 km) and do not use full acceleration. The engine can be increased RPM gradually during the next 300 miles (500 km).

Conventional drive system

Applies to: vehicles with conventional drive system

Vehicles with a conventional drive system are powered by a combustion engine. It uses fuel to recover energy.

Plug-in hybrid drive

Applies to: vehicles with plug-in hybrid drive

With plug-in hybrid drive, you can select between the electric and combustion engine drive systems or combine them ⇨ *page 79*, ⇨ *page 76*.

Coasting

Applies to: vehicles with coasting function

Similar to vehicles with a conventional drive system, plug-in hybrid drive vehicles can also disengage the combustion engine to save fuel. The vehicle rolls without an engine braking effect in this mode, which is “similar to coasting”. However, the electric portion of the drive system remains engaged and recuperates if necessary. You can activate the coasting function in the “D” driving program up to approximately 112 mph (180 km/h). This occurs automatically when you take your foot off the accelerator pedal.

Recuperation

Applies to: vehicles with plug-in hybrid drive

The vehicle is able to recover energy by using “recuperation”. The electric drive system operates like a generator and converts a large portion of kinetic energy into electrical energy that is stored in the high-voltage battery. The vehicle is braked during recuperation, which is similar to the engine braking effect on a vehicle with a combustion engine. This will happen automatically when you press the brake pedal while driving in “D” gear, or when you remove your foot from the accelerator pedal.

The energy recovery is displayed in the energy flow display ⇨ *page 80*. The recuperation ▶

strength can depend on various factors, for example:

– If you are in tiptronic mode ⇨ *page 76*. Or
– If the sport driving mode "S" was selected.

Plug-in hybrid drive modes

Applies to: vehicles with plug-in hybrid drive

Adjusting the plug-in-hybrid mode

The EV button is located above the selector lever in the center console.

► Press the EV button repeatedly until the desired mode is displayed in the instrument cluster.

The active mode is displayed the first time the EV button is pressed. You can select between one electric mode and two hybrid modes.

Hybrid driving

If the EV button does not turn on, you are driving in hybrid mode. The vehicle can be driven with the combustion engine or with the electric motor if the conditions for it have been met ⇨ *page 79, Conditions for electric driving*.

e-tron mode: Hybrid – The electric motor and combustion engine are working efficiently together. Hybrid mode is particularly effective for long trips.

e-tron mode: Battery Hold – The vehicle is driven predominantly with the combustion engine to maintain the high-voltage battery charge level for as long as possible.

Electric driving

e-tron mode: EV – When EV mode is switched on, the EV button will turn on. The vehicle can be driven by the electric motor if the conditions for this have been met ⇨ *page 79, Conditions for electric driving*.

Conditions for electric driving

– Driving program “S” must not be selected.
– The charge level of the high-voltage battery must be sufficient.
– The temperature of the high-voltage battery must be adequate (outside temperatures not below approximately 14°F / -10°C and not above approximately 104°F / 40°C).
– The driving speed must be under approximately 80 mph (130 km/h).
– The accelerator pedal must not be pressed too hard.

Indicator lights

Symbol	Meaning
	EV mode is switched on and active. You are driving only with electric power.
	EV mode is not available, because the conditions for electric driving have not been met.
	The combustion engine is running.
	The hybrid mode **e-tron mode: Battery Hold** is active.
	The hybrid mode **e-tron mode: Hybrid** is active.

Tips

– When temperatures are below approximately 14 °F (–10 °C), the vehicle heat output in EV mode is reduced in order to attain higher ranges. If the windows fog up or a higher heat output is desired, switch on the Hybrid or Battery Hold mode.
– Applies to: Battery Hold mode: The high-voltage battery charge level can still decrease depending on the driving behavior.
– If you select the sport driving mode "S", the Battery Hold mode is automatically selected.

Tips

– It may be necessary for the gasoline engine to run longer for technical reasons, such as when condensation accumulates in the engine. Driving exclusively in electric mode is not possible in this phase.
– Before driving downhill a long distance on a steep hill, decrease your speed and select a lower gear. When driving with a trailer, the "S" selector lever position must be selected. This makes use of the engine braking effect and reduces the load placed on the brakes. ▶

If you need to brake additionally, brake in intervals and not continuously.

Energy flow display

Applies to: vehicles with plug-in hybrid drive

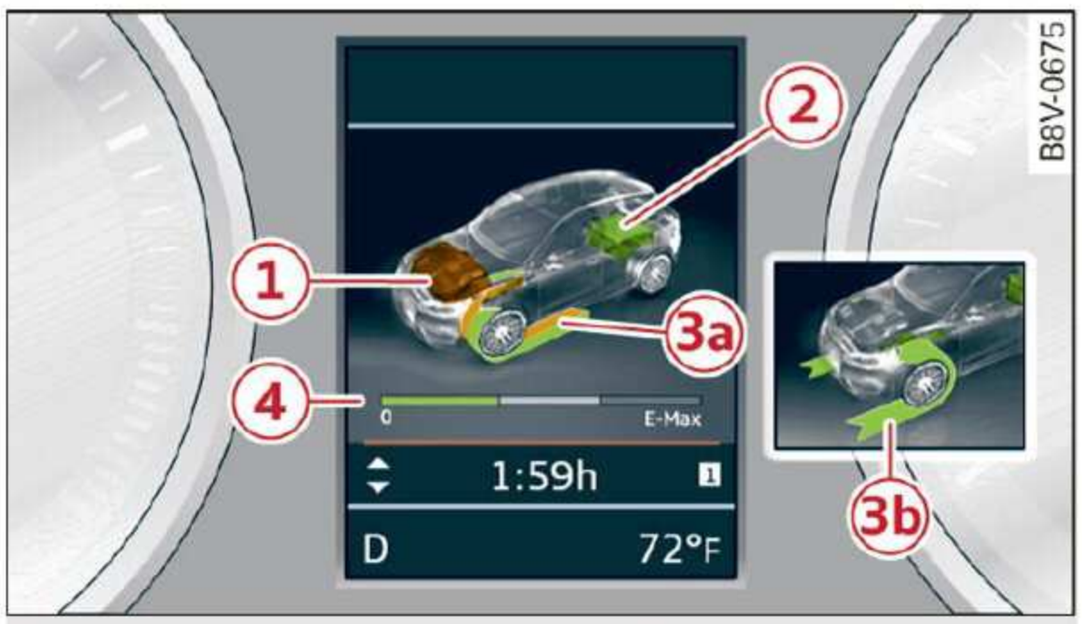


Fig. 89 Instrument cluster: energy flow display



Fig. 90 Infotainment system*: energy flow display

An energy flow display can be shown in the instrument cluster display/Infotainment system [1].

The image is animated in the Infotainment system [1].

Display of energy flow indicator in the instrument cluster display

- Open the first Vehicle tab (trip computer) using the ◁▷ button on the multifunction steering wheel.
- Applies to: vehicles with Audi virtual cockpit: Select on the multifunction steering wheel: left control button > **Energy flow**.
- Applies to: vehicles with analog instrument cluster: Open the **Energy flow indicator** by turning the left thumbwheel on the multifunction steering wheel.

Image in the Infotainment display[1]

- In the Infotainment system, select: MENU button > **Vehicle** > left control button > **Audi drive select**.

Component	Color	Meaning
① Gasoline engine	Orange	The gasoline engine is running
	Gray	The gasoline engine is off
② High-voltage battery	Green	High-voltage battery charge level
	Green (animated in the Infotainment system[a])	The high-voltage battery is charging
	Gray	The vehicle is not in drive ready mode

1) Not available in all Infotainment systems.

Component	Color	Meaning
(3a) Motion arrow	Green	Electric driving
	Orange	Driving with the gasoline engine
	Green-orange	Driving with the gasoline engine and electric motor (boost)
(3b) Motion arrow	Green	Recuperation

a) Not available in all Infotainment systems.

Range monitor

Applies to: vehicles with plug-in hybrid drive

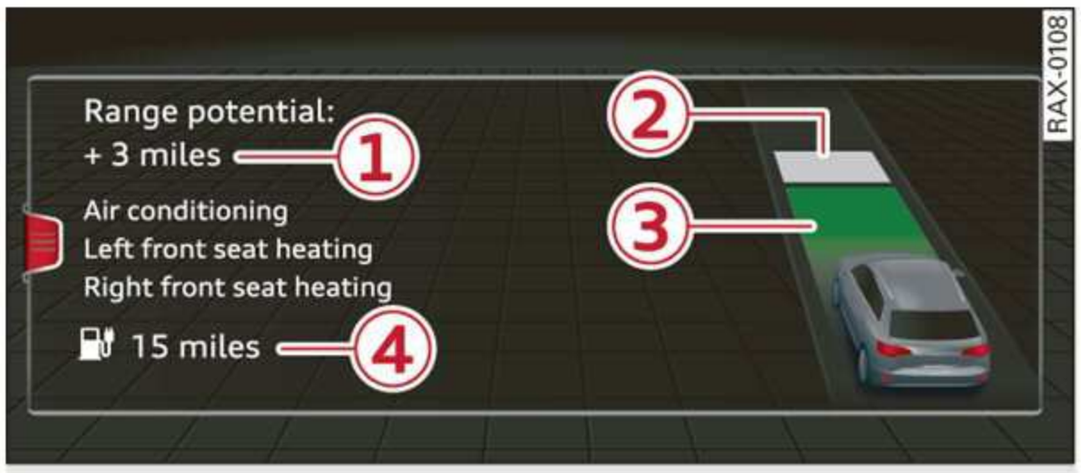


Fig. 91 Range monitor

You can display the projected range of the vehicle.

- Select in the Infotainment system: MENU button > **Vehicle** > left control button > **Range & statistics** > **Range**.

① Range potential (value)
② Range potential (graphic)
③ Total range (graphic)
④ Total range (value)

Range potential: the value indicates an additional amount of distance that can be gained by turning off certain convenience functions. The convenience functions with high energy usage are listed on the display.

Tips

– The range can also be displayed in the instrument cluster in the on-board computer.
– The values given are based on the latest consumption values.
– The range that is indicated is based on the previous and predicted consumption values. For example, these can be affected if convenience functions are turned on.

Statistics

Applies to: vehicles with plug-in hybrid drive

You can display statistics about the trips traveled using electric power and those using fuel. The values are taken from the short-term memory and long-term memory of the on-board computer.

- Select in the Infotainment system: MENU button > **Vehicle** > left control button > **Range & statistics** > **e-tron statistics**.

Vehicle sound

Applies to: vehicles with plug-in hybrid drive

The electric drive system generates considerably less noise than a combustion engine. An artificial engine sound is generated when driving electrically so that the vehicle can be heard from the outside when driving. The vehicle sound automatically fades out at higher speeds when the sounds from the tires and wind start increasing.

WARNING

Other road users may not be able to definitively hear electric vehicles when they are driving. This increases the risk of an accident particularly when driving in areas with little traffic, when maneuvering, or when driving in reverse.

Efficient and environmentally-conscious driving

Your driving style greatly influences the amount of fuel and energy consumed, the environmental impact, and the wear on the engine, brakes, and tires. Note the following information for efficient and environmentally-conscious driving: ▶

– Turn off electrical equipment that is not needed, for example seat heating*.
– Anticipate upcoming traffic situations while driving to avoid unnecessary acceleration and braking.
– Avoid driving at high speeds.
– Avoid adding extra weight to the vehicle if possible, for example by not leaving roof racks or bike racks installed when they are not needed.
– Make sure the tire pressure is correct.
– Have maintenance performed regularly on the vehicle.
– Do not drive with winter tires during the summer.
– Do not let the engine run while the vehicle parked.
– Use the Start/Stop system.
– Utilize the engine braking effect.
– Avoid driving short distances when possible.
– Plug-in hybrid drive: brake early and evenly to use the recuperation function.

Tips

The amount of noise produced by the vehicle can increase significantly when driving with a sporty style. Show respect to others around you and the environment with the way you operate your vehicle, especially at night.

Energy management

Your vehicle is equipped with an intelligent energy management system for distributing electricity. This significantly improves the starting ability and increases the vehicle battery life.

Tips

– If you drive short distances frequently, the vehicle battery may not charge enough while driving. As a result, convenience functions for electrical equipment may be temporarily unavailable.
– The vehicle battery will gradually drain if the vehicle is not driven for long periods of time, or if electrical equipment is used when the engine is not running. To ensure that the vehicle can still be started, the electrical equipment will be limited or switched off.

Messages

Engine stopped: power steering and brake booster not possible

There is a malfunction in the engine or the fuel supply. More force is needed to steer and brake the moving vehicle when the engine is stopped. If the vehicle is rolling, try to bring it to a stop off to the side from moving traffic. See an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility for assistance.

/ Drive system: malfunction! Safely stop vehicle

There is a malfunction in the plug-in hybrid system. The brake booster and the power steering may stop working. Stop the vehicle immediately at a suitable location or as soon as possible. Park the vehicle in a safe place outdoors that is not near buildings, roof overhangs, carports or similar structures. Switch the ignition off. Have the problem corrected by an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility.

/ Electric drive: overheated! Safely stop vehicle and check coolant

The coolant level is too low or the coolant temperature is too high. Stop the vehicle in the outdoors as soon as it is safely possible. Switch the ignition off.

Read the important safety precautions ⇨ ⚠ *in Coolant on page 312* and check the coolant level ⇨ *page 312*. If the coolant level is OK, the malfunction may be caused by the system overheating. Let the vehicle's electric drive system cool down for some time.

– If the message turns off after cooling down and switching the ignition back on, you can continue driving. Contact an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility immediately to have the malfunction corrected.
– If the indicator light stays on, contact an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility. ▶

/ e-tron Drive system: malfunction! Please contact Service

There is a malfunction in the drive system. Drive slowly to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility to have the malfunction corrected.

/ e-tron Drive system: malfunction! Restart not possible. Please contact Service

There is a malfunction in the plug-in hybrid system. Do not open the hood. Drive to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility immediately to have the malfunction corrected.

/ e-tron Battery temperature too low. Vehicle cannot be started. See owner's manual

The outside temperature is too low. The vehicle can no longer start at temperatures below -18 °F (-28 °C). Contact an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility.

POWER LIMIT / POWER LIMIT Warning! Limited performance

If the indicator light turns on and this message appears, there may be an engine control malfunction. The engine output is reduced. Drive to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility immediately to have the malfunction corrected.

Drive system: engine must be running. Please exit EV e-tron mode

It may be necessary for the gasoline engine to run longer for technical reasons, such as when condensation accumulates in the engine. Driving exclusively in electric mode is not possible in this phase.

Other indicator lights

If the / EPC indicator light turns on, there may be an engine control malfunction. Drive slowly to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility to have the engine checked.

WARNING

If the engine stops while driving, you will need to use more force to brake the vehicle. This increases the risk of an accident. There will still be power steering if the ignition is switched on while the vehicle is rolling and there is sufficient vehicle battery charge. Otherwise, you must use greater force when steering.

Start/Stop system

Description

Applies to: vehicles with Start/Stop system

The Start/Stop system can help increase fuel economy and reduce CO_2 emissions.

In Start/Stop mode, the engine shuts off automatically when the vehicle is stopped, such as at a traffic light. The ignition remains switched on during this Stop phase. The engine will restart automatically when needed.

The Start/Stop system is automatically activated once the ignition is switched on.

Basic requirements for Start/Stop mode

- The driver's door must be closed.
- The driver's seat belt much be fastened.
- The hood must be closed.
- The vehicle must have driven faster than 2 mph (3 km/h) since the last time it stopped.

Note

Always switch the Start/Stop system off when driving through water ⇨ *page 85*.

Tips

The engine stops shortly before the vehicle comes to a stop [1]. The full function of the brake booster and the power steering is still available.

[1] In certain countries.

Stopping/starting the engine

Applies to: vehicles with Start/Stop system



Fig. 92 Instrument cluster: engine switched off (Stop phase)

- ► Brake the vehicle to a stop. The engine stops shortly before the vehicle comes to a stop or if the vehicle is stationary [1]. Keep your foot on the brake pedal. The Ⓐ/ Ⓐ indicator light appears in the display. The needle in the tachometer also moves into the **READY** position.
- ► The engine starts again when you remove your foot from the brake pedal. The indicator light turns off.

Additional information

The engine stops in the "P", "N" and "D" selector lever positions.

If you select the "R" selector lever position during a Stop phase, the engine will start again.

Shift to "P" quickly to prevent the engine from starting unintentionally when shifting through "R".

You can control if the engine will stop or not by reducing or increasing the amount of force you use to press the brake pedal. For example, if you only lightly press on the brake pedal in stop-and-go traffic or when turning, the engine will not switch off when the vehicle is stationary. If you press the brake pedal harder, the engine will switch off.

Tips

– Press the brake pedal during a Stop phase to keep the vehicle from rolling.

– The ignition will turn off if you press the START ENGINE STOP button* during a Stop phase. The needle in the tachometer moves into the **OFF** position.

General information

Applies to: vehicles with Start/Stop system

Starting and stopping the engine automatically

The system checks if certain conditions are met before and during the Stop phase, and determines if the engine stops and how long it remains stopped. For example, if power usage is high, the engine will not be stopped. Along with other conditions, the following factors influence the automatic engine start or stop:

– Environmental conditions (slopes, inclines, elevation, temperature)
– Battery (charge status, temperature, power usage)
– Engine temperature
– Assist systems
– Driving behavior

Depending on the engine, the Ⓐ indicator light may appear if the engine is not stopped.

WARNING

To reduce the risk of asphyxiation, never allow the engine to run in confined spaces.

Tips

If you select the "D" or "N" selector lever position in a vehicle with an automatic transmission after shifting into reverse, the vehicle must be driven faster than 6 mph (10 km/h) in order for the engine to switch off again.

1) In certain countries.

Manually switching the Start/Stop system on/off

Applies to: vehicles with Start/Stop system

If you do not wish to use the system, you can switch it off manually.



Fig. 93 Center console: Start/Stop system button

▸ To switch the Start/Stop system off/on manually, press the Ⓐ OFF button. The LED in the button turns on when the system is switched off.

Tips

If you switch the system off during a Stop phase, the engine will start again automatically.

Messages in the instrument cluster display

Applies to: vehicles with Start/Stop system

Ⓐ Start/stop system: deactivated. Please start engine manually

This message appears when specific conditions are not met during a Stop phase. The Start/Stop system will **not** be able to restart the engine. The engine must be started manually.

Ⓐ Start/stop system: malfunction! Function unavailable

There is a malfunction in the Start/Stop system. Drive the vehicle to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Service Facility as soon as possible to have the malfunction corrected.

Brakes

General information

You can apply the vehicle's brakes using the brake pedal.

Operating noise

Noises may occur when braking depending on the speed, braking force, and outside conditions such as temperature and humidity.

Braking effect

The response time from the brakes depends on the weather and environmental conditions. If the brake system becomes damp, for example after driving in heavy rain, the braking effect may be delayed. Other factors that could temporarily increase the response time of the brakes include:

– Wet conditions
– Low temperatures, ice, and snow
– Roads covered in salt
– Dirty brake pads

To ensure the optimal braking effect, the brake system is cleaned at regular intervals. This is done by applying the brake pads to the brake rotors for a short period of time when driving at high speeds when the windshield wipers are switched on.

Corrosion

Corrosion may form on the brake rotors if there is no heavy braking, if the vehicle is not driven for long periods of time, or if the vehicle is not driven frequently or for long distances. This can cause noises when braking as well as an uneven braking effect. In this case, braking heavily several times while driving at high speeds can clean the brake rotors ⇨ ⚠.

Brake pads

New brake pads do not achieve their full braking effect during the first 250 miles (400 km). They must be “broken in” first. However, you can compensate for the slightly reduced braking force by pressing firmly on the brake pedal. Avoid heavy braking during the break-in period.

Brake pad wear depends largely on the way the vehicle is driven and on operating conditions. Brake pad wear increases when driving frequently in the city or short distances or when using a very sporty driving style. ▶

WARNING

- Only apply the brakes for the purpose of cleaning the brake system when road and traffic conditions permit. You must not endanger other road users and increase the risk of an accident.
- Due to the risk of injury, only have an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility work on the brake system. Incorrect repairs could impair the function.
- Never let the vehicle roll while the engine is stopped because this increases the risk of an accident.
- During automatic braking maneuvers, the brake pedal may move downward automatically. To reduce the risk of injury, do not place your foot under the brake pedal.

Note

- Never let the brakes "rub" by pressing the pedal lightly when braking is not actually necessary. This can cause the brakes to overheat and increases braking distance and causes wear.
- Observe the important information for driving downhill ⇨ *page 89*. This especially applies when towing a trailer.

Tips

- If you retrofit your vehicle with a front spoiler, wheel covers or similar items, make sure that the air flow to the brakes is not obstructed. Otherwise the brake system can overheat.
- Also refer to the information about brake fluid ⇨ *page 313*.

Messages

BRAKE / Brakes: malfunction! Safely stop vehicle

There is a malfunction in the brake system. If ABS / and also turn on, there is a malfunction in the ABS, ESC, and braking distribution.

Do not continue driving. See an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility for assistance. Read and follow the other safety precautions ⇨ ⚠.

BRAKE / Warning! Brake servo inoperative

If the brake booster is not working, you have to use much more force when braking the vehicle. See an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility for assistance.

BRAKE / Brake pads: wear limit reached. You can continue driving. Please contact Service

The brake pads are worn. Drive to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility as soon as possible to have the malfunction corrected.

Brake booster: limited functionality. You can continue driving. Please contact Service

There is a brake booster malfunction. The brake booster is available, but its effectiveness is reduced. The braking performance may be different compared to the usual performance. Drive to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility immediately to have the malfunction corrected.

Brake booster: deactivated. See owner's manual

The brake booster remains active for a brief period of time after switching off the ignition. Secure the vehicle from rolling by selecting "P" and setting the parking brake.

WARNING

If a malfunction occurs in the ABS, ESC, and braking distribution, interventions that stabilize the vehicle will no longer be available. This could cause the vehicle to swerve, which increases the risk that the vehicle will slide. Do not continue driving. See an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility for assistance.

Electromechanical parking brake

Operating the parking brake

The electromechanical parking brake is used to secure the vehicle from rolling away unintentionally.

The Ⓟ switch is located under the selector lever in the center console. It turns on when the parking brake is set. You can release the parking brake manually or automatically when you start to drive.

Setting and releasing the parking brake

- ▸ Setting: pull the Ⓟ switch.
- ▸ If PARK / Ⓟ appears, the parking brake is holding the vehicle. You can remove your foot from the brake pedal.
- ▸ Releasing: when the ignition is switched on, press and hold the brake pedal and press the Ⓟ button.

If the red indicator light flashes, the braking force has not built up enough or it has decreased. You can also secure the vehicle by selecting the “P” gear or pressing the brake pedal. Make sure the indicator light is off before you start driving.

Automatically releasing the parking brake when starting to drive

Requirement: the driver's door must be closed and the driver’s safety belt must be fastened.

- ▸ Press the accelerator pedal to start to drive.

WARNING

- To reduce the risk of an accident, always make sure the vehicle is situated safely while stationary.
- If the parking brake is set, it can release automatically when the accelerator pedal is pressed. To reduce the risk of an accident, do not inadvertently press the accelerator pedal and always shift into “P” when the vehicle is stopped.
- If the power supply fails, you cannot set the parking brake once it is released, or release it if it is set. In this case, park the vehicle on level ground and secure it by engaging the "P” gear. Contact an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility for assistance.

Tips

- On steep inclines, especially when in trailer mode, the vehicle may roll backwards unintentionally when starting to drive. To reduces the risk of this happening, pull and hold the Ⓟ switch while pressing the accelerator pedal. If enough drive power has built up at the wheels and the vehicle does not roll backwards, then release the switch to start to drive.
- If you leave the vehicle when “D” or “R” are engaged, the parking brake will be set automatically.
- Noises when the parking brake is set and released are normal and are not a cause for concern.
- The parking brake goes through a self-test cycle at regular intervals when the vehicle is stopped. Any noises associated with this are normal.

Emergency braking function

Emergency braking should only be used in an emergency, if the standard brake pedal is malfunctioning or obstructed. When the emergency braking function is activated, the braking effect is similar to a heavy braking maneuver.

- ▸ Pull and hold the Ⓟ switch while driving.
- ▸ An audio warning signal will sound and emergency braking will begin.
- ▸ If you press the accelerator pedal, emergency braking will be canceled.

WARNING

Heavy braking while driving through curves or in poor road or weather conditions can cause the vehicle to slide or the rear of the vehicle to swerve, which increases the risk of an accident.

Messages

BRAKE / Parking brake: malfunction! Safely stop vehicle. See owner's manual

There is a malfunction in the parking brake. If the message appears while stationary, check if the parking brake is released and can be reset. If this is the case, switch the ignition off and back on.

If the message continues to appear, if the parking brake cannot be released, or if the message appears while driving, then stop the vehicle on level ground and shift to “P”. Do not continue driving. See an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility for assistance.

BRAKE / Parking brake: malfunction! Please release parking brake

There is a malfunction in the parking brake. If the message appears while stationary, check if the parking brake is released and can be reset. If this is the case, switch the ignition off and back on.

If the message continues to appear, if the parking brake cannot be released, or if the message appears while driving, then stop the vehicle on level ground and shift to “P”. Do not continue driving. See an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility for assistance.

Parking brake: malfunction! Safely stop vehicle. See owner's manual

There is a malfunction in the parking brake. Drive to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility immediately to have the malfunction corrected. Do not park the vehicle on inclines and shift to “P”.

PARK BRAKE / PARK BRAKE / Parking brake: caution! Vehicle parked too steep

The braking force may not be enough to secure the vehicle from rolling away. Park the vehicle in a place with less of an incline.

PARK BRAKE / Parking brake: applied

The parking brake is set. Press and hold the brake pedal to release the parking brake.

Releasing the parking lock using the emergency release

Description

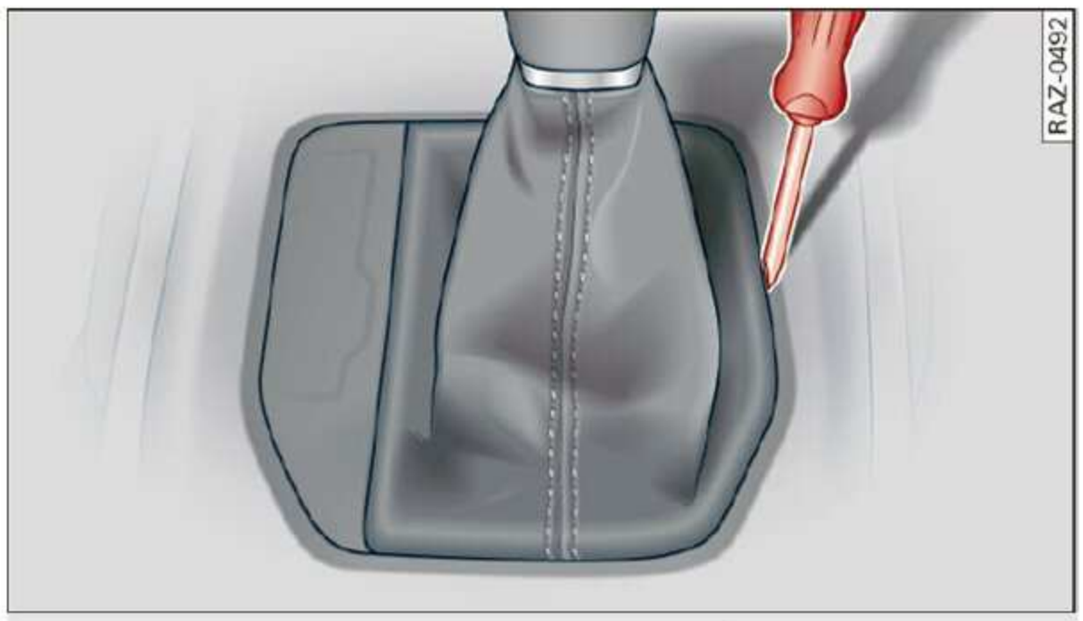


Fig. 94 Selector lever: removing the shifter boot

The emergency release is located under the selector lever shift gate. Using the emergency release can be complicated. See an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility for assistance.

You will need the screwdriver from the vehicle tool kit to release it ⇨ *page 348*. Use the flat side of the reversible screwdriver blade.

Removing the shifter boot

- ▸ Set the parking brake to secure your vehicle from rolling away. If this is not possible, secure your vehicle from rolling using another method.
- ▸ Switch the ignition off.
- ▸ To loosen the shifter boot, carefully insert the flat side of the screwdriver sideways into the slit near the shifter boot ⇨ *fig. 94*.
- ▸ Carefully pry the shifter boot out with the screwdriver while gripping the boot at the fold and pulling it upward and out until all four corners are released.
- ▸ Fold the shifter boot up around the shifter knob.

Releasing the parking lock using the emergency release

- ▸ Operate the emergency release ⇨ *page 89*.

Attaching the shift cover

- ▸ Clip the shift cover back into the shift gate. ▶

WARNING

– The parking lock may only be released using the emergency release if the parking brake is set. If it is not working, secure the vehicle from rolling using the brake pedal or other suitable means, such as blocking a front and a rear wheel. An unsecured vehicle may roll away, which increases the risk of an accident.
– Only activate the emergency release while on a level surface or a slight slope.
– To reduce the risk of an accident, you must not drive when the emergency release is activated.

Emergency release operation

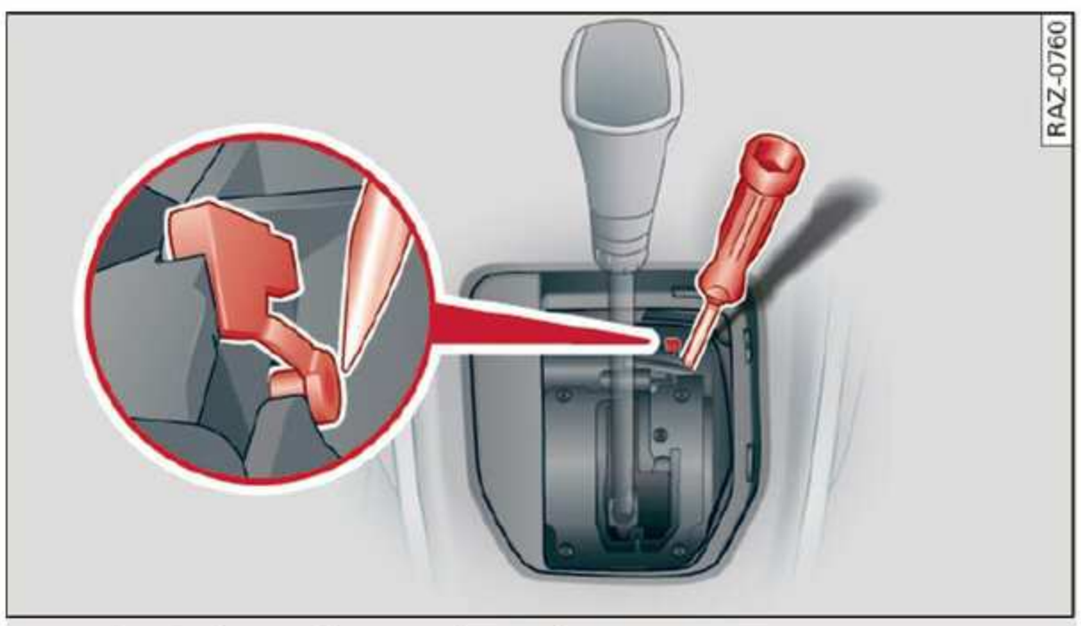


Fig. 95 Selector lever: release button

► Press and hold the yellow release button on the side with a screwdriver.
► Now press the unlock button on the selector lever and move the selector lever to the “N” position.

Special driving situations

Sporty driving

Applies to: RS models

When driving in a sporty style, for example on a driving track, the wear on all vehicle components is greatly increased, especially on the engine, transmission, tires, brakes, and suspension. This can result in increased wear. Also note the following points:

– Make sure the vehicle is in good condition. Make sure to check the brake pads, tire tread, and tire pressure (when tires are warm).
– Beforehand, warm up the engine by driving no higher than two-thirds of the maximum permitted engine RPM. The engine oil must be brought to a minimum temperature of 158 °F (70 °C).
– Before stopping the vehicle, allow the engine and brakes to cool back down to a regular operating temperature by driving normally.

If necessary, use the following functions:

– Audi drive select* **dynamic mode** ⇨ *page 91*
– Launch Control ⇨ *page 77*
– Limit ESC ⇨ *page 94*

Tips

Wear caused by load does not constitute a vehicle fault as defined by the terms of the warranty.

Driving uphill and downhill

Please note the following when driving on inclines and hills:

– Drive slowly and carefully.
– Do not try to turn around if you cannot safely drive on an incline or hill. Instead, drive in reverse.
– When driving down hills, you can activate the hill descent control if you press the brake pedal while driving in “D” gear. The automatic transmission will select a gear suitable for driving down the hill and will attempt to maintain the speed at which the vehicle was traveling at the time the brake pedal was pressed. Press the brake pedal if necessary. The hill descent control will switch off once the hill levels out or you press the accelerator pedal.
– Utilize the engine braking effect when driving downhill by selecting the “S” driving program ⇨ *page 75*. This especially applies when towing a trailer. This reduces the load on the brakes.
– Brake in intervals and do not press the brake pedal continuously.

WARNING

– Only drive on inclines that your vehicle is designed to handle. Do not exceed the hill ▶

climbing ability of your vehicle. Your vehicle could tip or slide.
– Do not drive at an angle on steep inclines and hills. If your vehicle is about to tip, you must immediately start steering in the direction of the downward slope to reduce the risk of an accident.
– Always be ready to brake when using the hill descent control function.

Driving through water

If you must drive through water, follow these instructions:

– Check the stability of the ground, the current, and the water depth. If the ground is unstable, there is a strong current, or there are waves, the water must only reach **up to the lower edge of the body at the most**.
– Deactivate the Start/Stop system*.
– Drive carefully and no faster than at walking speeds to prevent the front of the vehicle from creating waves, because they could splash above the lower edge of the body. Oncoming vehicles could also create waves.
– Do not stop the vehicle while in the water.
– Drive in reverse.
– Do not turn the engine off.

WARNING

After driving through water, press the brake pedal carefully to dry the brakes so that the full braking effect will be restored.

Note

Vehicle components such as the engine, drive system, suspension, or electrical system can be severely damaged by driving through water.

Tips

If possible, avoid driving through salt water because it increases the risk of corrosion. Use fresh water to clean any vehicle components that come into contact with salt water.

Driving dynamic

Audi drive select

Introduction

Applies to: vehicles with Audi drive select

Drive select makes it possible to experience different types of vehicle characteristics in one vehicle. With different driving modes, the driver can switch the setting, for example from sporty to comfortable. This allows you to adjust the settings to your personal preferences. This makes it possible to combine settings such as a sporty drivetrain setting with comfortable steering.

Selecting an Audi drive select mode

Applies to: vehicles with Audi drive select

The drive select button is located above the selector lever in the center console.

- ► Press the drive select button repeatedly until the desired mode appears in the instrument cluster or center display, or:
- ► In the Infotainment system, select: MENU button > **Vehicle** > left control button > **Audi drive select**.

You can change the driving mode when the vehicle is stationary or while driving. If traffic permits, briefly remove your foot from the accelerator pedal after changing modes so that the mode you have selected will be activated for the drive system.

The following modes may be available depending on the equipment:

comfort - Provides a comfort-oriented vehicle setup and is suited for long drives on highways.

auto - Provides an overall comfortable yet dynamic driving feel and is suited for everyday use.

dynamic - Gives the driver a sporty driving feel and is suited to a sporty driving style.

individual – Provides the option for personalized vehicle settings ⇨ *page 91*.

Tips

When the ignition is being switched on, individual systems, such as the drive system, will be reset to a balanced setting. Select the current mode again to attain its full configuration.

Adjusting the “individual” mode

- ► Select in the Infotainment system: MENU button > **Vehicle** > **Audi drive select**> **Individual** > right control button.

The equipment in your vehicle will determine which settings you can adjust.

Engine/transmission

The drive system will react to accelerator pedal moves more quickly or in a more balanced manner. The shift points are located in higher or lower engine speed ranges on vehicles with automatic transmissions.

Steering

The power steering will adapt. Light steering is suitable for long trips on highways or smooth driving around curves, for example.

quattro

The all wheel drive system controls balanced to sporty profiles.

Engine sound

The engine sound adapts and can be subtle to sporty.

ACC

The driving behavior of the adaptive cruise control adjusts based on the acceleration and reaction to vehicles driving ahead.

Suspension control

The suspension adjusts to be tighter or more comfort-oriented when it comes to compensating for uneven spots on the road.

8V2012721BK

Suspension

Adaptive dampers

Applies to: vehicles with suspension control

The adaptive dampers are an electronically-controlled damping system. The firmness of the suspension will adapt to the driving conditions and the driving situation. The settings are dependent on the selected Audi drive select* mode.

Ground clearance

The vehicle height and clearance can be influenced by the following factors:

– Change in temperature
– Change in load

WARNING

To reduce the risk of injury, make sure no one gets pinched when the vehicle level is changing, for example when cleaning the underbody or the wheel housings.

Note

Always make sure there is enough clearance above and below the vehicle. This is especially important for entrances with height restrictions, for example, before driving into underground garages. You could also scrape the ground when driving over the edges of curbs or on steep ramps, which could damage your vehicle.

Messages

Suspension: malfunction! You can continue driving

There is a malfunction. See an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility for assistance.

Steering

Description

Electromechanical steering supports the driver's steering movements by electronically adapting the power steering depending on the vehicle speed. The settings are dependent on the selected Audi drive select* mode.

Progressive steering

Applies to: vehicles with progressive steering

The driving dynamic and driving stability are increased by the steering ratio based on the steering wheel angle. The steering is very direct when the steering wheel angle is sharp, and indirect when the angle is low. This enables comfortable maneuvering and a precise steering response at higher driving speeds.

Messages

Steering: malfunction! Please stop vehicle

The power steering may have failed. Adapt your driving style immediately to compensate for the fact that it may be more difficult to turn the steering wheel, and stop your vehicle in a safe location as soon as possible. Do not continue driving. See an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility for assistance.

Steering: malfunction! Please stop vehicle

There is a malfunction in the electronic steering lock. You cannot turn the ignition on. Do not tow your vehicle because it cannot be steered. See an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility for assistance.

Steering: malfunction! You can continue driving

There is a malfunction. Steering may be more difficult or more sensitive. Adapt your driving style. Have the steering system checked immediately by an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility. Please note that the red indicator light may turn on after restarting the engine. Do not continue driving if it does.

Steering lock: malfunction! Please contact Service

There is a malfunction in the electronic steering lock. Drive immediately to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility to have the malfunction repaired. ▶

WARNING

Do not tow your vehicle if there is a malfunction in the electronic steering lock because this increases the risk of an accident.

Tips

If the or indicator light only stays on for a short time, then you may continue driving.

All wheel drive (quattro)

Description

Applies to: vehicles with all wheel drive

The all-wheel drive system distributes the driving power variably to the front and rear axle to improve the driving characteristics. It works together with selective wheel torque control, which can activate when driving around curves ⇨ *page 94*.

The all-wheel drive system is designed for high engine power. Your vehicle is exceptionally powerful and has excellent driving characteristics both under normal driving conditions and on snow and ice. Always read and follow safety precautions ⇨ ⚠.

WARNING

- Even in vehicles with all wheel drive, you should adapt your driving style to the current road and traffic conditions to reduce the risk of an accident.
- The braking ability of your vehicle is limited to the traction of the wheels. In this way, it is not different from a two wheel drive vehicle. Do not drive too fast because this increases the risk of an accident.
- Note that on wet streets, the front wheels can “hydroplane” if driving at speeds that are too high. Unlike front wheel drive vehicles, the engine RPM does not increase suddenly when the vehicle begins hydroplaning. Adapt your speed to the road conditions to reduce the risk of an accident.

Electronic Stabilization Control

Description

Electronic Stabilization Control (ESC) supports driver safety. It reduces the risk of slipping and improves driving stability. ESC detects critical situations, such as if the vehicle is oversteering or understeering, or if the wheels are spinning. The brakes are applied or the engine torque is reduced in order to stabilize the vehicle.

If the indicator light blinks while driving, the ESC is actively regulating.

If the indicator light turns on, the system has switched the ESC off. In this case, you can switch the ignition off and then on to switch the ESC on again. The indicator light turns off when the system is fully functional.

If the indicator light turns on, ESC was limited or switched off manually ⇨ *page 94*.

The following systems are integrated in the ESC:

Anti-lock braking system (ABS)

ABS prevents the wheels from locking when braking. The vehicle can still be steered even during hard braking. Apply steady pressure to the brake pedal. Do not pump the pedal. A pulsing in the brake pedal indicates that the system is acting to stabilize the vehicle.

Brake assist

The brake assist system can decrease braking distance. It increases braking power when the driver presses the brake pedal quickly in emergency situations. You must press and hold the brake pedal until the dangerous situation is over. Depending on the activated driver assistance systems, the brake assist system may react with increased sensitivity.

Anti-Slip Regulation (ASR)

ASR reduces drive power when the wheels begin spinning and adapts the power to the road conditions. This will increase the driving stability. ▶

Electronic Differential Lock (EDL)

The EDL applies the brakes to wheels that are slipping and transfers the drive power to the other wheels. This function is not available at higher speeds.

In extreme cases, EDL automatically switches off to keep the brake on the braked wheel from overheating. The vehicle is still functioning correctly. EDL will switch on again automatically when conditions have returned to normal.

Power steering

The ESC can also support vehicle stability through steering.

Selective wheel torque control

Selective wheel torque control is used when driving on curves. Braking is targeted toward the wheels on the inside of the curve as needed. This allows more precise driving in curves.

Automatic post-collision braking system

The automatic post-collision braking system can help to reduce the risk of sliding and of additional collisions after an accident. If the airbag control module detects a collision, the vehicle is braked by the ESC.

The vehicle does not brake automatically if one of the following occurs:

– The driver presses the accelerator pedal, or
– The braking force generated by the pressed brake pedal is greater than the braking force that would be initiated by the system
– The ESC, the brake system, or the vehicle electrical system is not functioning

WARNING

– The ESC and its integrated systems cannot overcome the limits imposed by natural physical laws. This is especially important on slippery or wet roads. If the systems begin acting to stabilize your vehicle, you should immediately alter your speed to match the road and traffic conditions. Do not let the increased safety provided tempt you into taking risks. This could increase your risk of a collision.
– Please note the risk of a collision increases when driving fast, especially through curves and on slippery or wet roads, and when driving too close to objects ahead. There is still a risk of accidents because the ESC and its integrated systems cannot always prevent collisions.
– Accelerate carefully when driving on smooth, slippery surfaces such as ice and snow. The drive wheels can spin even when these control systems are installed and this can affect driving stability and increase the risk of a collision.

Tips

– The ABS and ASR only function correctly when all four wheels have a similar wear condition. Different tire sizes can lead to a reduction in engine power.
– You may hear noises when the systems described are working.

Operation

The OFF button is located above the selector lever in the center console.

The ESC is automatically switched on when the ignition is switched on. It may make sense in some situations to limit the ESC so that the wheels can spin:

– Rocking the vehicle to free it when it is stuck
– Driving in deep snow, on unpaved ground, or with snow chains

Limiting ESC (sport mode)

– To limit the ESD, press the OFF button briefly. The OFF indicator light turns on.
– To completely reactivate the ESC stabilization function, press the button again. The indicator light turns off.

Switching off ESC

– To switch off the ESC, press and hold the OFF button for more than three seconds. The OFF and ESC OFF indicator lights turn on. ▶

– To completely reactivate the ESC stabilization function, press the button again. The indicator lights turn off.

WARNING

– When the ESC is switched off or limited, there will be no vehicle stabilization or it will be limited. The driving wheels could spin and the vehicle could swerve, especially on slick or slippery road surfaces, which increases the risk of an accident.
– Because of the increased risk of an accident, only drive with the ESC switched off or limited when it is necessary. Reactivate the ESC as soon as possible.

Tips

– If the ESC is limited, switched off, or malfunctioning, systems with an automatic braking intervention function may not be fully available.
– If malfunctions occur in other systems or certain driver assist systems are active, the ESC must be switched on by the system. The ESC may switch on automatically and cannot be operated with the button.

Messages

ABS / Stabilization control (ESC/ ABS): malfunction! See owner's manual

There is a malfunction in the ABS or EDL. This also causes the ESC to malfunction. The brakes still function with their normal power, but ABS is not active.

Drive to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility immediately to have the malfunction corrected.

High-voltage system

General information

Introduction

Applies to: vehicles with plug-in hybrid drive

All work done on the high-voltage system must only be performed by certified high-voltage technicians at authorized Audi dealers or authorized Audi Service Facilities in accordance with Audi guidelines.

The high-voltage system is composed of the following high-voltage components, among other things: the high-voltage battery, the power electronics, the electric motor, the high-voltage A/C compressor, the high-voltage heater, the charging system and charging port, and the orange high-voltage wiring.

The high-voltage battery is located on the vehicle underbody in front of the rear axle and does not require any maintenance from the driver.

WARNING

The voltage in the high-voltage system is life-threatening. Touching a damaged high-voltage component can result in a fatal electric shock. The components in the high-voltage system are marked with a warning label which warns against the high-voltage.

- The voltage level in the high-voltage system is still dangerous and potentially life-threatening when the ignition is switched off.
- Never perform work on the orange high-voltage cables or on other high-voltage components. Only authorized repair facilities that are certified may perform work on the high-voltage system.
- Never damage, alter or remove the orange high-voltage cable or disconnect it from the high-voltage system.
- Never perform any work using cutting, shaping or sharp-edged tools or heat sources near the high-voltage system and high-voltage cables.
- Gases that escape from the high-voltage battery can be poisonous or flammable.
- Damage to the high-voltage battery could cause the high-voltage battery to leak immediately or in the future, and poisonous or flammable gases could escape. Do not inhale the gases!
- Do not expose yourself to any leaking fluids and do not come into contact with them.
- The high-voltage battery electrolyte fluid is caustic. If electrolyte fluid comes into contact with the skin, flush the affected area for at least 15 minutes with clean water. Then wash the affected area with soap. Have the affected area examined by a medical professional.
- In the event of a technical emergency, inform the responders that the vehicle is equipped with a high-voltage battery.

Note

- The high-voltage system can be damaged if the vehicle underbody comes into contact with the ground. Immediately drive your vehicle to an authorized repair facility and have it inspected.
- The electric drive motor can become very hot during operation. Do not stop the vehicle if there is oil, fuel residue or other flammable substances under or next to the vehicle.

Special considerations for the high-voltage battery

Applies to: vehicles with plug-in hybrid drive

Please first read and note the introductory information and heed the warnings ⇨ *page 96*.

All batteries age with use and over time. There are things you should know about the care of the high voltage battery that will help it keep giving you good service and reliability over time. Please read and keep the following information in mind while you enjoy the performance and economy of your vehicle.

- Be sure to charge the high voltage battery before leaving the vehicle parked and unused for a longer period of time. Ideally the high-voltage ▶

battery should have a charge level between 40 % and 60 % when parked for a long time.
- If the battery charge level is below 3 %, never park the vehicle for more than 21 days without charging the high-voltage battery. Should you have to park the vehicle for a long time, make sure that the charge level is sufficient to help prevent the battery from aging prematurely.
- Frequent and consecutive charging of the high-voltage battery when the charge level is above 98 % can also decrease the capacity of the high-voltage battery. Make sure the charge level is below 98 % when you start the charging process.
- Should the vehicle be parked for longer than 2 days at temperatures below - 13 °F (-25 °C), the high-voltage battery could freeze and not be able to provide energy to the electric motor. The battery will start working again, once it warms up. The battery can be warmed up when the outside temperature rises or when the vehicle is garaged appropriately. The battery will also warm up when being used (switching on the air conditioner, the heater or by driving the vehicle). Should you have to park your vehicle at very low temperatures for longer than 1 day, make sure that the high-voltage battery does not freeze by parking the vehicle in a garage that is heated or protected from the outside temperature.
- The high-voltage battery can be damaged and the capacity can be decreased when the vehicle is parked for longer than 24 hours when the ambient temperature is higher than 118 °F (48 °C). Always make sure that the high-voltage battery is not exposed to temperatures above 118 °F (48 °C) for a long time.
- Never park the vehicle in areas that are likely to be flooded, such as beaches or river banks, and never drive the vehicle in WATER, on flooded roads or through water that is higher than the bottom of the vehicle body. The high-voltage battery, along with other vehicle components, can be damaged severely if the high-voltage battery is exposed to open water especially for a longer time. However, you can drive through water on roads under certain conditions ⇨ *page 90*.

Failure to heed any of these requirements can age the battery prematurely and lead to a permanent decrease of the high-voltage battery's capacity.

Tips

Always make sure that the high-voltage battery is not exposed to extremely low and high temperatures as well as to water especially for a longer time. Failure to protect and care for the high voltage battery can lead to serious damage and/or a decrease of the capacity void coverage under the New Vehicle Limited Warranty.

Vehicle transport

Applies to: vehicles with plug-in hybrid drive

This section contains information you should know about transporting your vehicle.

A lithium-ion high-voltage battery system equipped in your vehicle has passed test 38.3 in accordance with the UN Tests and Criteria handbook and is manufactured in accordance with a quality management program. The vehicle may be transported with the high-voltage battery installed as conventional class 9 hazardous materials without additional official authorization for air and sea shipment (current law IATA-DGR and IMDG code 01.01.2019).

Charging the high-voltage battery

General information

Applies to: vehicles with plug-in hybrid drive

Two options are available for charging the vehicle:

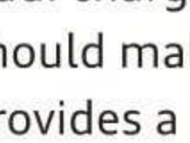
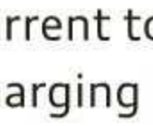
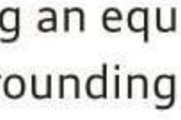
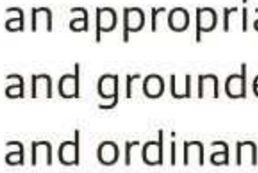
- Charge at a public charging station with a special charging cable* ⇨ *page 100*.
- Charge with household and industrial* sockets using the Audi charging system ⇨ *page 101*.

Using the charging equipment

Pay attention to the following information for safe handling of the charging equipment: ▶

- Secure the charging equipment against any strain, such as being run over, falling, pulling, bending, and crushing.
- Do not submerge the charging equipment in water and do not cover it with snow or ice.
- Only pull at the plugs when removing the charging cable from the vehicle and from the power supply.
- Put the cap on after using the charging cable.
- Only operate the Audi charging system in a power supply system with a frequency of 50 Hz/60 Hz.
- Only operate the Audi charging system at a humidity level between 5% and 95% (non-condensing).
- The Audi charging system is protected against dust and splashing water (IP54 (USA: enclosure 3R)) or protected against dust and jet streams of water (IP55 (USA: Enclosure 3))

Depending on the country, different warnings may be on the charging equipment.

Symbol	Meaning
	Incorrect use increases the risk of electric shock.
	
	Pay attention to the applicable owner's manual, particularly the safety precautions.
	
	Pay attention to all applicable disposal regulations when disposing.
	Do not use any extensions cords or cable reels.
	Do not use any travel adapters.
	Do not use any power strips.
	Do not use any charging cables with damage to the electronics or the connecting wires.

Symbol	Meaning
	Operate the Audi charging system at a temperature range of -22 °F (-30 °C) to +122 °F (+50 °C).
	Operate the Audi charging system at a maximum elevation of 13,000 ft (4,000 m) above sea level.
	The Audi charging system is equipped with a ground conductor that is not connected.
	The Audi charging system is equipped with a connected ground conductor.
	Do not operate the Audi charging system in power networks that are not grounded (for example, IT networks). Only operate the Audi charging system in grounded power networks.
	Surfaces can become very hot when in direct sunlight.
	

Grounding instructions

Audi charging systems must be grounded. If it should malfunction or break down, grounding provides a path of least resistance for electric current to reduce the risk of electric shock. Audi charging systems are equipped with a cord having an equipment grounding conductor and a grounding plug. The plug must be plugged into an appropriate outlet that is properly installed and grounded in accordance with all local codes and ordinances.

WARNING

Improper connection of the equipment-grounding conductor is able to result in a risk of electric shock. Check with a qualified electrician or serviceman if you are in doubt as to whether the product is properly grounded. Do not modify the plug provided with the product – if it will not fit the outlet, have a proper outlet installed by a qualified electrician.

Important safety precautions

WARNING

Sockets that are installed incorrectly can cause electric shock or fire when charging the high-voltage battery using the vehicle charging connection.

– Read all information and safety precautions for the Audi charging system before using the Audi charging system.
– Monitor the Audi charging system when it is being used near children.
– Installation and setup of the household connection for the Audi charging system may only be performed by a qualified electrician. The qualified electrician is thereby fully responsible for adhering to applicable standards and regulations.
– Make sure that the selected charging connector is suitable for drawing the current specified on the Audi charging system.
– Make sure that the household socket is grounded and shielded from water.
– The Audi charging system may only be used with a power network that is grounded properly. It cannot be used with non-grounded power networks (such as IT networks).
– Please follow the safety precautions in the assembly instructions for the Audi charging dock* or the Audi charging clip*.

WARNING

If you are not familiar with the socket or the electrical installation or it has not been checked by qualified experts, never use it for charging. Even very low charging currents can cause serious damage and in particular fires if the socket or electrical installation is in bad condition. If necessary, get expert assistance from a qualified electrical installation specialist.

WARNING

Incorrect handling of the connector contacts can cause electric shock or fire.

– Do not touch the contacts for the vehicle charging port and for the Audi charging system.
– Do not insert any objects into the vehicle charging port or into the Audi charging system.
– Protect the sockets and connectors against any moisture, water and other fluids.

WARNING

Using a damaged or incorrect charging cable or socket, using the Audi charging system incorrectly, or disregarding the safety precautions could cause short circuiting, electric shock, explosions, fires, and burns.

– Do not use the Audi charging system if it is damaged and/or dirty. Check the cable and connector for damage and dirt before using.
– The Audi charging system must only be connected to sockets that are installed correctly and that are not damaged, or to electrical equipment that is functioning correctly.
– Never use the Audi charging system with an extension cable, a cable reel, a power strip, or an adapter, for example, a travel adapter or timer.
– Disconnect the Audi charging system from the power network during a thunderstorm.
– Do not modify or repair any electrical components.
– Never submerge the Audi charging systems or the connectors in water.
– The Audi charging system must only be cleaned when the control unit is completely disconnected from the power supply and from the vehicle. Use a dry towel to clean.
– If a 110 volt household socket is used for charging, only connect one vehicle at a time to the same circuit. Use a different circuit if an additional vehicle needs to be charged at the same time. Note the maximum permitted current draw for the circuit. Contact a qualified electrical technician if there is any doubt.
– If Audi charging systems do not function according to the specifications in the operating manual, they must not be used. Contact ▶

an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility.
– Audi charging systems are intended for use in private and semi-private areas (for example, private property and company parking lots). Depending on the country, charging in mode 2 may be forbidden in public areas and public spaces. Contact an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility for more information.
– Do not disconnect the vehicle charging cable from the socket or the vehicle charging port while the vehicle is charging. End the charging process before removing the vehicle charging cable from the socket in order to reduce the risk of damaging the connector contacts from sparks.

WARNING

The components in the Audi charging system can trigger sparks which can cause flammable or explosive fumes to ignite.
– To reduce the risk of explosions, especially in garages, make sure the control unit is at least 19 inches (50 cm) above the floor when charging.
– Do not use the Audi charging system in areas at risk for explosions.
– The Audi charging system is only intended for use on Audi vehicles and vehicles within the Volkswagen Group. Using the device on vehicles made by another manufacturer is not authorized.

Note

– A severely drained high-voltage battery can cause damage to the high-voltage battery Once a 0 mi (0 km) electric range is displayed, charge the high-voltage battery within two months. If the stationary time is unknown with the electric range at 0 mi (0 km), charge the high-voltage battery immediately. Even if the vehicle is not used, the high-voltage battery charge level will naturally reduce over time. To avoid a total battery drain during long periods without use (more than one year), charge the high-voltage battery to the highest level possible before discontinuing driving it.
– Make sure that you always use the correct power plug provided with the Audi charging system for the country in which it is being used. Contact an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility for more information.

Tips

– Only use the factory-provided charging cable from Audi or the Volkswagen Group to charge your vehicle.
– For an uninterrupted charging process, we recommend only charging using sockets that are connected to a separately protected circuit.
– Using either NEMA sockets with a current rating of at least 30 A or industrial sockets in accordance with IEC 60309 when charging is recommended.
– When charging the high-voltage battery using household or industrial* sockets, the electrical installation can be used at full capacity. Having a qualified electrician regularly inspect the electrical installations that are used for charging is recommended.
– The vehicle radio and TV systems may have limited reception when charging the vehicle.

Charging at public charging stations

Applies to: vehicles with plug-in hybrid drive

Use the charging cable supplied at the public charging station for charging. Contact an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility for more information.

▸ Follow the operating instructions at the charging station to charge the high-voltage battery.
▸ Unlock the vehicle if necessary ⇨ *page 25*.
▸ Make sure that the selector lever is in the P position and drive ready mode is switched off.
▸ To open the charging port door, turn the lock to a vertical position ⇨ *page 104, fig. 102*.
▸ Slide the cover carefully to the side if necessary.
▸ Remove the lock on the charging port ⇨ *page 104, fig. 103*. ▶

- ▸ Remove the cap from the charging cable.
- ▸ Connect the cable to the vehicle charging port.
- ▸ If a charging timer is not set, the charging process will start automatically depending on the charging station ⇨ *page 106*.
- ▸ The vehicle operating status is indicated by the status LED ⇨ *page 107*.
- ▸ Also read the information found in ⇨ *page 106, After charging*.

Tips

Only charge your vehicle at charging stations that conform to the following standards, depending on the country:
– GB/T 18487.1 and GB/T 20234 (China)
– IEC 61851 and IEC 62196 (Europe)
– SAE J1772 (North America, Japan)

Tips

– It is not possible to charge using the charging timer at some charging stations.
– You can use your Audi charging system if there is a household or industrial* connection available at the charging station.

Charging the battery with the Audi charging system

Charging system overview

Applies to: vehicles with plug-in hybrid drive

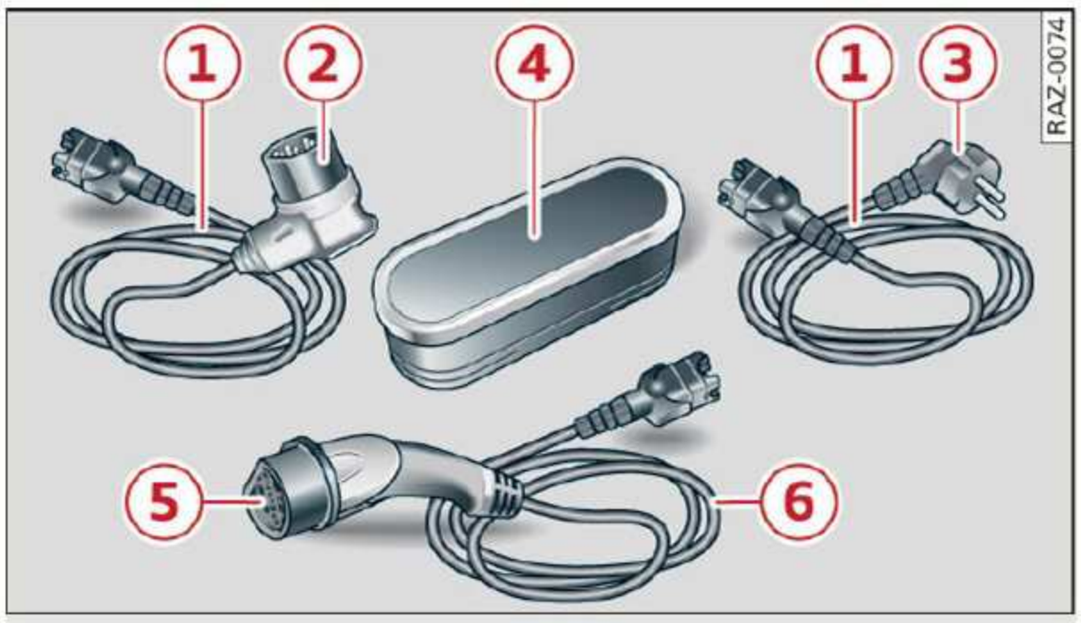


Fig. 96 Audi charging system overview (example)

① Power cable

② Power plug (for industrial sockets)*

③ Power plug (for household sockets)

④ Control unit

⑤ Vehicle charging connector (connector for the vehicle)

⑥ Vehicle cable

The power cable ① is plugged into the upper end of the control unit and the vehicle cable ⑥ is plugged into the lower end of the control unit ④.

Tips

– Using the control unit while operating the charging dock* ⇨ *page 102* or charging clip* ⇨ *page 103* is recommended. When this is not possible, always position Audi charging systems on a secure surface during the charging process.
– To reduce the risk of overheating during operation, do not place the Audi charging system in direct sunlight for long periods of time. If the control unit is overheated, the charging process is automatically paused until the temperature has lowered back within the normal range.

Changing and attaching the power/vehicle cable

Applies to: vehicles with plug-in hybrid drive

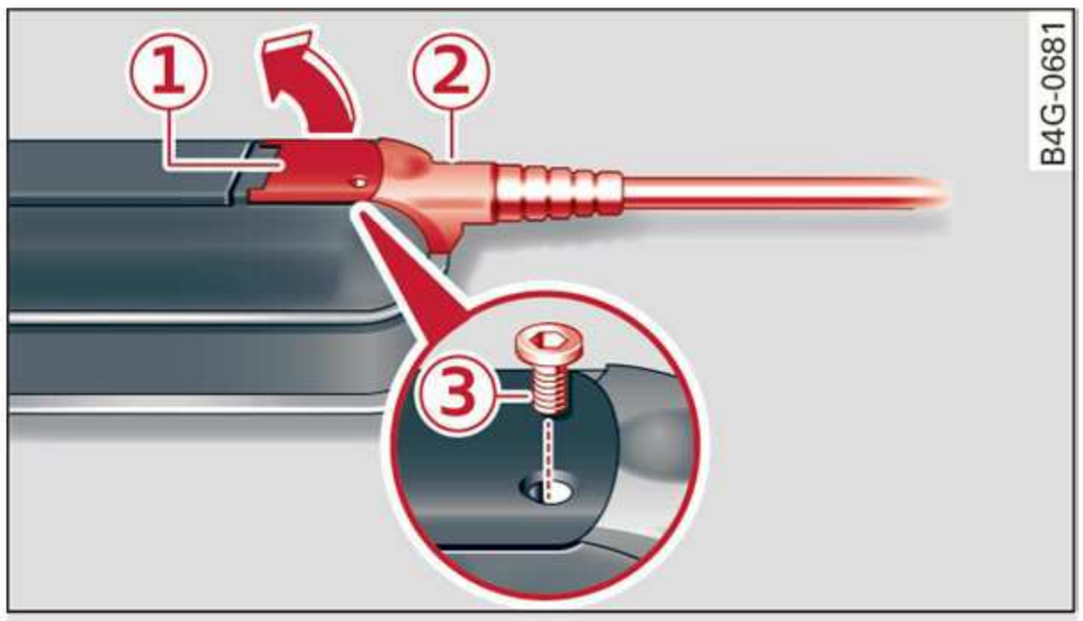


Fig. 97 Control unit: removing and attaching the cable

Depending on the vehicle equipment, you may not be able to change the vehicle cable.

Requirements:

- ▸ The charging process for the high-voltage battery must be ended.
- ▸ The vehicle charging connector must be removed from the vehicle charging port.
- ▸ The power cable must be removed from the socket.

Loosening the cable

- ▸ If necessary, loosen the screw ③ ⇨ *fig. 97* using the screwdriver provided.
- ▸ Lift the lever ① all the way up.
- ▸ Pull the connector ② out just until you feel resistance.
- ▸ Close the lever ① until it is resting on the connector ②.
- ▸ Remove the connector ② completely.

Attaching the cable

- ▸ Lift the lever ① up slightly.
- ▸ Insert the connector ② into the control unit just until you feel resistance.
- ▸ Lift the lever ① all the way up.
- ▸ Insert the connector ② all the way into the control unit.
- ▸ Close the lever ①.
- ▸ Tighten the screw ③ using the screwdriver provided.

WARNING

– Always remove the power cable from the socket before changing the power cable or vehicle cable.
– Always follow the instructions given when charging the high-voltage battery.
– Only change cables in a dry environment.
– The Audi charging system may only be used as a complete unit consisting of the power cables, the control unit, and the vehicle cable. Depending on the country, the total length of the power cable, control panel and vehicle cable may be restricted, for example to 24.6 ft (7.5 m) in the USA. We recommend using only cables approved by Audi.

Charging dock

Applies to: vehicles with plug-in hybrid drive and charging dock

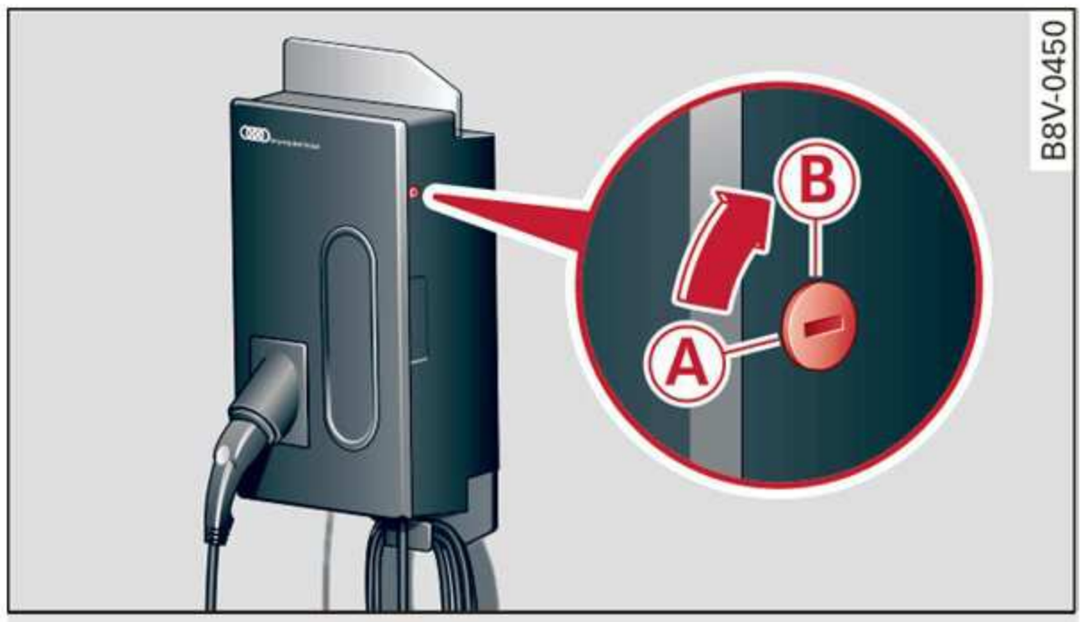


Fig. 98 Opening/closing the charging dock

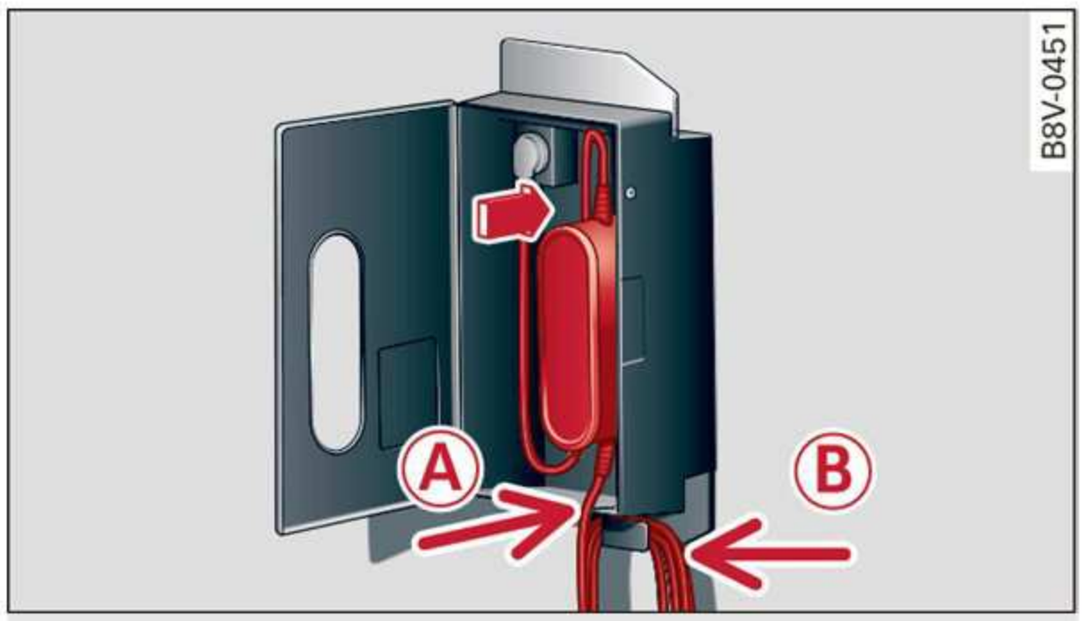


Fig. 99 Charging dock: mounting the charging system

You can store the charging system in the charging dock.

Opening/closing the charging dock

- ▸ If necessary, you can unlock/lock the charging dock using the key provided by turning it to the unlocked position Ⓑ or locked position Ⓐ ⇨ *fig. 98*.
- ▸ Opening/closing the door on the charging dock.

Mounting the charging system in the charging dock

- ▸ Open the door on the charging dock.
- ▸ First insert the control unit in the bottom tabs on the charging dock and then into the upper tabs.
- ▸ Push the control unit toward the rear and let it lock into place.
- ▸ Guide the vehicle cable through the opening Ⓐ ⇨ *fig. 99*.
- ▸ Wrap the extra cable length around the adapter Ⓑ.
- ▸ Plug the power cable into the socket in the charging dock. ▶

- ▸ Close the door.
- ▸ After charging, you can place the vehicle charging connector (5) ⇨ *page 101, fig. 96* in the holder on the charging dock door ⇨ *fig. 98*.

Removing the charging system from the charging dock

- ▸ Open the door on the charging dock.
- ▸ Remove the power cable connector from the socket in the charging dock.
- ▸ Unwrap the cable from the adapter (B).
- ▸ To loosen the control unit from the holder, press the release tabs above the control unit in the direction of the arrow ⇨ *fig. 99*.

Tips

– Always keep the door on the charging dock closed.
– Do not place any objects on the door or the charging dock.

Charging clip

Applies to: vehicles with plug-in hybrid drive and charging clip

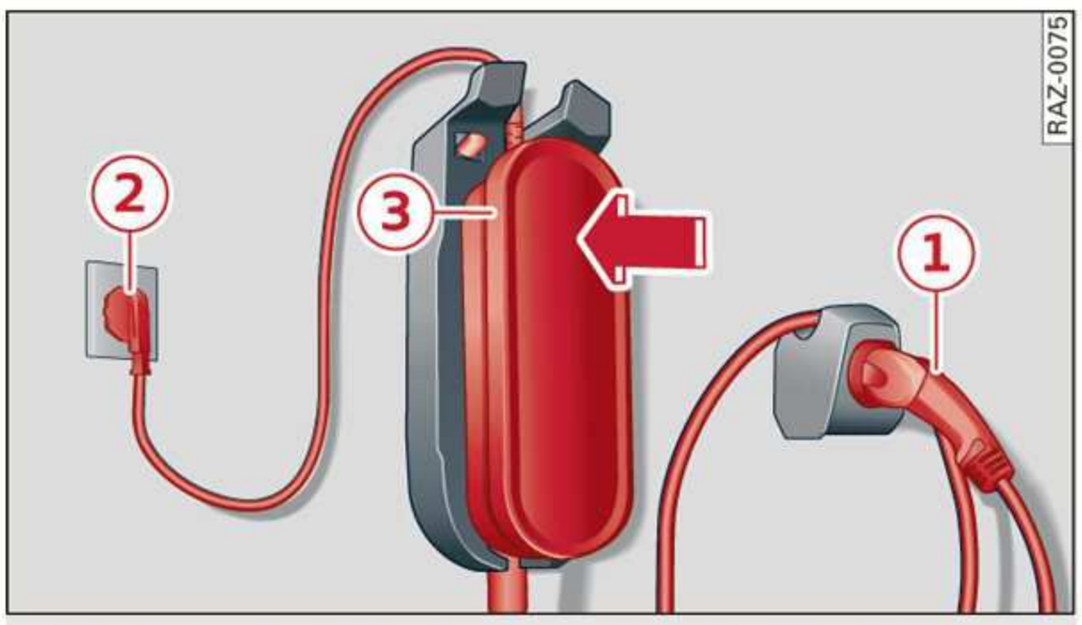


Fig. 100 Charging clip: charging system connected

Connecting the charging system to the charging clip

- ▸ First insert the control unit in the bottom tabs on the charging clip and then into the upper tabs.
- ▸ Push the control unit in the direction of the arrow toward the rear ⇨ *fig. 100* and let it lock into place.
- ▸ Wrap the extra cable length around the charging connector mount (1).
- ▸ Plug the power cable into the socket (2).
- ▸ After charging, you can hook the vehicle charging connector (5) ⇨ *page 101, fig. 96* to the charging connector mount (1) ⇨ *fig. 100*.

Removing the charging system from the charging clip

- ▸ Remove the power cable connector from the socket (2).
- ▸ Unwind the cable from the charging connector mount (1).
- ▸ To loosen the control unit from the bracket, push the locking mechanism (3) upward ⇨ *fig. 100*.

Transporting

Applies to: vehicles with plug-in hybrid drive



Fig. 101 Ski sack

Store the charging system and the special charging cable* in the bag before transporting.

- ▸ Always position the bag on the left side of the luggage compartment ⇨ *page 62*.
- ▸ Secure the flat hook to the tie-down near the edge of the cargo floor.
- ▸ Secure the carabiner hook at the tie-down near the rear seat backrest.

WARNING

– If the vehicle charging cable is not secured or positioned correctly, it can slide out of place and endanger vehicle occupants when braking, when changing directions, or in an accident.
– Never transport the Audi charging system or the special charging cable* without securing them.

– Store the Audi charging system or the special charging cable* in the ski sack in the luggage compartment.
– Always transport the ski sack in the luggage compartment and never in the passenger compartment (for example, on the seats or in front of them).

Note

Always lift or transport the Audi charging system as an entire unit and never by the cables.

Charging time

Applies to: vehicles with plug-in hybrid drive

The length of the charging process using the Audi charging system may vary based on the following factors:

– The sockets that are used (household or industrial* sockets)
– The system voltage and current strength that are specific to a country
– The value set for the charging power level on the control unit (50% or 100%).
– Fluctuations in the system voltage
– The temperature outside the vehicle
– The temperature of the high-voltage battery
– Settings for the climate control inside the vehicle
– Current capacity of the charging connector
– Whether the ignition is on or off

Example charging times

Connection	Charging time at 100% charge
Household socket (100 V, 10 A)	approximately 10 hours
Household socket (120 V, 10 A)	approximately 8.2 hours
Household socket (220 V, 8 A)	approximately 5.2 hours
Household socket (230 V, 10 A)	approximately 3.8 hours
Industrial socket (200 V, 16 A)	approximately 2.3 hours
Industrial socket (220 V, 16 A)	approximately 2.3 hours
Industrial socket (230 V, 16 A)	approximately 2.3 hours
Industrial socket (240 V, 16 A)	approximately 2.3 hours

Tips

– Multiple versions of charging cables are offered due to the different power supply systems in different countries. The maximum charging power may potentially be unavailable because of this. Contact an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility for more information.
– Charging may take longer when temperatures are extremely high or low.
– The charging time at public charging stations may vary from the times given in the table ⇨ *table on page 104*.

Before charging

Applies to: vehicles with plug-in hybrid drive

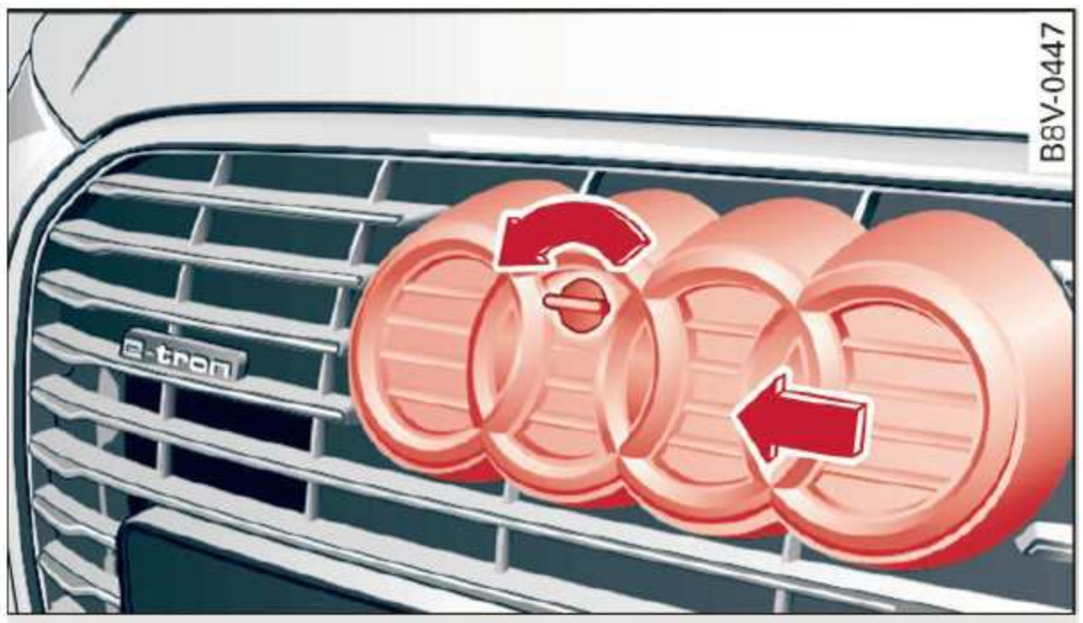


Fig. 102 Radiator grille: opening the charging unit cover

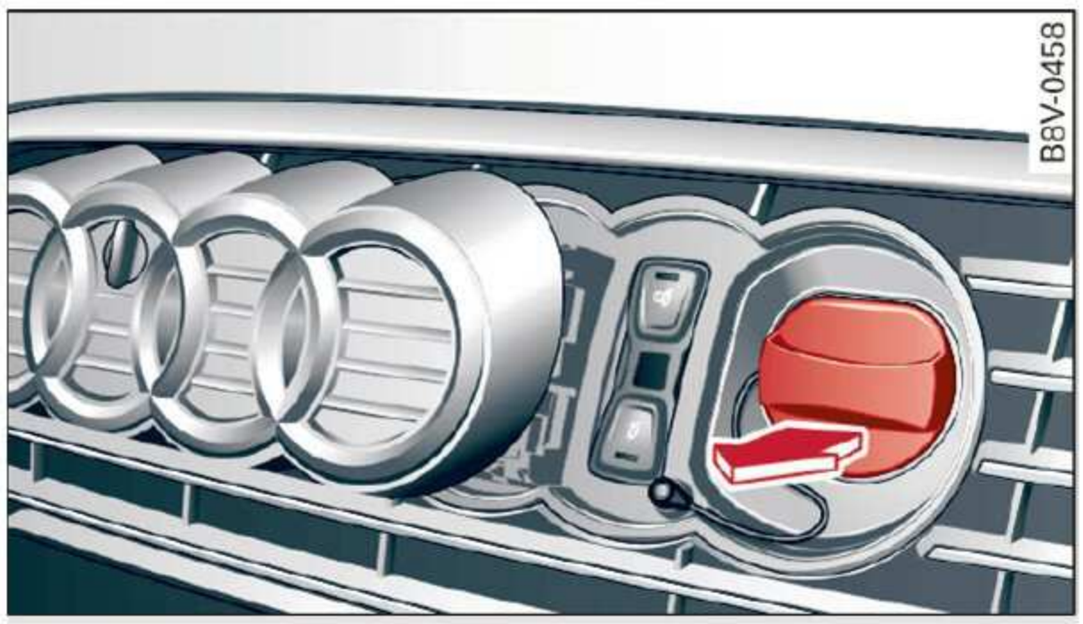


Fig. 103 Radiator grille: charging port cap

- ▸ Unlock the vehicle if necessary ⇨ *page 25*.
- ▸ Make sure that the selector lever is in the "P" position, the parking brake is set, and drive ready mode is switched off ⇨ *page 71*.
- ▸ Turn the lock until it is vertical to open the cover on the charging unit ⇨ *fig. 102*.
- ▸ Slide the cover carefully to the side if necessary.
- ▸ Remove the lock on the charging port ⇨ *fig. 103*.
- ▸ Insert the plug ② or ③ into the socket ⇨ *page 101, fig. 96*.
- ▸ Plug the vehicle charging connector ⑤ ⇨ *page 101, fig. 96* into the vehicle charging port ⇨ *fig. 103*. The charging process starts automatically if no charging timer is set.

Tips

Remove ice and snow from the cover using a hand brush and solvent-free deicing spray.

Audi e-tron compact charging system

Charging overview

Applies to: vehicles with Audi e-tron compact charging system

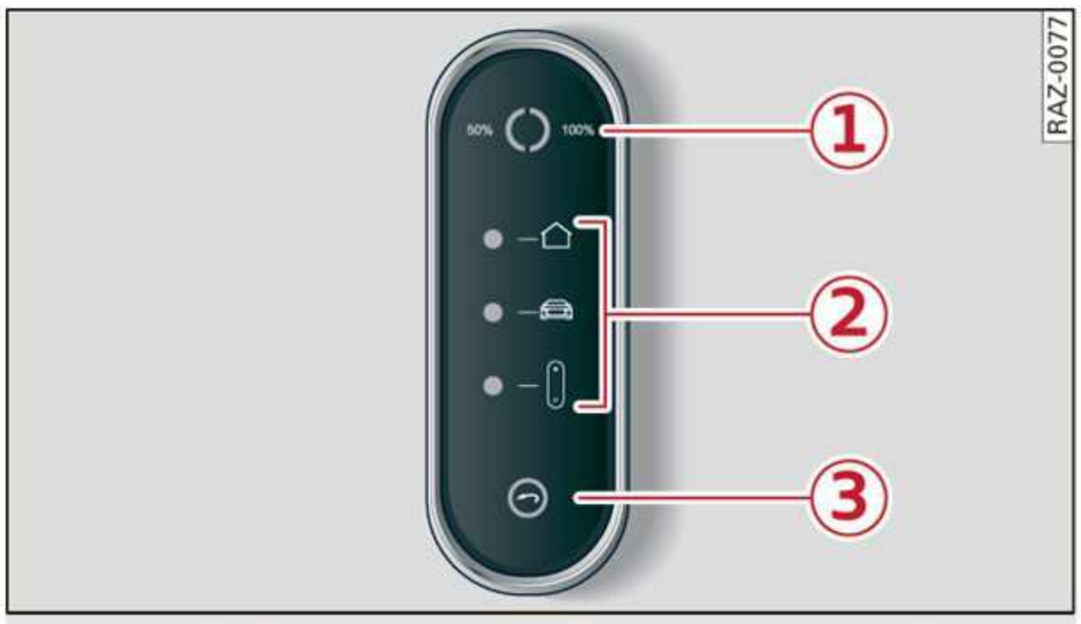


Fig. 104 Audi e-tron compact charging system: control unit

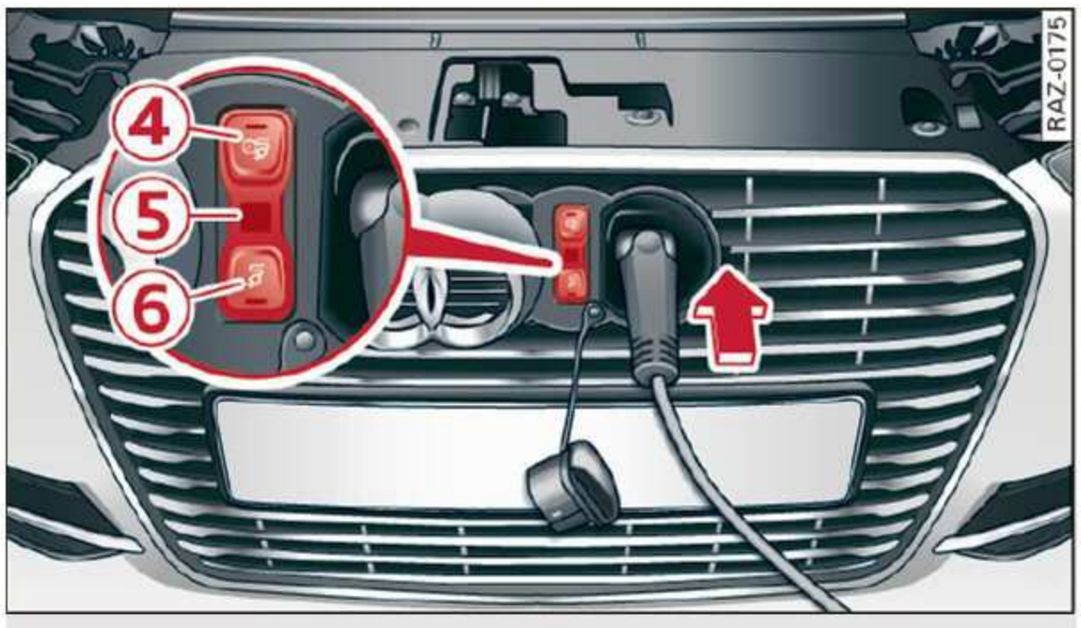


Fig. 105 Charging unit: vehicle charging connection and button module

The charging unit is located behind the Audi rings on the front of the vehicle.

①	On/Off button, charging power level and LED	
②	Status LED:	
	⌂	Power supply/household connection
	🚗	Vehicle
	!	Control panel
③	↩	Reset
④	Charging timer button	
⑤	Status LED	
⑥	Immediate charging button	

The meaning of the different status displays for the charging system and the vehicle can be found under ⇨ *page 107*.

Tips

– The device runs a self test after power has been restored to the control unit. If a self test is successful, all indicator lights will illuminate green for two seconds.
– The vehicle cannot be started if a charging connector is connected.

Charging

Applies to: vehicles with plug-in hybrid drive

You can switch between the immediate charging ⑥ and charging timer ④ options ⇨ *page 105, fig. 105* during the charging process if a charging timer has been set. Press the desired button to do this ⇨ *page 105, fig. 105*.

Immediate charging

To start the charging process immediately, press the button ⑥ ⇨ *page 105, fig. 105*. The LED in the button will turn on. ▶

Setting the charging timer

You can delay the charging time with the charging timer in the Infotainment system [1]. You can set two different timers.

- ▸ If a timer has been set, press the button ④ ⇨ *page 105, fig. 105*. The LED in the button will turn on.
- ▸ To set a charging timer, select: MENU button > **Vehicle** > left control button > **Charge** > right control button > **Program timer**.
- ▸ Select **Individual timer** or **Repeat timer**.
- ▸ Set the departure time, the date or day of the week.
- ▸ You can specify a preferred charging time with the charging timer, for example if you would like to use the off-peak rate.
- ▸ You can activate the auxiliary air conditioning with the charging timer while charging by selecting **Air conditioning** with the control knob. A ✓ appears in the box. This activation is separate from the Infotainment system settings in the climate control menu ⇨ *page 68*.
- ▸ Press the BACK button.
- ▸ To activate the desired timer, confirm the setting with the control knob. A ✓ appears in the box.

Tips

– Auxiliary climate control is powered electrically if you select climate control using the charging timer. This may also be used in confined spaces such as garages.
– Using the auxiliary climate control while charging can also reduce the charge level of the high-voltage battery.
– The charging process can be interrupted at any time. Press the active button on the vehicle to do this ⇨ *page 105, fig. 105*.
– The climate control output while charging depends on the capacity of the electrical connection. Additional information on climate control can be found under ⇨ *page 68*.

Setting the charging power level

Applies to: vehicles with plug-in hybrid drive

The control unit automatically recognizes the voltage and the available current strength. You can set whether you would like to charge with full or reduced charging power. The last setting that was selected will be saved and used again the next time the vehicle is charged. If multiple items are connected to the power circuit, the charging current may be reduced when charging at a power outlet. This can help to prevent the electrical equipment from overheating.

Before charging, always check if the charging power setting that was selected last is still suitable.

- ▸ To set the charging power level, press and hold the (⚡) button ① ⇨ *page 105, fig. 104* for at least two seconds.

After the charging power level is set, the status LEDs ⌂, 🚗 and ▯ will flash green one time. The selected value (50% or 100%) is displayed on the left or right side of the (⚡) button.

After charging

Applies to: vehicles with plug-in hybrid drive

After completing the charging or climate control process, the vehicle enters a sleep mode. No displays are visible on the charging unit during this period. Always remove the vehicle charging connector first after charging.

The vehicle charging connector is locked during and after charging. You must unlock the connector to remove it.

Unlocking the vehicle charging connector when the vehicle is locked

- ▸ Unlock the vehicle. The connector will unlock for 30 seconds.
- ▸ Remove the connector.
- ▸ If the connector is not removed within 30 seconds, it will lock again automatically. ▶

[1] Not available in all Infotainment systems.

Deactivating sleep mode

- ▸ Unlock the vehicle ⇨ *page 25*. Or
- ▸ Open the driver's door. Or
- ▸ Press the button ⑥ ⇨ *page 105, fig. 105*.

Unlocking the vehicle charging connector when the vehicle is unlocked

- ▸ If necessary, deactivate sleep mode.
- ▸ Press the button with the illuminated LED ④ or ⑥ ⇨ *page 105, fig. 105*. Or
- ▸ Press the button in the driver's door ⇨ *page 29, fig. 22* or the button on the remote control key.
- ▸ The connector will unlock for 30 seconds.
- ▸ Remove the connector.
- ▸ If the connector is not removed within 30 seconds, it will lock again automatically.

Closing the charging unit

- ▸ Put the cap back on the charging port ⇨ *page 104, fig. 103*.
- ▸ Carefully slide the cover back in its original position.
- ▸ Turn the lock to the horizontal position ⇨ *page 104, fig. 102*.

Note

If you drive with an open charging unit, both the cover and the electronics installed behind it could be damaged.

Tips

The instrument cluster will indicate if the charging unit is open while driving. Check before every drive after charging if the cover is locked.

Status displays

Applies to: vehicles with plug-in hybrid drive

You can check the mode status using the LED on the control unit ①or ② ⇨ *page 105, fig. 104*, and the status LED on the vehicle ⑤ ⇨ *page 105, fig. 105*

Control panel: status and error displays

Indicator lights	Meaning	Solution
Green Off Off Off Off	The charger is ready to charge, but is not charging.	Starting the charging process ⇨ *page 105*.
Flashing green Off Off Off Off	The vehicle is being charged with the ground conductor monitor activated.	
Flashing green Yellow Off Off Off	The power cable has overheated. Possible cause of the malfunction: a multi-phase socket is being used in single-phase mode. The charging performance will be reduced.	After the cable cools down, the malfunction will be automatically cleared. Until it cools down, charging performance will be reduced. If the malfunction continues, have the power supply/household connection checked by a qualified electrician.

Indicator lights	Meaning	Solution
Flashing green Off Off Yellow Off	The control unit has overheated. The charging performance will be reduced.	After the control unit cools down, the malfunction will be automatically cleared. Never leave the control panel in direct sunlight for long periods or time. Until it cools down, charging performance will be reduced. If the malfunction continues, have the control unit checked by an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility.
Red Yellow Off Off Off	The power cable has overheated. The charging process has been interrupted.	After the cable cools down, the malfunction will be automatically cleared and the charging process will resume. If the malfunction continues, have the control unit checked by an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility, or have the power supply/household connection checked by a qualified electrician.
Red Off Off Yellow Off	The control unit has overheated. The charging process has been interrupted.	After the control unit cools down, the malfunction will be automatically cleared and the charging process will resume. Never leave the control panel in direct sunlight for long periods or time. If the malfunction continues, have the control unit checked by an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility.
Red Flashing yellow Off Off Off	The charging infrastructure of the power supply/household connection is restricted. Possible cause of the malfunction: low voltage or poor power frequency. The charging process has been interrupted.	After the power supply/household connection stabilizes, the malfunction will be automatically cleared and the charging process will resume. If the malfunction continues, have the power supply/household connection checked by a qualified electrician.
Red Off Flashing yellow Off Off	There is a malfunction in the vehicle charging system. The charging process has been interrupted.	After the vehicle charging system stabilizes, the malfunction will be automatically cleared and the charging process will resume. If the malfunction continues, have the vehicle checked by an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility.
Red Off Off Flashing yellow Off	The power cable or vehicle cable is faulty. Possible cause of the malfunction: the coding resistance of the power or vehicle cable is not compatible. The charging process has been interrupted.	Have the power or vehicle cable replaced by an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility.

Indicator lights	Meaning	Solution
Red Off Red Off Off	There is a malfunction in the vehicle charging system. The charging process has been interrupted.	End the charging process at the vehicle and remove the vehicle cable from the vehicle charging port. Disconnect the charger from the power supply and reconnect it after 60 seconds. Restart the charging process ⇨ *page 105*. If the malfunction continues, have the vehicle checked by an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility.
Red Flashing red Off Off Off	There is an overvoltage in the charging infrastructure of the power supply/household connection. The charging process has been interrupted.	Disconnect the charger from the power supply and reconnect it after 60 seconds. If the malfunction continues, have the power supply/household connection checked by a qualified electrician.
Red Off Off Red Off	The control unit has a technical malfunction. The charging process has been interrupted.	Disconnect the charger from the power supply and reconnect it after 60 seconds. If the malfunction continues, have the control unit checked by an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility.
Red Off Off Flashing red Off	The control unit has a technical malfunction (self-test failed). The charging process has been interrupted.	Disconnect the charger from the power supply and reconnect it after 60 seconds. If the malfunction continues, have the control unit checked by an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility.
Red Red Red Off Off	The charging infrastructure of the power supply/household connection is insufficient: the ground conductor is interrupted or not present. The ground conductor monitor has interrupted the charging process.	Have the control unit checked by an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility, and have the power supply/household connection checked by a qualified electrician. Do not use the power supply/household connector until the malfunction is corrected.
Red Red Red Red Off	The indicator light in the reset button on the control unit is faulty. The charging process has been interrupted.	Have the control unit replaced by an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility.

Indicator lights	Meaning	Solution
Red Red Red Red Flashing red	The control unit has detected residual current. The charging process has been interrupted.	Press and hold the button for at least two seconds. If the malfunction continues, have the control unit checked by an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility, and have the power supply/household connection checked by a qualified electrician.
Red Flashing red Flashing red Flashing red Off	The charging infrastructure is wired incorrectly. The charging process has been interrupted.	Disconnect the charger from the power supply. Have the power supply/household connection checked by a qualified electrician.
Red Red Red Red Red	The control unit has a technical malfunction. Possible cause of the malfunction: software error or the load relay has been switched incorrectly. The charging process has been interrupted.	Disconnect the charger from the power supply and reconnect it after 60 seconds. If the malfunction continues, have the control unit checked by an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility, and have the power supply/household connection checked by a qualified electrician.
Flashing red Off Off Red Off	The control unit has a serious malfunction. The charging process has been interrupted.	Have the control unit replaced by an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility.
Off Red Red Red Red	The indicator light in the On/Off button on the control unit is faulty. The charging process has been interrupted.	Have the control unit replaced by an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility.

Vehicle: charging unit

LED on vehicle (5)		Meaning	Solution
Green	On	High-voltage battery charging process is completed.	Remove the charger, put the cap on and close the cover on the charging unit.
	Flashing	The high-voltage battery is charging or the vehicle is being air conditioned/heated.	
	Blinks for approximately one minute after leaving the vehicle	Charging timer was programmed but the charging process has not started yet.	

LED on vehicle ⑤		Meaning	Solution
Yellow	On	No power supply was recognized even though the charging cable is plugged in.	Have the power supply or power supply system inspected. Check the status display on the control unit ⇨ *table on page 107*. See an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility for assistance if necessary.
	Flashing	The selector lever in not in the P position.	Move the selector lever into the P position.
Red	On	The charging connector could not be correctly locked in the vehicle charging port.	Check if the charging connector is inserted correctly. Remove the charging connector and insert it into the charging port again. See an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility for assistance if necessary.
	Flashing	Fault in the charging system. The high-voltage battery cannot be charged. **Or**: the outside temperature is too low. The high-voltage battery could not be fully charged.	See an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility for assistance if necessary.

Tips

The operation status indicated by the LED ⑤ on the vehicle is also displayed in the instrument cluster/Infotainment system.

Indicator lights and messages

Applies to: vehicles with plug-in hybrid drive

If the indicator light turns on, the high-voltage battery is charging or is already completely charged.

If the indicator light stays on, there is a malfunction in the charging system. Have the problem corrected immediately by an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility.

Charging connector still attached. Vehicle cannot be driven

This message appears when the charging system is still connected to the vehicle. Remove the connector ⇨ *page 106*.

Incompatible charging system. Please check charging system

This message appears when the charging system is incompatible. Only charge using the charging system that is designed for your vehicle.

AC charging system: malfunction! Please contact Service

This message appears if there is a malfunction in the charging system. Have the problem corrected immediately by an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility.

Warning! Charging unit cover is unlocked. See owner's manual

This message appears if the charging unit cover is open. Close the cover and lock it ⇨ *page 107*.

Emergency release

Charging unit cover emergency release

Applies to: vehicles with plug-in hybrid drive

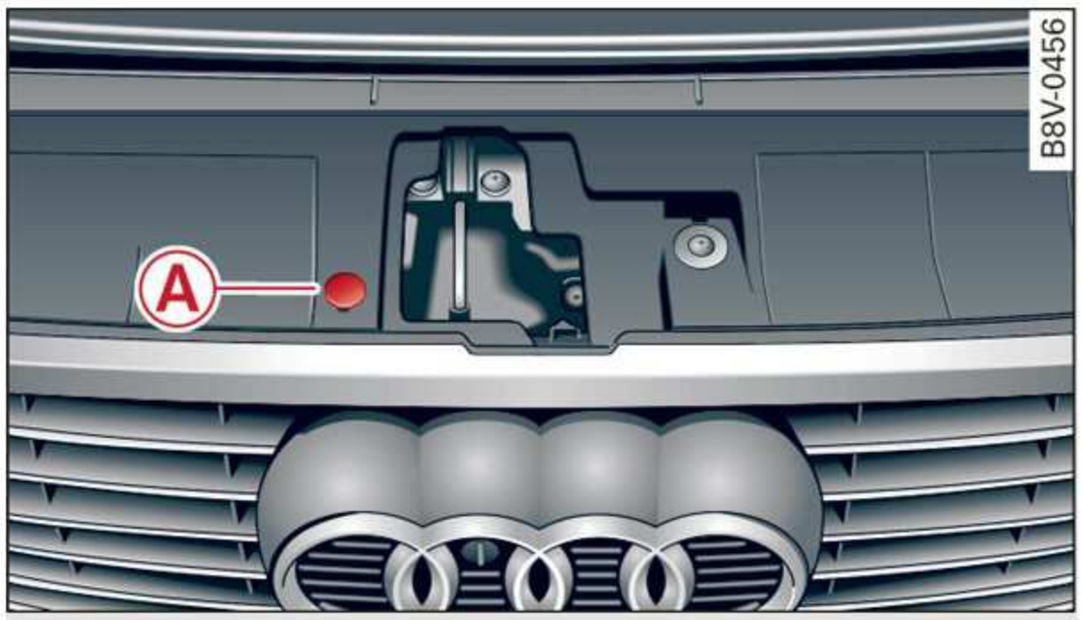


Fig. 106 Front of the vehicle: cover emergency release

You can release the cover using the emergency release.

- ▸ Turn the cover lock to the horizontal position.
- ▸ Unlock the vehicle.
- ▸ Open the hood ⇨ *page 305, Opening and closing the hood*.
- ▸ Carefully pull on the knob Ⓐ until there is resistance.
- ▸ Turn the cover lock to the vertical position ⇨ *page 104, fig. 102*.
- ▸ Slide the cover carefully to the side if necessary.

Trailer towing

Driving with a trailer

General information

Your vehicle is primarily intended for transporting people and luggage. However, if you drive with a trailer, follow the technical requirements, the operation and driving tips, and the legal regulations.

Driving with a trailer affects the vehicle's energy usage, performance, and wear. It also requires higher concentration from the driver.

WARNING

Do not transport any people in a trailer due to the risk of fatal injury.

Technical requirements

Trailer hitch

Only use a trailer hitch with a removable ball hitch mount and ball hitch. The trailer hitch must be permitted for the vehicle, the trailer and the permitted total weight of the trailer being pulled. Above all, it must be securely and safely attached to the vehicle trailer.

Never mount a trailer hitch on the bumper. The trailer hitch must be mounted in a way that does not impair the function of the bumper. Do not make any changes to the exhaust system and the brake system.

Check regularly if the trailer hitch is securely mounted. Always follow the instructions given by the trailer hitch manufacturer.

Trailer brakes

If the trailer has its own brake system, then follow the manufacturer specifications. However, the brake system on the trailer must never be connected to the vehicle brake system.

Engine cooling system

Driving with a trailer means a higher load on the engine and the cooling system. The cooling system must be designed for additional load and contain enough coolant ⇨ (!).

Note

Longer inclines cannot be driven without a suitable cooling system, especially if the outside temperatures are high. Otherwise, this increases the risk of engine damage.

Operating instructions

Towing capacity

Your vehicle can only be operated with class 1 or class 2 trailers.

Load distribution

Poor cargo load and distribution can negatively impact vehicle handling. To have the lowest impact as possible, load the trailer according to these criteria:

- Store objects in the vehicle luggage compartment, if possible. The vehicle should always carry the heaviest possible load and the trailer should have the lightest possible load.
- Distribute the load in the trailer so that the heavy objects are as close to the axle as possible.
- Secure objects so that they do not slide.
- Utilize the maximum permitted tongue weight if possible.

Tires

Set the tire pressure on your vehicle for a “full load”; see the tire pressure sticker ⇨ *page 330*. If necessary, also adjust the tire pressure on the trailer according to the manufacturer's specifications.

The trailer and the vehicle should be equipped with winter tires when driving in winter temperatures.

Outside mirrors

If you cannot see the traffic behind the trailer with the standard exterior mirrors, then you must attach additional exterior mirrors. Adjust them so you have a sufficient visibility behind you. ▶

8V2012721BK

Exterior lighting

Follow the legal regulations regarding the lighting equipment on your trailer. Contact an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility for more information.

Before you start driving, check all lighting equipment on the trailer while it is hitched to the vehicle.

The headlight range control automatically adjusts the light range of the headlights.

Safety chains

Make sure the safety chains are correctly applied when pulling a trailer. The chains should hang enough so that the trailer can drive around curves. However, they must not touch the ground.

Tips

- Block the wheels with chocks when parking on inclines if the trailer is loaded.
- Having the vehicle inspected between the inspection intervals is recommended if you tow a trailer frequently.
- Avoid driving with a trailer during the vehicle break-in period.

Driving with a trailer

Driving with a trailer requires extra caution.

Speed

Adhere to the legal speed limits. Follow the legal regulations specific to the country.

As the speed increases, the driving stability of the trailer decreases. Therefore you should not exceed the maximum legal speed limit when there are unfavorable road, weather, and/or wind conditions. This especially applies when driving downhill.

Hill

When you start driving uphill or downhill, trailers may tilt or sway sooner than when driving on a level surface. If small swaying movements have already occurred, you can stabilize the trailer by firmly braking immediately. Never attempt to "straighten out" the trailer by accelerating.

Downshift before driving on hills to utilize the engine braking effect ⇨ ⚠.

Brakes

When using a trailer with overrun brakes, first brake gently then quickly. This reduces the risk of jerking while braking if the trailer wheels lock up.

Engine coolant temperature

Pay attention specifically to the coolant temperature display when there are high outside temperatures, and when driving on long inclines ⇨ *page 15*. Shift to a higher gear in a timely manner.

WARNING

Constant braking causes the brakes to overheat and can substantially reduce braking performance, increase braking distance, or cause complete failure of the brake system.

Assist systems

Speed warning system

Description

Applies to: vehicles with speed warning system

The speed warning system helps you to stay below a specified maximum speed that can be set, changed or deleted in the Infotainment system.

The speed warning system warns you if you are exceeding the maximum speed that you have set. A warning tone will sound as soon as your speed exceeds the stored value slightly. The MPH/Km/h indicator light will appear at the same time in the instrument cluster display along with a message. The MPH/Km/h indicator light and the message turn off if the speed falls back below the stored maximum speed.

Setting a threshold is recommended if you would like to be reminded when you reach a certain maximum speed. Situations where you may want to do so include driving in a country with a general speed limit or if there is a specified maximum speed for winter tires.

Setting the warning threshold

▸ Select in the Infotainment system: MENU button > **Vehicle** > left control button > **Driver assistance** > **Speed warning** > **Manual**.

Tips

Regardless of the speed warning system, you should always monitor your speed using the speedometer and make sure you are following the legal speed limit.

Messages

Applies to: vehicles with speed warning system

MPH/Km/h Manually set speed limit XX mph (km/h) exceeded

The stored speed was exceeded.

Cruise control system

Description

Applies to: vehicles with cruise control system

The cruise control system assists the driver in maintaining a constant speed above approximately 15 mph (20 km/h). The system maintains the desired speed by braking and accelerating.

WARNING

– Always pay attention to the traffic around your vehicle when the cruise control system is in operation. As the driver, you are always responsible for controlling your vehicle speed and the distance between your vehicle and other vehicles.
– For safety reasons, cruise control should not be used in the city, in stop-and-go traffic, on winding roads, and when road conditions are poor (such as ice, fog, gravel, heavy rain, and conditions that could lead to hydroplaning), because this increases the risk of an accident.
– Switch the cruise control off temporarily when driving in turning lanes, highway exits, or in construction zones.
– To reduce the risk of an accident, you should only resume the stored speed if it is suitable for the current traffic conditions.

Note

– Conventional drive system: before driving downhill a long distance on a steep hill, decrease your speed and select a lower gear. This makes use of the engine braking effect and reduces the load placed on the brakes.
– Plug-in hybrid drive: before driving downhill a long distance on a steep hill, decrease your speed and use the recuperation braking effect ⇨ *page 78*. This reduces the load on the brakes.

Tips

The brake lights turn on when the brakes are applied automatically.

Switching the system on

Applies to: vehicles with cruise control system



Fig. 107 Lever: switching on the cruise control system

Requirement: the ignition must be switched on.

- To switch the system on, pull the lever toward you to position (1).

The CRUISE or indicator light and the corresponding message will appear in the instrument cluster.

WARNING

If the brakes are malfunctioning (for example, overheating) while the cruise control system is switched on, it may shut off automatically.

Preselecting or activating a cruise control speed

Applies to: vehicles with cruise control system

When the vehicle is stationary, you can preselect the cruise control speed or activate the speed while driving.

Requirement: the system must be switched on.

- To preselect a cruise control speed when the vehicle is stationary, tap the lever toward (+)/(-) ⇨ *page 116, fig. 107*.
- To activate the cruise control speed, pull the lever toward position (1) while driving, or
- To set the current driving speed as the cruise control speed, press the button (A) on the lever.

The active cruise control speed is indicated with the CRUISE or indicator light in the instrument cluster.

Changing the cruise control speed

Applies to: vehicles with cruise control system

- To increase or decrease the cruise control speed in increments, tap the lever toward (+)/(-) ⇨ *page 116, fig. 107*.
- To increase or decrease the cruise control speed continuously, press and hold the lever toward (+)/(-).

Overriding or deactivating the cruise control speed

Applies to: vehicles with cruise control system

You can override or deactivate the cruise control system. When you deactivate the system, your cruise control speed will be stored and you can resume that speed.

Requirement: the system must be switched on and activated.

Overriding

- To temporarily override the cruise control speed, press the accelerator pedal.
- Once you release the accelerator pedal, the system will adjust back to the stored cruise control speed.

If you override the cruise control system for a long period of time, the cruise control system will be deactivated. The CRUISE or indicator light will be displayed and the cruise control speed will be saved.

Deactivating

- To deactivate the cruise control speed, press the lever toward (2) (not locked into place) ⇨ *page 116, fig. 107*.
- Press the brake pedal.

WARNING

Resting your foot on the accelerator pedal could override the cruise control. This will prevent braking interventions by the system.

Switching the system off

Applies to: vehicles with cruise control system

When you switch the system off completely, the cruise control speed will be deleted.

Requirement: the system must be switched on.

- ▸ To switch the system off, press the lever toward ② (locked into place) ⇨ *page 116, fig. 107*, or
- ▸ Switch the ignition off.

Message

Applies to: vehicles with cruise control system

CRUISE / Speed control system: currently unavailable. See owner's manual

If the indicator light turns on and this message appears, the cruise control system has been deactivated. There is a temporary malfunction, for example the brakes are overheating. Switch the cruise control system on again later.

Lap timer

Introduction

Applies to: vehicles with lap timer

You can measure and analyze lap times with the lap timer in the display.

Opening the lap timer

- ▸ Open the first Vehicle tab (trip computer) using the ◁▷ button on the multifunction steering wheel.
- ▸ Applies to: vehicles with analog instrument cluster: Press the ☰ button on the multifunction steering wheel and select **Lap timer** in the menu.
- ▸ Applies to: vehicles with Audi virtual cockpit: On the multifunction steering wheel, select: left control button > **Lap times**.

Operating the lap timer

- ▸ On the multifunction steering wheel, turn the left thumbwheel ⑦ ⇨ *page 17* or ① ⇨ *page 20* until the desired menu item is displayed in the instrument cluster.
- ▸ Press the left thumbwheel to confirm the selection.

WARNING

Your focus should always be on driving your vehicle safely. As the driver, you have complete responsibility for safety in traffic. Only use the functions such as the lap timer in such a way that you always maintain complete control over your vehicle in all traffic situations.

Tips

You can retrieve information from the trip computer while the lap timer stopwatch is running.

Lap times and timing

Applies to: vehicles with lap timer

Requirement: the lap timer must be open ⇨ *page 117*.

Timing laps

- ▸ To start timing, select **Lap 1 - press OK** or **Start lap 1** in the menu.
- ▸ Applies to: vehicles with Audi virtual cockpit: To start timing automatically when you start driving, select **Start lap 1 by driving off** or **Start by driving off** in the menu.
- ▸ To measure the lap time, select **New lap - press OK** or **New lap** in the menu. This starts timing the next lap at the same time.

After completing, the difference between the last lap and the previous best lap time will be indicated with a "–"/ or "+"/.

Pausing timing and displaying a split time

- ▸ To insert a pause ⏸, select **Pause** in the menu.
- ▸ To continue timing, select **Press OK to resume** or **Resume** in the menu.
- ▸ To display a split time, select **Split time** in the menu. The split time appears for approximately 10 seconds in the instrument cluster. The timing of the current lap continues.

Resetting timing

- ▸ Using the multifunction steering wheel, select **Reset** or **Reset times** in the menu. ▶

Tips

– A maximum of 30 lap times (analog instrument cluster) or 99 lap times (Audi virtual cockpit*) can be measured.
– If timing is paused, you can continue it later even if you switch the ignition off.
– Saved lap times cannot be individually deleted from the total results.
– The saved lap timer values will remain after switching the ignition off.

Lap statistics

Applies to: vehicles with lap timer

Displaying lap statistics

You can display the number of laps driven, the fastest lap "+", the slowest lap "–", and the average time "Ø" in the instrument cluster.

- Applies to: vehicles with analog instrument cluster: Select **Statistics** in the menu using the multifunction steering wheel.
- Applies to: vehicles with Audi virtual cockpit: On the multifunction steering wheel, select: left control button > **Lap statistics** or **Statistics**.
- Turn the thumbwheel down or up to display the individual lap times.
- To return to the lap timing that was begun, press the left thumbwheel.

Resetting lap statistics

Applies to: vehicles with Audi virtual cockpit

- On the multifunction steering wheel, select: the right control button > **Reset statistics**.

Tips

– The lap statistics list the lap times for the last 30 laps.
– Applies to: vehicles with Audi virtual cockpit: The fastest and slowest lap times from up to 99 timed laps will be displayed.

Audi adaptive cruise control

Description

Applies to: vehicles with Audi adaptive cruise control

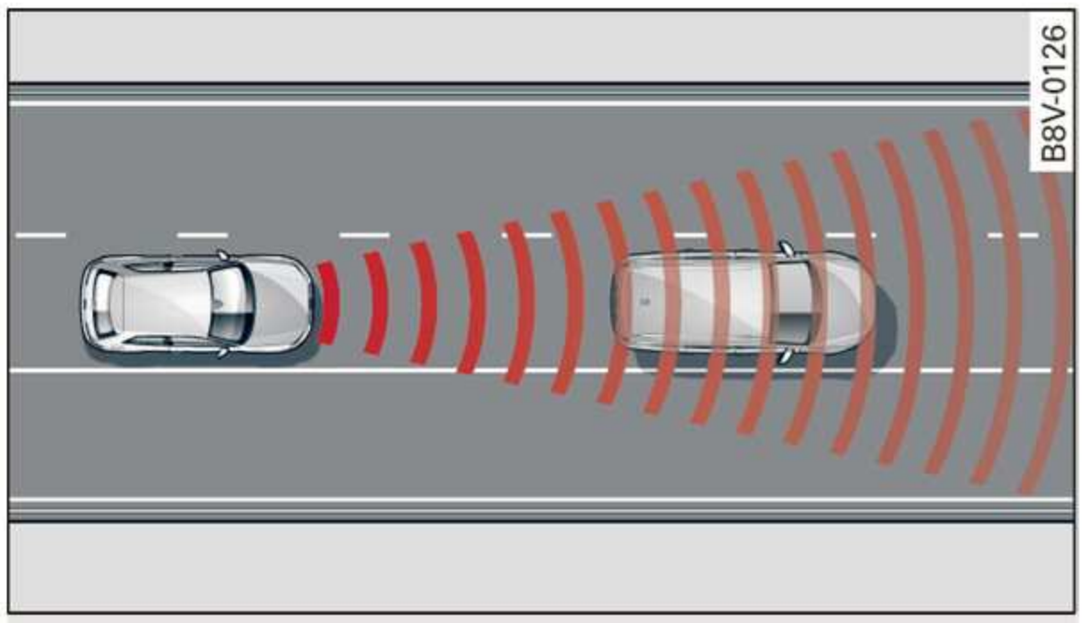


Fig. 108 Detection range

The adaptive cruise control system is a combination of speed and distance regulation. It assists the driver by both regulating the speed and maintaining a distance to the vehicle driving ahead, within the limits of the system. If the system detects a vehicle driving ahead, the adaptive cruise control can brake and accelerate your vehicle. This increases driving comfort during long trips on highways and in stop-and-go traffic.

What can adaptive cruise control do?

The adaptive cruise control system uses radar. The radar is subject to designated system limits ⇨ *page 119*.

On open roads with no traffic, it functions like a cruise control system. The stored speed is maintained. When approaching a vehicle ahead and the system detects it, the adaptive cruise control system automatically brakes to match that object's speed and then maintains the stored distance. As soon as the system does not detect a vehicle driving ahead, adaptive cruise control accelerates up to the stored speed.

Within the limits of the system, adaptive cruise control can brake in stop-and-go traffic until the vehicle is stationary and then begin driving again under certain conditions ⇨ *page 122, Driving in stop-and-go traffic*. ▶

Which functions can be controlled?

When you switch adaptive cruise control on, you can set the current speed as the "control speed" ⇨ *page 120, Switching on and off*.

When driving, you can stop cruise control ⇨ *page 122* or change the speed ⇨ *page 121* at any time.

You can also set the distance to the vehicle ahead and set the adaptive cruise control driving program ⇨ *page 123*.

General information

Applies to: vehicles with Audi adaptive cruise control/Audi pre sense front



Fig. 109 Front of vehicle: sensor

The radar sensor area ⇨ *fig. 109* must not be covered with stickers, deposits or any other obstructions as it may impair the function of the adaptive cruise control or the pre sense front. For information on cleaning, see ⇨ *page 342*. The same applies for any modifications made in the front area.

The function of the adaptive cruise control system or pre sense front is limited in some conditions:

- Vehicles can only be detected when they are within the sensor range ⇨ *page 118, fig. 108*.
- The system has a limited ability to detect vehicles that are a short distance ahead, off to the side of your vehicle or moving into your lane.
- Objects that are difficult to detect such as motorcycles, vehicles with high ground clearance or an overhanging load are detected late or not detected at all.
- When driving through curves ⇨ *page 120*.
- When the vehicle is stationary ⇨ *page 120*.

WARNING

Always pay attention to the traffic around you when adaptive cruise control is switched on. As the driver, you are still responsible for your own speed and the distance to other vehicles. The adaptive cruise control is used to assist you. The driver must always take action to avoid a collision. The driver is always responsible for braking at the correct time.

- For safety reasons, do not use adaptive cruise control when driving on roads with many curves, when the road surface is in poor condition and/or in bad weather (such as ice, fog, gravel, heavy rain and hydroplaning). Using the system under these conditions could result in a collision.
- Switch adaptive cruise control off temporarily when driving in turning lanes, on expressway exits or in construction zones. This prevents the vehicle from accelerating to the stored speed when in these situations.
- The adaptive cruise control system will not brake by itself if you put your foot on the accelerator pedal. Doing so can override the speed and distance regulation.
- Adaptive cruise control does not respond to people, animals, or crossing or oncoming objects.
- The function of the radar sensors can be affected by reflective objects such as guard rails, the entrance to a tunnel, heavy rain or ice.

Note

The sensor can be displaced by impacts or damage to the bumper, wheel housing and underbody. This can impair the adaptive cruise control. Have an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility check their function.

Tips

For an explanation on conformity with the FCC regulations in the United States and the Industry Canada regulations, see ⇨ *page 377*.

In curves

Applies to: vehicles with Audi adaptive cruise control/Audi pre sense front

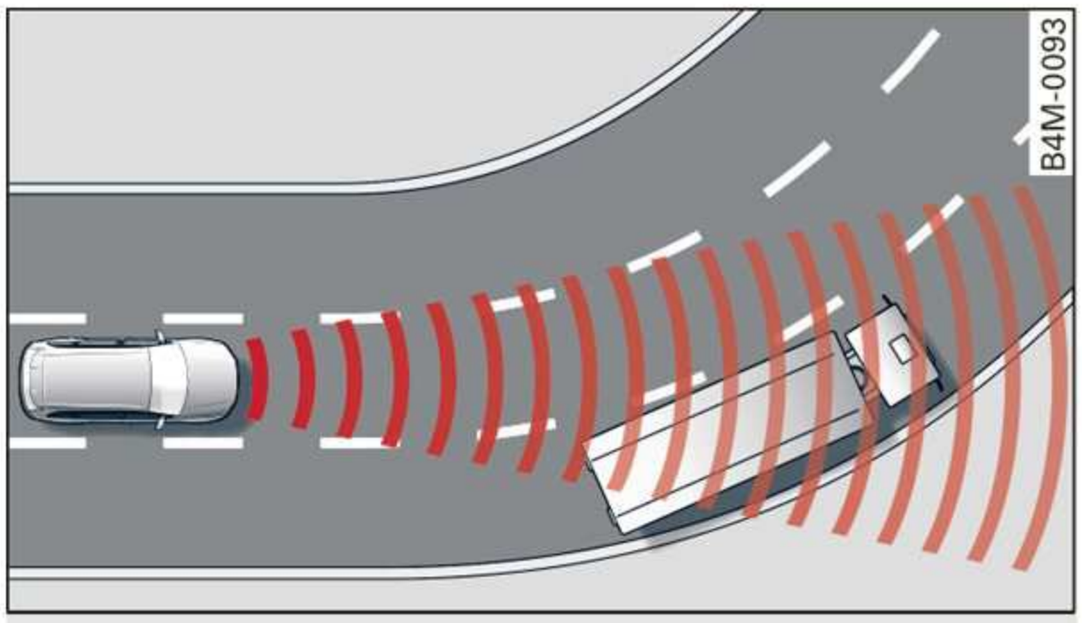


Fig. 110 Example: driving into a curve

When driving into a curve ⇨ *fig. 110* and out of a curve, the system may react to a vehicle in the neighboring lane and apply the brakes. You can prevent that by pressing the accelerator pedal briefly.

Stationary vehicles

Applies to: vehicles with Audi adaptive cruise control

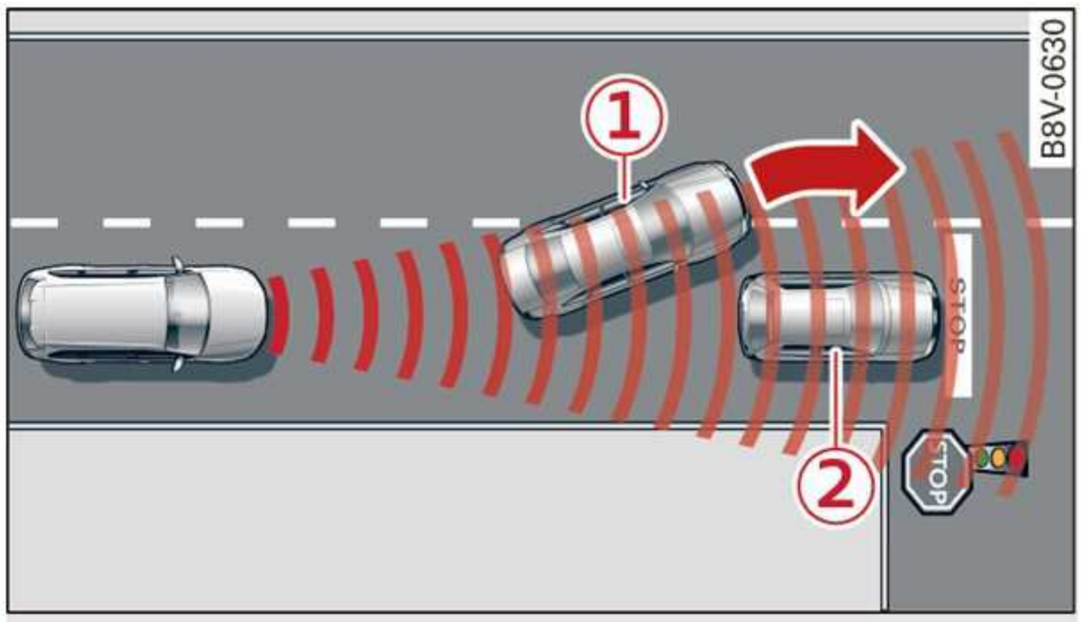


Fig. 111 Example: vehicle changing lanes and stationary vehicle

The adaptive cruise control system only reacts to vehicles that being moving or to vehicles that the system has already detected as moving. For example, it can react when a vehicle that has already been detected ① turns or changes lanes, but adaptive cruise control does not react to a stationary vehicle ②. Press the brake pedal to slow the vehicle down.

Switching on and off

Applies to: vehicles with Audi adaptive cruise control



Fig. 112 Operating lever: switching on and off



Fig. 113 Instrument cluster: adaptive cruise control

ACC: you can set any speed between 20 and 95 mph (30 and 150 km/h).

Indicator lights and messages in the instrument cluster display inform you about the current situation and setting.

Switching adaptive cruise control on

- ▸ Pull the lever toward you into position ① ⇨ *fig. 112*.

Storing the speed and activating regulation

- ▸ To store the current speed and activate the regulation, press the SET button ⇨ *fig. 112* ⇨ ⚠.

  The stored speed is shown in the tachometer LED line ② and appears briefly in the information line ⑤ ⇨ *fig. 113*.
- ▸ To activate the regulation while stationary, you must press the brake pedal.

Switching adaptive cruise control off

- ▸ Push the lever away from you into position ⓪ until it clicks into place. The message **ACC: off** appears.

The stored speed in the LED line is erased. ▶

③ Indicator lights

- Adaptive cruise control must be switched on. No vehicles are detected ahead. The stored speed is maintained.

- A vehicle driving ahead was detected. The adaptive cruise control system regulates the speed and distance to the vehicle ahead and brakes/accelerates automatically.

- Adaptive cruise control must be switched on. A vehicle was detected ahead. Your vehicle remains stopped and will not start driving automatically.

- The automatic braking is not enough to maintain a sufficient distance to a vehicle driving ahead. You must intervene ⇨ *page 124, Driver intervention request*.

④ Instrument cluster display

If adaptive cruise control is not shown in the instrument cluster display, you can call it up using the multifunction steering wheel buttons ⇨ *page 17*.

Based on the graphics in the display, you can determine if the system is maintaining a distance to a vehicle ahead and what that distance to this vehicle is:

No vehicle - No vehicle was detected driving ahead.

Silver vehicle - A vehicle was detected driving ahead.

Red vehicle - Request for driver intervention ⇨ *page 124*.

The five **distance bars** on the **gauge** ④ represent the set distance (refer to ⇨ *page 123* for information on how to change the distance). If you fall below the selected distance, the distance bars become red from the bottom upward.

WARNING

If you press the SET button when driving at speeds below 20 mph (30 km/h), the vehicle accelerates automatically up to 20 mph (30 km/h), which is the minimum speed that can be set.

Tips

- If you switch the ignition or the adaptive cruise control system off, the set speed is erased for safety reasons.
- The Electronic Stabilization Control (ESC) and the Anti-Slip-Regulation (ASR) are automatically switched on when the adaptive cruise control is switched on.

Changing the speed

Applies to: vehicles with Audi adaptive cruise control



Fig. 114 Operating lever: changing the speed

- ► To increase or decrease the speed in increments, **tap** the lever in the ⊕/⊖ direction.
- ► To increase or decrease the speed quickly, **hold** the lever toward ⊕/⊖ until the red LED ② ⇨ *page 120, fig. 113* reaches the desired speed.

You can also preselect the speed when adaptive cruise control is not active by moving the lever in the desired direction ⊕/⊖. Activate the previously selected speed by pulling the lever into position ① ⇨ *page 120, fig. 112*.

After each change, the new stored speed appears briefly in the status line ⇨ *page 120, fig. 113* ⑤. When adaptive cruise control is active, the or indicator light turns on, and when adaptive cruise control is not active, the indicator light turns on. In the Audi virtual cockpit*, the indicator light turns on instead.

Driving in stop-and-go traffic

Applies to: vehicles with Audi adaptive cruise control



Fig. 115 Instrument cluster: safe start monitor

The adaptive cruise control system assists you in stop-and-go traffic. If a vehicle that is detected ahead stops, your vehicle will brake and stay at a stop, within the limits of the system.

- ▸ To resume driving with adaptive cruise control, tap the accelerator pedal or
- ▸ Pull the lever toward you into position ② ⇨ *page 122, fig. 116*.

Starting to drive with adaptive cruise control[1)]

As long as the message **ACC autom. go** is displayed and the object detected ahead starts to move, your vehicle will continue driving ⇨ ⚠. You can activate **ACC: autom. go** again for a short time by pulling the lever to position ②.

The **ACC: autom. go** start mode ends when the brake pedal is pressed.

For safety reasons, your vehicle will only start to drive automatically if:

– The driver's safety belt is fastened
– All doors and the hood are closed
– Your vehicle is not stationary for more than three minutes

Safe start monitor

If an obstacle is detected when you start driving, you will be alerted to the danger by the indicator light and the image in the instrument cluster display ⇨ *fig. 115* ⇨ ⚠. An audio signal will also sound. Your vehicle will drive more slowly when starting. This may also occur in some situations when there is no apparent obstacle.

– Press the brake pedal to slow your vehicle down.

WARNING

If the message **ACC: autom. go**[1)] appears, your vehicle will start driving, even if there is an obstacle between your vehicle and the vehicle driving ahead. This increases the risk of an accident.

Tips

If adaptive cruise control is active and your vehicle does not start driving even though the message **ACC: autom. go**[1)] appears, you can start driving by tapping the accelerator pedal.

Interrupting cruise control

Applies to: vehicles with Audi adaptive cruise control



Fig. 116 Operating lever

Requirement: adaptive cruise control must be switched on.

Overriding cruise control

- ▸ To accelerate manually, pull the lever toward you into position ② and hold it there, or press the accelerator pedal. The message **ACC: override** appears.
- ▸ To resume cruise control, release the lever or take your foot off the accelerator pedal.

Interrupting cruise control while driving

- ▸ Move the lever into position ③. The message **ACC: standby** appears. Or ▶

1) This is not available in some countries.

- ► Press the brake pedal.
- ► To resume the stored speed, move the lever into position ②.

Interrupting cruise control when stopped

- ► Push the lever away from you into position ③. The message **ACC: standby** appears.
- ► To resume cruise control, press the brake pedal and pull the lever toward you into position ②.

WARNING

It is dangerous to activate cruise control and resume the stored speed when the current road, traffic or weather conditions do not permit this. This increases the risk of an accident.

Setting the distance

Applies to: vehicles with Audi adaptive cruise control

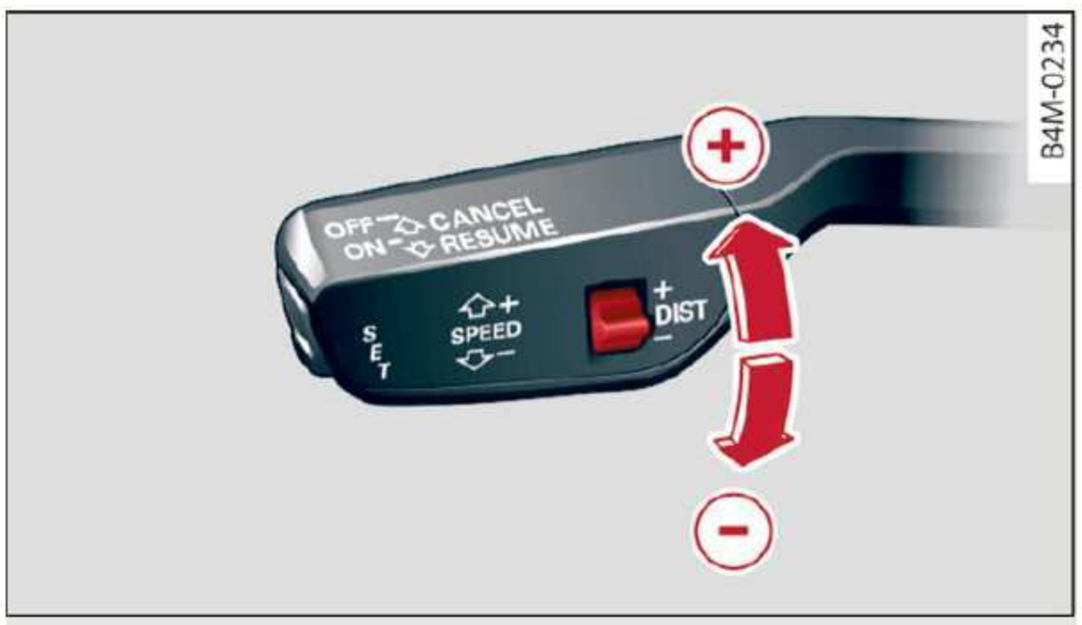


Fig. 117 Operating lever: setting the distance

- ► Tap the switch to display the distance that is currently set ⇨ *fig. 117*.
- ► To increase or reduce the distance in increments, tap the switch upward/downward again. The distance between the two vehicles will change in the instrument cluster display.

When approaching a vehicle driving ahead, the adaptive cruise control system brakes to match that vehicle's speed and then adjusts to the set distance. If the vehicle driving ahead accelerates, then the adaptive cruise control will also accelerate up to the speed that you have set.

The higher the speed, the greater the distance ⇨ ⚠. The **Distance 3** setting is recommended. That is equal to the general recommendation of “half the speed shown on the speedometer”.

The distances provided are specified values. Depending on the driving situation and how the vehicle ahead is driving, the actual distance may be more or less than these target distances.

If you change the time gaps, the value you have just set appears briefly in the instrument cluster display, for example for **Distance 3**. This only occurs if the adaptive cruise control is not currently shown in the display ⇨ *page 120, fig. 113*.

Distance 1: this setting corresponds to a distance of 92 feet (28 m) when traveling at 62 mph (100 km/h), or a time distance of 1 second.

Distance 2: this setting corresponds to a distance of 118 feet (36 m) when traveling at 62 mph (100 km/h), or a time distance of 1.3 seconds.

Distance 3: this setting corresponds to a distance of 164 feet (50 m) when traveling at 62 mph (100 km/h), or a time distance of 1.8 seconds.

Distance 4: this setting corresponds to a distance of 219 feet (67 m) when traveling at 62 mph (100 km/h), or a time distance of 2.4 seconds.

Distance 5: this setting corresponds to a distance of 328 feet (100 m) when traveling at 62 mph (100 km/h), or a time distance of 3.6 seconds.

WARNING

When setting the distance, the driver is responsible for adhering to any applicable legal regulations.

Tips

Your settings are automatically stored and assigned to the remote control key being used.

Setting the driving program

Applies to: vehicles with Audi adaptive cruise control

Depending on the selected driving program and distance, driving behavior when accelerating will vary from dynamic to comfortable.

Setting the driving program on vehicles without drive select*

- ► Select in the Infotainment system: MENU button > **Vehicle** > left control button > **Driver assistance** > **Audi adaptive cruise control** > ▶

Driving program > **Comfort, Standard** or **Dynamic**.

Setting the driving mode on vehicles with drive select*

See ⇨ *page 91*.

Tips

Your settings are automatically stored and assigned to the remote control key being used.

Driver intervention request

Applies to: vehicles with Audi adaptive cruise control



Fig. 118 Instrument cluster: request for driver intervention

The request for driver intervention instructs you to take over if the adaptive cruise control braking function is not able to maintain a sufficient distance to the vehicle driving ahead ⇨ *fig. 118*.

Distance display and distance warning

Applies to: vehicles with Audi adaptive cruise control

This function measures the time between the vehicle driving ahead and shows this in the instrument cluster display.



Fig. 119 Instrument cluster: distance indicator/warning

Description

At speeds above approximately 40 mph (65 km/h), this function measures the distance to the vehicle ahead as time.

- ▸ Switch the adaptive cruise control display on in the instrument cluster display ⇨ *page 17*.

The indicator light turns on if you fall below the set distance.

Setting the warning threshold

You can set, change or delete the warning threshold in the Infotainment system.

- ▸ In the Infotainment system, select: MENU button > **Vehicle** > left control button > **Driver assistance** > **Distance warning**.

WARNING

- Read and follow the warnings on ⇨ ⚠ *in General information on page 119*.
- The driver is always responsible for adhering to the regulations applicable in the country where the vehicle is being operated.

Tips

You may fall below he warning threshold briefly when passing or when quickly approaching a slow vehicle. There is no warning in this scenario. A warning is given only if you fall below the warning threshold for an extended period of time.

Messages

Applies to: vehicles with Audi adaptive cruise control

ACC: unavailable

The system cannot guarantee that it will detect vehicles correctly and it has switched off. The sensor was moved or is faulty. Drive to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility immediately to have the malfunction corrected.

ACC: currently unavailable. No sensor view

ACC: currently unavailable. Sensor vision restricted due to surroundings. See owner's manual

This message appears if the sensor view is obstructed, for example by leaves, snow, heavy spray or dirt. Clean the sensor ⇨ *page 119, fig. 109*.

ACC: currently unavailable. Incline too steep

The road exceeds the maximum possible angle for safe adaptive cruise control operation. The adaptive cruise control cannot be switched on.

ACC: only available in D, S or M

The adaptive cruise control system only works in the specified selector lever position. Select the respective selector lever position.

ACC: parking brake applied

The adaptive cruise control system switches off automatically if the parking brake is set. The adaptive cruise control is available again after releasing the parking brake.

ACC: currently unavailable. Stabilization control input

This message appears if the Electronic Stabilization Control (ESC) is taking action to stabilize the vehicle. In this case, adaptive cruise control switches off automatically.

ACC: Please take over!

This message appears if the vehicle rolls back when starting on a slight incline, even though ACC is active. Press the brake pedal to prevent the vehicle from rolling or starting to move.

ACC: currently unavailable. Park assist active

The systems switch off when Park assist* is active. The systems are available again after completing the parking process.

Distance warning: malfunction! Please contact Service

The system cannot guarantee that it will detect vehicles correctly and it has switched off. The radar sensor was moved or is faulty. Drive to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility immediately to have the malfunction corrected.

Distance warning: currently unavailable. Sensor view limited due to surroundings.

This message appears if the sensor view is obstructed, for example by leaves, snow, heavy spray or dirt. Clean the sensor ⇨ *page 119, fig. 109*.

Distance warning: currently unavailable. See owner's manual

This message appears if the system has a temporary failure. If this occurs multiple times, drive to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility immediately to have the malfunction corrected.

Fasten seat belt

The system is not completely available if the driver's seat belt is unfastened.

Stat. obj. ahead

This message appears if you would like to switch the system on and there is a stationary object directly in front of your vehicle.

Door open

The system is not available when the vehicle is stationary and the driver's door is open.

Audi pre sense

Introduction

Applies to: vehicles with Audi pre sense

Within the limits of the system, the pre sense functions can initiate measures in particularly dangerous situations to protect the vehicle passengers and other road users.

– Due to the interlinking of various vehicle systems, critical driving situations can be detected by **pre sense basic** and measures for preventative occupant protection are can be initiated.
– The **pre sense front** uses the data from the radar sensors and calculates the probability of an accident ⇨ *page 119*. An impending collision with vehicles can be detected within the limits of the system. In this case, the system warns the driver visually, acoustically and with a jerk on the brakes if necessary. If needed, it can initiate a partial or full deceleration to reduce the collision speed or to avoid the collision under certain circumstances. In conjunction with pre ▶

sense basic, the front safety belts are also reversibly tensioned when needed. The pre sense front is also active when adaptive cruise control* is switched off.

WARNING

Also follow the general instructions found in ⇨ ⚠ *in General information on page 119*.

Tips

– Certain pre sense functions switch off when driving in reverse.
– The pre sense functions may not be available if there is a malfunction in the ESC system or the airbag control module.
– Note that the reversible belt tensioner on the front passenger's side deactivates when the front passenger's airbag is deactivated.
– Certain Audi pre sense front functions are unavailable or have limited availability for approximately 20 seconds after starting the vehicle (may be longer depending on the driving situation).
– Switch the pre sense off when you are not using public streets or when loading the vehicle onto a vehicle carrier, train, ship, or other type of transportation. This can prevent an undesired intervention from the pre sense system.

Audi pre sense basic

Applies to: vehicles with Audi pre sense basic

The pre sense basic functions are activated at a speed of approximately 20 mph (30 km/h) or higher.

The following functions can be triggered under certain conditions within the limits of the system:

– Tensioning of the safety belts (for example, during heavy braking): the front safety belts have reversible belt tensioners. If a collision does not occur, the safety belts loosen slightly and are ready to trigger again.
– Initiating the closing of the windows and the panoramic glass roof* (for example when under- or oversteering).

Audi drive select*: the trigger times are adjusted depending on the mode selected.

Audi pre sense front

Applies to: vehicles with Audi pre sense front

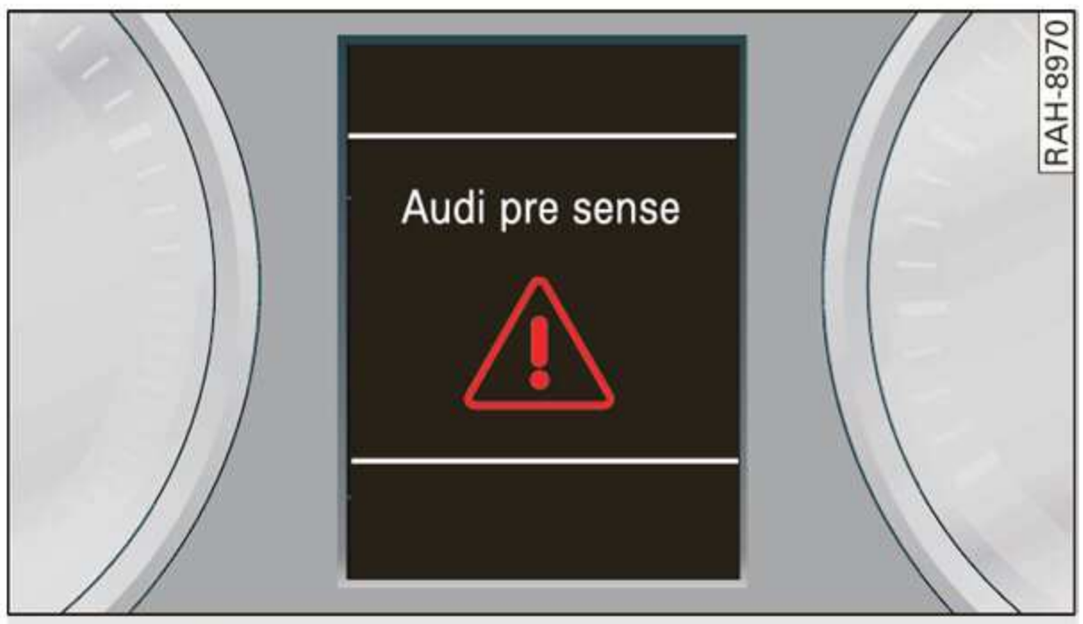


Fig. 120 Instrument cluster: approach warning

Description

Within the limits of the system and depending on the situation and speed, pre sense front can warn you about impending collisions with stationary, stopped, and moving vehicles and initiate appropriate braking measures.

If detection is not possible, then pre sense front does not react.

The following functions trigger in conjunction with pre sense basic at corresponding vehicle speeds:

– Reversible tensioning of the front safety belts
– Closing the windows and panoramic glass roof*

Early warning/acute warning

The system can provide visual and audible warnings when dangerous situations are detected. The **early warning** may occur if:

– a vehicle driving ahead brakes strongly, your vehicle is traveling at speeds between approximately 20 to 50 mph (30 to 85 km/h) and it approaches a stationary vehicle.
– your vehicle is traveling at speeds between approximately 20 to 155 mph (30 to 250 km/h) and it approaches a vehicle that is clearly traveling more slowly or a vehicle in your direction of travel that is stopped.

When this warning occurs, it may only be possible to avoid a collision by swerving or braking ▶

strongly. The message **Audi pre sense** ⇨ *fig. 120* and a warning tone will warn you about the danger.

If there is an impending collision with vehicles, there will also be an **acute warning** in the form of sharp braking. If you do not react to the acute warning, pre sense front can brake with increasing force within the limits of the system. This reduces the vehicle speed in the event of a collision.

Automatic deceleration

Depending on the speed, pre sense front can **decelerate automatically** shortly before a collision:

– if there are stationary vehicles when you are traveling at speeds up to approximately 28 mph (45 km/h)
– if there are vehicles driving or stopped ahead when you are traveling at speeds up to approximately 155 mph (250 km/h)

Automatic braking force increase

If pre sense front determines that you are not braking strongly enough when a collision is imminent, it can increase the braking force, depending on the situation and speed:

– if there are stationary vehicles when you are traveling at speeds up to approximately 50 mph (85 km/h)
– if there are vehicles driving or stopped ahead when you are traveling at speeds up to approximately 155 mph (250 km/h)

WARNING

Pre sense front cannot overcome the laws of physics. It is a system designed to assist and it cannot prevent a collision in every circumstance. The driver must always intervene. The driver is always responsible for braking at the correct time. Do not let the increased safety provided tempt you into taking risks. This could increase your risk of a collision.

– Loose objects can be thrown around the vehicle interior during sudden driving or braking maneuvers, which increases the risk of an accident. Store objects securely while driving.
– The system can deploy incorrectly due to system-specific limits.
– Please note that the sensor does not always detect all objects. This increases the risk of a collision.
– Pre sense front does not react to vehicles traveling toward you in the same lane, to people, groups of people, animals, objects that are crossing the road, or objects that are difficult to detect ⇨ ⚠ *in General information on page 119*.

WARNING

Pre sense front may be restricted or not available in the following example situations:

– If there are other reflective objects nearby, such as guard rails or vehicles
– When driving into a tunnel
– In heavy fog, rain, spray, or snow
– If the radar sensor is dirty, covered in ice, damaged, or covered
– In curves
– If the ESC was switched off.

Note

The sensor can be displaced by impacts or damage to the bumper, wheel housing and underbody. Pre sense front can be impaired by this. Have an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility check their function.

Tips

– You can cancel the braking with increasing force that is initiated by the system by braking yourself, by accelerating noticeably or by swerving.
– When driving in reverse, certain pre sense front functions are switched off.
– System functions may not be available if the ESC is limited or switched off, or if there is a malfunction.

Settings in the Infotainment system

Applies to: vehicles with Audi pre sense

- Select in the Infotainment system: MENU button > **Vehicle** > left control button > **Driver assistance** > **Audi pre sense**.

System - The pre sense functions can be switched on and off.

If the system is switched off, it switches on again automatically once the ignition is switched on again.

Prewarning - The early warning can be switched **off** permanently or the pre sense front warning point can be set (**Early**/**Medium**/**Late**).

Set the warning time for the early warning to **Early** at first. If this causes undesired early warnings to appear, then set the warning time to **Medium**. The **Late** warning time should only be set in special circumstances.

Tips

If the system is switched off, it switches on again automatically once the ignition is switched on again.

Messages

Applies to: vehicles with Audi pre sense

Audi pre sense: malfunction! Please contact Service

This message appears when the pre sense function is affected. For example, this could be caused by a faulty sensor. If the message stays on, drive immediately to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility to have the malfunction corrected.

Audi pre sense: currently limited. Sensor view limited due to surroundings.

This message appears if the sensor view is obstructed, for example by leaves, snow, heavy spray or dirt. Clean the sensor if necessary ⇨ *page 119, fig. 109*.

Audi pre sense: currently limited

This message appears if the ESC is restricted or switched off, for example.

Audi pre sense: currently limited. See owner's manual

This message appears when there is a temporary failure in a subsystem, such as the ESC. If this message appears repeatedly, drive to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility to have the malfunction corrected.

Audi pre sense: emergency braking system off

This message appears if the pre sense functions are switched off through the Infotainment system or if the system is not ready.

Audi active lane assist

Description

Applies to: vehicles with Audi active lane assist

Active lane assist (lane departure warning) detects lane marker lines within the limits of the system using a camera in the windshield. If you are approaching a detected lane marker line and it appears likely that you will leave the lane, the system will warn you with corrective steering. You can override this steering at any time. If you pass over a line, the steering wheel will vibrate lightly. In order for this warning vibration to occur, it must first be switched on in the Infotainment system. Active lane assist is ready for operation when the lane marker line is detected on at least one side of the vehicle.

The system is designed for driving on expressways and highways and therefore only activates at speeds above approximately 40 mph (65 km/h).

Applies to: vehicles with Audi side assist

If you activate a turn signal when active lane assist is ready and it classifies a lane change as critical because of vehicles traveling alongside you or approaching you, there will be noticeable corrective steering shortly before you leave the lane. This will attempt to keep your vehicle in the lane.

Applies to: vehicles without Audi side assist

The system will not warn you before crossing a lane marker line if you have activated the turn ▶

signal. In this case, it assumes that you are changing lanes intentionally.

WARNING

- The system warns the driver that the vehicle is leaving the lane using corrective steering. The driver is always responsible for keeping the vehicle within the lane.
- The system can help you keep the vehicle in the lane, but it does not drive by itself. Always keep your hands on the steering wheel.
- Corrective steering may not occur in certain situations, such as during heavy braking.
- There may be cases where the camera does not recognize all lane marker lines. Corrective steering can only take place on the side of the vehicle where lane marker lines are detected.
- Other road structures or objects could possibly be identified unintentionally as lane marker lines. As a result, corrective steering may be unexpected or may not occur.
- The camera view can be restricted, for example by vehicles driving ahead or by rain, snow, heavy spray light shining into the camera or by dirt on the window. This can result in active lane assist not detecting the lane marker lines or detecting them incorrectly.
- Under certain conditions such as ruts in the road, an inclined roadway or crosswinds, the corrective steering alone may not be enough to keep the vehicle in the middle of the lane.
- For safety reasons, active lane assist must not be used when there are poor road and/or weather conditions such as slippery roads, fog, gravel, heavy rain, snow and the potential for hydroplaning. Using active lane assist under these conditions may increase the risk of a crash.

Switching on and off

Applies to: vehicles with Audi active lane assist



Fig. 121 Turn signal lever: switching Active lane assist on and off (example)

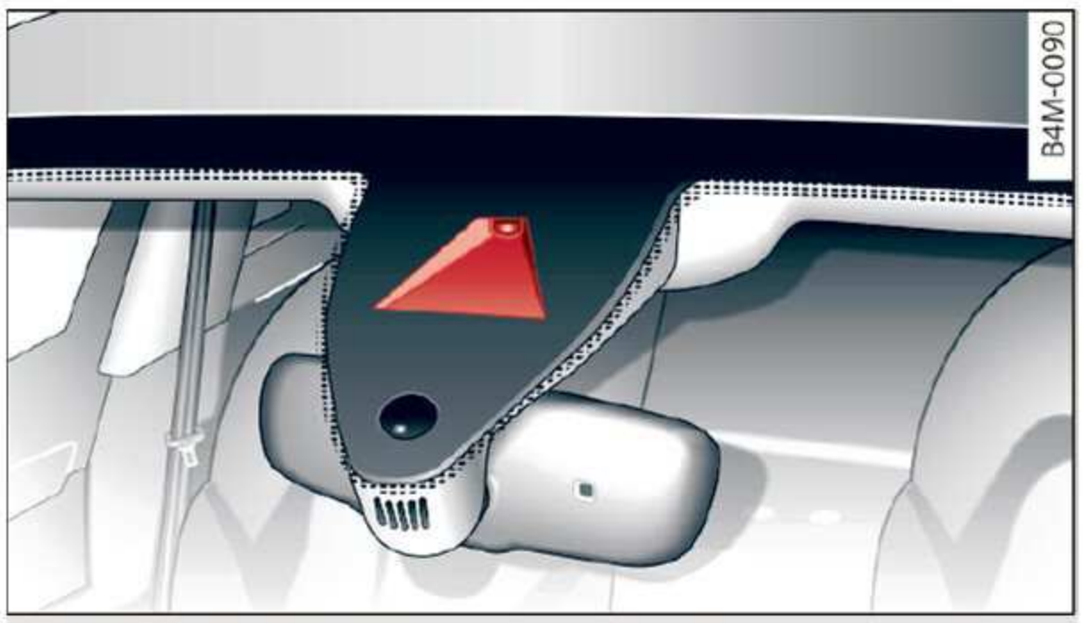


Fig. 122 Windshield: camera window for active lane assist

▸ Press the button to switch the system on and off ⇨ *fig. 121*. The indicator light in the instrument cluster turns on or off. ▶

Analog instrument cluster	Audi virtual cockpit*	Meaning on the corresponding side
Green lines	Green line(s) (left/right)	Active lane assist is activated and ready to provide warnings.
-	Red line (left/right)	Active lane assist will warn you before the vehicle leaves a lane. The steering wheel will also vibrate lightly.
Yellow lines	Gray line(s) (left/right)	Active lane assist is activated, but is not ready to provide warnings.

If the system is switched on but is not ready to provide warnings, one of the following could be the cause:

– There is no lane marker line
– The relevant lane marker lines are not detected (for example, markings in a construction zone or because they are obstructed by snow, dirt, water or lighting)
– The vehicle speed is below the activation speed of approximately 40 mph (65 km/h)
– The lane is too narrow or too wide
– The curve is too narrow
– The driver's hands are not on the steering wheel

Tips

– Make sure the camera's field of view ⇨ *fig. 122* is not obstructed by stickers or anything else. For information on cleaning, see ⇨ *page 342*.
– In certain markets: if the system is switched on, it will switch on automatically each time the ignition is switched on.

Display in the instrument cluster

Applies to: vehicles with Audi active lane assist

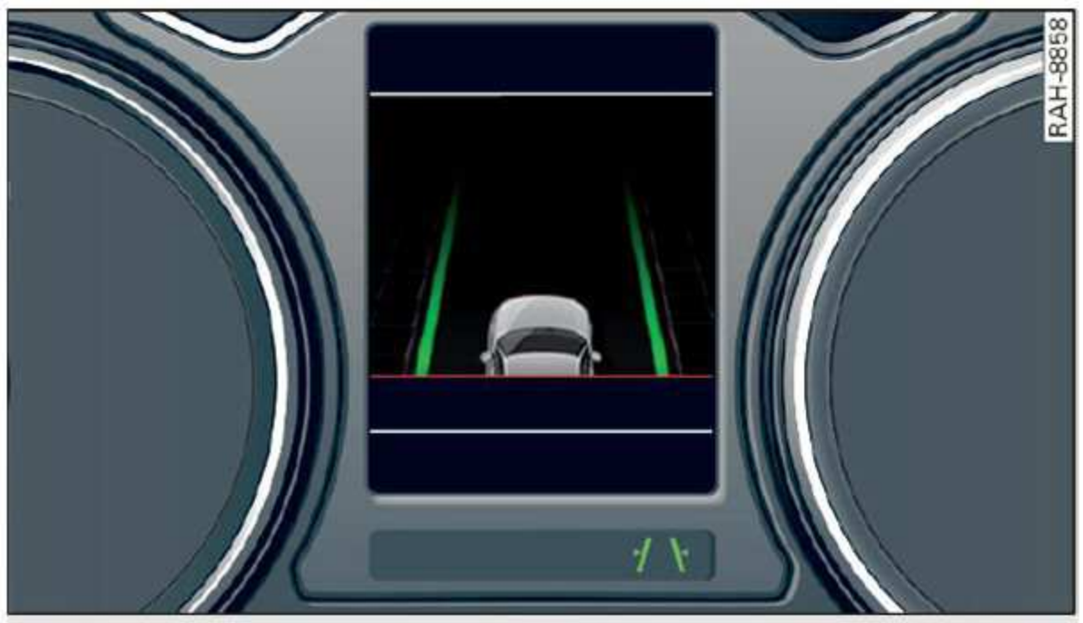


Fig. 123 Instrument cluster: active lane assist is switched on and ready to provide warnings

You can open the active lane assist display using the buttons in the multifunction steering wheel ⇨ *page 17* or ⇨ *page 20*.

Display in the instrument cluster	Meaning on the corresponding side
Green line(s) (left or right)	Active lane assist is activated and ready to provide warnings.
Red line (left or right)	Active lane assist will warn you before the vehicle leaves a lane. The steering wheel will also vibrate lightly.
Gray line(s) (left or right)	Active lane assist is activated, but is not ready to provide warnings.

Messages in the instrument cluster display

If the active lane assist switches off automatically, the indicator light in the display turns off and one of the following messages appears:

Audi active lane assist: malfunction! See owner's manual

Drive immediately to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility to have the malfunction repaired.

Audi active lane assist: currently unavailable. No camera view

This message appears if the camera is unable to detect the lines. This could happen if: ▶

– The camera field of view ⇨ *page 129, fig. 122* is dirty or covered in ice. Clean this area on the windshield.
– The camera field of view is fogged over. Wait until the fog has cleared before switching the active lane assist on again.
– The system has been unable to detect the lanes for an extended period of time due to road conditions. Switch active lane assist back on when the lines are more visible.

Audi active lane assist: currently unavailable

There is a temporary active lane assist malfunction. Try switching the active lane assist on again later.

Audi active lane assist: Please take over steering!

This message appears if you are not steering by yourself. Active lane assist is activated, but is not ready to provide warnings.

WARNING

Note that messages may be delayed or not displayed on vehicles with accessories mounted on the steering wheel, such as a steering wheel spinner knob. Always keep your hands on the steering wheel.

Setting the vibration warning

Applies to: vehicles with Audi active lane assist

You can adjust individual Audi active lane assist settings in the Infotainment system.

▸ Select in the Infotainment system: MENU button > **Vehicle** > left control button > **Driver assistance** > **Audi active lane assist**.

Vibration warning

You can switch the additional vibration warning in the steering wheel on or off.

WARNING

With the vibration warning switched off, there will also be no visual warning in the instrument cluster display when crossing a lane marker line.

Tips

In certain markets: certain settings are stored automatically and assigned to the remote control key in use.

Audi side assist

Description

Applies to: vehicles with Audi side assist

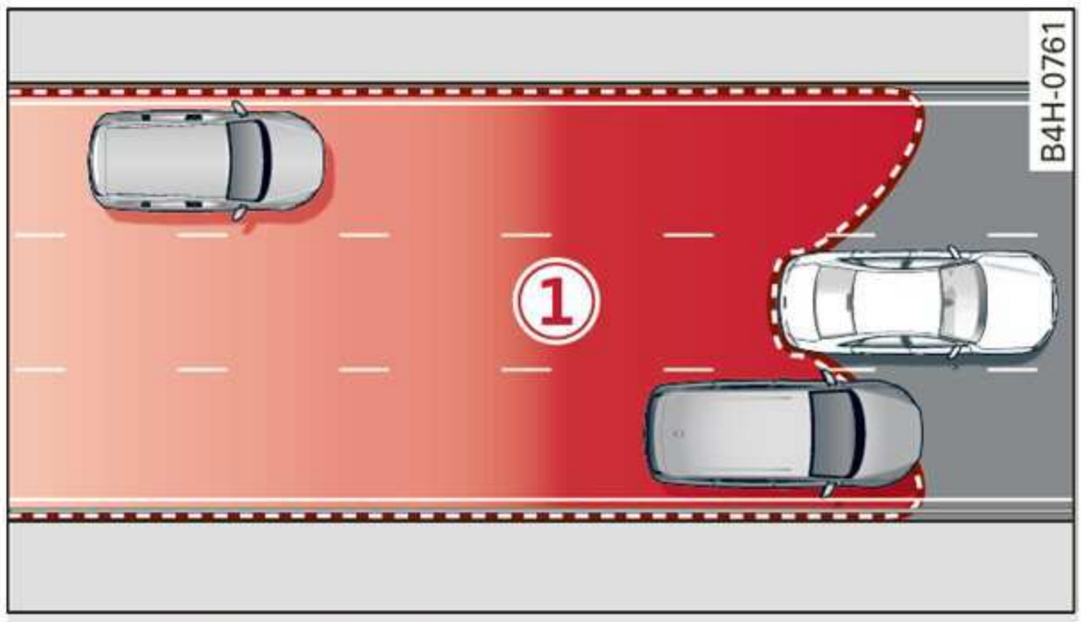


Fig. 124 Sensor detection range

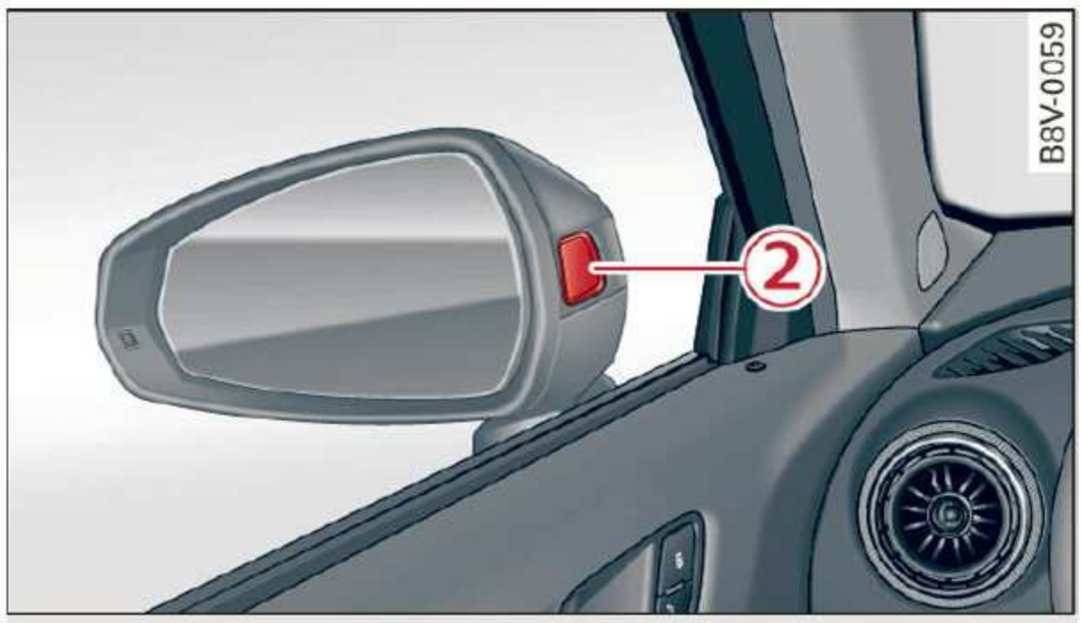


Fig. 125 Display on the exterior mirror

Side assist (lane change assist) helps you monitor your blind spot and traffic behind your vehicle. Within the limits of the system, it warns you about vehicles that are coming closer or that are traveling with you within sensor range ① ⇨ *fig. 124*. If a lane change is classified as critical, the display ② in the exterior mirror turns on ⇨ *fig. 125*.

The display in the left exterior mirror provides assistance when making a lane change to the left, while the display in the right exterior mirror provides assistance when making a lane change to the right.

Information stage

As long as you do not activate the turn signal, side assist *informs* you about vehicles that are ▶

detected and classified as critical. The display in the mirror turns on, but is dim.

The display remains dim in the information stage so that your view toward the front is not disturbed.

Warning stage

If the display in a mirror blinks brightly when you activate a turn signal, side assist is *warning* you about detected vehicles that it has classified as critical. If this happens, check traffic by glancing in the exterior mirrors and over your shoulder ⇨ ⚠ *in General information on page 133*.

Applies to: vehicles with Audi active lane assist

The display in the mirror can also blink if you have not activated a turn signal: if you are approaching a detected lane marker line and it appears you will be leaving the lane, side assist will warn you about detected vehicles that it has classified as critical.

Tips

You can adjust the brightness on of the display on the rearview mirror ⇨ *page 133*.

General information

Applies to: vehicles with Audi side assist

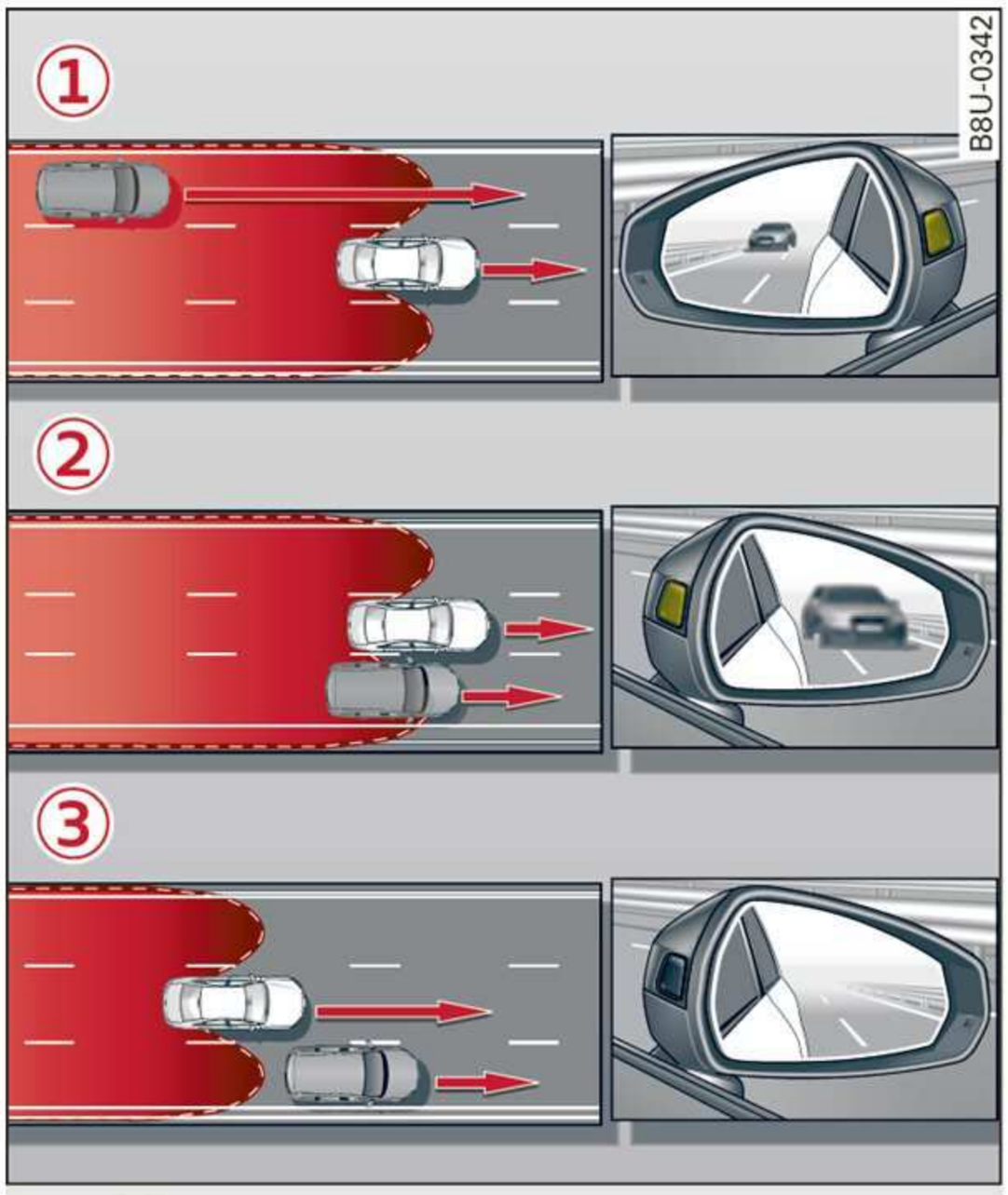


Fig. 126 Driving situations



Fig. 127 Rear of the vehicle: position of the sensors

Side assist functions at speeds above approximately 9 mph (15 km/h).

① Approaching vehicles

In certain cases, a vehicle will be classified as critical for a lane change even if it is still somewhat far away. The faster a vehicle approaches, the sooner the display in the outside mirror will turn on.

② Vehicles traveling with you

Vehicles traveling with you are indicated in the exterior mirror if they are classified as critical for a lane change. All vehicles detected by side assist are indicated by the time they enter your “blind spot”, at the latest.

③ Vehicles you are passing

If you slowly pass a vehicle that side assist has detected (the difference in speed between the vehicle and your vehicle is less than approximately 9 mph (15 km/h)), the display in the exterior mirror turns on as soon as the vehicle enters your blind spot.

The display will not turn on if you quickly pass a vehicle that side assist has detected (the difference in speed is greater than approximately 9 mph (15 km/h)).

Functional limitations

The radar sensors are designed to detect the left and right adjacent lanes when the road lanes are the normal width. In some situations, the display in the exterior mirror may turn on even though there is no vehicle located in the area that is critical for a lane change. For example: ▶

– If the lanes are narrow or if you are driving on the edge of your lane. If this is the case, the system may have detected a vehicle in another lane that is *not* adjacent to your current lane.
– If you are driving through a curve. Side assist may react to a vehicle that is one lane over from the adjacent lane.
– If side assist reacts to other objects (such as high or displaced guard rails).
– In poor weather conditions. The side assist functions are limited.

Do not cover the radar sensors ⇨ *fig. 127* with stickers, deposits, bicycle wheels or other objects, because they will impair the function. For information on cleaning, see ⇨ *page 342*.

WARNING

– Always pay attention to traffic and to the area around your vehicle. Side assist cannot replace a driver's attention. The driver alone is always responsible for lane changes and similar driving maneuvers.
– In some situations, the system may not function or its function may be limited. For example:
  – If vehicles are approaching or being left behind very quickly. The display may not turn on in time.
  – In poor weather conditions such as heavy rain, snow or heavy mist.
  – On very wide lanes, in tight curves, or if there is a rise in the road surface. Vehicles in the adjacent lane may not be detected because they are outside of the sensor range.

Note

The sensors can be displaced by impacts or damage to the bumper, wheel housing and underbody. This can impair the system. Have an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility check their function.

Tips

– If the window glass in the driver's door or front passenger's door has been tinted, the display in the exterior mirror may be incorrect.
– For an explanation on conformity with the FCC regulations in the United States and the Industry Canada regulations, see ⇨ *page 377*.

Switching on and off

Applies to: vehicles with Audi side assist

The system can be switched on/off in the Infotainment system.

If the system is activated, the displays in the exterior mirrors will turn on briefly when the ignition is switched on.

▸ Select in the Infotainment system: MENU button > **Vehicle** > left control button > **Driver assistance** > **Audi side assist**. **Off** switches the system off.

Setting the display brightness

Applies to: vehicles with Audi side assist

The display brightness can be adjusted in the Infotainment system.

▸ Select in the Infotainment system: MENU button > **Vehicle** > left control button > **Driver assistance** > **Audi side assist**.
▸ Adjust the brightness to a level where the display in the information stage will not disrupt your view ahead. If you change the brightness, the display in the exterior mirror will briefly show the brightness level in the information stage.

The brightness of the warning stage is linked to the brightness in the information stage and is adjusted along with the information stage.

The display brightness adjusts automatically to the brightness of the surroundings, both in the information and in the warning stage. In very dark or very bright surroundings, the automatic adjustment will set the display to the minimum or maximum level. In such cases, you may notice no change when adjusting the brightness, or the change may only be noticeable once the surroundings change. ▶

Tips

- Side assist is not active while you are making the adjustment.
- Your settings are automatically stored and assigned to the remote control key being used.

Rear cross-traffic assist

Applies to: vehicles with rear cross-traffic assist

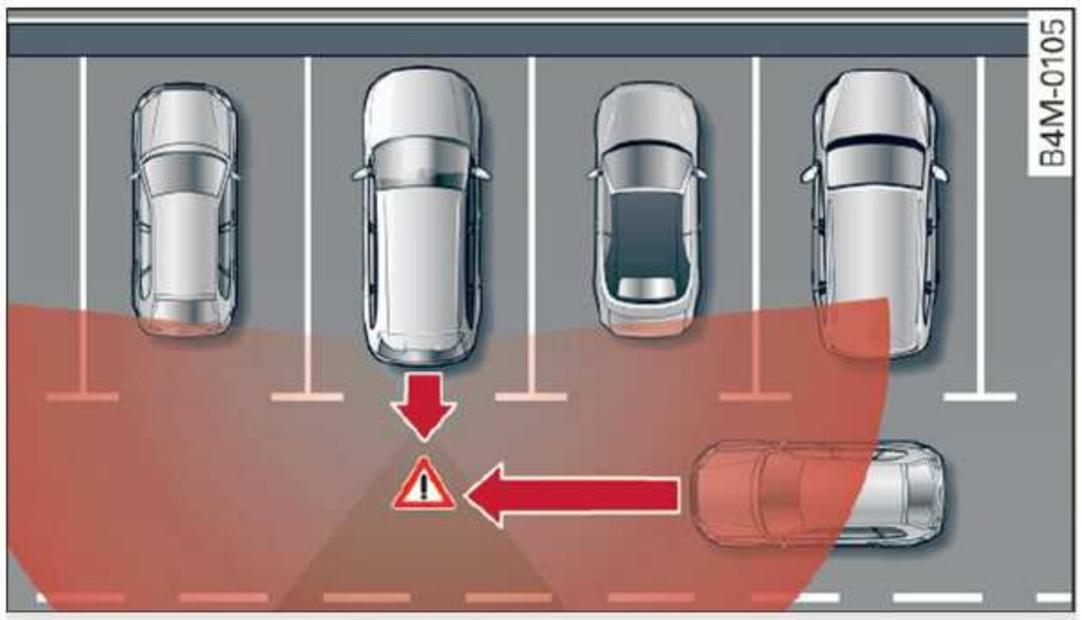


Fig. 128 Example display



Fig. 129 Infotainment system: rear cross-traffic assist display

Activating rear cross-traffic assist

The rear cross-traffic assist is activated automatically if you turn on the parking aid ⇨ *page 136* or shift into reverse gear.

The rear cross-traffic assist can warn the driver of a potential collision with approaching cross-traffic when driving in reverse at speeds up to approximately 7 mph (12 km/h). Within its limits, the system monitors the areas behind and next to the vehicle using the radar sensors when leaving a parking space ⇨ *page 132, fig. 127*. Moving objects that are approaching, such as cars, are detected ⇨ *fig. 128*.

If the system detects critical cross traffic when backing out of a parking space, it will react as follows:

- **Visual indicator**: an indicator appears in the Infotainment system display with a red arrow symbol. The arrow points in the direction from which the object is approaching ⇨ *fig. 129*.
- **Audible warning signal**: a continuous tone may sound as an additional indicator when driving in reverse.
- **Automatic brake activation**: a brief activation of the brakes may also warn you of a potential collision with an approaching object.

The audible warning signal and the automatic brake activation occur only when driving in reverse.

WARNING

- The rear cross-traffic assist is an assist system and cannot prevent a collision by itself. The driver must always intervene. The driver is always responsible for braking at the correct time.
- Please note that the rear cross-traffic assist may activate the brakes unexpectedly. Secure any cargo that you are transporting to reduce the risk of damage or injury.
- An additional brake activation may be triggered within 10 seconds after an automatic brake activation.
- If there is an acoustic warning signal from the rear cross-traffic assist, then the parking system may not warn you of detected obstacles under certain circumstances.
- The view of the radar sensors may be impaired by leaves, snow, heavy spray or dirt. Clean the area in front of the sensors ⇨ *page 132, fig. 127*.

WARNING

- The rear cross-traffic assist will not provide alerts about people and cannot warn you about every type of approaching objects, such as cyclists. Always monitor the traffic as well as the vehicle's surroundings with direct eye contact.
- The rear cross-traffic assist will not provide alerts if your vehicle is parallel or diagonally ▶

parked or if your vehicle is pulled too far into the parking space so that it is hidden by adjacent vehicles.

Note

Also read the information in ⇨ *in General information on page 133*.

Tips

– You can cancel the automatic brake activation with increasing braking force if you apply the brakes yourself or accelerate considerably.
– In some situations, rear cross-traffic assist may warn you even if there is no cross traffic in a critical area, for example when backing into a parking space or maneuvering.
– The rear cross-traffic assist also switches off when you switch off the ESC.
– For an explanation on conformity with the FCC regulations in the United States and the Industry Canada regulations, see ⇨ *page 377*.

Messages

Applies to: vehicles with Audi side assist

Audi side assist: malfunction! Please contact Service

The system cannot guarantee that it will detect vehicles correctly and it has switched off. The sensors have been moved or are faulty. Have the system checked by an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility soon.

Audi side assist: currently unavailable. No sensor view

Audi side assist: currently unavailable. Sensor vision restricted due to surroundings. See owner's manual

The radar sensor vision is impaired. Do not cover the area in front of the sensors with bike wheels, stickers, dirt or other objects. Clean the area covering the sensors, if necessary ⇨ *page 132, fig. 127*.

Audi side assist: currently unavailable

Side assist cannot be switched on at this time because there is a malfunction (for example, the battery charge level may be too low).

Rear parking aid: obstacle detection restricted

The rear cross-traffic assist is not available. Either the ESC is switched off, or the radar sensors may be covered by a bike rack, stickers, leaves, snow or other objects. Switch the ESC on, or clean the area in front of the sensors if necessary ⇨ *page 132, fig. 127*. If this message continues to be displayed, drive immediately to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility to have the malfunction repaired.

Parking aid

General information

Applies to: vehicles with parking system plus/rearview camera/park assist

Depending on your vehicle's equipment, various parking aids will help you when parking and maneuvering.

The **parking system plus** assists you when parking by audibly and visually indicating objects detected in front of and behind the vehicle ⇨ *page 137*.

The **rearview camera** shows the area behind the vehicle in the Infotainment system display. The lines in the rearview camera image help you to park or maneuver ⇨ *page 138*.

Park assist helps you to locate suitable parking spaces when parallel or perpendicular parking, and also helps when leaving a parallel parking space ⇨ *page 140*.

WARNING

- Always look for traffic and check the area around your vehicle by looking at it directly as well. The parking system cannot replace the driver's attention. The driver is always responsible when entering or exiting a parking space and during similar maneuvers.
- Please note that some surfaces, such as clothing, are not detected by the system.
- Sensors and cameras have blind spots in which people and objects cannot be detected. Be especially cautious of small children and animals.
- Always pay attention to the area around the vehicle – using the rearview mirror, too.
- The sensors can be displaced by impacts or damage to the radiator grille, bumper, wheel housing and the underbody. The parking system may be impaired as a result. Have an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility check their function.

Note

- Some objects are not detected or displayed by the system under certain circumstances:
  - objects such as barrier chains, trailer draw bars, vertical poles or fences
  - objects above the sensors such as wall extensions
  - objects with certain surfaces or structures such as chain link fences or powder snow
- If you continue driving closer to a low object, it may disappear from the sensor range. Note that you will no longer be warned about this obstacle.
- Maintain enough distance from the curb to reduce the risk of damage to the rims.

Tips

- The system may provide a warning even though there are no obstacles in the coverage area in some situations, such as:
  - certain road surfaces or when there is tall grass
  - external ultrasonic sources such as from cleaning vehicles
  - in heavy rain, snow, or thick vehicle exhaust
- We recommend that you practice parking in a traffic-free location or parking lot to become familiar with the system. Practice parking in good light and weather conditions.
- You can change the volume and pitch of the signals as well as the display ⇨ *page 144*.
- What appears in the infotainment display is somewhat time-delayed.
- The sensors must be kept clean and free of snow and ice for the parking aid to operate.

Parking system plus

Description

Applies to: vehicles with parking system plus/park assist

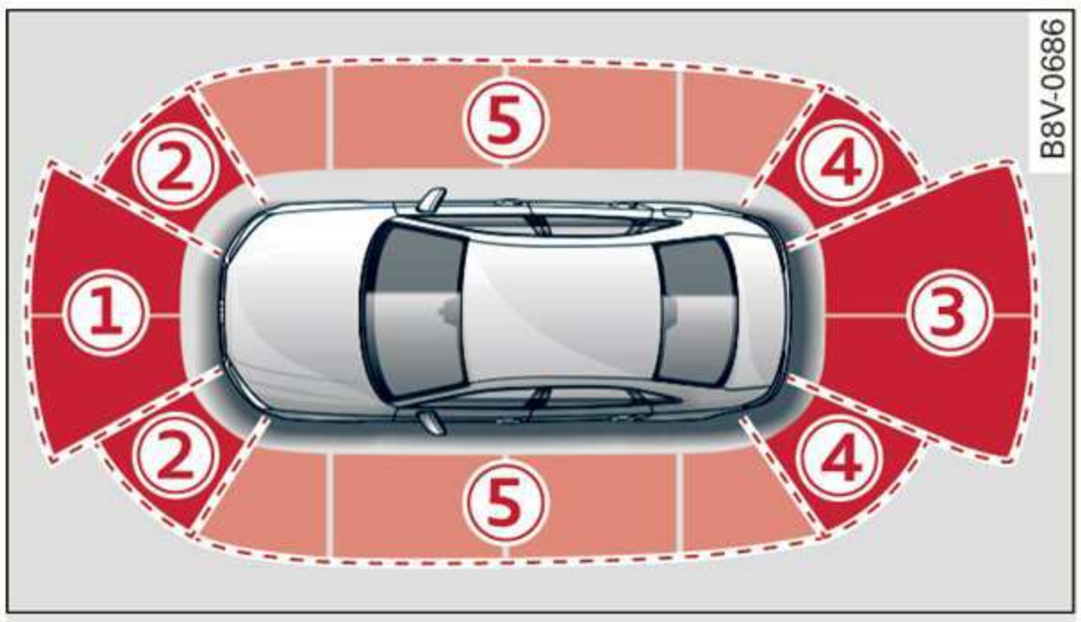


Fig. 130 Principle of operation

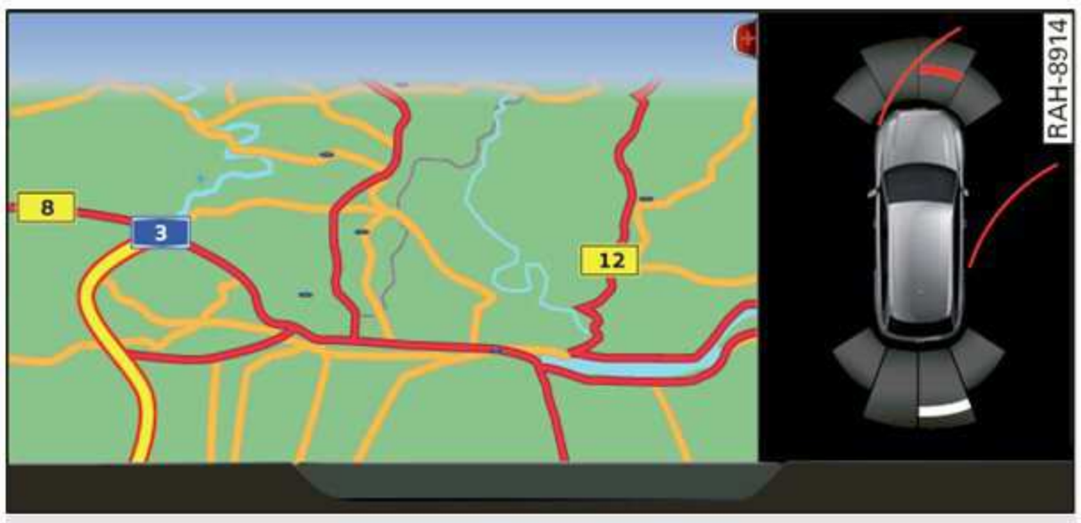


Fig. 131 Infotainment system: visual distance display

The parking system plus uses audio and visual warnings to help you avoid obstacles when parking.

Sensors are located in the front and rear bumpers. If these detect an obstacle, audible and visual signals warn you.

Make sure the sensors are not covered by stickers, deposits or any other obstructions as it may impair the function of the system. For information on cleaning, see ⇨ *page 342*.

The display field begins approximately at:

①	4 ft (1.20 m)
②	3 ft (0.90 m)
③	5.2 ft (1.60 m)
④	3 ft (0.90 m)
⑤*	3 ft (0.90 m)[a)]

a) Applies to: vehicles with park assist

Audio signals

The closer your vehicle gets to a detected obstacle, the shorter the time between the audible signals. A continuous tone sounds when an obstacle is less than approximately 1 foot (0.30 m) away from the front or rear of the vehicle. A continuous tone sounds when an obstacle is less than approximately 0.7 feet (0.20 m) away from the sides* of the vehicle. Do not continue driving forward or in reverse ⇨ ⓘ *in General information on page 136*.

Visual warnings

The visual warnings in the Infotainment system display help you to detect the critical vehicle area and to estimate the distance to an obstacle ⇨ *fig. 131*.

Red segments show identified obstacles that are in your vehicle's path. The red lines mark the expected direction of travel according to the steering angle. A white segment indicates an identified obstacle that is outside of the vehicle's path. As your vehicle comes closer to the obstacle, the segments move closer to the vehicle. The collision area has been reached when the next to last segment is displayed. Obstacles in the collision area, including those outside of the vehicle's path, are shown in red. Do not continue driving forward or in reverse ⇨ ⚠ *in General information on page 136*, ⇨ ⓘ *in General information on page 136*!

Tips

- The segments in the side area* are detected and analyzed when passing. If you switch the ignition off and on again or open the door, or if the vehicle is stationary for a period of time, the surrounding area may have changed in the meantime. Therefore, the side area* will be displayed in black.
- If the distance to an obstacle remains constant, the volume of the distance warning gradually lowers after a few seconds until it is muted (this does not apply to the continuous tone). If the obstacle comes closer than it was before the sound was muted, the tone will sound again. If the obstacle becomes farther away than it was before the sound was muted, no tone will sound. Pay attention to the vehicle's surroundings when you start to drive.

Switching on and off

Applies to: vehicles with parking system plus/park assist



Fig. 132 Center console: parking aid button

Switching on and off

Requirement: the vehicle speed must be under approximately 6 mph (10 km/h).

- ▸ Press the P button in the center console. A short confirmation tone sounds and the LED in the button turns on.

Switching on automatically

The system switches on automatically when reverse gear is engaged while the engine is running. A brief tone will sound.

If **Activate automatically** is switched on in the Infotainment system and if the vehicle approaches an obstacle at speeds under approximately 6 mph (10 km/h), the parking aid will switch on automatically. Audible signals will sound once the obstacle is within the sensor detection area.

Switching off automatically

The system switches off automatically when driving forward faster than 6 mph (10 km/h).

Tips

If you press the P button to switch the parking aid off, it can only be reactivated automatically when one of the following conditions is met:

– The vehicle speed exceeds 6 mph (10 km/h)
– The ignition is switched off and back on again
– The parking brake is set and then released
– The "P" selector lever position is engaged and released again

Rearview camera

Introduction

Applies to: vehicles with rearview camera

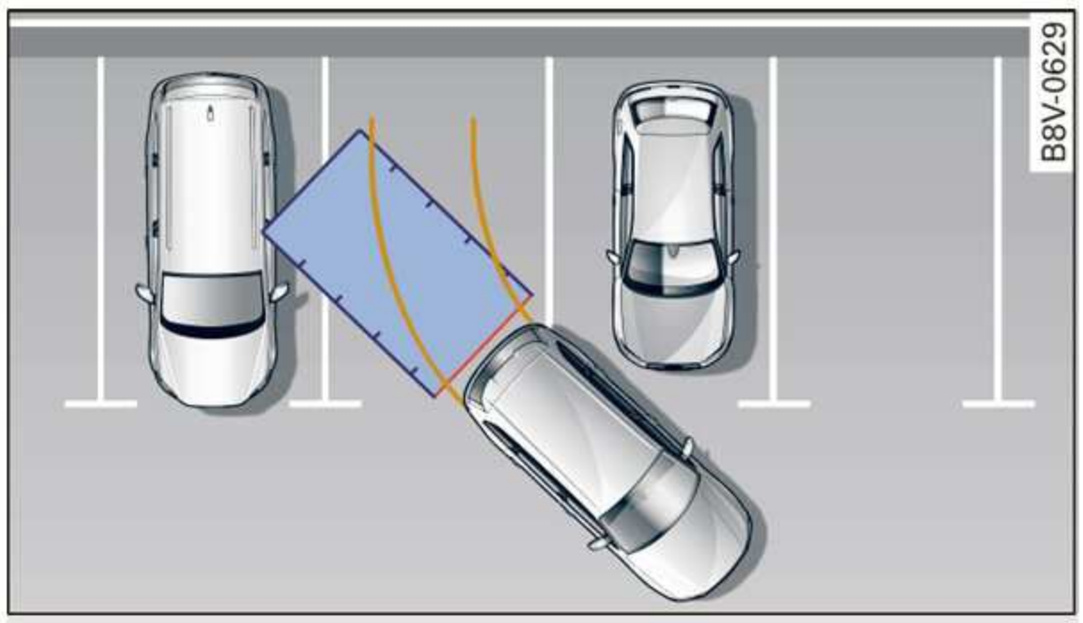


Fig. 133 Illustration: cross parking

The rearview camera helps you to park or maneuver using the orientation lines.

General information

Applies to: vehicles with rearview camera



Fig. 134 Area covered ① and area not covered ② by the rearview camera (example)



Fig. 135 Luggage compartment lid: location of the rearview camera (example)

The rearview camera is located above the rear license plate bracket. Make sure that the lens for the parking system ⇨ *fig. 135* is not covered by deposits or any other obstructions because this can affect the function of the parking system. For information on cleaning, see ⇨ *page 342*.

The rearview camera coverage area includes ① ⇨ *fig. 134*. Only this area is shown in the Infotainment display. Objects that are in area ②, which is not covered, are not displayed.

WARNING

- Always read and follow the applicable warnings ⇨ ⚠ *in General information on page 136*.
- If the position and the installation angle of the rearview camera was changed, for example after a collision, do not continue to use the system for safety reasons. Have it checked by an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility.
- Only use the rearview camera to assist you if it shows a good, clear picture. For example, the image may be affected by the sun shining into the lens, dirt on the lens, or if there is a malfunction.
- Use the rearview camera only if the luggage compartment lid is completely closed. If the luggage compartment lid is open the orientation lines and blue surfaces are hidden. Make sure any objects you may have mounted on the luggage compartment lid do not block the rearview camera.
- The camera lens enlarges and distorts the field of vision. The object appears both altered and inaccurate on the screen.
- In certain situations, people or objects in the display appear closer or farther away:
  - For objects that do not touch the ground, such as the bumper of a parked vehicle, a trailer hitch or the rear of a truck. Do not use the orientation lines in this case.
  - If driven from a level surface onto an incline, or a downward slope.
  - If driven toward protruding objects.
  - If the vehicle is carrying too much load in the rear.

Note

- Always read and follow the applicable warnings ⇨ ⓘ *in General information on page 136*.
- The orange-colored orientation lines in the Infotainment display show the vehicle path based on the steering wheel angle. The front of the vehicle swings out more than the rear of the vehicle. Maintain plenty of distance so that an exterior mirror or a corner of the vehicle does not collide with any obstacles.

Switching on and off

Applies to: vehicles with rearview camera

Switching on and off

Requirement: the vehicle speed must be under approximately 6 mph (10 km/h).

▸ Press the P button in the center console. A short confirmation tone sounds and the LED in the button turns on.

Switching on automatically

The system switches on automatically when reverse gear is engaged while the engine is running.

Switching off automatically

The system switches off automatically when driving forward faster than 6 mph (10 km/h).

Tips

- The visual display* in the right section of the display should help you detect the critical vehicle area.
- You can change the volume of the signals and the display ⇨ *page 144*.

Perpendicular parking

Applies to: vehicles with rearview camera

This view may be used when parking in a garage or in a parking space.

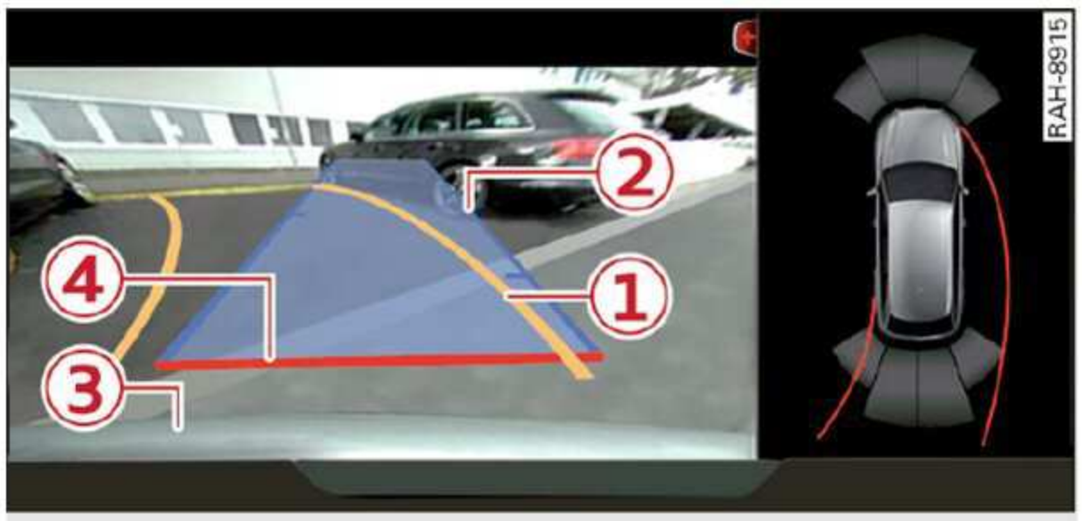


Fig. 136 Infotainment system: aiming at a parking space

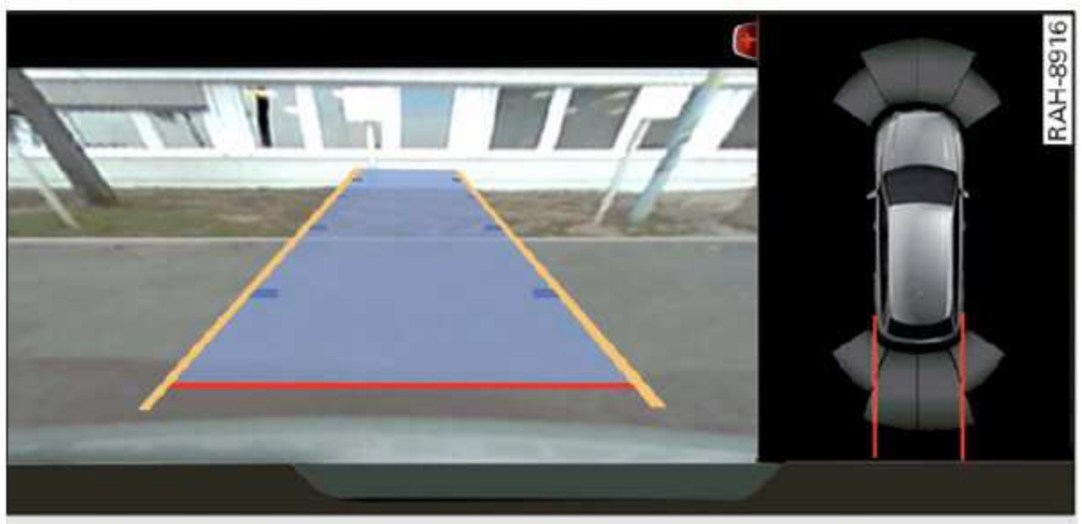


Fig. 137 Infotainment system: aligning the vehicle

- ► Turn the Infotainment system on and shift into reverse gear.
- ► The orange orientation lines ① show the direction of travel of the vehicle. Turn the steering wheel until the orange orientation lines align with the parking space ⇨ *fig. 136*. Use the markings ② to help you estimate the distance from an obstacle. Each marking represents approximately 3 feet (1 meter). The blue area represents an extension of the vehicle's outline by approximately 16 feet (5 meters) to the rear.
- ► While driving in reverse gear, adjust the steering wheel angle to fit the parking space using the orange orientation lines for assistance ⇨ ⚠ *in General information on page 139*, ⇨ ⓘ *in General information on page 139*. ③ represents the rear bumper. Stop the vehicle, at the latest, when the red orientation line ④ borders an object.

Park assist

Description

Applies to: vehicles with park assist

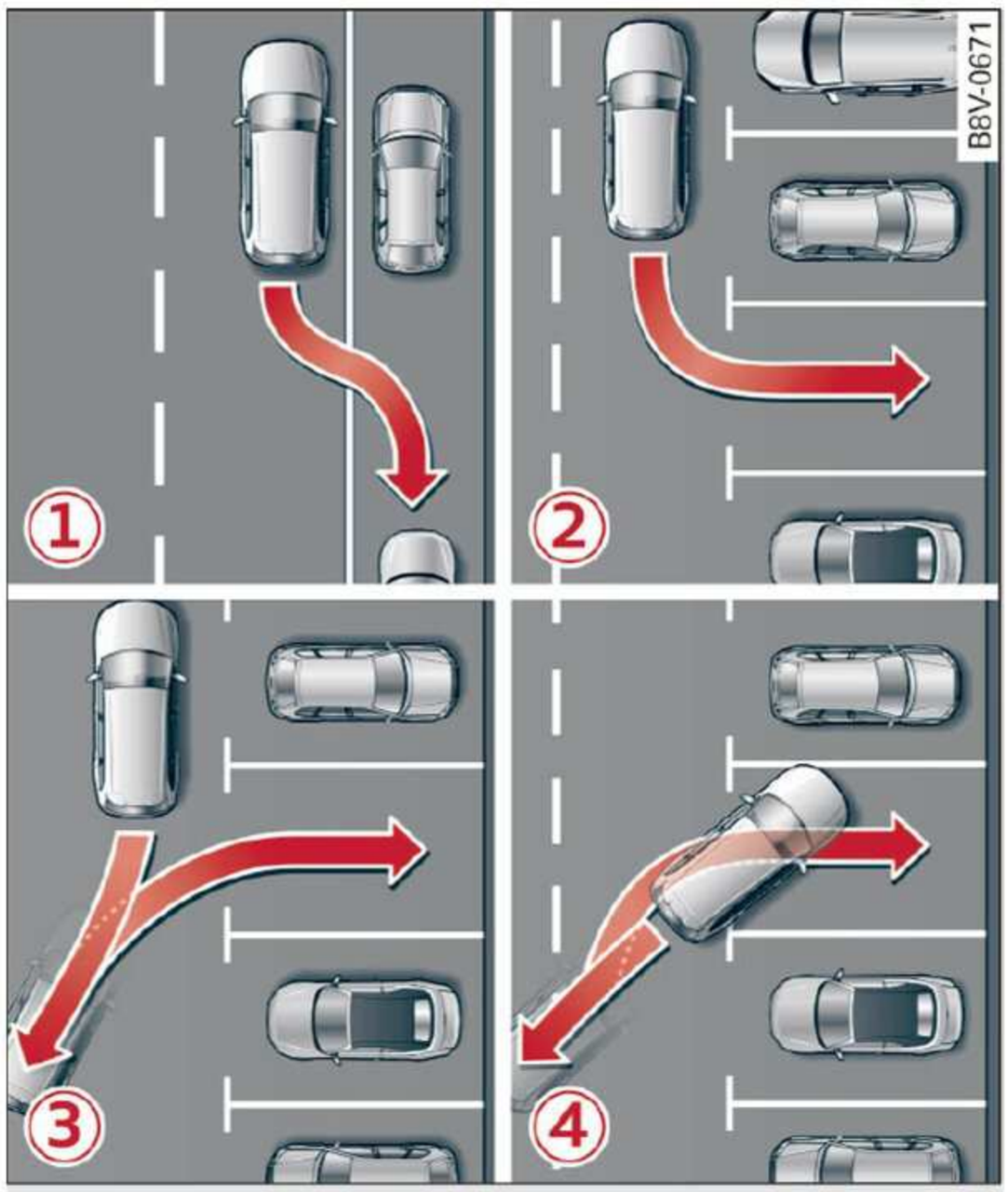


Fig. 138 Diagram: street parking options

Park assist helps you to locate suitable parking spaces and to park in them. You can back into parallel ① and perpendicular ② parking spaces and also drive forward out of parallel parking spaces. You can also drive forward into perpendicular parking spaces if you have already started driving and the front of the vehicle is in the space ④, or if you have already driven past it ③. In situation ③, the vehicle will back up, move into the correct position, and then start to drive forward into the parking space.

The parking space can be between two vehicles or behind a vehicle. The driver parks as usual with park assist controlling the steering.

The parking system plus functions ⇨ *page 137* that assist you when parking are a component of the park assist.

The park assist sensors are on the sides of the front and rear bumper. Make sure the sensors are not covered by stickers, deposits or any other obstructions as it may impair the function of the ▶

system. For information on cleaning, see ⇨ *page 342*.

When parking spaces are small, the parking system signals a continuous tone when an obstacle is less than approximately 0.7 feet (0.20 m) away. Do not continue driving farther.

WARNING

- Always read and follow the applicable warnings ⇨ ⚠ *in General information on page 136*.
- Please note that park assist only controls the steering. The driver is always responsible for braking and accelerating.
- The driver must decide if the parking space displayed is suitable for the vehicle.
- The vehicle will change position when parking. Make sure you do not endanger any other drivers.
- When using park assist to drive into or out of a parking space, the steering wheel turns quickly on its own. Reaching into the steering wheel spokes while this is happening can result in injury.

Note

- Always read and follow the applicable warnings ⇨ ⓘ *in General information on page 136*.
- Park assist guides the vehicle either away from curbs or onto them if other vehicles are parked on the curb. Make sure that your vehicle's tires and rims are not damaged. Take over steering at the right time.
- Certain conditions around the parking space may result in the vehicle not being parked as expected.
  - Objects such as pillars or posts.
  - Ground covering such as gravel, snow or ice.

Tips

- The Electronic Stabilization Control (ESC) must not be switched off during the parking process ⇨ *page 94*.
- Parking in tight curves with park assist is not possible.

Switching on and off

Applies to: vehicles with park assist



Fig. 139 Center console: park assist button



Fig. 140 Infotainment system: finding a parking space

- ▸ To switch the park assist on, press the P button ⇨ *fig. 139*. The LED in the button will turn on and the display for finding a parking space will appear in the Infotainment system ⇨ *fig. 140*.
- ▸ To switch park assist off, press the P button. The LED in the button turns off.

Tips

The system preselects a space from the available parking options as soon as a space is detected. You can change the suggested location.

Parking space search

Applies to: vehicles with park assist



Fig. 141 Infotainment system: parking space detected

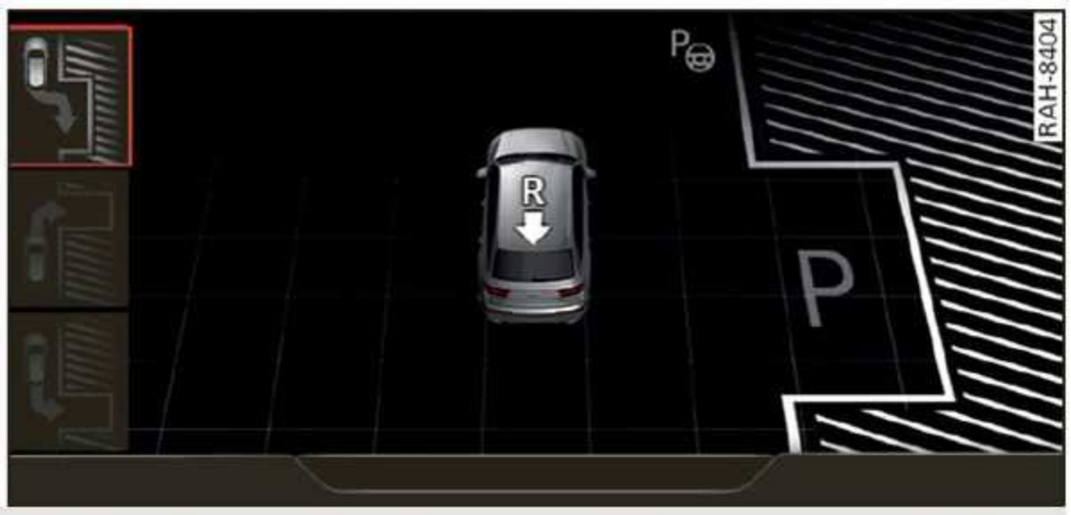


Fig. 142 Infotainment: notification to continue driving in reverse (example: when parallel parking)

Searching for parking spaces

- ▸ Drive forward to the row of parking spaces at a low speed. For the best parking results, the vehicle should be approximately 3 feet (1 m) from the row of parking spaces.
- ▸ The parking space search is first done on one side of the lane. To switch the side for the parking space search, activate the turn signal for that side.

Selecting the parking space

- ▸ If the system finds a parking space that could be suitable for the vehicle length and width, it will be displayed ⇨ *fig. 141*. The system automatically suggests a parking option.
- ▸ Make sure that the parking space is suitable for your vehicle.
- ▸ To switch between parallel Ⓐ, forward perpendicular Ⓑ or reverse perpendicular Ⓒ parking, turn the control knob to the desired mode. Only the parking options that are currently possible are suggested.
- ▸ Drive forward until the instructions for automatic parking appear in the instrument cluster ⇨ ⚠ *in Description on page 141*, ⇨ ⓘ *in Description on page 141*. As soon as the vehicle has reached the correct position, a **P** appears in the display over the selected parking space.
- ▸ Keep the vehicle as parallel as possible to the parked vehicles or to the side of the road.
- ▸ If you would like to park using the system, follow the instructions in the instrument cluster.

Park assist only displays parking spaces that are suitable for the length and width of the vehicle.

Note

– Parking spaces classified as suitable by the system may have been detected incorrectly. The driver must decide if the parking space displayed is suitable for the vehicle.
– Certain conditions near the parking space may cause the parking process to fail, such as if the parking space is near trees or posts, or if the ground is covered, for example, with gravel, snow, or ice.

Tips

– You can select a space from all of the parking options found. The possible parking space will be displayed until you are too far away from it.
– If you did not drive past a suitable parking space too quickly, the system can also be activated afterwards by pressing the P button and activating the turn signal.
– If suitable parking spaces are available on both sides of the road at the same time (such as on a one-way street), the direction of the turn signal can also be changed in order to use park assist.
– Park assist will switch off if your speed exceeds approximately 30 mph (50 km/h).

Starting the parking process

Applies to: vehicles with park assist

The responsibility is with the driver when parking.

Requirement: a suitable parking space must be found and selected ⇨ *page 142*. The vehicle must initially be stationary.

- ▸ Select the reverse gear after stopping briefly.
- ▸ Remove your hands from the steering wheel. ▶

- ▸ Pay attention to the path of the vehicle. When the traffic situation allows, press the accelerator pedal accordingly ⇨ ⚠ *in Description on page 141*, ⇨ (!) *in Description on page 141*.
- ▸ Follow the visual instructions and the warning tones until the parking process has ended. The arrows on the vehicle indicate the necessary direction of travel.

Park assist automatically steers the vehicle into the parking space while the driver presses the pedals. The maximum parking speed is 4 mph (7 km/h).

Interrupting the park assist

If the speed is too high and you take over steering, park assist switches off. To continue parking, press the P button again. The park assist indicator appears again in the display.

Tips

You can also cancel the direction of travel specified by the system by switching between forward and reverse gears. Based on the position of the vehicle, the system then calculates the additional steering and driving directions for maneuvering.

Driving out of a parallel parking space

Applies to: vehicles with park assist

The responsibility is with the driver when leaving a parking space.

If you parked the vehicle in a parallel parking space, park assist can help you drive out of it.

- ▸ Start the engine.
- ▸ Press the P button ⇨ *page 141, fig. 139*.
- ▸ Wait until a message appears that requests the direction to travel in for exiting the parking space.
- ▸ Activate the appropriate turn signal. The message **Start automatic unparking procedure** appears.
- ▸ Remove your hands from the steering wheel.
- ▸ Press the control knob to start the procedure for exiting the parking space.
- ▸ Pay attention to the path of the vehicle. When the traffic situation allows, press the accelerator pedal accordingly ⇨ ⚠ *in Description on page 141*, ⇨ (!) *in Description on page 141*.
- ▸ Follow the visual instructions ⇨ *page 143* and the warning tones until the vehicle has finished exiting the parking space.
- ▸ Drive in the direction indicated by the arrows on the vehicle.
- ▸ The procedure has ended when additional corrective movements are no longer necessary. Take over steering.

Park assist automatically steers the vehicle out of the parking space while the driver presses the pedals. The maximum speed for exiting a parking space is 3 mph (5 km/h).

Interrupting the park assist

If the speed is too high and you take over steering, park assist switches off. To continue exiting the parking space, switch the engine off and on. Then press the P button again. Otherwise, leave the parking space without using park assist.

Messages

Applies to: vehicles with park assist

P OFF Park assist: canceled. Steering input by driver. Please take over steering!

Park assist was canceled because the driver took over steering. To continue parking, press the P button again.

P OFF Park assist: time limit exceeded

P OFF Park assist: canceled. Time limit exceeded. Take over steering!

The parking process was not completed within approximately six minutes of activating park assist. To continue parking, press the P button again.

P OFF Park assist: canceled. Speed too high. Please take over steering!

The speed entering the parking space is too high. Drive no faster than 4 mph (7 km/h).

P OFF Park assist: canceled. Stabilization control (ESC) input. Please take over steering! ▸

The ESC took action to stabilize the vehicle. Take over steering. Complete parking without using park assist or drive out of the parking space.

Park assist: currently unavailable. Stabilization control (ESC) off

The ESC was switched off. The ESC must be switched on to use park assist.

Park assist: malfunction! Please contact Service.

Park assist: malfunction! Take over steering! Please contact Service.

Contact an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility. You cannot park with park assist if there is a system malfunction.

Park assist: currently unavailable.

Park assist: currently unavailable. Please take over steering!

Parking with park assist is not possible. Try parking again or switch the ignition off and back on again if necessary.

Park assist: ended. Please take over steering and continue driving.

The process of exiting the parking space with park assist has ended. Please take over steering.

Park assist: canceled. Parking space too small. Please take over steering!

Parking in this space with park assist is not possible. Park without using park assist or find a larger parking space.

Park assist: canceled. Obstacle detected. Please take over steering!

Parking with park assist was stopped because the vehicle could collide with an obstacle.

Park assist: ended

Park assist: ended. Please take over steering!

Parking with park assist has ended.

Park assist: unavailable in current Audi drive select mode

Park assist: canceled. Unavailable in current Audi drive select mode. Please take over steering!

Park assist is not available in certain Audi drive select modes. Select a different mode in drive select ⇨ *page 91*.

Park assist: stabilization control (ESC) input

The displayed parking space was rejected because the ESC took action to stabilize the vehicle.

Park assist: not stopped long enough

After engaging the reverse gear, park assist must stop briefly in order to activate the steering. Follow the instructions in the display.

Park assist: canceled. Unable to leave parking space automatically. Parking space too small.

The parking space is too small for the vehicle to automatically leave the space. Leave the parking space without using park assist.

Park assist: canceled. Please take over steering!

Parking with park assist was stopped.

Adjusting the parking aid

Applies to: vehicles with parking system plus/rearview camera/park assist

The functions are adjusted in the Infotainment system.

- Select in the Infotainment system: MENU button > **Vehicle** > left control button > **Driver assistance** > **Parking aid**. Or
- When the parking aid is active, select in the Infotainment system: right control button*.

End system* - Stop the parking aid

Activate automatically - Switch automatic activation on/off

Front volume* - Volume for the front and side* area

Rear volume - Volume for the rear area ▶

Entertainment fader - The volume of the audio/video source is lowered when the parking system is turned on.

Tips

- Several menus can be accessed with the right control button only when the parking aid is active.
- The new level is demonstrated briefly* when the volume is adjusted.
- Certain settings are automatically stored and assigned to the remote control key being used.

Error messages

Applies to: vehicles with parking system plus/rearview camera/park assist

Rear parking aid: malfunction! Obstacles cannot be detected

Front parking aid: malfunction! Obstacles cannot be detected

Parking aid: malfunction! Obstacles cannot be detected

When one of these messages appears, there is a system malfunction. The LED in the button also blinks when switching it on. The relevant message only appears again when you manually activate the parking aid with the button.

Rear parking aid: obstacle detection restricted

The rear cross-traffic assist* ⇨ *page 134, Rear cross-traffic assist* is not available. Either the ESC is switched off, or the radar sensors may be covered by a bike rack, stickers, leaves, snow or other objects. Switch the ESC on, or clean the area in front of the sensors if necessary ⇨ *page 132, fig. 127*. If this message continues to be displayed, drive immediately to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility to have the malfunction repaired.

Parking system plus*/Park assist*

If a sensor or speaker is faulty, the symbol will appear in front of/behind the vehicle in the Infotainment system display. If a rear sensor is faulty, only obstacles that are in areas ① and ② are shown ⇨ *page 137, fig. 130*. If a front sensor is faulty, only obstacles that are in areas ③ and ④ are shown.

Multi Media Interface

Traffic safety information

Audi recommends performing certain Infotainment system functions, such as entering a destination, only when the vehicle is stationary. Always be prepared to stop operating the Infotainment system in the interest of your safety and the safety of other road users.

WARNING

Only use the Infotainment system when road, traffic, weather, and visibility conditions permit and always in a way that allows you to maintain complete control over your vehicle.

Tips

Certain functions are not available while driving.

Introduction

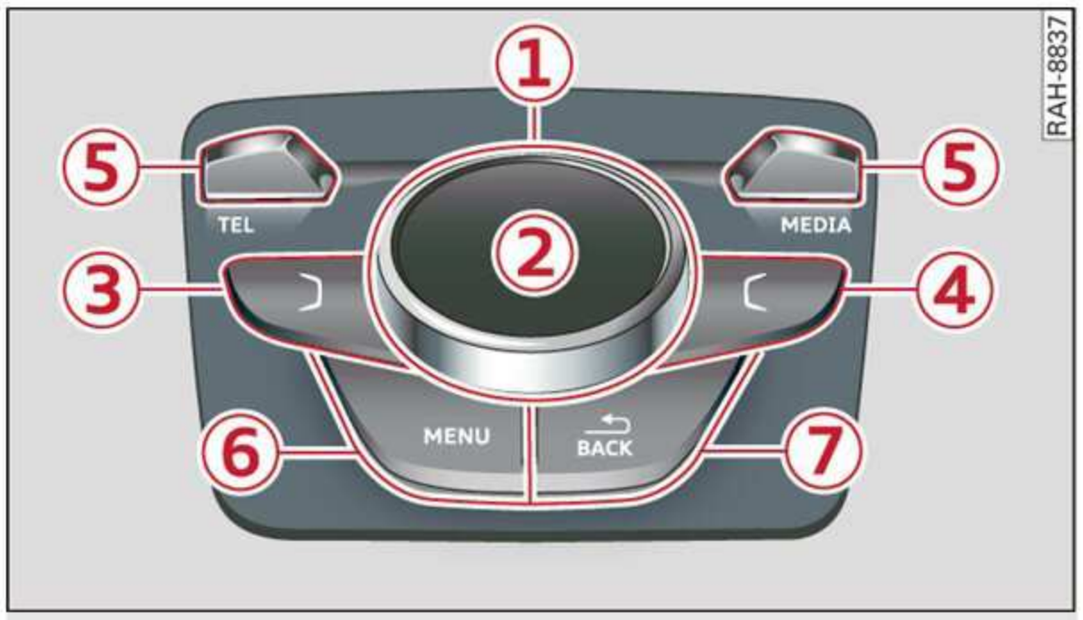


Fig. 143 MMI control panel: overview

The Multi Media Interface, or MMI for short, combines various systems for communication, navigation* and entertainment in your Audi. You can operate the MMI using the MMI control panel, the multifunction steering wheel or the voice recognition system*.

MMI control panel overview

① Control knob with joystick function* 147, 151
② MMI touch control pad* 149
③ Left control button 148
④ Right control button 148
⑤ Buttons for opening menus directly . 148
⑥ MENU button 148
⑦ BACK button 147

MMI On/Off knob with joystick function

Operating



Fig. 144 MMI control panel: On/Off knob with joystick function

Switching the MMI on/off: the MMI can be switched on/off manually.

- **Switching on manually**: press the On/Off knob ① briefly ⇨ *fig. 144*, or press the MENU button ⑥ ⇨ *page 146, fig. 143* or one of the buttons used to open a menu ⑤.
- **Switching off manually**: press and hold the On/Off knob ① ⇨ *fig. 144* until the MMI switches off. If the MMI has been switched off manually, it does *not* switch on again automatically the next time the ignition is switched on.

Additional functions

- **Adjusting the volume**: turn the On/Off knob ① ⇨ *fig. 144*.
- **Muting**: press the On/Off knob ① ⇨ *fig. 144* briefly.
- **Selecting the previous/next function (for example, a radio station/track)**: press the On/Off knob ① ⇨ *fig. 144* briefly toward the left ⏮ or right ⏭.
- **Fast forwarding/rewinding (for example songs)**: press and hold the On/Off knob ① ⇨ *fig. 144* toward the left ⏮ or right ⏭. ▶

WARNING

To reduce the risk of an accident, adjust the volume of the audio systems so that signals outside of the vehicle, such as police and fire sirens, can be heard easily at all times.

Tips

The MMI switches off automatically if the engine is not running and the vehicle battery is low.

Infotainment system display

Switching on/off

The Infotainment system display automatically extends and retracts when you switch the ignition on and off.

- When it is extended, press the ⏻ button to switch the Infotainment system display on or off.

When the MMI is switched on and the display is switched off, you can operate certain functions using the On/Off knob with the MMI joystick function ⇨ *page 146*.

Tips

There may be delays when switching on the display.

MMI operation

Selecting and confirming a function



Fig. 145 Control knob: operation

Selecting and confirming a function in a menu/list

- **Selecting a function**: turn the control knob ① to the desired function (such as selecting a frequency).
- **Confirming a selection**: press the control knob ②.

Returning to functions at higher levels

- Press the BACK button ⑦ ⇨ *page 146, fig. 143*.

Opening the main menu/menu



Fig. 146 Infotainment system: main menu

Opening the main menu

- Press the MENU button (6) ⇨ *page 146, fig. 143*. The MMI menus (such as **Radio**) are displayed ⇨ *fig. 146*. Then you can select and confirm a function using the control knob.

Opening a menu directly

- Press the applicable button to directly open the menus (5) ⇨ *page 146, fig. 143* in the direction of the desired menu (such as RADIO). Then you can select and confirm a function using the control knob.

Opening the selection menu/options menu with the control buttons

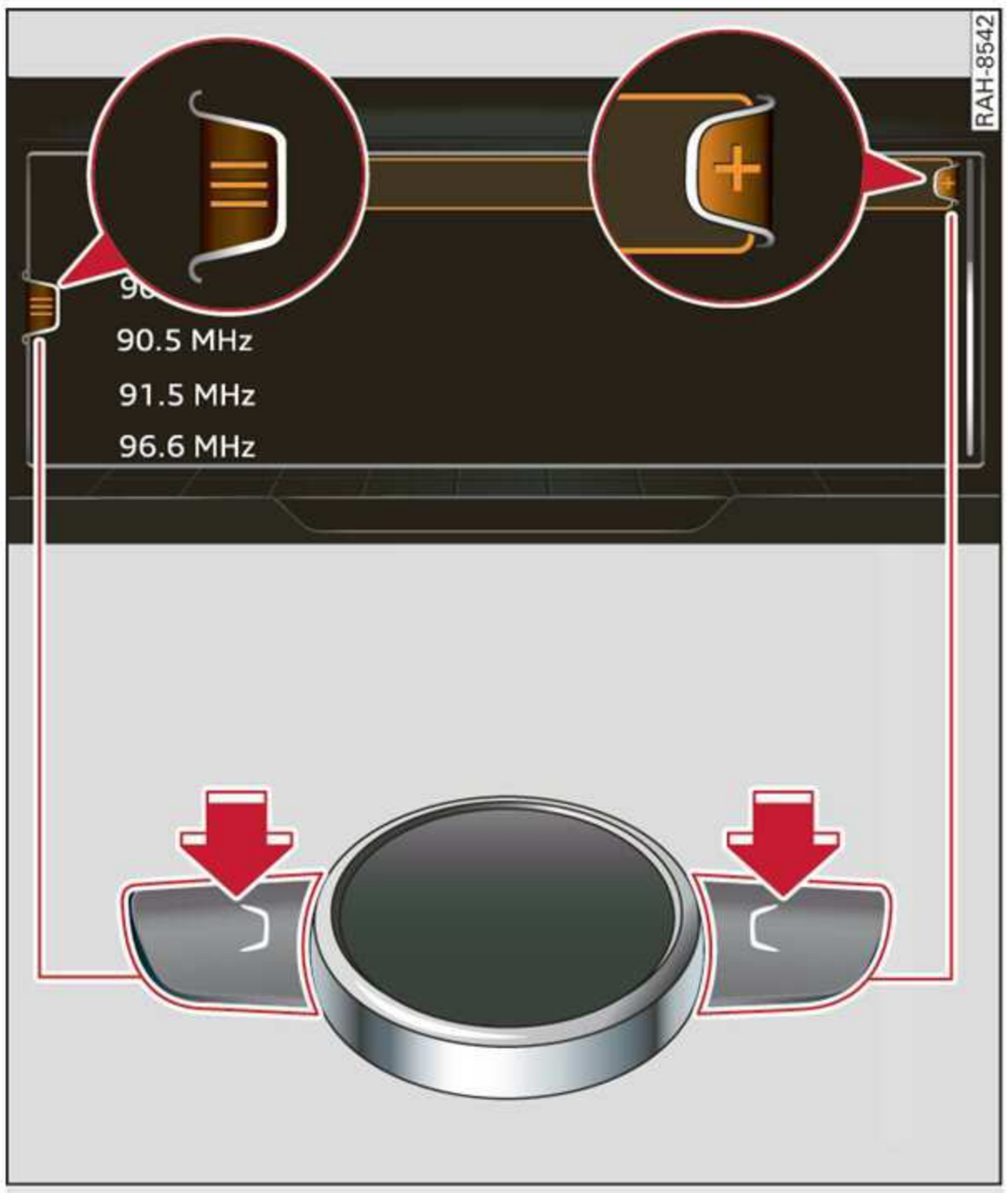


Fig. 147 MMI control panel: control buttons

Selection menu: through the selection menu, you can open additional functions within a menu item (such as **Radio**).

Requirement: the selection menu symbol must be displayed in the Infotainment system display ⇨ *fig. 147*.

Opening and closing the selection menu: press the left control button ⇨ *fig. 147*. Then you can select and confirm a function using the control knob.

Options menu: using the options menu, you can select and confirm context-dependent functions as well as settings within a menu item (such as **Radio**).

Requirement: the options menu symbol + must be displayed in the Infotainment system display ⇨ *fig. 147*. Then you can select and confirm a function using the control knob.

- **Opening and closing the options menu**: press the right control button ⇨ *fig. 147*. Then you can select and confirm a function using the control knob.

Information about menu paths

This guide shows you at a glance the paths for opening a desired menu and its settings and functions.

Example of a path

- Select: RADIO button > left control button > **FM**.

Following the path

- Press the RADIO button.
- Press the left control button.
- Turn the control knob to the **FM** menu item to select it.
- Press the control knob to confirm the selected **FM** menu item.
- The selected and confirmed function is executed. In this example, the **FM** frequency band is set.

MMI touch

MMI touch control pad

Applies to: vehicles with MMI touch



Fig. 148 MMI touch: entering the navigation destination

You can enter data using handwriting recognition on the MMI touch control pad.

The MMI touch control pad is on the surface with the control knob.

Entering letters, numbers and symbols

Applies to: vehicles with MMI touch



Fig. 149 Infotainment system: display when MMI touch is active

The MMI touch allows you to enter data on the MMI touch control pad using handwriting recognition.

Requirement: it must be possible to enter text or numbers and the symbol ① ⇨ *fig. 149* must appear in the Infotainment system display.

- **Initial entry**: write an individual upper case or lower case letter or number/symbol on the MMI touch control pad using your finger. A symbol that is recognized clearly by the system is displayed in the Infotainment system display ① ⇨ *page 149, fig. 148*, confirmed with an audible signal if necessary, and transferred to the input field.
- **Entering spaces**: move your finger across the MMI touch control pad from left to right.
- **Deleting characters**: move your finger across the MMI touch control pad from right to left.
- **Selecting the input suggestion**: press the control knob.
- **Switching directly to the results list**: turn the control knob to the right.
- **Opening the speller**: select the right control button > **Open speller**. Text or numbers are entered using the speller ⇨ *page 153*.

Moving the crosshairs

Applies to: vehicles with MMI touch

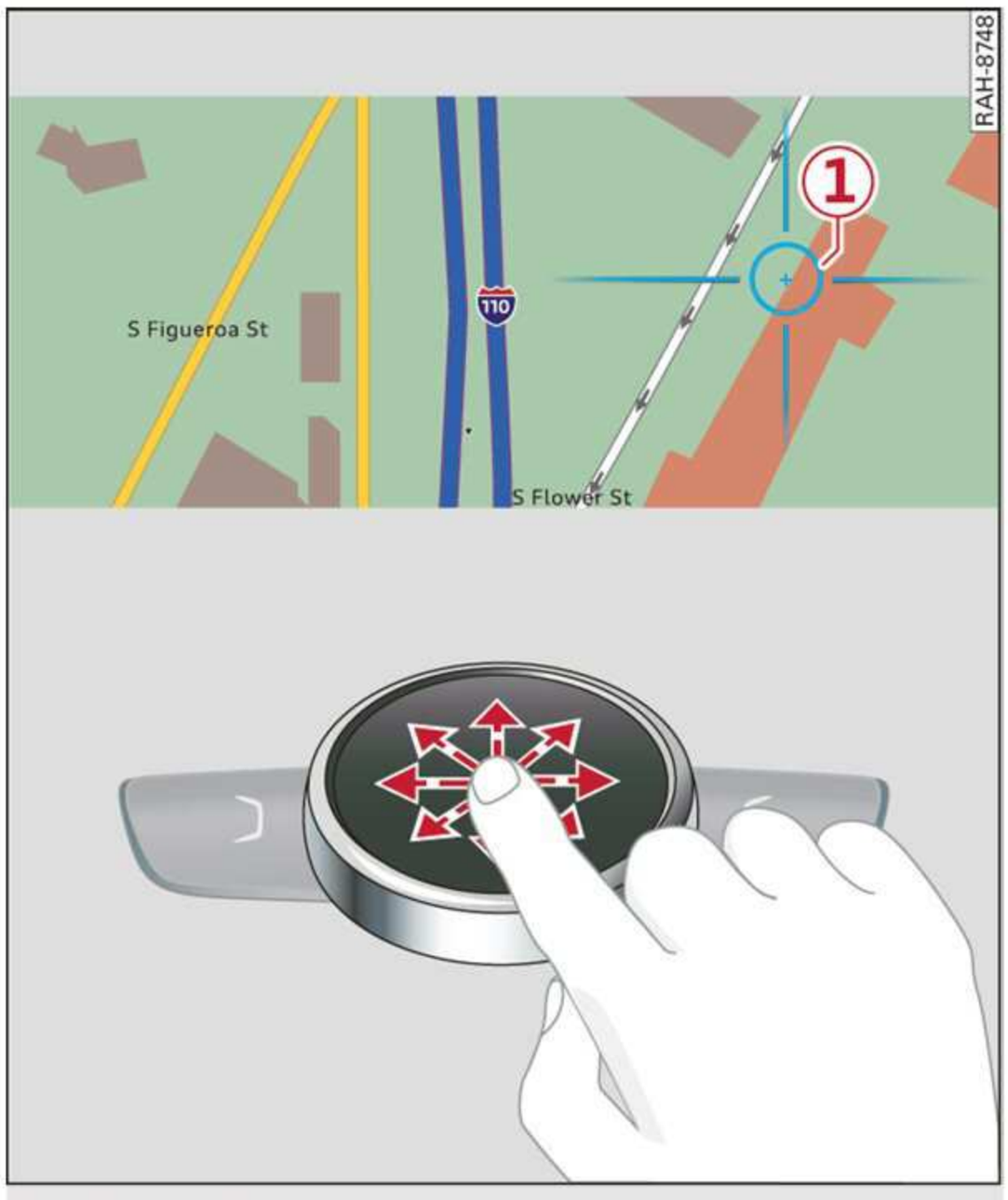


Fig. 150 MMI touch: moving the crosshairs

Requirement: a map must be displayed ⇨ *page 199*.

- **Showing and hiding the crosshairs**: press the control knob to show the crosshairs ① ⇨ *fig. 150*, or press the MMI touch control pad. Press the BACK button ⑦ ⇨ *page 146, fig. 143* to hide the crosshairs again.
- **Moving the crosshairs on a map**: move the crosshairs shown in the desired direction using your finger on the MMI touch control pad ⇨ *fig. 150*.
- **Moving the crosshairs quickly**: when the crosshairs are visible ① ⇨ *fig. 150*, slide your finger quickly across the MMI touch control pad in the desired direction. The crosshairs will come to a stop after several seconds.

Moving the map

Applies to: vehicles with MMI touch

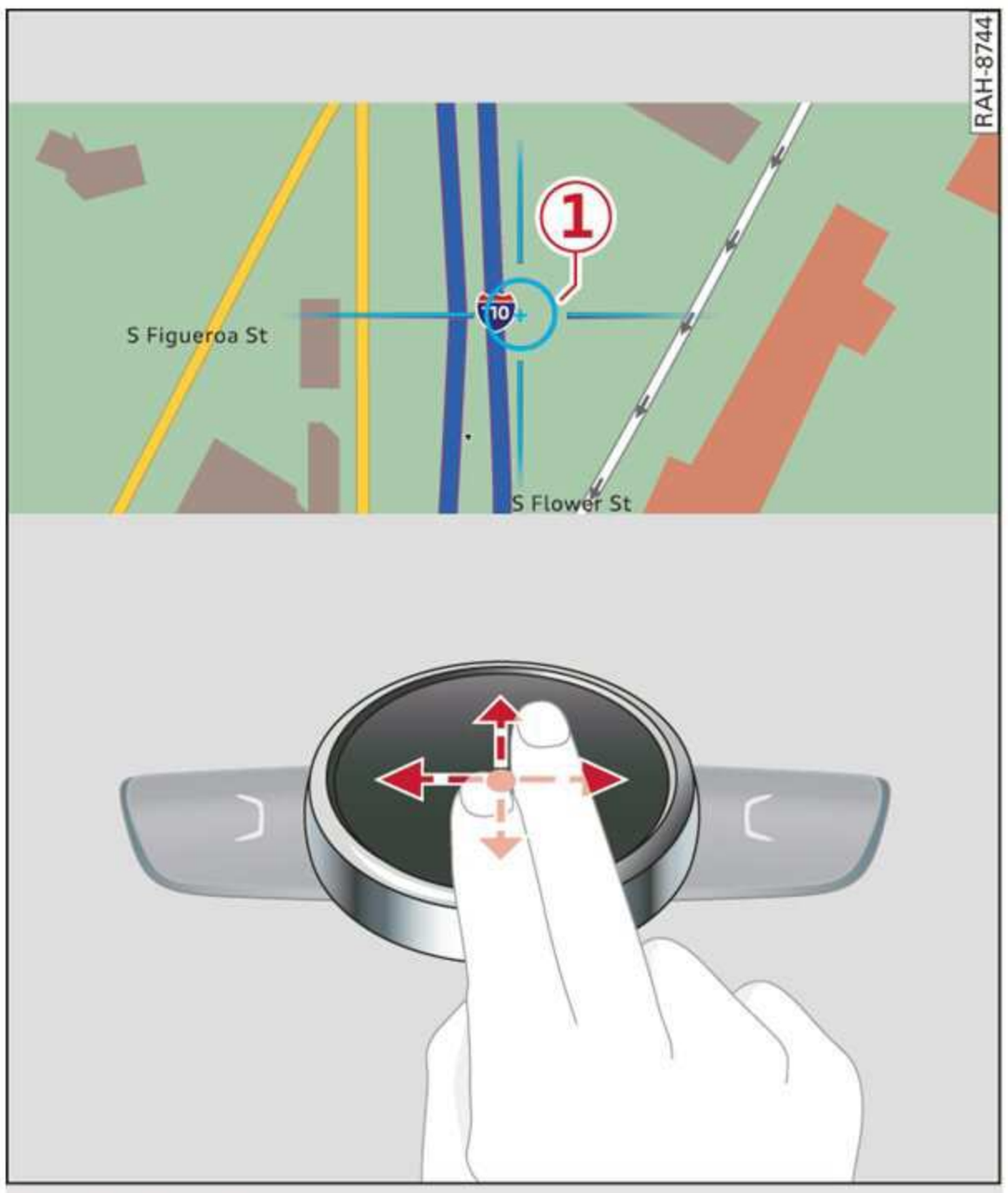


Fig. 151 MMI touch: moving the map

Requirement: a map must be displayed ⇨ *page 199*.

- **Showing/hiding the crosshairs**: press the control knob to show the crosshairs ① ⇨ *fig. 151*. Press the BACK button ⑦ ⇨ *page 146, fig. 143* to hide the crosshairs again.
- **Moving the standard map/satellite map**[1]: move the crosshairs shown in the desired direction using two fingers on the MMI touch control pad ⇨ *fig. 151*.
- **Moving the map quickly**: when the crosshairs are visible, pull two fingers across the MMI touch control pad quickly in the desired direction. The map will come to a stop after several seconds.

Zooming in/out on the map

Applies to: vehicles with MMI touch

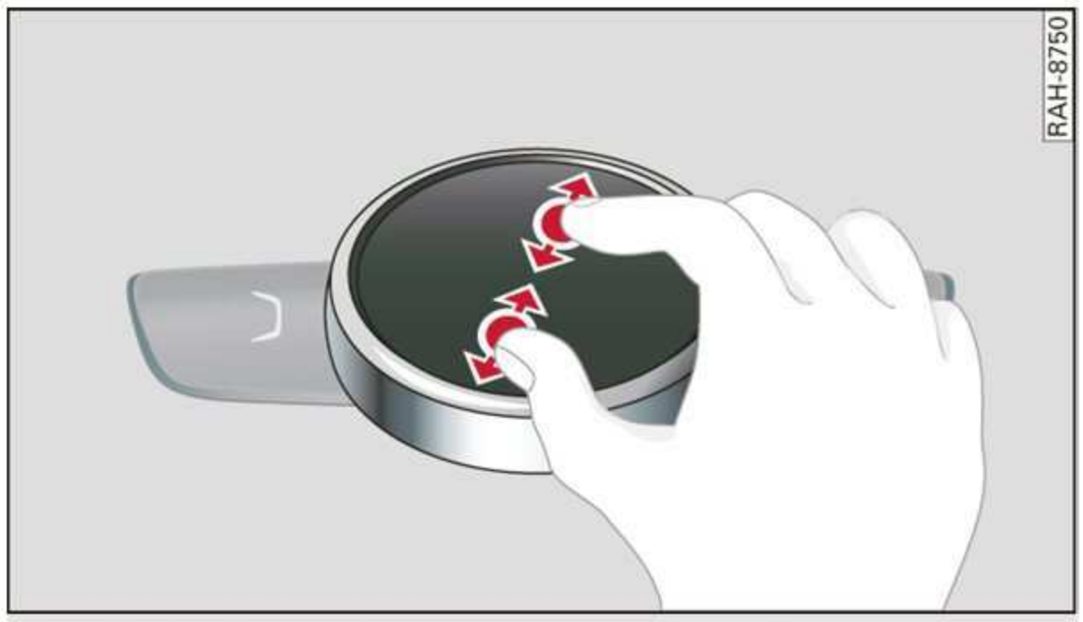


Fig. 152 MMI touch: zooming in and out on the map

Requirement: a map must be displayed ⇨ *page 199*.

- **Zooming in/out on the map**: press the control knob to show the crosshairs. Touch the MMI touch control pad with two fingers and pull your fingers apart or together ⇨ *fig. 152*.
- Press the BACK button ⑦ to hide the crosshairs ⇨ *page 146, fig. 143*.

Adjusting the sound focus

Applies to: vehicles with MMI touch

Requirement: the balance/fader function must be selected ⇨ *page 234*. ▶

1) AUDI AG provides access to services from third party providers. Permanent availability cannot be guaranteed, because that depends on the third party provider.

- ▸ **Moving the crosshairs for sound focus**: move your finger in the desired direction on the MMI touch control pad.
- ▸ **Storing the crosshairs location**: press the control knob twice or press the BACK button ⑦ ⇨ *page 146, fig. 143*.

Using the DVD main menu

Applies to: vehicles with MMI touch

Requirement: a DVD must be playing ⇨ *page 219*.

- ▸ **Selecting a menu item**: move your finger up/down or left/right on the MMI touch control pad.
- ▸ **Confirming a selection**: press the control knob.

Tips

The volume of the voice guidance prompts for the MMI touch* can be adjusted separately ⇨ *page 235*.

Control knob with joystick function

Operation

Applies to: vehicles with joystick function

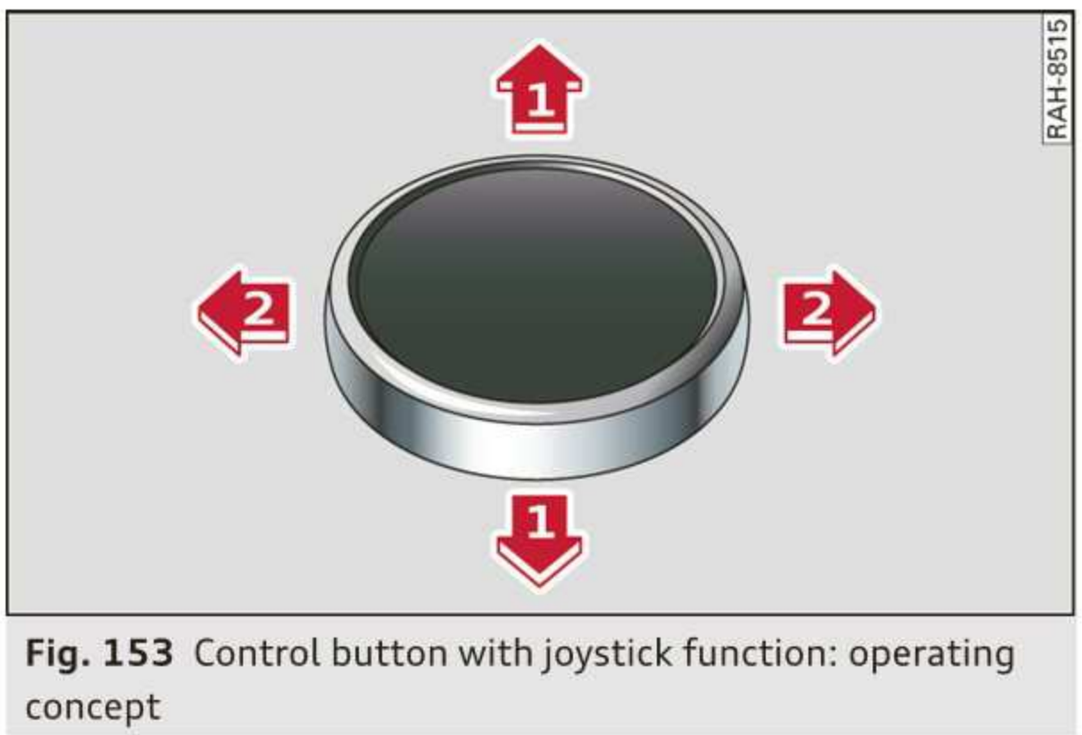


Fig. 153 Control button with joystick function: operating concept

You can push the control knob up or down ① or to the right or left ②.

Opening the entertainment sliding menu

Applies to: vehicles with MMI touch

- ▸ **Opening the entertainment sliding menu**: push the control knob down to open the entertainment sliding menu ③ ⇨ *page 155, fig. 157*. Then you can select and confirm a function.
- ▸ **Closing the entertainment sliding menu**: push the control knob up to close the entertainment sliding menu or press the BACK button ⑦ ⇨ *page 146, fig. 143*.

Additional functions

Applies to: vehicles with joystick function

Displaying the input field/switching to speller input

Push the control knob upward to reach the beginning of a list in the central area or the input field. If the input field is already open, switch directly to the speller in the input field by pushing the control knob up again ⇨ *page 153*.

On the map

Requirement: a map must be displayed ⇨ *page 199*.

- ▸ **Displaying the input field**: push the control knob up.
- ▸ **Displaying route guidance**: when route guidance is active, you can also display the route guidance by pushing the control knob up ⇨ *page 194, fig. 169*.
- ▸ **Zooming in/out on the map (zoom)**: turn the control knob to the right/left to zoom in/out on the map.

Additional options on the map: see ⇨ *page 200*

Applies to: vehicles without MMI touch with joystick function:

- ▸ **Showing/hiding the crosshairs**: press the control knob. The crosshairs are shown on the map. Press the BACK button to hide the crosshairs.
- ▸ **Moving the crosshairs**: when the crosshairs are visible, turn the control knob in the direction the crosshairs should move. Press the control knob and hold it until the crosshairs are in the desired point on the map.

Applies to: vehicles without MMI touch with joystick function: **Adjusting the sound focus**

Requirement: the balance/fader function must be selected ⇨ *page 234*.

Moving the sound focus using the crosshairs ▶

The crosshairs can be moved horizontally.

- Turn the control knob to the left or to the right. Press the control knob to move the crosshairs vertically. Turn the control knob to the left or to the right. Press the control knob again to save the setting.

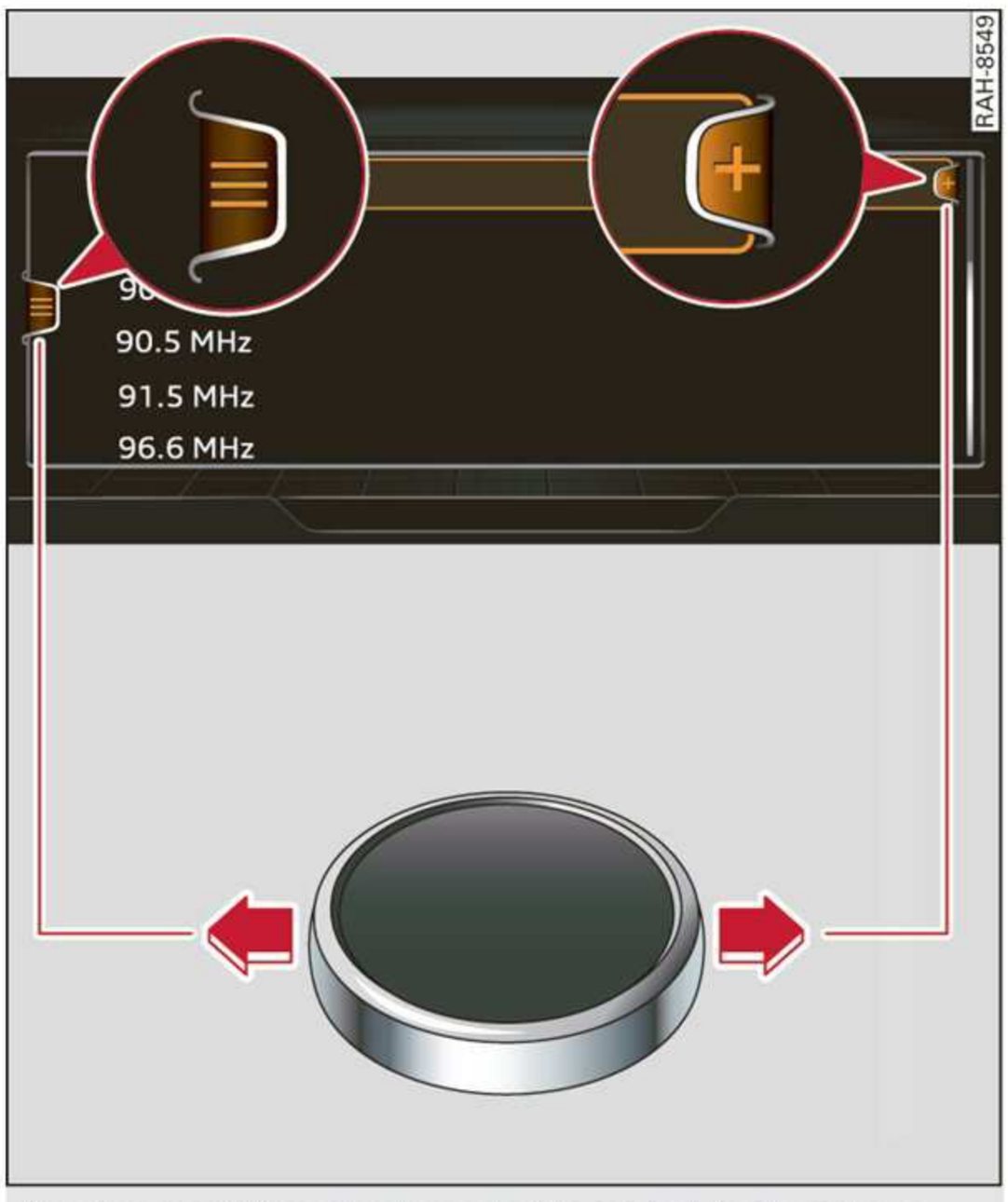
Using the DVD main menu

Requirement: a DVD must be playing ⇨ *page 219*.

- **Selecting a menu item**: move the control knob with joystick function up or down or to the left or right.
- **Confirming a selection**: press the control knob.

Opening the selection/options menu with the control knob

Applies to: vehicles with joystick function



Applies to: MMI control panel with control knob and joystick function

Fig. 154 Control knob with joystick function: opening the selection or options menu

Requirement: the selection menu symbol must be displayed in the Infotainment system display ⇨ *fig. 154*.

- **Opening and closing the selection menu**: push the control knob to the left ⇨ *fig. 154* to open the selection menu. Then you can select and confirm a function using the control knob.
- Press the BACK button (7) ⇨ *page 146, fig. 143* to return to the function one level up.
- **Opening and closing the options menu**: push the control knob to the right ⇨ *fig. 154* to open the options menu. Then you can select and confirm a function using the control knob.
- Press the BACK button (7) ⇨ *page 146, fig. 143* to return to the function one level up.

Letter/number speller

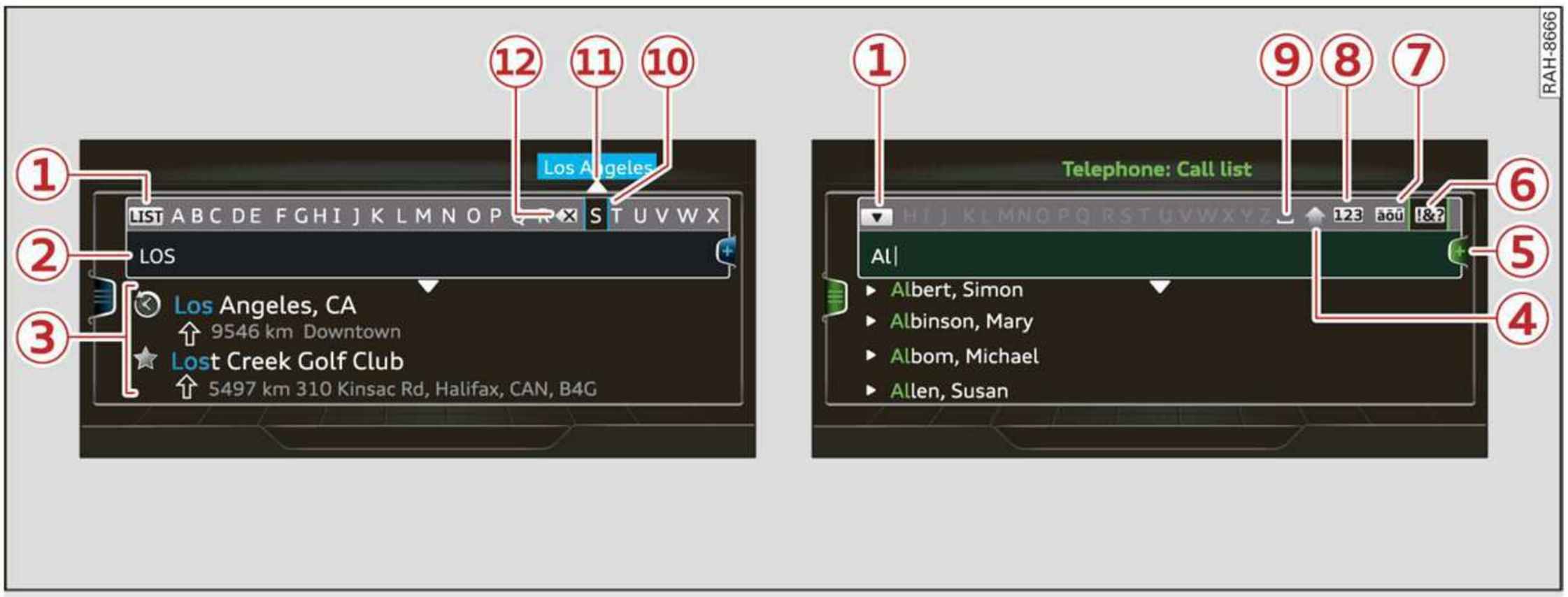


Fig. 155 Infotainment system: letter/number speller

You can enter letters, numbers and symbols in the MMI using the letter/number speller. This option is available when the input field (2) is active.

- **Opening and closing the letter/number speller**: move the control knob up/down when the input field is active, or select: right control button > **Open speller/Close speller**.
- **Entering characters**: turn the control knob to the desired character using the character selection (10). Press the control knob to confirm the character. Your input is displayed in the input field (2). Once you have entered all of the characters, select and confirm the button (1) to go to the results list or push the control knob down.
- **Entering accented characters (such as â, ç, ñ, ö)***: turn the control knob with the character selection (10) to a character. To open the selected accented characters, press and hold the control knob. Turn the control knob with the character selection (10) to an accented character. Press the control knob to insert the accented character. To close the accented characters without selecting a character, press and hold the control knob again, or select and confirm äöü (7).
- **Deleting characters**: select and confirm ⌫ (12) and press the control button. To delete all characters in the input field, press and hold the control knob on ⌫ until all characters in the input field are deleted.
- **Entering special characters**: select and confirm !&? (6), äöü (7) or 123 (8). Select and confirm the desired special character (for example, a hyphen or period) with the number speller.
- **Input assistance**: in some cases such as in navigation*, there is a word suggestion* (11) based on available entries while you are entering data. You can select this suggestion by pushing the control knob upward.
- **Results list**: in some cases, such as in the directory, the system switches automatically to the results list based on logical deduction (3). Select and confirm a suggestion from the list.

Requirement: the input field (2) must be active.

- **Switching between speller and MMI touch***: the handwriting recognition for the MMI touch control pad* is activated automatically. Simply start writing.

Overview of symbols in the speller

The symbols in the letter/number speller are explained in the following table:

	Symbol/Description	Description
(1)	LIST or ▾	Switches to the results list.
(2)	Input field	Displays the current input.

	Symbol/Description	Description
③	Results list	Displays a list with suggestions based on the letters already entered.
④	⬆	Switches from lower case to upper case letters or from upper case to lower case letters.
⑤	⊂+	Opens additional speller options, for example **Close speller** and **Clear input field**
⑥	!&?	Character sets and special characters
⑦	äöü	Displays accented characters (such as â, ç, ñ, ö).
⑧	123/ABC	Switches from letter to number input or from number to letter input.
⑨	⎵	Adds a space in the input field.
⑩	Character selection	Highlights the selected character.
⑪	▲	Inserts the suggested word* when you push the control knob up.
⑫	⌫	Deletes the character to the left of the cursor.

Tips

Accented characters are not available for every letter.

Free text search

Applies to: vehicles with free text search



Fig. 156 Infotainment system: free text search

Using the free text search, you can select the order that the search terms are entered in the input field.

Free text search is available in the **Vehicle***, **Radio***, **Media***, **Telephone***, **Navigation*** and **Audi connect*** menus.

Opening free text search

- Select: MENU button > *desired menu item* (such as **Telephone**).
- Keep turning the control knob to the left until the **free text search** input field ① appears, or
- Push the control knob up to open the input field ①.

The handwriting recognition for the MMI touch control pad* is automatically activated. Simply start writing.

Free text search for an entry

- Enter one or more search terms in any order into the input field. The individual search terms must be separated by spaces when entering.

An input suggestion to complete the entry* ③ is shown depending on the input. Additional entries that contain the entered search term are listed In the results list ②.

If the desired term is still not displayed, enter additional letters until it is displayed.

It is often enough just to enter the first letters of the search term in order for it to display in the results list. For example, in the **Telephone*** menu, write the initials of the contact being searched, separated by a space. ▶

Selecting the input suggestion to complete the entry

Requirement: an input suggestion to complete the entry* ③ must be displayed.

- **MMI touch input***: press the control knob.

Selecting an entry from the results list

Requirement: at least one entry must be displayed in the results list ②.

- **MMI touch input***: turn the control knob to the right. Select and confirm an entry from the list.
- **Speller input**: select and confirm LIST ① ⇨ *page 153, fig. 155*, or
- Push the control knob down. Select and confirm an entry from the list.

Menus and Symbols

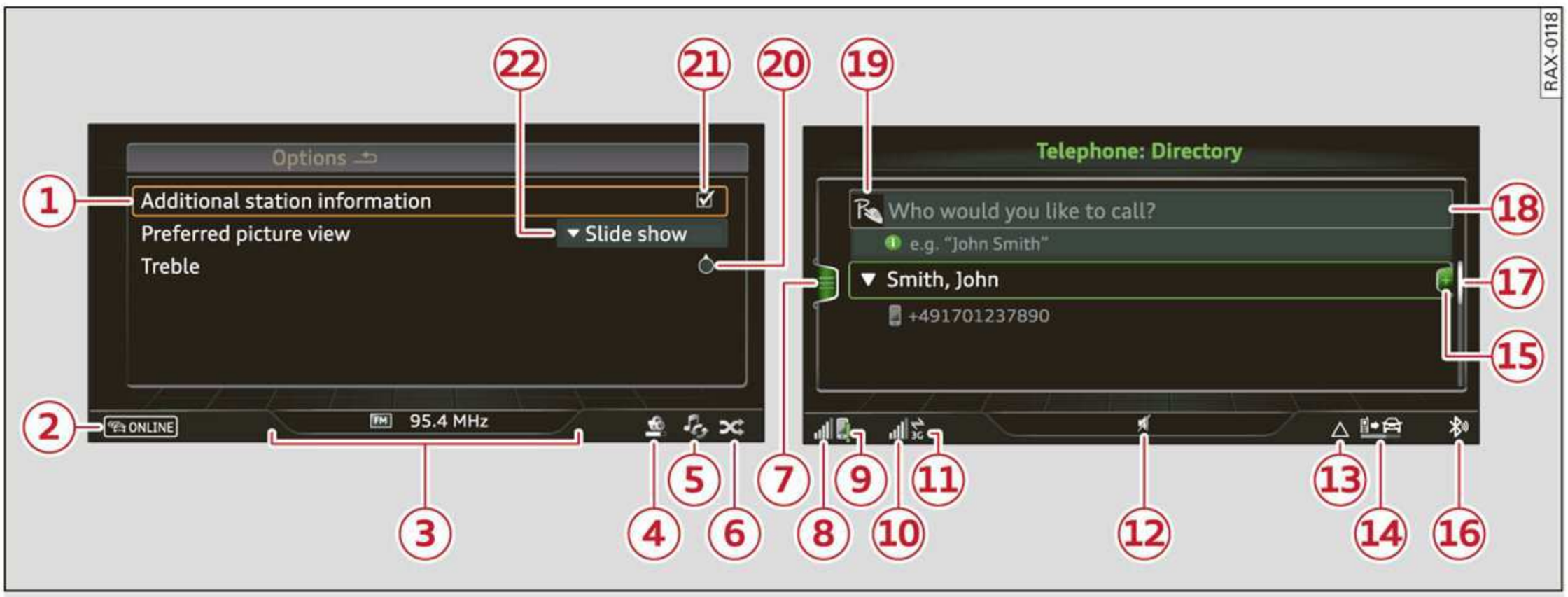


Fig. 157 Infotainment system: menus and symbols

	Symbol/Description	Description
①	Selected text	Selected function.
②	ONLINE	Receiving online traffic information ⇨ *page 204*.
③	Entertainment sliding menu	Displays information about the media source that is currently selected or a situation (such as an incoming call). Depending on vehicle equipment, operation might also be possible using the open entertainment sliding menu (such as selecting a radio station or accepting a call) ⇨ *page 151*.
④	Jukebox* importing process	Importing audio/video files to the Jukebox ⇨ *page 213*.
⑤	Repeat track	The track currently playing is repeated ⇨ *page 223*.
⑥	Shuffle	All files on the playlist are played in random ⇨ *page 223*, **Shuffle**.
⑦	Arrow	Access information by pressing the control knob when the selected text is active.
⑧	Telephone signal strength bars	Telephone signal strength.
⑨	Exclamation point on the telephone	Indicates missed calls.

	Symbol/Description	Description
⑩	Data connection signal strength bars*	Signal strength for the active data connection, or **PIN**: enter the PIN (SIM) **PUK**: enter the PUK
⑪	2G/3G/LTE*	Network coverage for the active data connection ⇨ *page 187* **2G**: GSM network **3G**: UMTS network **LTE***: LTE network
⑫	Mute	The audio source is muted ⇨ *page 234*.
⑬	Roaming	Outside the mobile network for the connected cell phone or the embedded SIM card.
⑭	Importing process	Import/update of the contacts in the directory or the call lists
⑮	Options menu*	Select and confirm context-dependent functions as well as settings within a menu item
⑯	Bluetooth*	Bluetooth device connected ⇨ *page 214* or ⇨ *page 169*.
⑰	Scroll bars	Indicates a long list. Move within lists by turning the control knob
⑱	Input field	Information that can be changed using the letter/number speller ⇨ *page 153* or MMI touch* ⇨ *page 149*.
⑲	MMI touch*	Operation using the MMI touch control pad is possible.
⑳	Knob	Setting for the selected function by turning the control knob.
㉑	Check boxes	You can switch certain functions on ☑ or off ☐ by pressing the control knob.
㉒	Selection list	Settings for the selected function that are accessed by pressing the control knob.

Multifunction steering wheel

Introduction

Applies to: vehicles with multifunction steering wheel

In the driver information system display, you can control numerous Infotainment functions using the multifunction steering wheel plus* ⇨ *page 17* or the multifunction steering wheel* ⇨ *page 20*.

You can control additional Infotainment functions using the MMI control panel ⇨ *page 146* in the Infotainment system display.

WARNING

Direct your full attention to driving. As the driver, you have complete responsibility for safety in traffic. Only use the functions in such a way that you always maintain complete control over your vehicle in all traffic situations.

Radio

Applies to: vehicles with multifunction steering wheel and radio

Requirement: radio mode must be started ⇨ *page 206* and the radio/media tab must be displayed.

► Press either the ☰ button or the left control button ⇨ *page 18*, depending on vehicle equipment.

Depending on vehicle equipment, the following functions may be available in the driver information system.

– **Selecting the frequency band**: select and confirm a frequency band.
– **Selecting a station from the presets list***: select: **Presets** > *the desired radio station*.
– **Selecting a station from the station list***: select and confirm a radio station.
– **Selecting a station from the presets list**: select: **Presets** > *the desired radio station*.
– **Opening a media source**: select and confirm **To media**.

Additional settings

Applies to: vehicles with Audi virtual cockpit

– Select: right control button > *desired entry*.

Depending on the function selected, the following additional settings may be possible:

– **Show "Now Playing" screen**: see ⇨ *page 210*.

Media

Applies to: vehicles with multifunction steering wheel and media

Requirement: a media drive must contain audio/video files ⇨ *page 212* and the radio/media tab must be displayed.

► Press either the ☰ button or the left control button ⇨ *page 18*, depending on vehicle equipment.

Depending on vehicle equipment, the following functions may be available in the driver information system.

– **Selecting a media source**: select and confirm a source such as the “SD card”.
– **Playing an audio/video file**: select and confirm a track/file.
– **Pausing/resuming playback**: press the right thumbwheel ③ ⇨ *page 19, fig. 13*. To resume playback, press the right thumbwheel again.

Applies to: vehicles with analog instrument cluster

– **Switching to radio**: select and confirm a frequency band (such as **FM**).

Applies to: vehicles with Audi virtual cockpit

– **Switching to the radio**: select and confirm **Switch to radio**.
– **Opening additional track information**: select: right control button > **Show "Now Playing" screen**. For additional information, see ⇨ *page 222*.

Tips

– The media drives do not play files that are protected by DRM and that are identified with the symbol 🔒.
– Please note that within a media source in the driver information system, only playlists that were selected through the MMI control panel can be played ⇨ *page 220*.

– Always pay attention to the Infotainment system display. Additional operation through the MMI control panel may be necessary, depending on the selected function.

Telephone

Applies to: vehicles with multifunction steering wheel and telephone

Requirement: a cell phone must be connected to the MMI ⇨ *page 169* and the telephone tab must be displayed.

► Press either the ☰ button or the left control button ⇨ *page 18*, depending on vehicle equipment.

Depending on vehicle equipment, the following functions may be available in the driver information system.

– **Accessing a contact**: select and confirm **Call list** / **Favorites** / **Directory**. Select and confirm a contact.
– **Directory contacts**: the driver information system only displays directory contacts that have a phone number stored. If several phone numbers are stored with a contact, the list of stored numbers is displayed first when the entry is selected. For more information about the displayed symbols, refer to ⇨ *page 178*.
– **Recent calls**: the recent calls list contains all incoming, outgoing and missed calls.
– **Caller information***: the *name*, *phone number* or **Unknown** appears in the driver information system display depending on whether the caller has been stored in the directory and if the phone number has been transmitted.

Functions during an incoming call

– **Accepting a call**: press the left thumbwheel when there is an incoming call.
– **Declining a call**: select and confirm **Decline** when there is an incoming call.
– **Ending a phone call**: select and confirm **End call**.

Functions during a phone call

Applies to: vehicles with analog instrument cluster

– **Making an additional phone call**: select **Hold** > ☰ button > **Directory** or **Call list** > *an entry in the list*.
– **Accepting an incoming call when there is an active call and a call on hold**: select and confirm **Replace**. The active call is replaced with the incoming call.

Applies to: vehicles with Audi virtual cockpit

– **Making an additional phone call**: select: **Hold call** > left control button > **Directory** or **Call list** > *an entry*.
– **Accepting an incoming call when there is an active call and a call on hold**: select and confirm **Answer**. The active call is replaced with the incoming call.

Additional functions include:

Mute: if you select and confirm this function, the other person on the phone cannot hear you. You will still be able to hear the other person.

Holding/resuming a call: you can place the existing call on hold and resume it again.

Swap call: you can alternate between two phone calls at the same time. One of the calls will be on hold. Selecting **End call** will end the active phone call. A call that was placed on hold stays on hold and can be taken off hold with **Resume held call**.

Conference call: a call on hold and up to five active parties (depending on the cell phone service provider) can be added to a conference call. To make an additional call, put all participants in the current conference call on hold using **Hold conference**. By pressing the left control button, you can make additional calls from the directory or the call list. **Resume conference** takes all participants off hold.

Tips

– The phone functions can only be controlled with the multifunction steering wheel if the phone equipment was installed *at the factory*.
– The telephone functions depend on the cell phone and whether they are supported by your cell phone service provider or not. ▶

– The **Call waiting** function must be activated in your cell phone and in the MMI in order to be alerted when there is an incoming call during an active call. The call options depend on the cell phone and service provider. You can obtain more information from your cell phone service provider.

Navigation

Operation in the driver information system

Applies to: vehicles with multifunction steering wheel and navigation system

Requirement: the navigation tab must be displayed.

If you have not started route guidance, a compass will display in the driver information system. The map is displayed in the Audi virtual cockpit*.

▸ Press either the button or the left control button ⇨ *page 18*, depending on vehicle equipment.

Depending on vehicle equipment, the following functions may be available in the driver information system.

– **Accessing last destinations**: select and confirm **Last destinations** > *the desired destination*.
– **Accessing favorites***: select and confirm **Favorites** > *the desired destination*.

Applies to: vehicles with analog instrument cluster

– **Showing navigation when route guidance is active**: select and confirm **Route guidance**.
– **Showing the compass when route guidance is inactive**: select and confirm **Compass**.
– **Starting route guidance to the stored home address**: if necessary, first select and confirm **Cancel route guidance** and then **Favorites** > **Home address**.
– **Canceling active route guidance**: select and confirm **Cancel route guidance**.

Applies to: vehicles with Audi virtual cockpit

– **Starting route guidance to the stored home address**: if necessary, first select and confirm **Cancel route guidance** and then **Favorites** > **Home address**.
– **Canceling active route guidance**: select: right control button > **Cancel route guidance**.

Additional settings

Applies to: vehicles with Audi virtual cockpit

– Select: right control button > *desired entry*.

Depending on the vehicle equipment and the function selected, the following additional settings may be possible:

– **Map display** ⇨ *page 200*.
– **Map colors** ⇨ *page 200*.
– **Map orientation** ⇨ *page 200*.
– **Automatic zoom** ⇨ *page 201*.

Navigation view with route guidance started

Applies to: vehicles with navigation system and Audi virtual cockpit



Fig. 158 Audi virtual cockpit: standard map during active route guidance

Requirement: a destination must be entered ⇨ *page 189*, route guidance must be started and the navigation tab must be displayed.

Depending on the vehicle equipment and the selected view ⇨ *page 19*, the following information will be displayed in the driver information system:

① Map content (such as points of interest or traffic information)

② Current vehicle position ()

③ A bar graph appears when there is an upcoming turn. The fewer the bars that are shown, the shorter the distance is until the turn. If there is not an upcoming turn, the distance to the destination/stopover and the calculated arrival time is displayed in the right speedometer. ▶

④ Name of the street where you are currently driving

Street view with route guidance started

Applies to: vehicles with navigation system and analog instrument cluster



Fig. 159 Instrument cluster: lane change in street view



Fig. 160 Instrument cluster: turning maneuver in street view

Requirement: a destination must be entered ⇨ *page 189*, route guidance must be started and the navigation tab must be displayed.

Depending on vehicle equipment, the following information may be shown in the driver information system.

① Distance to the next maneuver
② Distance to the destination or stopover
③ Calculated arrival time
④ Name of the current expressway, highway or street. If the ○ symbol is displayed in front of the street name, you should turn onto the street shown.
⑤ Direction arrow for the upcoming maneuver
⑥ Lane recommendation
⑦ A bar graph appears when a direction arrow is displayed. The fewer the bars that are shown, the shorter the distance is until the turn.

The following functions are also available when route guidance is active:

– **Repeating the last voice guidance message**: press the NAV button.
– **Adjusting the voice guidance volume**: turn the right thumbwheel up or down while a voice guidance message is playing.

WARNING

The route calculated by the navigation system is a recommendation for reaching your destination. Obey traffic lights, stopping restrictions, one-way streets, lane change restrictions, etc.

Tips

– Also see the chapter ⇨ *page 8, Controls at a glance*.
– An exclamation point "**!**" in front of the street name indicates that the information about this street or this section of the route is not complete in the navigation data contained in the MMI. Obey traffic laws in one-way streets and pedestrian zones.

GLOBAL COMMANDS

RAH-8648

- Telephone
- Audi connect
- Navigation
- Directory
- Radio
- Media
- Sound
- Help
- Help Speech dialog system
- Help Telephone
- Help Audi connect
- Help Navigation
- Help Map
- Help Radio
- Help Media
- Favorites
- Call (XY)
- Enter number
- Redial
- Read new text message
- Navigate to (XY)
- Enter address/destination
- Online destinations
- Cancel route guidance
- Map
- Line (XY)
- Next page / previous page
- Cancel
- No, I meant (XY)
- Correction

TELEPHONE

- Enter number
  - Delete number / correction
- Directory
- Call (XY)
  - business / private / land line / mobile
- Call list
- Redial
- Call mailbox
- Enter PIN / delete PIN
- Telephone favorites

NAVIGATION

- Navigate to (XY)
- Start / cancel route guidance
- Directory
- Last destinations
- Navigation favorites
- Drive home
- Enter address
- Enter country / town / street / state
- Exclude route / Exclude route for (XY) km / m
- Block route for (XY) miles / Block the next section
- Route list
- Calculate alternative routes
- Online destinations
- Special destination

MAP

- Map
- Day map / Night map
- 2D driving position map / 2D north position map / 3D map / Destination map / Overview map

AUDI CONNECT

- Audi connect
- Travel information / Parking information
- Fuel prices
- Weather
- Flight information
- City events
- Online news
- Twitter

RADIO

- Radio presets
- FM
- FM / AM / SIRIUS XM
- Station (XY) / Frequency (XY)
- Traffic announcement on / off

MEDIA

- Jukebox
- CD / DVD
- SD card 1 / SD card 2
- Audi music interface / iPod / USB / Bluetooth / Wi-Fi / Medium (XY)
- Media favorites / Artists / Albums / Genres / Tracks / Playlists / Videos
- Folder up
- Random playback on / off

Fig. 161 Command overview

Voice recognition system

General information

Applies to: vehicles with voice recognition system

You can operate many functions in the vehicle easily using voice commands.

Using the voice recognition system optimally

- Speak clearly and distinctly at a normal volume. Speak louder when driving faster.
- Emphasize the words in the commands evenly and do not leave long pauses.
- Close the doors, the windows, and the sunroof* to reduce background noise. Make sure that passengers are not speaking when you are giving a voice command.
- Do not direct the vents toward the hands-free microphone, which is in the roof headliner near the front interior lights.
- Only the driver should speak to the system, because the handsfree microphone is aimed toward this seating position.

WARNING

- Direct your full attention to driving. As the driver, you have complete responsibility for safety in traffic. Only use the functions in such a way that you always maintain complete control over your vehicle in all traffic situations.
- Do not use the voice recognition system in emergencies because your voice may change in stressful situations. The system may take longer to dial the number or may not be able to dial it at all. Dial the emergency number manually.

Tips

There are no voice guidance* prompts when a dialog is active.

Operating

Applies to: vehicles with voice recognition system

Requirement: the ignition and the MMI must be switched on. A system language supported by the voice recognition system must be set. There must be no phone calls in progress and the parking aid must not be active.

- **Switching on**: press the button ② ⇨ *page 19, fig. 13* or ③ ⇨ *page 20, fig. 15* briefly on the multifunction steering wheel and say the desired command after the **Beep**.
- **Switching off**: press and hold the button, or:
- Press the button.
- **Pausing**: say the command **Pause**. To resume, press the button.
- **Correcting**: say the command **Correction**.

Input assistance

The system guides you through the input with visual and audio feedback.

– **Visual input assistance**: after switching on voice recognition, a display with a selection of possible commands appears. This command display can be switched on or off. Select: MENU button > **Settings** > left control button > **MMI settings** > **Speech dialog system**.

– **Audio input assistance**: to have the possible commands read, turn the voice recognition system on and say **Help**.

Additional settings

See ⇨ *page 235*.

Tips

- The dialog pauses when there is an incoming phone call and will continue if you ignore the call. The dialog ends if you answer the call.
- You can select an item in the list using either the voice recognition system or the control knob.

Command overview information

Applies to: vehicles with voice recognition system

The following overviews describe the commands that can be used to operate the MMI using the voice recognition system. ▶

Alternative commands are separated using a "**/**", for example say: **Telephone** / (or) **Navigation** / (or) **Radio**.

Sequences of commands used to perform an action are identified with a "**>**", for example say: **Enter address** > (then) **Enter country/state**.

The majority shown are main commands. This system also recognizes synonyms in certain cases. For a **Business address**, you can also say **business**, **work**, **office** or **at the office**.

Commands

Global commands

Applies to: vehicles with voice recognition system

You can always use the global commands, regardless of the menu selected.

Function	Say:
Opening a menu	**Telephone / Directory / Navigation / Radio / Media / Audi connect* / Vehicle / Sound**
Having the possible commands read aloud	**Help / Help Speech dialog system / Help Telephone / Help Navigation / Help Map / Help Radio / Help Media / Help Audi connect***
Telephone functions	**Call (XY)**, for example, **Call "John Smith" / Enter number / Redial / Directory / Read out new text message / Read out new e-mail**
Navigation functions*	**Drive me to (XY)** or **Navigate to (XY)**, for example **Navigate to John Smith / Enter address / Cancel route guidance / Map / Online destinations* / Online destination (XY)***
Accessing favorites	**Favorites** > *follow the system prompts*
Selecting an entry from a list	**Line (XY)**
Scrolling through a list	**Next page / Previous page**
Correcting the command given	**Correction**
Switching the voice recognition system off	**Cancel**

Telephone

Applies to: vehicles with voice recognition system and telephone

Requirement: a cell phone must be connected to the MMI ⇨ *page 169* and the **Telephone** menu must be open ⇨ *table on page 163*.

Depending on the vehicle equipment and the selected menu item, you can say the following commands:

Function	Say:
Calling a contact from the directory	**Call (XY)**, for example **Call "John Smith"**
Selecting a specific contact number	**Call (XY) business / private / landline / cell phone**, for example, **Call "John Smith" private**

Function	Say:
Selecting a phone number with an address card open	**Call** / **Call work** / **Call private** / **Call landline** / **Call cell phone work**
Calling a contact from your favorites list	**Telephone favorites** > *after being prompted, say the desired contact* > **Dial**
Displaying the call list	**Call list**
Calling the last number dialed	**Redial**
Dialing a phone number	**Enter number** > *when prompted, say the telephone number in groups of individual numbers*, for example, **888 555 1212** > **Dial**
Correcting the phone number that was entered	**Correction** / **Delete number**
Showing contact information	**Directory** > *say the desired contact when prompted*, for example **John Smith**
Listening to messages	**Call voicemail**
Entering the PIN (SIM)	**Enter PIN** > *when prompted, say the PIN in individual numbers* > **Save**
Correcting the PIN entry	**Correction** / **Delete PIN**
Correcting data input	**No I meant (XY)**
Closing the full-screen command list	**Close**

Tips

– Contacts in the directory can selected using the full name (“first name last name” and “last name, first name”) as well as with only the first or last name. This applies to cell phones that transmit names separated into first and last names.

– Please note that commands can only be given for the primary phone* ⇨ *page 170*.

Audi connect Infotainment

Applies to: vehicles with voice recognition system and Audi connect Infotainment

Requirement: the requirements for Audi connect Infotainment must be met ⇨ *page 182*.

Function	Say:
Accessing Audi connect Infotainment services	**Audi connect** > *follow the system prompts*
Audi connect Infotainment services	**Weather** / **Online news** / **Fuel prices** / **Parking information** / **Travel information** / **Twitter** / **Traffic information**
Search areas for Audi connect Infotainment services	**Near destination** / **Nearby** / **In a new city**
Correcting data input	**No I meant (XY)**

Note

Read the information about Audi connect, and be sure to note the connectivity costs section ⇨ *in General information on page 182*.

Messages (Audi connect Infotainment)

Applies to: vehicles with voice recognition system and Audi connect Infotainment

Requirement: a cell phone with an active MAP (Message Access Profile) must be connected to the MMI ⇨ *page 175*.

Function	Say:
Text editing commands	**Read out** / **Add** / **Delete** / **Record everything again** / **Replace with (XY)** / **Add recipient** / **Send**
Reading out a new message	**Read out new text message** / **Read out new e-mail**
Reading a message	**Read out text message** / **Read out e-mail**
Replying to the open text message	**Reply**
Forwarding the open text message	**Forward** > **Add recipient** / **Insert template** / **Send**
Correcting data input	**No I meant (XY)**

Note

Read the information about Audi connect, and be sure to note the connectivity costs section ⇨ *in General information on page 182*.

Navigation

Applies to: vehicles with voice recognition system and navigation system

Requirement: the **Navigation** menu must be open ⇨ *table on page 163*.

Depending on the vehicle equipment and the selected menu item, you can say the following commands to enter a destination:

Function	Say:
Opening the list of previous navigation destinations	**Last destinations**
Accessing favorites	**Navigation favorites**
Selecting the home address	**Home address** or **Drive home**
Entering an address with guidance from the system	**Enter address** > *follow the system prompts*
Individual commands for entering a destination	**Enter country/state** / **Enter city** / **Enter ZIP code** / **Enter street** / **Enter house number**
Making a correction while entering a destination	**Correction**
Navigating to a contact	**Drive me to (XY)** or **Navigate to contact (XY)**, for example **Drive me to "John Smith"**

Function	Say:
Navigating to a specific address for a contact	**Navigate to contact (XY) business** / **private**, for example “Navigate to John Smith private”
Navigating to favorites	**Navigation favorites** > **Line (XY)** / *Line contents* > *Start route guidance when prompted*
Starting route guidance with an address card open	**Navigate** / **Navigate to private address** / **Navigate to business address**
Entering a new destination/stopover when route guidance is active	**Enter address** > *enter the desired address when prompted* > *confirm the new destination/stopover if prompted*
Starting route guidance after entering a destination	**Start route guidance**
Canceling current route guidance	**Cancel route guidance**
Calculating alternative routes	**Calculate alternative routes**
Entering a point of interest by selecting a search area with guidance from the system	**Point of interest** > **Change search area** > *category or subcategory when prompted*, for example “restaurant”
Destination input categories	**Audi Service** / **Train station** / **Airport** / **Hotel** / **Hospital** / **Parking area** / **Rest area** / **Restaurant** / **Gas station** *etc.*
Search areas for entering points of interest	**Nearby** / **Along the route** / **Near destination** / **Near stopover** / **In new city** / **In a new state/country**
Entering an online destination*	**Online destination (XY)**, for example “**Online destination "Lakeview Hotel"**”
Correcting data input	**No I meant (XY)**
Closing the full-screen command list	**Close**

Requirement: you must be in the **Navigation** or **Map** menu.

Depending on the vehicle equipment and the selected menu item, you can say the following commands for additional settings in navigation:

Function	Say:
General map options	**Map** / **Day map** / **Night map** / **Automatically change map color**
Map type	**2D heading-up map** / **2D north-up map** / **3D map** / **Destination map** / **Overview map** / **Standard map*** / **Satellite map***[a)]
Showing the route list	**Route list**
Showing the remaining distance/ time when route guidance is active	**Destination information**
Speed limit prompt	**How fast can I drive here?**
Setting voice guidance for active route guidance	**Voice guidance on** / **Voice guidance off** / **Voice guidance shortened** / **Voice guidance complete** / **Voice guidance traffic**
Blocking a certain section on the route	**Block route for (XY) meters/kilometers/yards/miles** / **Block next route** / **Avoid next section of route**

a) AUDI AG provides access to services from third party providers. Permanent availability cannot be guaranteed, because that depends on the third party provider.

Note

Read the information about Audi connect, and be sure to note the connectivity costs section ⇨ *in General information on page 182*.

Tips

Destinations may have to be spelled when entered, depending on which region you are in and which menu language you have selected.

Radio

Applies to: vehicles with voice recognition system

Requirement: the **Radio** must already be open.

Depending on the vehicle equipment and the selected frequency band, you can say the following commands:

Function	Say:
Selecting the frequency band	**FM*** / **SiriusXM*** / **FM** / **AM**
Selecting a station from the station list	**Channel (XY)** / **Frequency (XY)**
Selecting a station from the presets	**Radio presets** > **Line (XY)**
Setting the frequency	**Frequency (XY)** / **Frequency (XY) HD 1**
Correcting data input	**No I meant (XY)**
Closing the full-screen command list	**Close**

Media

Applies to: vehicles with voice recognition system

Requirement: you must be in the **Media** menu.

Depending on the vehicle equipment and the active media, you can say the following commands:

Function	Say:
Selecting a source directly	**Jukebox*** / **CD** / **DVD** / **SD card 1** / **SD card 2** / **Audi music interface*** / **iPhone*** / **USB*** / **Bluetooth*** / **Wi-Fi*** / **Medium (XY)**, for example “John's player”
Selecting audio/video* files in the Jukebox*	**Media favorites** / **Artists** / **Albums** / **Genres** / **Tracks** / **Playlists** / **Videos**
Selecting audio files on an iPod (source: Audi music interface*)	**Artists** / **Albums** / **Genres** / **Tracks** / **Playlists** / **Composers** / **Podcasts** / **Audio books**
Navigating within a folder structure/list	**Folder up** / **Line (XY)**
Selecting shuffle	**Shuffle on** / **Shuffle off**
Correcting data input	**No I meant (XY)**
Closing the full-screen command list	**Close**

Note

Read the information about Audi connect, and be sure to note the connectivity costs section ⇨ *in General information on page 182*.

External voice operation

Applies to: vehicles with voice recognition system and external voice operation

Requirement: the ignition and the MMI must be switched on. A mobile device must be connected to the MMI with the **Handsfree** profile ⇨ *page 170*. The mobile device being connected must have voice control that can be controlled externally. There must be no phone calls in progress and the parking aid must not be active.

- **Switching on**: press and *hold* the button on the multifunction steering wheel* and say the desired command after the external speech dialog begins.
- **Continuing/resuming the dialog**: the system remains ready to use for a short time after ending the dialog. You can start a new external dialog during this time.
- Press the button if needed, and say a new command, or:
- Select and confirm **Resume** on the MMI control panel.
- **Switching off**: press and hold the button, or:
- Select and confirm **Cancel** on the MMI control panel.

Tips

– There are no voice guidance* prompts when a dialog is active.
– AUDI AG simply provides access to control your mobile device with voice operation and does not assume any responsibility for the content and commands within the external voice control.

Telephone

Introduction

Applies to: vehicles with telephone

You can operate various telephone functions easily through the MMI in your vehicle.

Depending on the country and the vehicle equipment, the following options may be available:

– Connecting a cell phone with Bluetooth
– Using two telephones
– Using the Audi phone box

WARNING

– Medical experts warn that mobile devices can interfere with the function of pacemakers. Always maintain a minimum distance of about 7.9 inches (20 cm) between the mobile device antennas and the pacemaker.
  – Do not carry the mobile device in a pocket directly over the pacemaker when the phone is switched on.
  – Switch the mobile device off immediately if you suspect it may be interfering with the pacemaker.
– Do not use the voice recognition system* ⇨ *page 162* in emergencies because your voice may change in stressful situations. The system may take longer to dial the number or may not be able to dial it at all. Dial the emergency number manually.
– Switch your mobile device off in areas where there is a risk of an explosion. These locations are not always clearly marked. This may include gas stations, fuel and chemical storage facilities or transport vehicles, or locations where fuel vapors (such as propane or gasoline vapor in vehicles or buildings), chemicals or large quantities of dust particles (such as flour, sawdust or metal) may be present in the air. This also applies to all other locations where you would normally turn your vehicle engine off.
– The demands of traffic require your full attention. Always read the chapter ⇨ *page 146, Traffic safety information*.

Note

Read the information about Audi connect, and be sure to note the connectivity costs section ⇨ *page 182*.

Tips

– The Bluetooth connection range is limited to inside the vehicle.
– A selection of supported Bluetooth devices can be found in the database for tested mobile devices at www.audi.com/bluetooth.

Setup

Connecting a cell phone via Bluetooth

Applies to: vehicles with telephone

Requirement: the vehicle must be stationary and the ignition must be switched on. The Bluetooth settings must be open on your mobile device during the connection setup. The mobile device to be connected must not be actively connected to any other Bluetooth device. The MMI must not be connected to a mobile device.

► Enable the Bluetooth function and visibility on the MMI ⇨ *page 233* and the cell phone.
► Select: MENU button > **Telephone** > **Connect mobile device** > **Find new devices** > **Next**. The available Bluetooth devices are shown in the Infotainment system display, or
► Select: MENU button > **Settings** > left control button > **MMI settings** > **Connection manager** ⇨ *page 231*.
► Select and confirm the desired cell phone from the list of displayed Bluetooth devices.

A PIN for a secure Bluetooth connection will be generated.

► Confirm the PIN on your cell phone and on the MMI, or:
► Enter the PIN for establishing a connection on your cell phone. The time allowed for entering the PIN is limited to approximately 30 seconds.
► Follow the system instructions.
► Pay attention to any other system prompts on the MMI and on your cell phone. ▶

After connecting successfully

Information about the connected profiles will appear. You can also change the profiles later ⇨ *page 233*.

The cell phone contacts are automatically loaded in the MMI. This process can take several minutes, depending on the number of contacts.

Depending on your cell phone and the connection type, you can use the following functions:

Handsfree

Requirement: your cell phone must be connected to the MMI via a Bluetooth Hands Free Profile (Bluetooth HFP).

You can use the hands-free system. You can make calls using the antenna on your mobile device.

Sending and receiving messages

See ⇨ *page 175*.

Note

Read the information about Audi connect, and be sure to note the connectivity costs section ⇨ *page 182*.

Tips

– You can apply additional settings to connected mobile devices using the **Connection manager** ⇨ *page 231*.
– You can also search for the MMI on your mobile device using the Bluetooth device search.
– You only have to pair your device one time. Bluetooth devices that are already paired automatically connect to the MMI when the Bluetooth function is switched on, when they are within range, and when the ignition is switched on. The last connected mobile device is given first priority.
– Pay attention to any system prompts displayed on your cell phone, for example if the system should connect automatically in the future. Depending on the cell phone, you may also need to download the directory and confirm access to your text messages separately.
– When leaving the vehicle, the Bluetooth connection to the mobile device will automatically disconnect. Depending on your mobile device, phone calls in progress may be automatically redirected from the MMI to your mobile device so that you can continue the call on your phone.

Using two telephones

Applies to: vehicles with telephone, and Audi phone box

You can connect two cell phones to the MMI, for example your business cell phone as the primary phone and your private cell phone as the secondary phone. You can be reached in your vehicle through both cell phones.

The first connected cell phone is displayed as the primary phone in the MMI. The second cell phone is connected as the secondary phone.

The directory from the connected primary phone will always be displayed. If you would like to use the directory from the secondary phone, you must switch the primary and secondary phone ⇨ *page 171*.

Connecting a cell phone as the primary phone

▸ Connect your cell phone to the MMI via Bluetooth. The first connected cell phone is displayed as the **Primary phone** in the MMI.

See ⇨ *page 169, Connecting a cell phone via Bluetooth*.

Connecting a cell phone as the secondary phone

Requirement: a cell phone must be connected to the MMI as the primary phone.

▸ Select: MENU button > **Telephone** > right control button > **Connect secondary telephone**.

See ⇨ *page 169, Connecting a cell phone via Bluetooth*.

Example: you have connected your business cell phone to the MMI as the primary phone and your private cell phone as the secondary phone. To be able to call contacts from your private cell phone directory, you must switch the primary and ▶

secondary phone, since the directory from the primary phone is always displayed.

Switching the primary and secondary phone

Requirement: a primary phone and a secondary phone must be connected.

- Select: MENU button > **Telephone** > right control button > **Switch primary and second. phone**.

Tips

- You can see if a cell phone is connected as the primary phone or secondary phone in the **Connection manager** ⇨ *page 231*.
- You can also make your connected cell phone the default phone by selecting **Set as default telephone** in the **Connection manager** ⇨ *page 233*.
- The device name of the connected primary phone is shown in the **Telephone** menu (such as myPhone).
- If the primary phone does not connect automatically to the MMI when the ignition is switched on, for example because it is out of the vehicle range or the Bluetooth function is switched off, then a previously paired secondary phone is automatically connected as the primary phone.
- You can send and receive messages on your primary phone as well as on your secondary phone ⇨ *page 173, fig. 163*. You do not need to switch your primary phone and secondary phone for this.

Using the Audi phone box

Applies to: vehicles with Audi phone box



Fig. 162 Storage compartment under the center armrest: Audi phone box with connections

You can charge your mobile device battery using the Audi phone box. You can make calls through the exterior antenna* on the vehicle. Using the external antenna* helps when there is a low signal and also provides better reception quality.

The options below are available:

- **Connecting to the external vehicle antenna***: lay the cell phone on the center of the cell phone symbol in the Audi phone box with the display facing up ⇨ *fig. 162*. Make sure there are no objects between the Audi phone box and the mobile device.
- **Charging a cell phone wirelessly**: place a Qi-capable[1)] cell phone centered on the ⏀ symbol in the Audi phone box with the display facing up ⇨ *fig. 162*. The cell phone will charge.
- **Charging a mobile device using the USB adapter**: connect your mobile device to the Audi music interface using a USB adapter cable ①. You can charge your mobile device using specific USB adapters ⇨ *page 217, fig. 190*.

WARNING

- Loose objects can be thrown around the vehicle interior during sudden driving or braking maneuvers, which increases the risk of an accident. Store objects securely while driving.

1) The Qi standard makes it possible to charge your mobile device wirelessly.

– The mobile device may become hot during wireless charging. Pay attention to the temperature of your mobile device and be careful when removing it from the Audi phone box.
– An alternating magnetic field is used for wireless charging. Maintain a minimum distance of approximately 2.4 in (6 cm) to the Audi phone box charging plate. The thresholds for prolonged exposure at this distance comply with ICNIRP1998. Therefore, interactions such as irritation of sensory organs, malfunctions of active implants (such as pacemakers, infusion pumps, or neurostimulators) or effects on passive implants (such as prosthetic limbs) is highly unlikely. If you have an implant, consult a medical specialist if you have any questions.

Note

Applicable to U.S.A.

Operation of the Audi phone box is subject to the following requirements of the Federal Communications Commission:

– This is a CONSUMER device.
– BEFORE USE, you MUST REGISTER THIS DEVICE with your wireless provider and have your provider´s consent. Most wireless providers consent to the use of signal boosters. Some providers may not consent to the use of this device on their network. If you are unsure, contact your service provider.
– You MUST operate this device with approved antennas and cables as specified by the manufacturer. Antennas MUST be installed at least 20 cm (8 inches) from any person.
– You MUST cease operating this device immediately if requested by the FCC or a licensed wireless service provider.
– WARNING: E911 location information may not be provided or may be inaccurate for calls served by using this device.

Note

Applicable to Canada

In Canada, operation of a Zone Enhancer, such as an Audi Phone Box, is subject to the following requirements of the Innovation, Science and Economic Development Canada (ISED):

– This is a CONSUMER device.
– BEFORE USE, you **MUST** meet all requirements set out in **CPC-2-1-05**.
– You MUST operate this device with approved antennas and cables as specified by the manufacturer. Antennas MUST NOT be installed within 20 cm of any person.
– You MUST cease operating this device immediately if requested by ISED or a licensed wireless service provider.
– **WARNING**: E911 location information may not be provided or may be inaccurate for calls served by using this device.

Tips

– Placing the mobile device in a bag or protective sleeve inside the Audi phone box can interfere with the connection to the external antenna*.
– Metallic objects in the Audi phone box block the wireless charging of your mobile device and calls made using the exterior antenna*.
– The charging time and temperature will vary depending on the mobile device being used.
– Your mobile device can only be charged in the Audi phone box when the ignition is switched on.
– To reduce the risk of malfunctions, make sure the mobile device is positioned correctly in the Audi phone box.
– The maximum charging output is 5 W.
– Strong transmission quality* cannot be guaranteed if more than one mobile device is in the box.
– Only one mobile device at a time can be charged wirelessly in the Audi phone box.
– Audi recommends using Audi Genuine Accessories. Audi has verified their reliability, safety, and suitability.
– You can purchase a USB adapter from an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility, or at specialty stores.
– If you place your remote control key together with your mobile device in the Audi phone box, it may cause your mobile device to stop charging if wireless charging is active.

Using the telephone

Opening the telephone

Applies to: vehicles with telephone

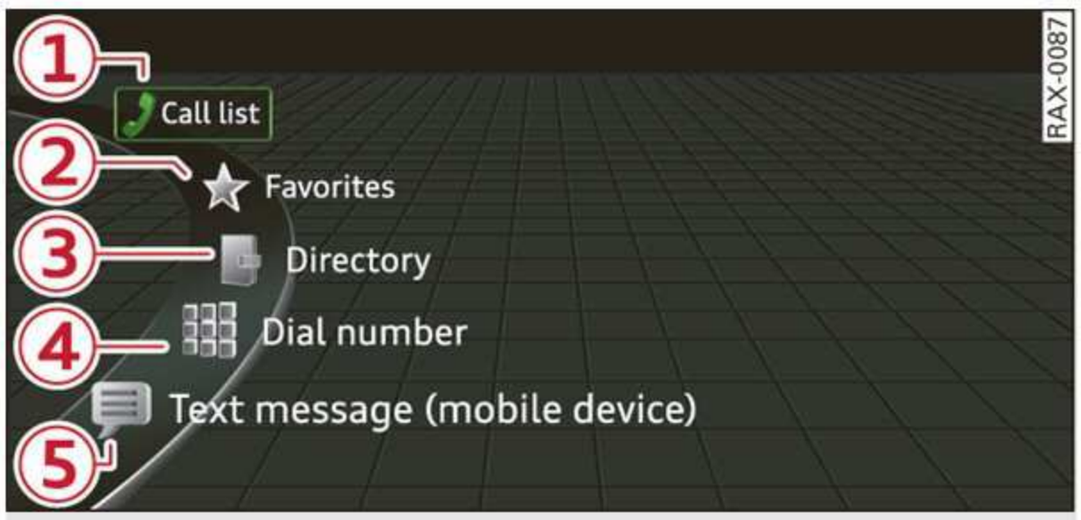


Fig. 163 Infotainment system: telephone functions in the selection menu



Fig. 164 Infotainment system: additional telephone functions in the selection menu

Requirement: a mobile device must be connected to the MMI ⇨ *page 169*.

► Select: MENU button > **Telephone** > left control button.

The following phone functions will be available:

① Call list 173
② Favorites 175
③ Directory 178
④ Select number 173
⑤ Text message (MyPhone)*/Text message (secondary phone)* 175
⑥ E-mail (myPhone)*/E-mail (secondary phone)* 177

Dialing a phone number

Applies to: vehicles with telephone



Fig. 165 Infotainment system: dialing a phone number from the call list

► Select: MENU button > **Telephone** > left control button.

Call list

Requirement: the call list must contain a phone number.

Turn the control knob to display the call list.

Select and confirm the desired telephone number from the recent calls list.

Call list symbols:

① Missed calls
② Dialed numbers
③ Accepted calls

Select: *a contact from the list* > right control button.

– **Call**: call the selected contact.
– **Connect secondary telephone*/Switch primary and second. phone***: see ⇨ *page 170*.
– **Edit phone no. before call**: edit a phone number before dialing it. Select and confirm **OK** to edit. press the left control button to return without editing.
– **Send text message**: write a text message to the selected contact.
– **Delete call list**: select and confirm if you would like to **Delete this entry** or **Delete all entries**.
– **Store as favorite**: store the selected contact as a favorite.
– **Show contact details**: see ⇨ *page 179*.
– **Connection manager**: see ⇨ *page 231*.
– **Bluetooth settings***: see ⇨ *page 233*.
– **Online settings***: see ⇨ *page 233*.
– **Wi-Fi settings***: see ⇨ *page 187*. ▶

8V2012721BK

– **Telephone settings**: see ⇨ *page 180*.

Favorites

Requirement: a phone number or contact must be stored as a favorite ⇨ *page 175*.

Select and confirm a favorite in the favorites list.

Directory

Requirement: you must have at least one contact stored in your cell phone.

Select and confirm a phone number from the directory ⇨ *page 178*.

Enter number

– **Entering a phone number as a sequence of numbers**: enter a phone number using the number speller.
– **Entering the phone number as a sequence of letters**: select and confirm ABC above the number speller. Enter a sequence of letters using the letter speller, for example *AUDISERVICE*.
– **Dialing a phone number**: select and confirm ✆, or push the control knob downward. Select and confirm **OK**.
– **Deleting individual characters**: select and confirm ⌫.
– **Deleting all characters entered at once**: turn the control knob with the character selection to ⌫ and press and hold the control knob, or select: right control button > **Clear input field**.

Accepting or ending a call

Applies to: vehicles with telephone

▸ **Accepting a call**: select and confirm **Answer**.
▸ **Declining a call**: select and confirm **Decline**.
▸ **Muting the active call**: select and confirm **Mute**.
▸ **Ending a phone call/cancel dialing**: select and confirm **End call**.

Tips

The radio or media playback is muted during a phone call.

During a phone call

Applies to: vehicles with telephone

Requirement: there must be a call in progress.

– **End call**: you can end a phone call.
– **Send tone sequence**: you can enter tone sequences (**DTMF**) directly using the number speller and send to the other person on the call.
– **Other call options**: press the right control button.

The following options may be possible during a call depending on the mobile device being used and the type of connection:

– **Answering an additional call**: if there is an incoming call while another call is active, you can select **Answer** to put the existing call on hold and answer the incoming call. If you select **Decline**, the incoming call will be declined.
– **Accepting an incoming call when there is an active call and a call on hold**: select **Replace**. The active call is replaced with the incoming call.
– **Muting the incoming call**: select and confirm **Mute**.
– **Additional call**: select: **Find contact** > **Call list**/**Directory**/**Favorites** > *an entry from the list*.

Mute: if you select and confirm this function, the other person on the phone cannot hear you. You will still be able to hear the other person. To turn the microphone back on, select and confirm **Unmute**.

Hold call/**Resume held call**: you can place the existing call on hold and resume it again. To resume the call, select and confirm the call you would like to resume.

Transfer call to mobile device*: select and confirm **Transfer call to mobile device** to transfer the existing call from the MMI to your cell phone.

Switch to hands-free mode*: Requirement: you must have a phone call in progress on your cell phone. Select and confirm **Switch to hands-free mode** to transfer the call from your cell phone back to the MMI. ▶

Swap call: alternate between two phone calls while one of the calls is on hold. Selecting **End call** will end the active phone call. A phone call on hold can be resumed using the right control button > **Resume**.

Tips

– To be notified of an incoming call during a phone call, the *call waiting* function in your mobile device must be switched on when using the **Handsfree** profile.
– When leaving the vehicle, the Bluetooth connection to the mobile device will automatically disconnect. Depending on your mobile device, phone calls in progress may be automatically redirected from the MMI to your mobile device so that you can continue the call on your phone.

Making an emergency call

Applies to: vehicles with telephone

▸ Select: MENU button > **Telephone** > left control button > **Dial number** > Enter emergency call number (for example, 911) > **OK**.

WARNING

– Because your phone works with radio signals, a connection cannot be guaranteed under all circumstances. Do not rely on only your phone when it comes to essential communication (such as a medical emergency).
– Always follow the instructions given by the emergency personnel during an emergency call and only end the call when they instruct you to do so.

Tips

Emergency numbers are not the same everywhere. Find out which emergency number is used in your current location.

Favorites

Applies to: vehicles with telephone

Up to 50 contacts, in addition to the voicemail number, can be stored in any order in the favorites list:

Opening a menu

▸ Select: MENU button > **Telephone** > left control button.

Storing an existing phone number as a favorite:

▸ Select and confirm **Call list/Directory**.
▸ Select a contact or phone number from the list.
▸ Select: right control button > **Store as favorite**.
▸ Enter a name for the favorite or select a suggestion.
▸ Select and confirm **Save**.

Renaming stored favorites

▸ Select: **Favorites** > *a favorite from the list*.
▸ Select the right control button > **Rename favorite**.

Moving stored favorites

▸ Select: **Favorites** > *a favorite from the list*.
▸ Select the right control button > **Move favorite**.
▸ Select and confirm the location of the selected favorite.

Deleting a stored favorite

▸ Select: **Favorites** > *a favorite from the list*.
▸ Select: right control button > **Delete favorite** > **Delete this entry** or **Delete all entries**.

Messages

Text messages

Applies to: cell phones with Bluetooth Message Access Profile (MAP)

Depending on the mobile device being used and the mobile network contract, you may be able to receive and send text messages using the MMI.

Requirement: your mobile device must be connected to the MMI via Bluetooth Message Access Profile (Bluetooth MAP) ⇨ *page 169*.

▸ Select: MENU button > **Telephone** > left control button > **text message (myPhone)/text message (secondary phone)***.

Write new text message

Select and confirm **Write new text message**. ▶

– **Using a template**: select and confirm the desired template from the list.
– **Writing your own text***: select and confirm **Do not use template**. Enter text using the MMI touch control pad* or the letter speller.
– Enter one or more recipients.
– Select and confirm **Send**.

Inbox

Displays all received text messages.

Sent

Displays all sent text messages.

Outbox

Displays all text messages to be sent.

Drafts

Displays all text messages that have not yet been sent and stored text messages.

Deleted

Displays all deleted text messages.

Tips

Please note that you may have to activate the receiving and sending of text messages depending on the SIM card being used (for example, when using a multi-SIM).

Message options

Applies to: cell phones with Bluetooth Message Access Profile (MAP)

▸ Select: TEL button > left control button > **text message (myPhone)/text message (secondary phone)*** > **Inbox/Sent/Outbox** > right control button.

The following options may be available depending on the selected menu.

Storing a text message as a template

Ten text message templates are stored in the MMI. You can save up to 10 additional templates of your own.

– Create a text message.
– Select and confirm **Store as template**.

Resume last text message

The last edited text message can be resumed.

Reply*

A reply can be sent for the selected message in the **Inbox**.

Forward

The selected text message can be forwarded to a different recipient.

Send again*

The selected text message can be resent.

Delete this text message*

The selected text message can be deleted.

Read out[1)]

You can have the MMI read an open text message.

Text messaging settings*

To display when a new text message is received, enable the **Text message notifications**. New text messages are indicated with an envelope ✉ in the Infotainment system display status line.

Connection manager

See ⇨ *page 231*.

Bluetooth settings*

See ⇨ *page 233*.

Online settings*

See ⇨ *page 233*.

Wi-Fi settings*

See ⇨ *page 187*.

Telephone settings

See ⇨ *page 180*.

1) Not available in all languages.

Tips

Messages that are deleted in the MMI are also deleted in the mobile device automatically.

E-mail

Applies to: cell phones with Bluetooth Message Access Profile (MAP)

Depending on the type of mobile device being used, you may be able to receive and send e-mails through the MMI.

Requirement: your mobile device must be connected to the MMI via Bluetooth Message Access Profile (Bluetooth MAP) ⇨ *page 169*.

- Select: MENU button > **Telephone** > left control button > **e-mail (myPhone)/e-mail (secondary phone)***.

Write new e-mail

Select and confirm **Write new e-mail**.

– **Using a template**: select and confirm the *desired template from the list*.
– **Writing your own text***: select and confirm **Do not use template**. Enter text using the MMI touch control pad* or the letter speller.
– Enter one or more recipients.
– Select and confirm **Send**.

Inbox

All received e-mails are displayed.

Sent

All sent e-mails are displayed.

Outbox

All e-mails that will be sent are displayed.

Drafts

All saved e-mails that have not been sent yet are displayed.

Note

Read the information about Audi connect, and be sure to note the connectivity costs section ⇨ *page 182*.

Tips

To ensure that your sent e-mails are received, connect your cell phone to the Wi-Fi hotspot* in the vehicle so that the e-mail app on your cell phone continues to have Internet access. If you are still not receiving e-mails even though you have a successful connection, then contact your e-mail service provider or your cell phone service provider.

Message options

Applies to: cell phones with Bluetooth Message Access Profile (MAP)

- Select: MENU button > **Telephone** > left control button > **e-mail (myPhone)/e-mail (secondary phone)*** > **Inbox/Sent/Outbox** > right control button.

The following options may be available depending on the selected menu.

Store as template

Ten e-mail templates are stored in the MMI. You can save up to 10 additional templates of your own.

– Create an e-mail.
– Select and confirm **Store as template**.

Resume last edited e-mail

The last e-mail in progress can be resumed.

Reply*

A reply can be sent for the selected e-mail in the **Inbox**.

Reply to all*

A reply can be sent for the selected e-mail in the **Inbox** and it will be sent to all of the entered recipients.

Forward

The selected e-mail can be forwarded to a different recipient.

Delete this message*

The selected e-mail can be deleted. ▶

Read out[1)]

You can have the MMI read an open e-mail.

E-mail settings*

To display when a new e-mail is received, activate the **E-mail notifications**. New e-mails are indicated with an envelope ✉ in the Infotainment system display status line.

Connection manager

See ⇨ *page 231*.

Bluetooth settings*

See ⇨ *page 233*.

Online settings*

See ⇨ *page 233*.

Wi-Fi settings*

See ⇨ *page 187*.

Telephone settings

See ⇨ *page 180*.

Tips

- Messages that are deleted in the MMI are also automatically deleted in the connected cell phone.
- You cannot read any messages while driving.

Listening to voicemail

Applies to: vehicles with telephone

- Select: MENU button > **Telephone** > left control button. Select and confirm **Call list/Directory/Favorites** > **Voicemail**.

Requirement: there must be no voicemail number stored.

- **Entering the voicemail number**: enter the desired number. Select and confirm **OK**.

Requirement: a voicemail number must be stored.

- **Dialing the voicemail number**: select and confirm **Voicemail**.

1) Not available in all languages.

Tips

This service must be set up and activated in advance by the cell phone service provider.

Directory

Opening the directory

Applies to: vehicles with telephone

After connecting the cell phone, the contacts in it are automatically imported into the MMI.

Requirement: you must have at least one contact stored in your cell phone.

- Select: MENU button > **Telephone** > left control button > **Directory**.
- **Calling a contact**: select and confirm a contact from the directory. The phone numbers for the selected contact are displayed. To make the call, select and confirm a phone number.
- **Free text search for a contact**: see ⇨ *page 154*.

Contacts are displayed in alphabetical order and can be sorted by first or last name ⇨ *page 180*, **Sort order**.

Tips

- Additional information on free text searches can be found under ⇨ *page 154*.
- Check for a possible request to synchronize on your cell phone. Requests to synchronize the directory must be confirmed so that your cell phone contacts can be loaded into the MMI.
- Please note that only the directory from the primary phone* is always displayed.
- The contacts from the mobile device may not be transferred in alphabetical order. If there are too many entries, contacts with different first letters may be missing in the MMI.
- The contacts in the local MMI memory are always visible and can be accessed by other users.

Free text search for a contact

Applies to: vehicles with telephone

- ▸ Select: MENU button > **Telephone** > left control button > **Directory**.
- ▸ To limit the search, enter the initials of the contact being searched with each initial separated by a space in the input field. Enter additional letters if necessary.
- ▸ Select and confirm a contact from the directory. The phone numbers for the selected contact are displayed.
- ▸ To make the call, select and confirm a phone number.

Tips

- – You can scroll through long lists quickly by turning the control knob quickly. The scrolling speed depends on the number of list entries.
- – Additional information on free text searches can be found under ⇨ *page 154*.

Showing contact details*

Applies to: vehicles with telephone

You may be able to show contact details depending on the vehicle equipment:

- ▸ Select: MENU button > **Telephone** > left control button.
- ▸ Select and confirm **Directory** > *a contact from the directory*.
- ▸ Select: right control button > **Show contact details**.

- – **Calling**: select and confirm the desired telephone number.
- – **Navigating**: to start navigation, select and confirm the desired address. Select and confirm **Start route guidance**.

Press the right control button to open additional options for the contact details.

- – **Add destination**: to start navigation, select and confirm the desired address. Select and confirm **Start route guidance**.
- – **Store as favorite**: see ⇨ *page 175*.
- – **Send text message***: you can send a text message to the selected contact ⇨ *page 175*.
- – **Delete contact**: the selected contact can be deleted.

Tips

- – Contacts edited in the MMI directory cannot be automatically updated in the connected cell phone. Audi recommends editing cell phone contacts directly in the cell phone.
- – Only the contacts in the local MMI memory can be edited or deleted.

Importing and exporting contacts

Applies to: vehicles with telephone

Contacts in vCard format (.vcf) can be imported into the directory or exported.

Requirement: an SD card must be inserted in one of the SD card readers* ⇨ *page 212* or a USB storage device must be connected to the Audi music interface* ⇨ *page 217* or the requirements for Audi connect Infotainment services* must be met ⇨ *page 182*.

- ▸ Select: MENU button > **Telephone** > left control button > **Directory**.
- ▸ Select: right control button > **Contact settings**.
- ▸ **Importing contacts from a storage device**: select and confirm **Import contacts** > **SD card 1/SD card 2** or **USB device 1/USB device 2** > *desired contacts* > **Start import**.
- ▸ **Exporting contacts to a storage device**: select and confirm **Export contacts** > **SD card 1/SD card 2** or **USB device 1/USB device 2** > *desired contacts* > **Start export**.
- ▸ **Selecting all contacts at once to import/export**: select and confirm **Import contacts/Export contacts** > **SD card 1/SD card 2** or **USB device 1/USB device 2** > **All** > **Start import/Start export**.

Note

Read the information about Audi connect, and be sure to note the connectivity costs section ⇨ *page 182*.

Tips

- – For additional information on the myAudi account, visit my.audi.com. ▶

– The imported contacts are stored in the local memory of the directory.
– A maximum of 1,000 contacts can be imported. You can check the directory memory capacity at any time ⇨ *page 180*.
– Contacts that were downloaded from a mobile device cannot be exported.
– There should be no other files or folders on the storage medium containing the contacts to be imported.

Additional settings

Telephone settings

Applies to: vehicles with telephone

► Select: MENU button > **Telephone** > right control button > **Telephone settings**.

Call options*

Call forwarding: you can switch the forwarding of incoming calls to your voicemail or to another phone number on and off. You can check if the function is activated or deactivated with **Check status**.

Call waiting: you are alerted to an incoming call during a phone call when the function is switched on ☑. You can check if the function is activated or deactivated with **Check status**.

Send own telephone number: sending your phone number with an outgoing call can be activated and deactivated. With the **Network-dependent** setting, the setting listed in the contract with the cell phone service provider is used. The settings only apply to the **Telephone** menu in the MMI. Please note that the settings on your mobile device will apply after disconnecting the Bluetooth connection. You can check if the function is activated or deactivated with **Check status**.

Ringtone and volume settings[1)]

Using the **Mute telephone** function, you can switch the ringtone playback through the MMI speaker on and off. You can play the ringtones using the **Ringtone** function. Select and confirm an entry from the list. For the **Ringtone volume**/**Message volume** settings, see ⇨ *page 235*. The **Microphone input level** can be adjusted during a phone call using the control knob.

Tips

– Several mobile devices can be paired with the MMI, but only two* mobile devices can be actively connected.
– To delete all paired Bluetooth devices, the **Bluetooth** function can be reset to the factory default settings ⇨ *page 231*.

Additional options

Applies to: vehicles with telephone

► Select: MENU button > **Telephone** > right control button.

– **Connection manager**: see ⇨ *page 231*.
– **Bluetooth settings***: see ⇨ *page 233*.
– **Online settings***: see ⇨ *page 233*.
– **Wi-Fi settings***: see ⇨ *page 187*.

Directory settings

Applies to: vehicles with telephone

► Select: MENU button > **Telephone** > left control button > **Directory** > right control button > **Contact settings**.

Memory capacity

Shows the **Memory capacity** for the directory.

You can manage up to 17,000 contacts with the directory. You can load up to 4,000 contacts from your cell phone into each directory. You can also import up to 1,000 contacts from a storage device.

Sort order

You can sort the contacts in your directory alphabetically according to **Last name** or **First name**.

Import contacts/Export contacts

See ⇨ *page 179*. ▶

1) Depends on the connected cell phone.

Download directory

To update the contacts in the MMI, you can manually download your mobile device contacts. Depending on the mobile device, you may need to disconnect and reconnect the Bluetooth connection to update the contacts.

Hide contacts without phone number

When this function is switched on, grayed-out contacts that have no phone numbers stored for them will be hidden in the directory.

Troubleshooting

Applies to: vehicles with telephone

Problem	Solution
Pairing the mobile device to the MMI failed.	Make sure the requirements for connecting a cell phone have been met ⇨ *page 169*, or make sure you did not accidentally decline the PIN for establishing a connection on your cell phone. If necessary, repeat the pairing process ⇨ *page 169*.
After pairing, **not all contacts or no contacts** have been loaded into the MMI.	Avoid using special characters in names. Avoid using contact groups on your cell phone.
Certain **telephone functions** are grayed out or not available.	The telephone functions depend on the mobile device service provider and the mobile device you are using.
Some **telephone functions** may be switched off or not available, even though the mobile device is supported.	Check if the Bluetooth settings on your cell phone are limited or individual Bluetooth settings are deactivated. This may be the case with business cell phones.
Applies to: vehicles with Audi phone box: Wireless charging of your mobile device is not working or has been interrupted.	Applies to: vehicles with Audi phone box: Check if your mobile device is Qi-capable. Check if your cell phone is centered on the phone symbol in the Audi phone box and make sure there are *no* other objects in the Audi phone box. Do not place your remote control key in the Audi phone box with your cell phone.

8V2012721BK

Audi connect

General information

Applies to: vehicles with Audi connect

Depending on the country and the vehicle equipment, the following functions may be available:

– Audi connect Infotainment
– Applies to: vehicles with plug-in hybrid drive: Audi connect vehicle control services (Audi connect e-tron services)

You can also find more information on Audi connect online at my.audi.com.

WARNING

– To reduce the risk of an accident, only use Audi connect services and the Wi-Fi hotspot only if the traffic situation permits it. Read and follow the guidelines provided in ⇨ *page 146, Traffic safety information*.
– It is only safe to use tablets, laptops, mobile devices and other similar devices when the vehicle is stationary because, like all loose objects, they could be thrown around the inside of the vehicle in a crash and cause serious injuries. Store these types of devices securely while driving. Also read the warnings in the chapter ⇨ *page 257, Front airbags*.

Note

– Applies to: embedded SIM card usage: The connection costs for Audi connect Infotainment services are included in the price of Audi connect Infotainment during the subscription period with some exceptions. Please note that there may be additional charges when using some services. For example, this applies to online radio/ podcasts, Gracenote online database or for Internet connections and services that use the Wi-Fi hotspot, such as online media sources. Depending on the country, data plans may need to be purchased for these services ⇨ *page 187*. For additional information, see my.audi.com.
– In certain situations, the Wi-Fi hotspot data connection may be established as a replacement for the SIM card on your Wi-Fi device. This feature depends on the configuration of your Wi-Fi device and operating system. This could result in fees depending on your cell phone service provider, especially if you are using this feature while abroad. A flat rate data plan is strongly recommended. For more information, contact your cell phone service provider or refer to the owner's manual for your Wi-Fi device.
– You are responsible for all precautions taken for data protection, anti-virus protection, and protection against loss of data on mobile devices that are used, for example, to access the Internet through the Wi-Fi hotspot.
– In areas with poor GPS reception or outside the coverage range of the respective cell phone service provider, some functions and/or services may not be available, it may not be possible to send or receive data, or functionality may be limited.

Tips

– The availability of services depends on the subscription.
– AUDI AG provides access to services from third party providers. Permanent availability cannot be guaranteed, because that depends on the third party provider.
– Use of the most up-to-date mobile network standard is not available in every country. Contact an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility or your cell phone service provider for additional information.
– Availability, scope, providers, screen display, and costs of services may vary depending on the country, model, model year, end device and rates.

Audi connect Infotainment

Description

Applies to: vehicles with Audi connect Infotainment

With Audi connect Infotainment services, online information is transmitted directly to the vehicle. ▶

An Internet connection is required to use Audi connect Infotainment. Depending on the country and the vehicle equipment, the following options may be available:

– Embedded SIM card

WARNING

Always follow the information found in ⇨ ⚠ *in General information on page 182*.

Note

Always follow the information found in ⇨ ⓘ *in General information on page 182*.

Embedded SIM card

Applies to: vehicles with Audi connect Infotainment and an embedded SIM card

The data connection for Audi connect Infotainment services is made through an embedded SIM card (eSIM card) that is installed in the vehicle. You can use the Audi connect Infotainment services immediately.

Note

Always follow the information found in ⇨ ⓘ *in General information on page 182*.

Using a Wi-Fi hotspot

Applies to: vehicles with Wi-Fi hotspot

You can connect up to eight Wi-Fi devices (such as smartphones) with the MMI Wi-Fi hotspot. If the MMI is connected to the Internet ⇨ *page 182*, the connected Wi-Fi devices can also use the MMI's Internet connection.

Requirement: the ignition must be switched on.

- ▸ Select: MENU button > **Telephone** > right control button > **Wi-Fi settings** > **Wi-Fi**. Switch on the Wi-Fi hotspot.
- ▸ Select: MENU button > **Telephone** > right control button > **Wi-Fi settings** > **Network key**. The access data for the Wi-Fi hotspot is displayed. Switch on the visibility of the Wi-Fi hotspot if necessary.
- ▸ Switch the Wi-Fi function on in your mobile device and connect it to the MMI Wi-Fi hotspot using the authentication data that is shown.
- ▸ Follow any additional system prompts on your Wi-Fi device if necessary.

Your device is successfully connected with the MMI's Wi-Fi hotspot.

WARNING

Always follow the information found in ⇨ ⚠ *in General information on page 182*.

Note

Always follow the information found in ⇨ ⓘ *in General information on page 182*.

Tips

For an explanation on conformity with the FCC regulations in the United States and the Industry Canada regulations, see ⇨ *page 377*.

Audi connect Infotainment services

Configuration

Applies to: vehicles with Audi connect Infotainment

Requirement: your vehicle must be connected to the Internet ⇨ *page 182*.

Some Audi connect Infotainment services must be configured through your personal myAudi account at my.audi.com before using them for the first time.

- ▸ Register at my.audi.com.
- ▸ Add your vehicle to your myAudi account.
- ▸ Select: MENU button > **Audi connect** > right control button > **Log in**.
- ▸ Log in to myAudi in the vehicle using your e-mail address and password.

Tips

– For some Audi connect Infotainment services, you may also have to enter your myAudi access information when accessing services in the MMI. ▶

– Some Audi connect Infotainment services must be activated at my.audi.com.
– To make logging in easier in the vehicle, you will receive an 8-digit myAudi PIN as an alternative to your myAudi password after you have created a myAudi account.
– Depending on the country, you may be able to use the myAudi app or my.audi.com.
– For detailed information on configuration, visit my.audi.com.

Accessing Audi connect Infotainment

Applies to: vehicles with Audi connect Infotainment

▸ Select: the MENU button > **Audi connect**.

A list of all of the available Audi connect Infotainment services is shown on the Infotainment system display.

You can also filter the Audi connect Infotainment services by category:

▸ Select: MENU button > **Audi connect** > left control button > for example, **Navigation** for the Audi connect Infotainment services in the Navigation menu.

Basic functions

Applies to: vehicles with Audi connect Infotainment

▸ Select: MENU button > **Audi connect** > *desired Audi connect Infotainment service* > right control button.

Depending on the equipment and the Audi connect Infotainment service selected, the following basic functions may be available:

Save as preview

You can also see a preview of the selected Audi connect Infotainment services on the Audi connect Infotainment home page.

Show on map

You can show selected contents on the map and use them for route guidance.

Log in

See ⇨ *page 183*.

Read out[1)]

You can allow the MMI to read out the selected contents.

Call

If a phone number was assigned to an entry, you can call the number, for example to reserve tickets.

Refresh

The contents for the selected Audi connect Infotainment service are refreshed.

Start route guidance

If a location was saved with an entry, you can use it as the navigation destination. Route guidance starts immediately.

Change search area

The set search area can be changed at any time. Additional information on search areas can be found under ⇨ *page 191*.

Closing Audi connect Infotainment services

Regardless of the function selected, you can close an Audi connect Infotainment service at any time and return to the home screen.

Services

Applies to: vehicles with Audi connect Infotainment

Depending on the country and the vehicle equipment, the following services may be available:

Weather information

Information on current weather conditions as well as weather forecasts for the selected search area.

▸ Select and confirm **Weather**.

Online news

▸ Select: **Online news** > *desired newsfeed* > *a headline*. ▶

1) Not available in all languages.

If you logged in to myAudi in your vehicle ⇨ *page 183*, personalized newsfeeds can be displayed.

Access to Twitter

Requirement: you must have connected your vehicle with myAudi ⇨ *page 183*. You must have connected your myAudi account with Twitter.

You can only connect one Twitter account with your myAudi account. Not all settings can be adjusted in the MMI. Some can only be adjusted through the Twitter website.

- Select: **Twitter** > left control button > *desired function* (for example, **Trends**).

Charging stations

Applies to: vehicles with charging stations and plug-in hybrid drive

Information on charging stations in the selected search area.

- Select and confirm **Charging stations**.

WARNING

Always follow the information found in ⇨ ⚠ *in General information on page 182*.

Note

Always follow the information found in ⇨ ⓘ *in General information on page 182*.

Additional options

Applies to: vehicles with Audi connect Infotainment

- Select: MENU button > **Audi connect** > right control button.

Depending on the equipment and the country, the following options may be available in the overview of Audi connect Infotainment services:

About Audi connect

Here you will find legal information regarding Audi connect Infotainment usage.

Log in

See ⇨ *page 183*.

Connection manager

See ⇨ *page 231*.

License subscription

The validity and expiration date of your licenses are displayed.

Refresh

The content of the selected Audi connect Infotainment service or the entire Audi connect Infotainment list is updated.

Data privacy

See ⇨ *page 372*.

Note

Always follow the information found in ⇨ ⓘ *in General information on page 182*.

Audi connect e-tron services

Description

Applies to: vehicles with plug-in hybrid drive and Audi connect

With Audi connect vehicle control services [1], you can utilize various services using the myAudi app or online at my.audi.com.

WARNING

Always follow the information found in ⇨ ⚠ *in General information on page 182*.

Tips

– Accessing specific data or controlling functions remotely depends on the charge level of the vehicle battery. Therefore, these functions only have limited availability after switching off the ignition.
– An eSIM card establishes the Internet connection for Audi connect vehicle control services. The costs for this are included in ▶

1) Depends on the country and equipment. These services are available for a limited time.

the price of Audi connect vehicle control services. The cell phone network, for example, must be available to use these services.

Setup

Applies to: vehicles with plug-in hybrid drive and Audi connect

Requirement: your mobile devices must be compatible.

▸ An authorized Audi dealer must complete a one-time activation of Audi connect e-tron services for your vehicle before you can register online.
▸ Register at etron.audiusa.com

If you require assistance with your Audi connect e-tron services, please contact an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility.

Using the myAudi app

– Install the myAudi app on your mobile device and log in with your access information.

Services

Applies to: vehicles with plug-in hybrid drive and Audi connect

Depending on the country and the vehicle equipment, the following services may be available:

Trip data

Depending on the vehicle equipment, certain driver information system data is transmitted to a server. An overview of your trips with the values from the short-term memory/long-term memory can be displayed, for example, the driving duration. The values may differ from the values displayed in the vehicle.

Vehicle status report

This service transfers driver information system data to a server. Depending on the vehicle equipment, certain data may be accessed, such as the remaining range or mileage. The values may differ from the values displayed in the vehicle.

Car Finder

This service transmits the parking location to a server when the ignition is switched off. The vehicle location, your location, or the route to your vehicle can be displayed. The new parking location cannot be determined with this service if the vehicle is moved after shutting the vehicle off and without switching the ignition on and off again, for example if the vehicle is towed or stolen.

Remote charging

Requirement: the ignition must be switched off when changing the charging mode.

You can control and monitor the charging process remotely with the service.

– Charging mode: immediate charging or delayed charging (timer)
– Program the timer
– Deactivate or activate the timer

For additional information, see ⇨ *page 101, Charging the battery with the Audi charging system*.

Temperature control

Requirement: the ignition must be switched off when starting or stopping climate control.

You can control the climate control in your vehicle remotely using these services.

– Start or stop climate control
– Program the timer
– Deactivate or activate the timer

For additional information, see ⇨ *page 101, Charging the battery with the Audi charging system*.

WARNING

– Do not ignore messages and warning or indicator lights that turn on in the vehicle because of the information in the vehicle status report. This could lead to break downs in on the road, accidents and serious injuries.
– Only perform the climate control functions if your vehicle was shut off correctly and the ignition is switched off.
– Only perform charging functions on the high-voltage battery if the vehicle is shut off correctly, is connected to a suitable socket and if the ignition is switched off.

Settings

Cell phone network

- Select: MENU button > **Audi connect** > right control button > **Connection manager**.
- Select: right control button > **Online settings** > **Data connection settings**.

Depending on the country, vehicle equipment, and connection type, the following functions may be available:

Data connection settings

Using the **Data connection settings** menu, you can set when the system should connect to the Internet. The Internet connection disconnects automatically once the requested Audi connect Infotainment service no longer requires any data.

– **Connection setup**: you can select when a data connection should be established.
– **Audi connect (MMI)**: when this function is switched on, a data connection is automatically established in order to use Audi connect Infotainment services.
– **Wi-Fi devices**: when this function is switched on, you can permit or deny mobile devices to connect to the Internet on the Wi-Fi hotspot.

WARNING

Always follow the information found in ⇨ ⚠ *in General information on page 182*.

Note

Always follow the information found in ⇨ ⓘ *in General information on page 182*.

Tips

For more information on roaming charges, contact your cell phone service provider.

Wi-Fi settings

Applies to: vehicles with Wi-Fi hotspot

Requirement: the ignition must be switched on.

- Select: MENU button > **Telephone** > right control button > **Wi-Fi settings**.

Depending on the country and the vehicle equipment, the following functions may be available:

Wi-Fi

When the function is switched on, the MMI's Wi-Fi hotspot is active and Wi-Fi devices can be connected to the hotspot.

Network key

The Wi-Fi connection between the MMI and your Wi-Fi device is encrypted. You can change the following information if needed.

– **Access point (SSID)**: name of the Wi-Fi hotspot.
– **Password**: a random password was set at the factory in the MMI. The password can be changed. The encryption method requires a password to be at least eight characters long. Choose a secure password.
– **Visible to others**: you can switch the visibility of the Wi-Fi hotspot on or off.

WARNING

Always follow the information found in ⇨ ⚠ *in General information on page 182*.

Note

Always follow the information found in ⇨ ⓘ *in General information on page 182*.

Tips

In vehicles without Audi connect Infotainment, the use of the Wi-Fi hotspot is only possible for the Wi-Fi audio player*. A data connection to the Internet cannot be established.

Data plans[1)]

Applies to: vehicles with data plans

Requirement: you must have created a myAudi account at my.audi.com. Your vehicle must be registered in your myAudi account. ▶

1) Not available in every market.

You can purchase data plans at my.audi.com.

WARNING

Always follow the information found in ⇨ ⚠ *in General information on page 182*.

Note

Always follow the information found in ⇨ ⓘ *in General information on page 182*.

Tips

If driving out of the country, applicable data plans must be purchased.

Troubleshooting

Applies to: vehicles with Audi connect Infotainment

The information that follows lists some trouble-shooting options. They depend on the equip-ment.

Problem	Solution
Audi connect Infotainment serv-ices: individual Audi connect Info-tainment services are grayed out or not available.	Some Audi connect Infotainment services must be activated or configured through your personal myAudi account before using them for the first time. You can find detailed information online at my.audi.com.
Wi-Fi hotspot: it is not possible to connect through Wi-Fi.	Check if Wi-Fi is activated in the MMI ⇨ *page 187*. Delete all existing Wi-Fi connections on your mobile device and restart it.

Navigation

Opening navigation

Applies to: vehicles with navigation system



Fig. 166 Infotainment system: entering a destination

The navigation system directs you to your destination, around traffic incidents, and on alternative routes, if desired.

▸ Press the NAV/MAP button.

The **Enter destination** menu is displayed after opening navigation.

The following information can be displayed:

① Input field for free text search 189
② Home address 190
③ Last destinations 190
④ Stored favorites 190

If you have connected a mobile device to the MMI, your directory contacts will also be listed if they have navigation data assigned to them.

The **Favorites** ④ menu item as well as the directory/contacts are only shown in the **Enter destination** menu if you have entered one or more characters using the input field.

Switching between the destination entry and the map

– Press the NAV/MAP button repeatedly until the map is displayed, or
– Select: left control button > **Switch to map**.

WARNING

– The demands of traffic require your full attention. Always read the chapter ⇨ *page 237, Driving safety*.
– The route calculated by the navigation system is a driving recommendation. Follow the traffic regulations that are applicable in the country where you are operating the vehicle. In the event that the driving directions contradict traffic regulations, always follow the traffic regulations applicable in the country where you are operating the vehicle to reduce the risk of an accident.

Tips

– Snow and obstructions on the GPS antenna or interference caused by trees and large buildings can impair satellite reception and affect the system's ability to determine the vehicle position. Several deactivated or malfunctioning satellites can also interrupt GPS reception and affect the system's ability to determine the vehicle position.
– Because street names sometimes change, the names stored in the MMI may in rare cases differ from the actual street name.

Entering a destination

Free text search for destinations

Applies to: vehicles with navigation system

With the free text search, you can enter the navigation destination data all at once in any order using the MMI touch control pad* or the letter/number speller (for example, 20 Main St., Los Angeles). Likewise, you can search for points of interest, contacts, previous destinations or favorites to navigate to the desired address.

Free text search

▸ Press the NAV/MAP button repeatedly until the **Enter destination** menu is displayed ⇨ *page 189, fig. 166*.
▸ Push the control knob up. The input field is displayed ① ⇨ *page 189, fig. 166*.
▸ Enter one or more search terms into the input field.
▸ If available, confirm the input suggestion* to complete the entry or a word suggestion* ⇨ *page 153, Letter/number speller*.
▸ Turn the control knob to the right to change the results list.
▸ Select and confirm a destination from the results list. ▶

The route displays as an overview in the map. Route guidance is already active.

Narrowing the search area

All countries/states are selected at the factory for the free text search.

- ▸ Select the right control button > **Country/state selection** in the input field (1) ⇨ *page 189, fig. 166*.
- ▸ Select the country or state (●) that should be searched using the free text search in order to narrow the number of results and increase the search speed. The selected entry in the country/state selection is stored, or:
- ▸ Select **All countries/states**.

Tips

– The MMI input suggestions depend on the last navigated destinations.
– Up to 50 entries can be stored in the last destinations list.
– Additional information on free text searches can be found under ⇨ *page 154*.

Loading previous destinations

Applies to: vehicles with navigation system

Your last destinations are automatically stored and can be loaded directly as a destination.

Opening a menu

Requirement: a destination was already navigated to.

- ▸ Press the NAV/MAP button repeatedly until the **Enter destination** menu is displayed ⇨ *page 189, fig. 166*.

Your last destination is listed directly in the **Enter destination** menu under the home address and identified with the symbol (3) ⇨ *page 189, fig. 166*.

- ▸ Select and confirm one of the last destinations from the list.

Deleting previous destinations

- ▸ Select one of the last destinations from the list.
- ▸ Select: right control button > **Delete destination** > **Delete this last destination** or **Delete all last destinations**.

The selected destination or all last destinations is/are deleted and no longer displayed in the **Enter destination** menu.

Entering an address

Applies to: vehicles with navigation system

As an alternative to free text search, you can also enter an address in stages.

- ▸ Press the NAV/MAP button repeatedly until the **Enter destination** menu is displayed ⇨ *page 189, fig. 166*.
- ▸ Select: left control button > **Enter address**.
- ▸ **Entering a destination using a country/state**: select and confirm **Country/state**. Select and confirm a country/state directly from the list, or search for a country/state using the input field.
- ▸ **Destination entry using the city/ZIP code**: select and confirm **City/ZIP code**. Enter a city or a ZIP code, or select and confirm a city in the list.
- ▸ Select and confirm additional details about the destination such as **Street**, **House number** or **Downtown**.
- ▸ **Destination entry using a street intersection***: Requirement: you must enter a street. Select and confirm **Intersection**. Select and confirm a street directly from the list, or search for a street using the input field.
- ▸ Select and confirm **Start route guidance**.

Setting a home address/favorite as the destination

Applies to: vehicles with navigation system

You can quickly and easily start route guidance to your home address using the home address function. Favorites allow easier access to frequently used destinations.

Opening a menu

- ▸ Press the NAV/MAP button repeatedly until the **Enter destination** menu is displayed ⇨ *page 189, fig. 166*. ▶

Setting a home address as the destination

Requirement: a home address must be stored ⇨ *page 196*.

Your **Home address** is shown directly in the **Enter destination** menu ② ⇨ *page 189, fig. 166*.

▸ Select: **Home address**.

Setting a favorite as the destination

Requirement: a favorite must be stored as a destination ⇨ *page 196*.

▸ Enter at least the first three letters of the desired favorite in the free text search input field. The favorites found are shown in the Infotainment system display ④ ⇨ *page 189, fig. 166*.
▸ Select and confirm the desired entry.

Tips

– Additional settings for the home address can be found under ⇨ *page 196*.
– Additional settings for the favorites can be found under ⇨ *page 196*.

Transferring a destination from the directory

Applies to: vehicles with navigation system

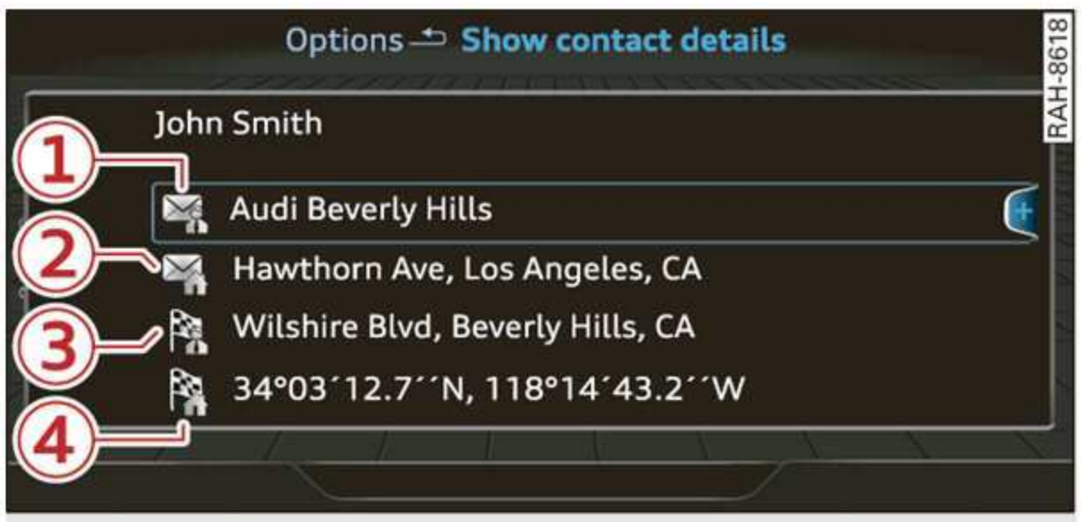


Fig. 167 Infotainment system: contact details

You can navigate directly to destinations in the directory.

Requirement: an address with navigation data or a navigation destination must already be assigned to a contact ⇨ *page 196*.

▸ Press the NAV/MAP button repeatedly until the **Enter destination** menu is displayed ⇨ *page 189, fig. 166*.
▸ Select: left control button > **Directory** > *a contact*.

The directory/contacts are shown in alphabetical order and are marked with symbols to indicate the storage location:

① Business address
② Private address
③ Business destination
④ Private destination

– Select and confirm an address or a destination. When you have selected a destination, the route guidance can be started directly.
– Check the address input again when selecting an address.
– Then select and confirm **Start route guidance**.

Additional directory functions in the navigation system can be found under ⇨ *page 196*.

Tips

– Addresses that have been imported from your mobile device into the MMI can also be used as a destination.
– If a contact is grayed out in the directory, this contact has neither a destination nor an address assigned to it.

Point of interest search

Applies to: vehicles with navigation system

Opening the POI search

▸ Press the NAV/MAP button repeatedly until the **Enter destination** menu is displayed ⇨ *page 189, fig. 166*.
▸ Select: left control button > **Points of interest**.

Change search area

▸ Select and confirm: **Search area** > *a search area from the list*.

The following search categories are available:

Nearby: points of interest can be selected from different categories. The points of interest are listed starting from the immediate vicinity of the vehicle up to a radius of approximately 124 miles (200 km).

Along the route: points of interest along the route can only be selected during active route guidance. The points of interest are located ▶

directly along or in the immediate vicinity of the calculated route. The points of interest can likewise be selected from various categories. For example, you can search for a hotel or parking lot along the route.

Near destination/Near stopover: points of interest near a destination or a stopover can only be selected during active route guidance. The points of interest can likewise be selected from various categories. For example, you can search for a hotel or parking lot at the destination.

In a new city: select a country/state or search in a new city. Enter the name of the desired city. Points of interest can be selected from various categories. This function allows you to search for points of interest in any city regardless of the active route guidance or the vehicle position.

Searching for the name of a point of interest in the selected search area

- ▸ Select: **Find entry** > **Enter POI**.
- ▸ Enter the name of the point of interest.

Searching for a point of interest in a specific category

- ▸ Select **Select category**.
- ▸ Select and confirm a category, such as Restaurants.

Tips

– Distances to points of interest are displayed as a straight-line distance from your current location. The actual distance from your current location to the point of interest is updated automatically. The list of points of interest that were found is not resorted when this happens.

– There may be entries in the list that cannot be displayed completely due to their length. Select the corresponding entry from the list. Select: right control button > Show destination details. Detailed information for the selected entry in the list is then displayed.

Point of interest search (charging station)

Applies to: vehicles with navigation system and plug-in hybrid drive



Fig. 168 Infotainment system: searching for charging stations

You can display charging stations using the point of interest search ⇨ *page 191*.

- ▸ Press the NAV/MAP button repeatedly until the **Enter destination** menu is displayed ⇨ *page 189, fig. 166*.
- ▸ Select: left control button > **POIs** > **Charging stations**.

You can also display the charging stations along the current route.

Requirement: route guidance must be active and the map must be displayed.

- ▸ Select: left control button > **POIs along the route** > **Charging stations**.

If available, all charging stations in the selected search area will be displayed with the following additional information.

If the charging station is open 24 hours a day, **24h** will appear after the name of the charging station.

The hours of operation for the charging stations are displayed in the destination details.

Displaying destination details: select the right control button > **Show destination details**.

Apply charging station as the destination: press the control knob. Select and confirm **Start route guidance**.

You can find additional information about charging your vehicle in ⇨ *page 97*.

Online point of interest search (online search)

Applies to: vehicles with a navigation system and Audi connect Infotainment

You can search for points of interest on the Internet.

Requirement: the requirements for Audi connect Infotainment must be met ⇨ *page 182*.

Opening the online search

- ► Press the NAV/MAP button repeatedly until the **Enter destination** menu is displayed ⇨ *page 189, fig. 166*.
- ► Select: left control button > **Online search**. The search area last set is displayed in the input field.

Change search area

- ► Select: right control button > **Select search area**.

Searching for an online destination in the selected search area

- ► If necessary, enter a new city, state, or country.
- ► Enter the search term, such as hotel.
- ► Press the control knob.
- ► Select and confirm an online destination from the list.

Searching for an online destination in a specific category

- ► Select and confirm **Select category**.
- ► Select and confirm a category, such as Restaurants.

Find which search areas are available under ⇨ *page 191*.

You can search for online destinations using the voice recognition system* ⇨ *table on page 165*.

Note

Read the information about Audi connect, and be sure to note the connectivity costs section ⇨ *page 182*.

Accessing destinations from myAudi account

Applies to: vehicles with a navigation system and Audi connect Infotainment

Import individual destinations from your myAudi account into the MMI.

Requirement: the requirements for Audi connect Infotainment must be met ⇨ *page 182*. You must have a registered myAudi account at my.audi.com. You must have a vehicle assigned to your myAudi account and you must have stored one or more destinations.

- ► Press the NAV/MAP button repeatedly until the **Enter destination** menu is displayed ⇨ *page 189, fig. 166*.
- ► Select: left control button > **myAudi contacts**.
- ► If necessary, enter your myAudi user data or your myAudi PIN ⇨ *page 183*. The contacts stored in myAudi are displayed.
- ► Select and confirm a contact.
- ► Select and confirm a private or business destination.
- ► Select and confirm **Start route guidance**.

Tips

- – You only need to enter the myAudi user data one time.
- – You can receive your myAudi PIN if you have set up a myAudi account.
- – For additional information, visit www.audiusa.com.

Entering a destination using geo coordinates

Applies to: vehicles with navigation system

- ► Press the NAV/MAP button repeatedly until the **Enter destination** menu is displayed ⇨ *page 189, fig. 166*.
- ► Select: left control button > **Geographical coordinates**.
- ► Select **Latitude/Longitude**.
- ► Press the control knob to set the individual values.
- ► Turn the control knob to the left/right to change the selected value.
- ► Select and confirm **Start route guidance**.

Adding a stopover

Applies to: vehicles with navigation system



Fig. 169 Infotainment system: active route guidance with stopover

You can enter an additional destination when route guidance is active.

Requirement: route guidance must already be active.

Opening a menu

- ▸ Press the NAV/MAP button repeatedly until the **Enter destination** menu is displayed ⇨ *page 189, fig. 166*.

Entering a destination as a stopover

- ▸ Enter a destination in the input line ① ⇨ *page 189, fig. 166*
- ▸ Select and confirm a destination from the results list.
- ▸ Select and confirm **Add as stopover**.

Deleting a stopover

- ▸ Push the control knob up. Free text search and active route guidance are displayed, or:
- ▸ Turn the control knob to the left until the active route guidance is shown.
- ▸ Select and confirm **Delete stopover** ②. The stopover is deleted.

Cancel route guidance

Applies to: vehicles with navigation system

Requirement: route guidance must be active.

- ▸ Press the NAV/MAP button repeatedly until the **Enter destination** menu is displayed ⇨ *page 189, fig. 166*.
- ▸ Turn the control knob to the left until the active route guidance is shown ⇨ *page 194, fig. 169*.
- ▸ Select and confirm **Delete destination** ①. The destination is deleted ⇨ *page 194, fig. 169*, or:
- ▸ Select: right control button > **Cancel route guidance**

Additional options when entering a destination

Applies to: vehicles with navigation system

- ▸ Press the right control button.

Depending on the selected function, the following options may be available when entering a destination:

Cancel route guidance: Requirement: route guidance must be active. Route guidance is canceled. For additional information, see ⇨ *page 194*.

Country information: you can display the applicable urban and rural speed limits for any country/state. If this function is activated, the information will be automatically shown to you in the route information ⑦ ⇨ *page 199, fig. 174* when the speed limit is exceeded ⇨ *page 201*.

Country/state selection: ⇨ *page 189*.

Route criteria: ⇨ *page 198*.

Show location on map: Requirement: you must have selected a destination from the results list. The destination entered is displayed on the map.

Parking at this location*: Requirement: you must have selected a destination from the results list. All parking options near the selected location are displayed in the Infotainment system.

Delete: the selected entry is deleted. You can delete individual entries or all entries (for example, favorites or last destinations).

Audi connect at this location*: Requirement: you must have selected a destination from the results list. Allows you to search for items in the vicinity of the selected location, such as travel information.

Online traffic data*: the online traffic information ⇨ *page 204* can be switched on or off.

Add destination to contact: ⇨ *page 196*. ▸

Store as favorite: ⇨ *page 196*.

Voice guidance: ⇨ *page 198*.

Navigation settings: ⇨ *page 197*.

Tips

Information on online traffic data* can also be found online at www.audiusa.com.

Personal route assistance

Applies to: vehicles with navigation system and personal route assistance



Fig. 170 Infotainment system: personal route display

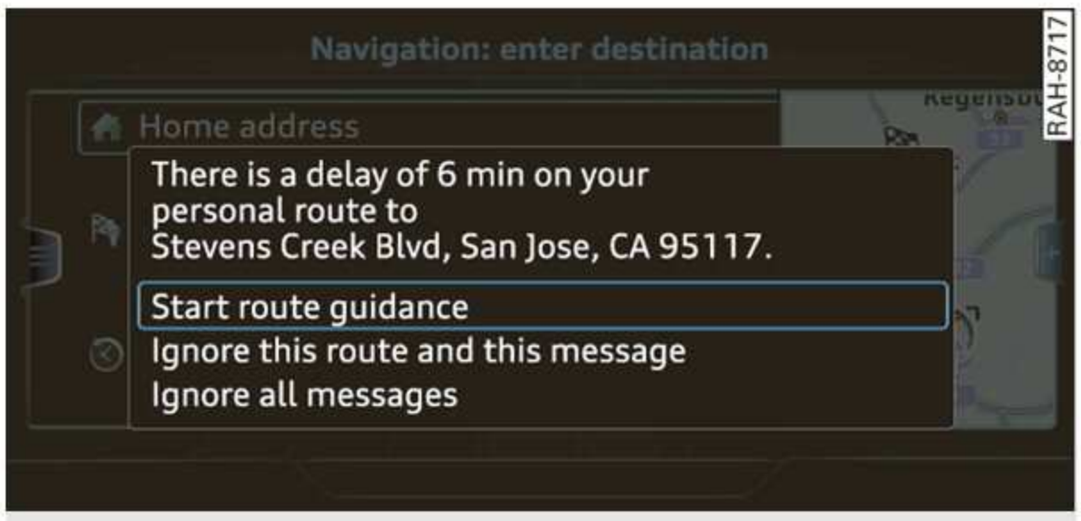


Fig. 171 Infotainment system: information about personal route

Your MMI can learn the routes that you drive frequently (such as your daily commute to work and back) and suggest route guidance based on the current vehicle position.

Opening personal routes

- ▸ Press the NAV/MAP button repeatedly until the **Enter destination** menu is displayed ⇨ *page 189, fig. 166*.
- ▸ Select: right control button > **Navigation settings** > **Personal route assistance**.

When the function is switched on ☑, the MMI records the frequently-driven routes regardless of whether a destination was entered and reached or not.

As long as route guidance is not active, your personal routes will be listed in the **Enter destination** menu under the home address and indicated with the 🏁 symbol ①. When personal route assistance is switched on, this symbol is displayed in the Navigation menu and in the Infotainment system display status line at the same time.

The distance to the destination and the calculated arrival time are also displayed for your personal routes. Without starting route guidance, your MMI monitors the traffic conditions for your personal routes and shows possible traffic incidents for routes that are most likely to be driven in the Infotainment system display ②.

Better routes

A message will be displayed if there is a large traffic incident (more than 12 minute delay) regardless of which menu is selected ⇨ *fig. 171*.

- ▸ Select and confirm one of the following options:

Start route guidance: the MMI starts the route guidance for the personal route displayed and searches for a faster route if available.

Ignore this route and this message: the displayed destination with all applicable personal routes is no longer factored into the current trip. No more messages are shown for the displayed destination. The displayed destination with all applicable personal routes will be factored into the trip again only after stopping the vehicle and switching the ignition on again.

Ignore all messages: all personal routes are no longer factored into the current trip. No more messages are displayed. Messages for personal routes when there is increased traffic will appear again after the vehicle is stopped and the ignition is switched on again.

As soon as you switch off personal route assistance, the symbol in the status line turns off and your trips are no longer recorded. Trips that were already stored remain stored.

Deleting personal routes

- ▸ Select the desired personal route in the **Enter destination** menu ①. ▶

▸ Select: right control button > **Delete destination**.

Deleting all personal routes

▸ Select: MENU button > **Settings** > left control button > **MMI settings** > **Factory settings**.
▸ Select: **Navigation and online memory** > **Restore factory settings** ⇨ *page 231*.

Tips

– Personal routes are learned based on the vehicle position. The route is prioritized according to how frequently you drive to a destination.
– A maximum of three personal routes are displayed in the **Enter destination** menu. Based on the current vehicle position, the traffic situation for the route that is most likely to be driven out of the three routes will always be monitored.
– Please note that personal routes that have already been stored will remain stored after the ignition is switched off and they must be deleted manually.

Home address

Applies to: vehicles with navigation system

Opening a menu

▸ Press the NAV/MAP button repeatedly until the **Enter destination** menu is displayed ⇨ *page 189, fig. 166*.

Storing a home address

▸ Select and confirm **Home address** ② ⇨ *page 189, fig. 166*. After opening the home address for the first time, you will be asked to create a home address.
▸ Select and confirm **Create now**.
▸ Enter a destination or select a destination from the list.

Editing the home address

▸ Select the **Home address** ② ⇨ *page 189, fig. 166*.
▸ Select: right control button > **Edit home address**.
▸ Select and confirm a new destination as the home address.

The selected destination is stored as the new home address.

Favorites

Applies to: vehicles with navigation system

Opening a menu

▸ Press the NAV/MAP button repeatedly until the **Enter destination** menu is displayed ⇨ *page 189, fig. 166*.

Saving a destination as a favorite

▸ Search for the desired destination in the input field, or:
▸ Select a destination from the list.
▸ Select: right control button > **Store as favorite**.

Renaming a favorite

▸ Select: left control button > **Favorites** > *select a favorite from the list* > right control button > **Rename favorite**.

Moving a favorite

▸ Select *a favorite from the list* > right control button > **Move favorite**.
▸ Select and confirm the location of the selected favorite.

Deleting a favorite

▸ Select: *a favorite from the list* > right control button > **Delete favorite** > **Delete this favorite** or **Delete all favorites**.

Directory contacts

Applies to: vehicles with navigation system

Two addresses (private/business) can be assigned as destinations for each contact in the directory.

Opening a menu

▸ Press the NAV/MAP button repeatedly until the **Enter destination** menu is displayed ⇨ *page 189, fig. 166*. ▶

Storing a destination as a contact in the directory

Requirement: a mobile device must be connected to the MMI ⇨ *page 169*.

- ▸ Select: *a destination* > right control button > **Add destination to contact**.
- ▸ Enter the first letters of the desired contact in the free text search input field ⇨ *page 189, fig. 166* and then select a contact from the list.
- ▸ Select and confirm **Add business destination** or **Add private destination**.

Alternative routes

Applies to: vehicles with navigation system



Fig. 172 Infotainment system: display of alternative routes

Requirement: a destination must be entered and the route guidance must be started.

- ▸ Press the NAV/MAP button repeatedly until the **Enter destination** menu is displayed ⇨ *page 189, fig. 166*.
- ▸ Select: right control button > **Navigation settings** > **Show alternative routes**.

Three routes are displayed in the overview map after you enter a destination.

- ▸ Select and confirm the desired route that you would like to use for route guidance.

If available, the following information will appear on the route suggestions:

- – Route type (fast ①, fast alternative ②, economic route ③)
- – Distance to the destination and the calculated arrival time
- – Traffic congestion along the route including time delays

The route that was calculated according to the route criteria you selected is shown on the overview map . The special properties of the route will also be displayed ④ and provided as a spoken message.

Using the control knob, you can select the possible routing for the alternative routes and show them on map Select and confirm the desired route that you would like to use for route guidance.

Additional settings

Navigation settings

Applies to: vehicles with navigation system

- ▸ Press the NAV/MAP button repeatedly until the **Enter destination** menu is displayed ⇨ *page 189, fig. 166*.
- ▸ Select: right control button > **Navigation settings**.

Depending on the selected function, the following settings can be selected:

Show alternative routes

Up to three suggested routes are shown on the map when this function is switched on ☑ ⇨ *page 197*.

Low fuel warning

A message is displayed if the fuel gauge goes below the reserve marking when this function is switched on ☑. Confirming this message displays a list of gas stations in the area. When a gas station is selected, route guidance from the current vehicle position is calculated.

Trailer mode*

Trailer mode is switched off at the factory.

When the function is switched on ☑, the maximum permitted speed for vehicles with trailers is incorporated into the route guidance and the calculated arrival time is adjusted accordingly. Trailer mode is displayed using symbols in the side menu on the map. ▶

Personal route assistance*

Personal route assistance is switched off at the factory.

Your trips are recorded and destinations are suggested by the MMI when this function is switched on ☑ ⇨ *page 195*.

The personal route assistance is indicated by the 🏁 symbol in the status line of the Infotainment system display.

Notification when nearby*

The notification when nearby is switched off at the factory.

The MMI notifies you when you are approaching selected points of interest when this function is switched on ☑. You can also have a **Notification tone**.

Presentation mode

The **Presentation mode** helps you to effectively plan a trip and follow the planned route without moving the vehicle. You can use **Select starting point** when you would like to calculate a route starting from a location other than the vehicle position, for example. Start **Presentation mode** to simulate route guidance.

Route criteria

Applies to: vehicles with navigation system

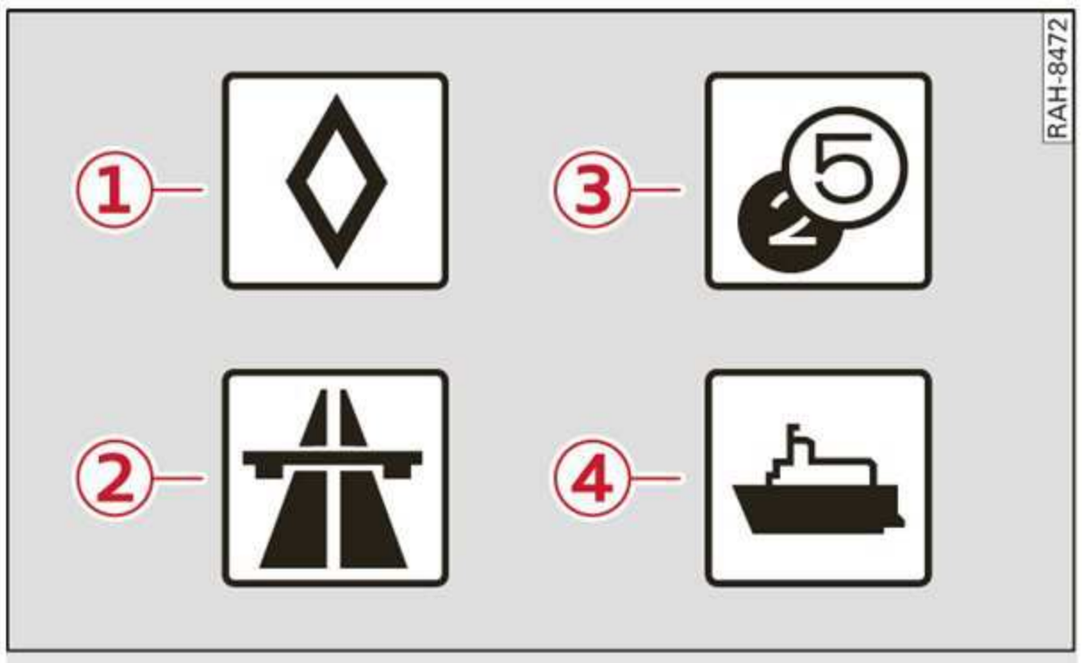


Fig. 173 Infotainment system: possible route criteria

► Press the NAV/MAP button repeatedly until the **Enter destination** menu is displayed ⇨ *page 189, fig. 166*.

► Select: right control button > **Route criteria**.

① **HOV/carpool lanes**[1)]: with the **Avoid** function, HOV lanes will be excluded when calculating routes. When **Allow** is selected, the MMI will route you through HOV lanes and show them on the map.

② **Highways** / ③ **Toll roads** / ④ **Ferries**: you can set the **Avoid** function if you do not want the navigation system to include highways, toll roads or ferries when calculating the route, if it is possible.

Voice guidance

Applies to: vehicles with navigation system

► Press the NAV/MAP button repeatedly until the **Enter destination** menu is displayed ⇨ *page 189, fig. 166*.

► Select: right control button > **Voice guidance**.

Voice guidance: voice guidance can be **Complete** or **Shortened**. With the **Traffic** function, voice guidance prompts are only given when there are traffic incidents on your route. When **Off** is selected, no voice guidance is given.

Voice guidance during phone call: voice guidance during a phone call can be switched on or off.

Entertainment fader: ⇨ *page 235*.

Voice guidance volume: you can adjust the volume during voice guidance using the On/Off knob ⇨ *page 146* You can also find additional information under ⇨ *page 235*.

1) High occupancy vehicle

Map

Map operation

Applies to: vehicles with navigation system



Fig. 174 Infotainment system: 3D map with the crosshairs switched off



Fig. 175 Infotainment system: standard map with the crosshairs switched on

Opening the map

► Press the NAV/MAP button repeatedly until the map is displayed ⇨ *fig. 174*.

Zooming in/out on the map

► Turn the control knob to the left or to the right. Alternatively, you can also zoom in/out on the map using the MMI touch control pad* ⇨ *page 150* if the crosshairs are switched on, or:

► Turn the left thumbwheel on the multifunction steering wheel* ⇨ *page 17, fig. 9*.

Turning the crosshairs on

► Press the control knob in the map view ⇨ *fig. 174*.

Turning the crosshairs off

► Press the BACK button.

When the crosshairs are switched off ⇨ *fig. 174*:

① Orientation: the map is either displayed as a **2D north-up map** or as a **2D heading-up map**.

② Distance to the destination

③ When the **trailer mode** function is switched on ☑, the corresponding symbol is displayed next to the arrival time.

④ Scale: turn the control knob to the left or right to decrease or increase the scale. When the **Automatic zoom** ☑ function is switched on, an “A” for “Automatic” is displayed in the magnifying glass.

⑤ Altitude

⑥ Vehicle location

⑦ Route information: various information will be displayed during active route guidance (for example, the upcoming maneuver including calculated distance and street names). The display also provides traffic information or points of interest on the current route.

⑧ Street being driven on: displayed here as “off-road” when the vehicle is stationary.

When the crosshairs are switched on ⇨ *fig. 175*:

⑨ Crosshairs: move the crosshairs in the desired direction using the MMI touch control pad* or the control knob and set a point on the map as the destination or have information about the focal point displayed.

⑩ Speed limit display[1)]: display of the maximum permitted speed on the expressways and highways.

⑪ Entertainment sliding menu *: ⇨ *page 151*.

⑫ Additional information on the crosshairs position: if you move the crosshairs to a location on the map, available information for the current crosshairs position is displayed. Press the control knob to open destination details or to start route guidance. When the crosshairs are turned off, the road being currently driven on is shown.

⑬ Map content (points of interest, favorites): if there are multiple POIs in the immediate ▶

1) Only applies to vehicles without camera-based speed limit display.

vicinity, they will be shown stacked on the map.

(14) Better route: If a better route is available for the current route guidance, it will be displayed on the map including the time saved. More information can be found under ⇨ *page 205*.

Map functions

Applies to: vehicles with navigation system

- ▸ Press the NAV/MAP button repeatedly until the map is displayed ⇨ *page 199, fig. 174*.
- ▸ Press the left control button.

The following map functions can be selected:

Switch to destination input

The free text search in the **Enter destination** menu is displayed ⇨ *page 189, fig. 166*.

Traffic messages

Current traffic information is displayed in the Infotainment system display. You can also find additional information under ⇨ *page 204*.

Route list

The route list can only be displayed when route guidance is active and contains information regarding the route, the names of the streets and the length of the route sections. When traveling on highways, possible parking lots and rest areas are shown, which you can select as a stopover.

POIs along the route

Requirement: route guidance must be active.

Searching for points of interest along your current route For additional information, see ⇨ *page 191*.

Additional options on the map

Applies to: vehicles with navigation system

- ▸ Press the NAV/MAP button repeatedly until the map is displayed ⇨ *page 199, fig. 174*.
- ▸ Press the right control button.

Depending on the function selected, the following options can also be selected under the **Map** menu:

Cancel route guidance: ⇨ *page 194*.

Adjust position: you can manually move the vehicle position on the map to change the route.

Map settings: ⇨ *page 200*.

Route criteria: ⇨ *page 198*.

Voice guidance: ⇨ *page 198*.

Navigation settings: ⇨ *page 197*.

Show alternative routes: ⇨ *page 197*.

Parking along the route*: parking options along the route will be displayed.

Save current position*: you can save your current vehicle position as a favorite ⇨ *page 196* or save it as a contact in the directory ⇨ *page 196*.

Audi connect at this location*: allows you to search for travel information at the entered location (events, weather at the destination, etc.).

Online traffic data*: you can switch the online traffic data on or off ☑.

Country information: ⇨ *page 194*.

Avoid route*: when route guidance is active, the calculated route will avoid the area you have specified (maximum: 12 mi (20 km)), if possible. The navigation system calculates an alternative route. The route to be avoided that you have entered applies only to the current route and must be set again, if needed. The areas you have selected to avoid will appear with red and white shading on the map.

Move route*: move your finger over the MMI touch control pad* or use the control knob to adjust the route on the overview map.

Map settings

Applies to: vehicles with navigation system

- ▸ Press the NAV/MAP button repeatedly until the map is displayed.
- ▸ Select: right control button > **Map settings**. ▶

Depending on the selected function, the following settings can be selected:

Map colors

Day/**Night**: the map is displayed with a light/dark background.

Automatic: the map display adapts to the lighting conditions (for example, changing from **Day** to **Night** when driving through a tunnel).

Map display

Standard: ⇨ *page 199, fig. 175*.

Satellite map[1)]: ⇨ *page 202*.

Plug-in hybrid drive: **Electric range**: ⇨ *page 201*.

Map orientation

Destination map: the map indicates the destination and is oriented to the north.

2D heading-up map/2D north-up map: the current vehicle position is displayed. The map is oriented in the direction of travel or to the north.

3D heading-up map*: the current vehicle position is shown on a three-dimensional map and is aligned to the direction of travel. At a scale of 62 mi (100 km) and larger, the map orientation is to the north.

Overview map: the entire route from the vehicle position to the destination or the next stopover is displayed on the map. The map scale depends on the length of the route and adapts automatically. The map is oriented to the north.

Route information

The display of route information, such as the current street being driven on or points of interest along the current route, can be switched on/off or can be minimized on the display of upcoming maneuvers.

Automatic zoom

On: the map scale is adapted automatically depending on the type of road being traveled (expressway, highway, other roads) so that you always have an optimal overview of the road ahead. The scale will also be automatically adapted when there are upcoming maneuvers to provide a better detailed view.

Intersection: when route guidance is active, the map temporarily zooms in to a detailed scale when there are upcoming maneuvers so that you can see the street or turn better.

Off: the map scale you have chosen is maintained.

Map content

Map content such as weather, traffic information or favorites can be displayed or hidden.

The weather forecast* is displayed on a 3 mile (5 km) scale on the map ⇨ *page 197, fig. 172*.

Electric range

Applies to: vehicles with navigation system and plug-in hybrid drive



Fig. 176 Infotainment system: electric range display

The electric range shows the maximum distance that can be driven using electric power. Information such as the type of road, speeds, and altitude will be taken into account.

- ▸ Press the NAV/MAP button repeatedly until the map is displayed ⇨ *page 199, fig. 175*.
- ▸ Select: right control button > **Map settings** > **Map display** > **Electric range**.
- ▸ Press the BACK button to return to the map view. ▶

1) AUDI AG provides access to services from third party providers. Permanent availability cannot be guaranteed, because that depends on the third party provider.

You can read the electric range of your vehicle based on the border ①.

The map scale will automatically adjust to the range.

Satellite map

Applies to: vehicles with a navigation system and Audi connect Infotainment



Fig. 177 Infotainment system: satellite map

You can display the navigation map with satellite images.

Requirement: the requirements for Audi connect Infotainment must be met ⇨ *page 182*.

► Press the NAV/MAP button repeatedly until the map is displayed.
► Select: right control button > **Map settings** > **Map display** > **Satellite map**[1)].

The map view is based on data packets received from the Internet in the form of satellite images, which are then combined with the roadways from the **Standard** map view. There are two gigabytes of memory space in the MMI memory that can be used to temporarily store the map or navigation data that was received. This is roughly the amount required for the map/navigation data for a 2,485 mile (4,000 km) route. As long as the satellite images loaded for route guidance are stored, you can use them without having an active data connection.

Note

Read the information about Audi connect, and be sure to note the connectivity costs section ⇨ *page 182*.

Tips

– The stored satellite map data[1)] can be deleted under **Factory settings** > **Navigation and online memory** ⇨ *page 231*.
– The satellite map[1)] is updated regularly whenever the function is opened. The process may take several seconds.
– When the satellite map display[1)] is switched on with the 3D position map, the map display automatically switches to the 2D map type when driving through tunnels.
– For additional information, visit www.audiusa.com.

Map update

Introduction

Applies to: vehicles with navigation system

There are multiple options available for updating your map material:

– Map updates through the **online map update*** ⇨ *page 203*.
– Import map updates from the **SD card*** to your MMI. You can find additional information online at my.audi.com.
– Map update at an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility. This can result in additional costs.

1) AUDI AG provides access to services from third party providers. Permanent availability cannot be guaranteed, because that depends on the third party provider.

Online map update

Applies to: vehicles with a navigation system and Audi connect Infotainment

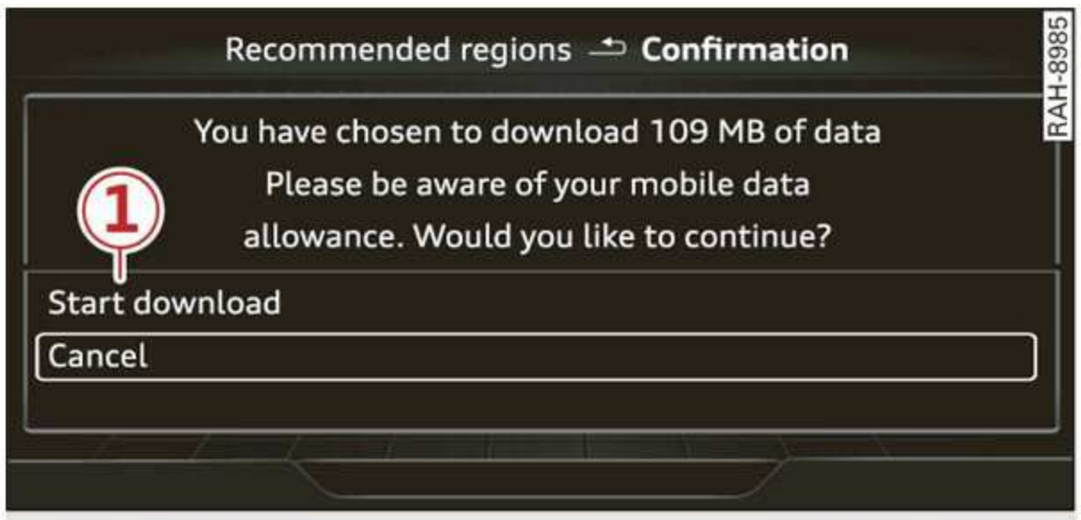


Fig. 178 Infotainment system: display of a new online map update



Fig. 179 Infotainment system: country package selection

Using the online map update, you can update the map material in your navigation system directly from your vehicle.

Requirement: the requirements for Audi connect Infotainment services must be met ⇨ *page 183*. You must have a myAudi account and have assigned your vehicle to it.

Using your vehicle position, the MMI identifies regions which you are frequently in. Based on this, the MMI suggests update packages for these regions, if they are available.

Accessing an online map update

► Select and confirm ① **Start download** if the message for a new map update appears in the Infotainment system display, or:

► Select MENU button > **Settings** > left control button > **System maintenance** > **System update** > **Online update**.

A selection with the available update packages appears in the Infotainment system display.

Selecting the online map update

► Select an update package from the list (☑) ②.

► Confirm your selection with the BACK button and go back to the selection.

The number and amount of data for the selected update package are now displayed in the Infotainment system.

Starting the download

► Select and confirm **Start download**.

► Confirm the security prompt by selecting **Start download** again.

The update packages begin to download and the status of the download progress is shown in the Infotainment system display.

Installation of online map updates

The downloaded map material installs after you stop your vehicle. The new update packages install only after you switch off the ignition. After restarting the MMI, the Infotainment system display indicates if the updates installed successfully.

► Confirm the successful update with **OK**.

The new map material can now be used for navigation.

Note

Read the information about Audi connect, and be sure to note the connectivity costs section ⇨ *page 182*.

Tips

The amount of available online map updates in the vehicle is limited. To update more regions, use the map update via SD card at my.audi.com.

Accessing traffic information

Online traffic information

Applies to: vehicles with a navigation system and Audi connect Infotainment

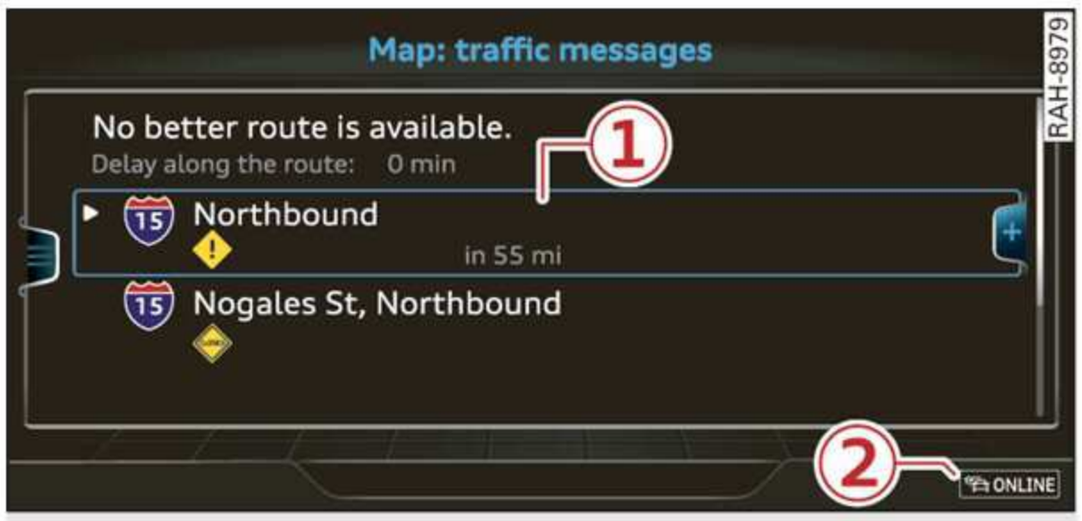


Fig. 180 Infotainment system: online traffic information display* without better route

The MMI can receive real-time online traffic information about congestion, accidents, road construction, and other incidents.

Requirement: the requirements for Audi connect Infotainment must be met ⇨ *page 182*.

Accessing online traffic information

- ▸ Press the NAV/MAP button repeatedly until the map is displayed.
- ▸ Select: left control button > **Traffic messages**.

An overview of all the traffic messages is displayed in the Infotainment system. Traffic incidents on your route are shown in the upper section of the list, sorted according to distance (1). Colored markings indicate the flow of traffic ⇨ *page 204*.

Turning on traffic information online

- ▸ Press the right control button and turn on **Online traffic data** (☑). The ONLINE symbol is shown in the Infotainment system display (2).

You can also display the **online traffic information** on the satellite map[1)] ⇨ *page 202*.

Traffic information display

Color-coded markings along the route indicate the traffic flow:

Green: traffic is flowing freely.

Orange: stop-and-go traffic

Red: congestion.

Shaded markings indicate the length of the area with congestion.

Colored warning symbols: there is a traffic incident immediately ahead on the route.

Grayed out warning symbols: traffic incidents that are not on your route.

Red warning symbols: all warning symbols will be red when route guidance is not active.

The display of colored markings, warning symbols, etc. can be set in the **Map content** menu ⇨ *page 201*.

Traffic information is switched on at the factory. You can switch off the reception of online traffic information at any time ⇨ *page 204*.

Note

Read the information about Audi connect, and be sure to note the connectivity costs section ⇨ *page 182*.

Tips

– Having the **Online traffic data** function switched on provides the most accurate reports of traffic situations as well as traffic forecasting. Your vehicle transmits and processes its anonymous, encrypted position information at regular intervals to the traffic data provider. If you do not want to use this, you can switch off the **online traffic information** function at any time.

– The **online traffic information** network is currently not available in all countries, and the coverage is not nationwide. For additional information, visit www.audiusa.com.

1) AUDI AG provides access to services from third party providers. Permanent availability cannot be guaranteed, because that depends on the third party provider.

Better route

Applies to: vehicles with a navigation system and Audi connect Infotainment

By receiving traffic information online, your MMI calculates a better route if available and the possible time saved compared to the current route. You can decide which route you would like to use.

Selecting a better route

Requirement: route guidance must be active and online traffic information must be available ⇨ *page 204*.

- Press the NAV/MAP button repeatedly until the map is displayed.

If your MMI has calculated a better route than the current route guidance, the message **A better route is available.** appears for several seconds along with the time that may be saved. A better route is indicated in the map view by the symbol ⇨ *page 199, fig. 175*.

Apply better route

- Press the right control button.
- Select and confirm the better route, or:
- Select and confirm **Details** to display details about the better route.

You can zoom in or out on the map using the MMI touch control pad*.

Requirement: there must be more than one optimized route calculated.

- Press the control knob to switch to the next route in the detailed view.
- **Closing the detailed view**: press the BACK button.

After you have selected a better route, the route will be recalculated.

Troubleshooting

Applies to: vehicles with navigation system

Problem	Solution
Free text search: the desired destination cannot be found.	The destination may not be included in the navigation database, or the term may have been entered incorrectly. Check if the desired country/state was selected for the free text search using the **Country/state selection** ⇨ *page 189* or select the option **All countries/states**.

Radio

Opening the radio



Fig. 181 Infotainment system: FM station list (HD Radio technology FM)



Fig. 182 Infotainment system: SiriusXM channel list

Depending on the vehicle equipment, the radio supports the FM, AM and SiriusXM (satellite radio) frequency bands. Using the HD Radio receiver also allows you to receive radio stations on the FM and AM bands in digital format.

▸ Press the RADIO button.

After opening the radio, the last opened station list is displayed.

Selecting a station: select and confirm a station from the station list. FM/AM stations that can be received by digital radio are marked with the HD Radio technology symbol HD ⑤ ⇨ *fig. 181*. If reception quality declines, the radio automatically switches to the analog FM/AM station depending on availability. Digital HD Radio stations* may contain multiple additional stations*. The available additional stations* are listed under the radio station. If you lose reception, the additional stations* are muted since they can no longer be received.

Setting the frequency band: press the RADIO button repeatedly until the desired frequency band is set.

Depending on the station list, the following information may be displayed:

① **Favorites**

The station is stored as a preset. The symbol shows the stored location in the presets list (for example, 21).

② **Radio text (shortened display)**

If available, program information about the set station is displayed in all of the station lists.

③ **Frequency**

④ **Station name**

⑤ Station with **HD Radio technology** available HD

⑥ **Channel number**

If there is a loss of radio signal (SiriusXM*), the following system information is displayed in the station list:

NoSignal: the tuner is currently not receiving a satellite signal ⑦.

The system information turns off when the radio stations are received again.

Tips

– Contact the SiriusXM* provider if you would like to receive satellite programming.
– Buildings, tunnels, bridges, open areas, other vehicles or objects on the vehicle roof can affect reception.
– Satellite radio is not available in Alaska and Hawaii.
– iTunes tagging* is not supported by all radio stations.
– When the Apple CarPlay connection is active, **Tag this song for iTunes*** is not available.

Radio functions

Free text search

Applies to: vehicles with free text search



Fig. 183 Infotainment system: input field and results list for free text search

Using the free text search, you can select the order that the search terms are entered in the input field. Search in all frequency bands for a station name or program type, such as **News**.

– **Opening the free text search**: when in a station list, keep turning the control knob to the left until the **free text search** input field is displayed.
– **Using the free text search**: see ⇨ *page 154, Free text search*.

You can also search for frequencies.

Stations from the presets ③ are displayed in the results list ① ⇨ *fig. 183*. The symbol ② indicates which station list you switched to based on the station selection.

Additional options

▸ Select: RADIO button > right control button.

The following options are available depending on the frequency band:

– **Sound settings**: see ⇨ *page 234*.
– **Store as preset**: see ⇨ *page 209, Presets*.
– **Tag this song for iTunes***: connect your Apple device to the Audi music interface* on your MMI. Select and confirm **Tag this song for iTunes**. The track that is currently playing is stored on your Apple device. Synchronize your Apple device with iTunes. The tagged track will display the next time you open your iTunes media center. If there is no Apple device connected, the tagged tracks are stored temporarily in the MMI (maximum of 50 tracks). Once you connect your Apple device to the Audi music interface, the tags are stored on the device.
– **Manage SiriusXM alerts**: see ⇨ *page 208, SiriusXM alerts*.
– **Store artist as favorite/Store track as favorite**: see ⇨ *page 208, SiriusXM alerts*.
– **Manual tuning**: the frequency bars are displayed. Select and confirm the desired frequency.
– **Seek**: the radio tunes to the previous or next receivable station.
– **Scan**: all stations are played for several seconds each.
– **Radio settings**: see ⇨ *page 209*.

Radio text

▸ Select: RADIO button > left control button > a frequency band (such as **FM**) > a station.
▸ Select: right control button > **Radio text**.

Information that accompanies the program (such as artist, composer, track) is displayed.

Browsing through radio text entries: turn the control knob to the left or right.

Requirement: a radio text entry must be displayed and the station must be broadcasting a phone number, a navigation destination or a text message number as Radio Text Plus information.

If a location, a phone number or a text message number is included with a radio text entry, the radio text will be shown with a colored border. You have the following options:

Call*/Start route guidance*/Write text message*:

– Select a radio text entry with Radio Text Plus information and press the control knob.
– Select and confirm **Call*/Start route guidance*/Write text message***. Press the BACK button to cancel.

Tips

The availability of radio text and RadioText Plus depends on the radio station.

SiriusXM alerts

Applies to: vehicles with SiriusXM



Fig. 184 Infotainment system: SiriusXM alert notification

You can display an overview of your favorite artists or tracks that are currently being played on a SiriusXM channel.

▸ Select: RADIO button > left control button > **SiriusXM**.

After you have stored a SiriusXM alert for your favorite tracks or artists, you can display an overview of your favorite tracks or artists currently being received in the **SiriusXM alerts** menu and play them immediately. You can also receive a *SiriusXM alert notification* (1) for these tracks or artists in the entertainment sliding menu ⇨ *fig. 184*.

Storing a SiriusXM alert

Requirement: your favorite track or artist must be playing on a SiriusXM channel.

– Select: right control button > **Store track as favorite** or **Store artist as favorite**.

Switching SiriusXM alert notifications on and off

– Select: right control button > **SiriusXM alert notifications**.

When the function is switched on ☑, a *SiriusXM alert notification* is displayed for several seconds in the entertainment sliding menu for the **Radio** and **Navigation** menus. (1) ⇨ *fig. 184* displayed.

Playing tracks/artists from Sirius XM alerts

Requirement: a SiriusXM alert must be stored for a track/artist and it must be currently playing on a SiriusXM channel.

– Select: left control button > **SiriusXM alerts** > *an entry from the list*. The selected track/artist is played.

Playing tracks/artists from the entertainment sliding menu

Requirement: the **SiriusXM alert notifications** function must be switched on. You must be in the **Radio** and **Navigation** menu. A *SiriusXM alert notification* is displayed in the entertainment sliding menu (1) ⇨ *fig. 184*.

– Push the control knob down.
– Select and confirm the desired track/artist.

Managing SiriusXM alerts

– Select: right control button > **Manage SiriusXM alerts**.
– **Switching SiriusXM alerts on/off**: when the function is switched on ☑, you are notified when this track or artist is being played on a SiriusXM channel.
– **Deleting Sirius XM alerts**: select *an entry from the list* > right control button > **Delete from alerts** > **Delete this entry** or **Delete all entries**.

View: additional station information



Fig. 185 Infotainment system: "Now Playing" screen

Requirement: you must be tuned to a radio station. The **Show "Now Playing" screen** option must be switched on ⇨ *page 210*.

Symbols in the "Now Playing" screen ⇨ *fig. 185*:

(1) **Radio text availability**

Radio text is available for the selected station ⇨ *page 207*. ▶

② **iTunes® Tagging**

The **Tag this song for iTunes** option is available for the set station ⇨ *page 207, Additional options*.

③ **FM HD Radio technology**

The station is received through FM HD Radio technology.

④ **Screen view**

Display Cover art or **Station logo** ⇨ *page 210,* **Preferred picture view***.

Displaying the station list:

turn the control knob, or press the BACK button.

Radio menu

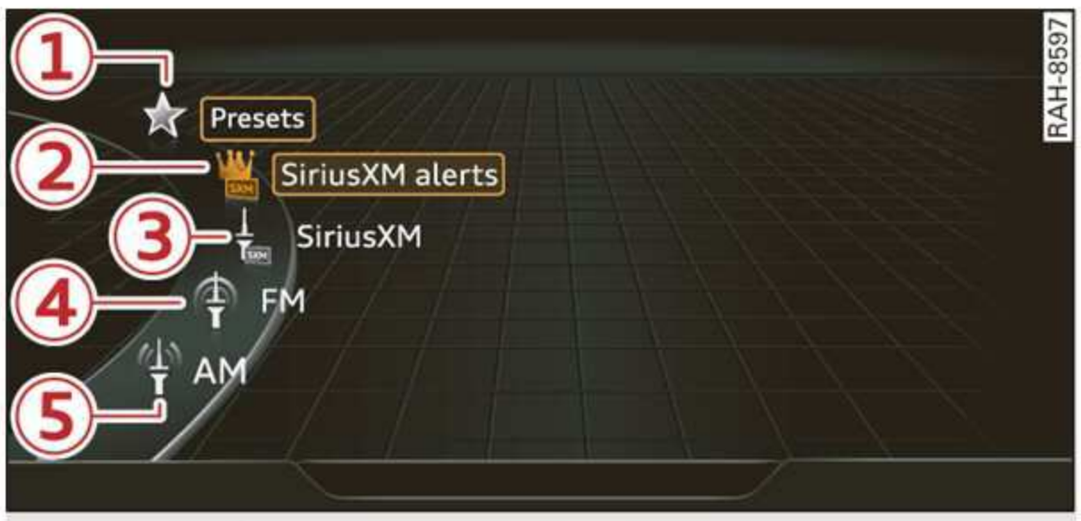


Fig. 186 Infotainment system: Radio menu

▸ Select: RADIO button > left control button.

Selecting the frequency band: select and confirm the desired frequency band in the "Radio" menu ⇨ *fig. 186*, or press the RADIO button repeatedly until the desired frequency band is selected. Displays the station list.

① **Favorites**

The presets list is displayed ⇨ *page 209, Presets*.

② Applies to: vehicles with SiriusXM

SiriusXM alerts

After you have stored a SiriusXM alert for your favorite tracks or artists ⇨ *page 208*, an overview of your favorite tracks or artists currently being received on SiriusXM is displayed.

③ Applies to: vehicles with SiriusXM

SiriusXM

The SiriusXM channel list is displayed.

Additional frequency bands

Depending on the vehicle equipment, you may also be able to select additional frequency bands ④/⑤ ⇨ *fig. 186* in the selection menu.

Presets

You can store your favorite stations from every frequency band in the presets list.

▸ Select: the RADIO button > left control button > **Presets**.

Requirement: the presets list must be displayed.

– **Storing presets**: select and confirm *a free preset space*. Follow the system instructions.
– Select and confirm *a station from the list* if necessary.

Requirement: a station list must be displayed.

– **Saving a preset**: select: *a station from the list* > right control button > **Store as preset**, or press and hold the control knob for several seconds.

– **Displaying the presets list**: select: RADIO button > **Presets**.

Requirement: the presets list must be displayed.

– **Listening to presets**: select and confirm *a preset from the list*.
– **Move preset**: *select a preset from the list* > right control button > **Move preset**, or press and hold the control knob for several seconds. Select and confirm the location of the selected preset.
– **Deleting a preset**: select *a preset from the list* > right control button > **Delete preset** > **Delete this preset** or **Delete all presets**.

Additional settings

Radio settings

▸ Select: RADIO button > right control button > **Radio settings**.

The following settings can be selected, depending on the band that is selected: ▶

Station names (FM)

Variable: scrolling text transmitted by the FM stations is shown in the Infotainment system display.

Fixed: scrolling text transmitted by the FM stations is not shown in the Infotainment system display. Only the current section of the scrolling text is displayed.

FM/AM HD Radio*

You can switch HD Radio reception on or off.

Channel sorting (SiriusXM*)

You can set the channel sorting for SiriusXM station lists* by:

- **Channel number**: the channels are sorted in ascending order according to their channel number.
- **Channel name**: the channels are listed in alphabetical order.
- **First category, then channel number**: the channels are sorted by their category and then by their channel numbers.
- **First category, then channel name**: the stations are sorted by their category and then by their channel names.

Category filter (SiriusXM*)

The stations shown in the station list can be filtered by your personal preferences and by program type. The program categories that you can select depend on what is offered by your provider. Select the **All categories** option to deactivate all filter options and display all available stations in the satellite station list.

Show "Now Playing" screen

When the function is switched on ☑ and the stations or presets list is open, the display will switch to the **Show "Now Playing" screen** view after approximately five seconds ⇨ *page 208*. Depending on availability, information about the set station (such as station name, artist and station logo) may be displayed in this view.

Preferred picture view*

You can set your preferred screen view for the **Show "Now Playing" screen** ⇨ *page 208*.

- **Station logo**: the station logo is displayed, depending on availability.
- **Cover art**: the album cover is displayed if available.

Gracenote online database*

Requirement: the MMI must be connected to the Internet. The **Cover art** option must be selected ⇨ *page 210,* **Preferred picture view***.

When the function is switched on ☑, the album cover or genre cover for the song that is playing is loaded from the Gracenote online database, depending on availability.

Subscription status (SiriusXM)*

This option is available when your subscription is about to expire or has already expired. The expiration date for your license is displayed.

Call to SiriusXM*: the contact information for your satellite radio provider is displayed. To call your satellite radio provider using the MMI, press **Call to SiriusXM***.

Troubleshooting

Problem	Solution
A station with poor reception is no longer displayed in the station list once you switch to a different station.	Store the station as a preset in advance. Access the presets using the presets list ⇨ *page 209*.

Media

Introduction

There are various media drives and connections available in the MMI. For example, you can play audio/video* files from the Jukebox* or connect your mobile device to the Audi music interface* and operate it through the MMI.

Notes

General

Media and format restrictions: the MMI (including the SD card reader and the USB storage device connection*) was tested with a variety of products and media available in the market. However, there may be cases where individual devices or media and audio/video* files may not be recognized, may play only with restrictions or may not play at all.

Digital Rights Management: please note that the audio/video* files are subject to copyright protection.

The media drives do not play files that are protected by DRM and that are identified with the symbol 🔒.

Data security: never store important data on SD cards, the Jukebox*, CDs/DVDs or mobile devices. Audi AG is not responsible for damaged or lost files and media.

Loading times: the more files/folders/playlists that are on a storage medium, the longer it will take to load the audio/video* files. Audi recommends using storage media that only contain audio/video files*. To decrease the time it takes to load audio/video files*, create subfolders (for example, for the artist or album). The loading time will also increase when importing files.

Additional information: when playing, audio files are automatically displayed with any additional information that is stored (such as the artist, track and album cover). If this information is not available on the storage medium, the MMI will check the Gracenote metadata database.

However, in some cases, the additional information may not be displayed.

Restricted functionality: reset the **Media settings** to the factory default settings if functionality is restricted ⇨ *page 231*.

If functionality is restricted, reset the **Jukebox*** to the factory default settings ⇨ *page 231*.

For information about the properties of supported media and file formats, see ⇨ *page 224*.

Note

Always follow the information found in ⇨ ⓘ *in General information on page 182*.

CD/DVD operation

CD/DVD and format restrictions: the functionality of individual storage media may be limited due to the variety of blank CDs/DVDs available and the various capacities. Audio CDs or video DVDs with copy protection, CDs/DVDs that do not conform to the standard, and multisession CDs may have limited playback or may not play at all. Audi recommends finalizing the recording process when creating multisession CDs. Multisession DVDs are not supported.

Using CDs/DVDs, the CD drive or the DVD drive: to ensure correct, high-quality playback and to prevent damage to the drive or disc reading errors, always store CDs/DVDs in a protective sleeve and do not expose them to direct sunlight. Do *not* use:

– Damaged, dirty or scratched CDs/DVDs
– Single CDs/DVDs with 3 in (8 cm) diameter
– CD/DVDs that are not round
– CDs/DVDs with labels
– Protective rings
– Cleaning CDs

Thermal protection switch: CD/DVD playback may be temporarily unavailable if outside temperatures are extremely hot or cold. A thermal protection switch is installed to protect the CD/DVD and the laser.

Laser devices: laser devices are divided into safety classes 1 to 4 in accordance with DIN IEC 76 ▶

8V2012721BK

(CO) 6/VDE 0837. The optical readers that are installed conform to safety class 1. Lasers in this class are very weak and well-shielded, so there is no danger if used correctly.

Media drives

SD card reader

The SD card reader is located in the glove compartment.

– **Inserting the SD card**: the angled corner of the SD card must face toward the right front when inserting. Slide the SD card into the card reader slot until the SD card clicks into place.
– **Automatic playback**: playback will start automatically if the inserted SD card contains supported audio/video files* ⇨ *page 224*.
– **Removing the SD card**: press briefly on the SD card.

The SD card reader is accessed and operated through the MMI ③ ⇨ *page 219, fig. 191*.

Note

Only use one-piece SD cards. If adapter cards (SD cards with more than one piece) are used, the card could fall out of the adapter when driving because of vibrations. Individual pieces could then become stuck in the drive and impair the functionality.

Tips

The SIM card reader then does not function.

DVD drive

Applies to: vehicles with a DVD drive

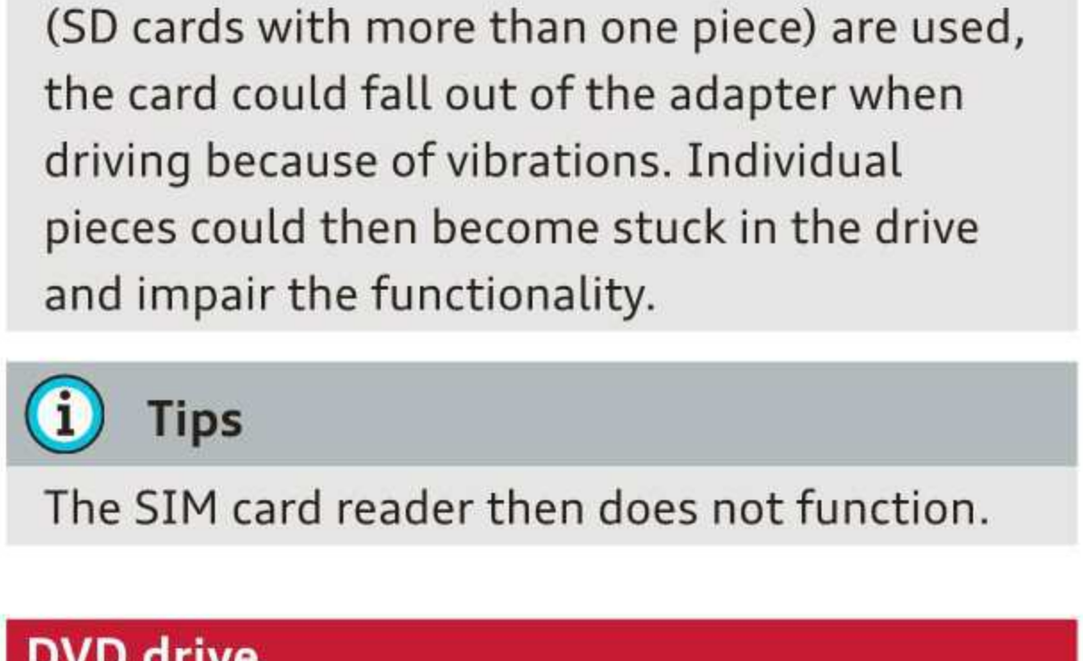


Fig. 187 Glove compartment: DVD drive

– **Loading a CD/DVD**: the CD/DVD is pulled in automatically. Slide the CD/DVD straight into the DVD slot ② with the label facing up.
– **Automatic playback**: playback will start automatically if the inserted CD/DVD contains supported audio/video* files ⇨ *page 224*.
– **Ejecting a CD/DVD**: press the button ①.

The CD/DVD is pulled in again automatically if it is not removed from the DVD slot within approximately ten seconds after ejecting it.

The DVD drive is accessed and operated through the MMI ② ⇨ *page 219, fig. 191*.

Note

– Never force a CD/DVD into the drive. The CD/DVD is pulled in automatically.
– Do not insert CDs/DVDs with labels into the drive. Labels can come loose from the CD/DVD and damage the drive.

Tips

– CDs/DVDs that contain audio files with a high data rate may not play.
– The SIM card reader then does not function.

CD drive

Applies to: vehicles with a CD drive

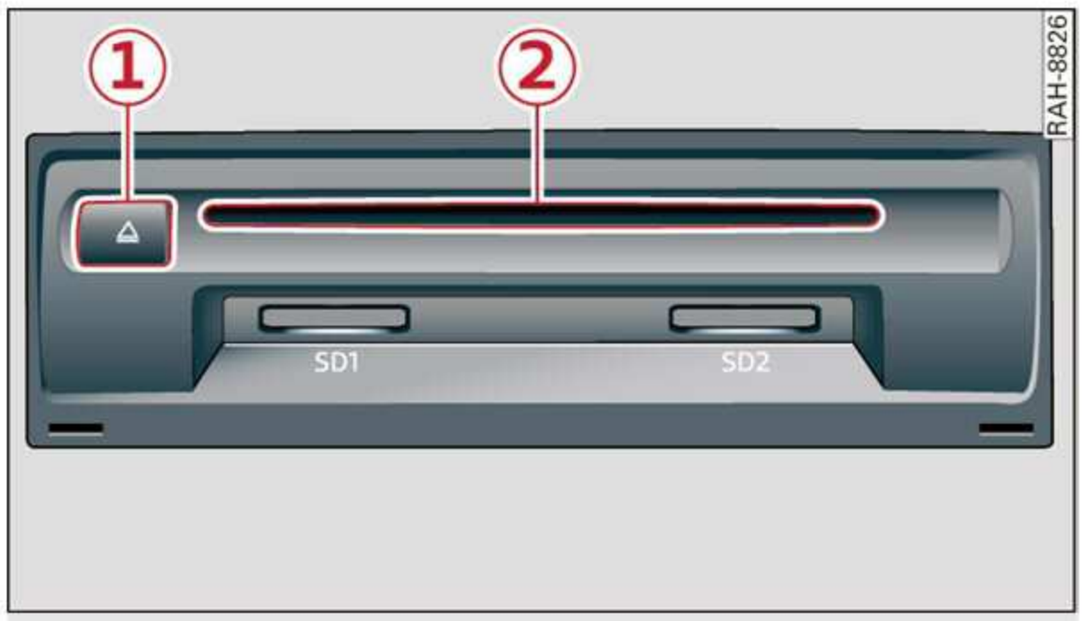


Fig. 188 Glove compartment: CD drive

– **Loading a CD**: the CD is pulled in automatically. Slide the CD straight into the slot ② with the label facing up.
– **Automatic playback**: playback will start automatically if the inserted CD contains supported audio files ⇨ *page 226*.
– **Ejecting a CD**: press the button ①. ▶

The CD is pulled in again automatically if it is not removed from the slot within ten seconds of ejecting it.

The CD drive is accessed and operated through the MMI ⇨ *page 219*.

Note

– Never force a CD into the drive. The CD is pulled in automatically.
– Do not insert CDs with labels into the drive. Labels can come loose from the CD and damage the drive.

Tips

CD playback cannot be guaranteed with audio files that have a high data rate.

Jukebox

Applies to: vehicles with Jukebox

► Press the MEDIA button. Press the left control button until the sources overview ⇨ *page 219* is displayed. Select and confirm **Jukebox**.

After you have filled the Jukebox with music and/or videos, for example from your SD card, you can play these files directly from the Jukebox. The Jukebox memory capacity is approximately 10 GB.

Adding files to the Jukebox

– Press the MEDIA button. Press the left control button until the sources overview ⇨ *page 219* is displayed. Select and confirm one of the following sources to copy to the Jukebox: SD card*, CD-ROM*, DVD-ROM*, USB storage device*.

Requirement: the media center (for example, tracks, albums) must be open.

– **Selecting an entry**: select an entry from the media center. Select: right control button > **Copy to jukebox** > **This entry** or **Entire list**.

Requirement: the playlist must be open. See ⇨ *page 222*.

– **Selecting a track**: select the track that is currently playing. Select: right control button > **Copy to jukebox** > **This track** or **Entire album** or **This artist**.

Requirement: a video file must be playing.

– Select: right control button > **Copy to jukebox**.

The copying process begins. The status of the copying process is shown in the MMI.

– **Hiding the importing process**: select and confirm **Continue copying in background**. The importing process is hidden.
– **Canceling the importing process**: select and confirm **Cancel copying**, or remove the source that is currently being imported. Files already copied remain.

Requirement: the copying process must be active in the background.

– **Showing the copying process**: select: right control button > **Copying in progress**.

When importing, the audio files are automatically sorted into the media center categories based on the stored additional information ⇨ *page 220*. The copied video files are stored in the media center under the **Videos** category.

Playing the Jukebox

Requirement: the Jukebox must contain audio/video files ⇨ *page 213, Adding files to the Jukebox*.

The Jukebox is accessed and operated through the MMI ① ⇨ *page 219, fig. 191*.

Displaying Jukebox memory capacity

Select: right control button > **Jukebox memory capacity**. Information about the Jukebox memory capacity and the number of stored tracks is displayed.

Deleting tracks from the Jukebox[1)]

Requirement: the Jukebox must contain audio/video files.

– **Deleting an entry**: select an entry from the Jukebox media center. Select: right control button > **Delete from jukebox** > **This entry** or **Entire list**. ▶

1) Not in the **Playback** view.

– The status of the deleting process is shown in the MMI. Jukebox playback stops during the deleting process and starts again automatically once the deletion is complete.

Note

Do not import audio/video files when the engine is turned off because this will drain the vehicle battery.

Tips

– Tracks from audio CDs cannot be imported to the Jukebox for legal reasons.
– Files that have already been imported are automatically recognized and cannot be copied to the Jukebox again.
– It is not possible to play audio/video* files in the CD/DVD* drive while importing them.
– The Jukebox does not provide an export function due to legal reasons.
– Files or tracks without additional stored information are listed as **Unknown**. Audi recommends adding additional information (such as ID3 tags) to audio files.
– Reset the **Jukebox** to the factory default settings when selling your vehicle ⇨ *page 231*.

Bluetooth audio player

Applies to: vehicles with Bluetooth audio player

With the Bluetooth audio player, you can play music wirelessly from your Bluetooth-capable device (such as a cell phone) through the MMI.

Requirement: the vehicle must be stationary and the ignition must be switched on. The Bluetooth settings will open on your mobile device during the connection setup. The Bluetooth function and visibility of the MMI ⇨ *page 233* and mobile device must be switched on. The **Bluetooth audio player** ⇨ *page 233* must be switched on in the MMI.

– **Connecting** a **Bluetooth device**: press the MEDIA button. Press the left control button until the sources overview is displayed. Select and confirm **Bluetooth audio player** (6) ⇨ *page 219, fig. 192*.
– If necessary, select and confirm **Not connected** > **Connect Bluetooth audio player**. The Bluetooth device search starts. Follow the instructions in the MMI.
– Select and confirm the desired Bluetooth device from the list. The MMI generates a PIN for the connection.
– Select and confirm **Yes**.
– Enter the PIN for connecting on your Bluetooth device, or if the PIN is already displayed on your Bluetooth device, confirm it on the Bluetooth device. The time allowed for entering the PIN is limited to approximately 30 seconds.

The media is started and operated through the mobile device or the MMI, depending on the device being used.

Tips

– Check for any connection requests on your Bluetooth device.
– Multiple Bluetooth audio players can be connected to the MMI, but only one mobile device can be active.
– Bluetooth protocols AVRCP (1.0/1.3/1.4) and A2DP are supported.
– Note the volume setting on your Bluetooth device. Audi recommends setting your mobile device to the maximum volume when using it as a Bluetooth audio player.
– The supported media functions (such as shuffle) depend on the Bluetooth device being used.
– A selection of supported Bluetooth devices can be found in the database for tested mobile devices at www.audi.com/bluetooth.

Wi-Fi audio player

Applies to: vehicles with Wi-Fi audio player

Using the Wi-Fi audio player media source on the MMI, you can connect and operate your Wi-Fi-capable media player (such as a smartphone) to wirelessly play music from your media player library. The media player is connected through the vehicle's Wi-Fi hotspot. A UPnP Server app or an integrated UPnP/DLNA server on your media player is required to access your media player library. ▶

Requirement: the Wi-Fi function on your media player must be switched on. The **myAudi** app or a UPnP server app is installed on your media player, or your media player has an integrated UPnP/DLNA server.

– **Connecting a media player**: press the MEDIA button. Press the left control button until the sources overview ⇨ *page 219* is displayed. Select and confirm **Wi-Fi audio player** (7) ⇨ *page 219, fig. 192*.
– If necessary, select and confirm **Wi-Fi turned off** > **Turn on Wi-Fi** to activate Wi-Fi in the MMI. Select **Wi-Fi settings**, if necessary. Select the same settings on the wireless media player that are used for the Wi-Fi hotspot.
– **Starting** the **Wi-Fi audio player**: start the **myAudi** app or a UPnP server app, or set media permissions on your media player.

Operating the media player: the media player is operated through the MMI.

– Press the left control button repeatedly until the **Folders** menu item appears. Select and confirm **Folders**.
– **Playing music from the media player**: select and confirm **Media center**.

Web radio: see ⇨ *page 215*.

WARNING

– As the driver, do not allow usage of the Wi-Fi hotspot to distract you from driving, as this could increase the risk of an accident.
– To reduce the risk of an accident, only use Audi connect services and the Wi-Fi hotspot only if the traffic situation permits it. Read and follow the guidelines provided in ⇨ *page 146, Traffic safety information*.
– It is only safe to use tablets, laptops, mobile devices and other similar devices when the vehicle is stationary because, like all loose objects, they could be thrown around the inside of the vehicle in a crash and cause serious injuries. Store these types of devices securely while driving. Also read the warnings in the chapter ⇨ *page 257, Front airbags*.

Note

Always follow the information found in ⇨ (!) *in General information on page 182*.

Tips

– Always read the chapter ⇨ *page 182, Audi connect*.
– Please note that a Wi-Fi connection does not automatically make it possible to use the Internet. For additional information, see ⇨ *page 182*.
– To avoid interruptions during playback, deactivate the power saving function on the media player or connect it to a charger.
– The loading times for the audio data depend on the media player used and the number of files that it contains.
– A maximum of 2,000 entries per directory are displayed in the MMI.
– Songs downloaded for offline use using music streaming services are stored on your mobile device (such as a smartphone) and may be DRM protected. The Wi-Fi audio player will not play DRM protected files.
– Contact an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility for additional information on the Wi-Fi audio player.

Online media and Internet radio

Applies to: vehicles with Audi connect Infotainment

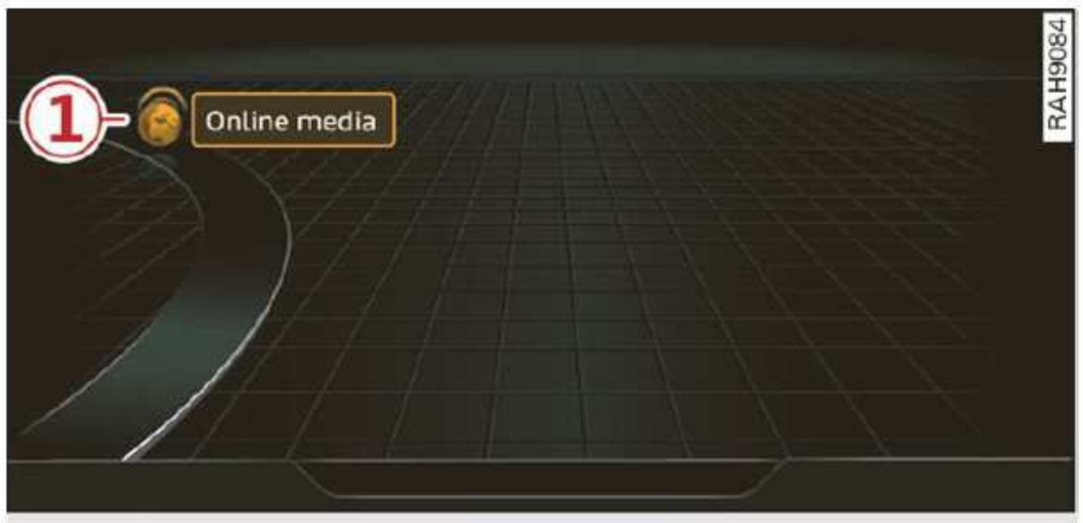


Fig. 189 Infotainment system: online media

You can playback and operate various online media services and Internet radio using the MMI.

► Press the MEDIA button. Press the left control button until the sources overview ⇨ *fig. 189* is displayed. ▶

Applies to: online media and Internet radio usage

Requirement:

– The **myAudi** app must be installed and open on your mobile device.
– You must be logged in to your myAudi account in the **myAudi** app and you must have selected your vehicle.
– The Wi-Fi function on the mobile device and on the MMI must be switched on.
– If necessary, check in the connection manager ⇨ *page 231* if the mobile device you connected is selected under the **MMI connect app** (☑).
– The MMI must be connected to the network.
– The symbol for the **Online media** source (1) is shown in the MMI.

Applies to: online media usage

Additional requirement:

– A supported online media service must be available in the country where the vehicle is being operated.
– You must have an account with a supported online media service.
– Depending on the online media service, you may need to install and open an app on your mobile device.

Starting Online media

– Press the MEDIA button. Press the left control button until the sources overview ⇨ *page 219* is displayed.
– Select and confirm an online media service.

Starting Internet radio

– Press the MEDIA button. Press the left control button until the sources overview ⇨ *page 219* is displayed.
– Select and confirm **Internet radio**. The Internet radio browser or the last station that was playing is shown.
– **Selecting the station**: if necessary, select and confirm a category in the Internet radio **Browser** > *a station*.

Online media and Internet radio: additional options

– Press the right control button.

The following options may be available, depending on the information shown (such as the station/track that is currently playing):

– **Sound settings**: see ⇨ *page 234*.
– **Wi-Fi settings**: see ⇨ *page 187, Wi-Fi settings*.
– **Connection manager**: see ⇨ *page 231*.
– Additional options may be available, depending on the active online media service or Internet radio.

WARNING

– To reduce the risk of an accident, only use Audi connect services and the Wi-Fi hotspot only if the traffic situation permits it. Read and follow the guidelines provided in ⇨ *page 146, Traffic safety information*.
– It is only safe to use tablets, laptops, mobile devices and other similar devices when the vehicle is stationary because, like all loose objects, they could be thrown around the inside of the vehicle in a crash and cause serious injuries. Store these types of devices securely while driving. Also read the warnings in the chapter ⇨ *page 257, Front airbags*.

Note

– Always follow the information found in ⇨ (!) *in General information on page 182*.
– There generally are additional costs when using an online media service account, especially when it is used internationally.

Tips

– Depending on the Internet connection and network traffic, the connection may disconnected when online media sources are playing.
– **Online media** and **Internet radio** usage depends on the service availability of the third party provider.
– Audi AG simply makes the access to online media services possible through the MMI and does not take any responsibility for the contents of the online media services.
– Always read the chapter ⇨ *page 182, Audi connect*.

– Depending on the mobile device being used, there may be interruptions during media playback and when using the **myAudi** app. To prevent interruptions when using a mobile device, do not lock the screen on your mobile device and keep the **myAudi** app in the foreground.
– Contact an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility for additional information about online media.

Multimedia connections

USB adapter for Audi music interface

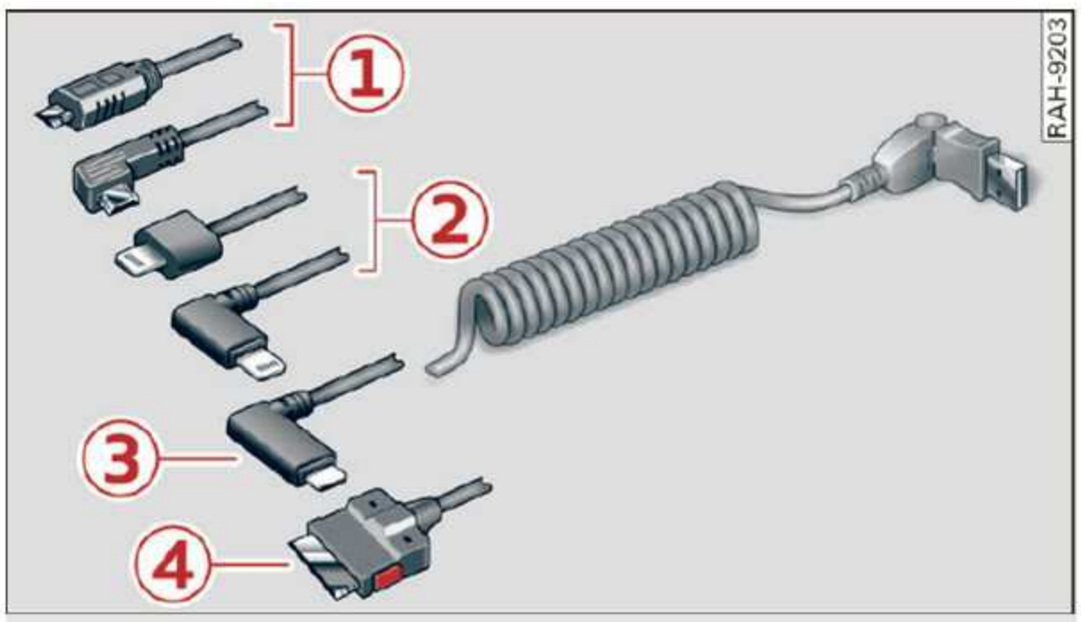


Fig. 190 Audi Genuine Accessories: USB adapter

You can connect your mobile devices (such as a smartphone or MP3 player) to the Audi music interface and charge them using a special USB adapter.

You can purchase the USB adapter ⇨ *fig. 190* from an authorized Audi dealer or at specialty stores:

① USB adapter for devices with a micro USB connection

② USB adapter for devices with an Apple Lightning connection

③ USB adapter for devices with USB type C connection

④ USB adapter for devices with an Apple Dock connector

You can connect your mobile devices through the Audi music interface to the MMI using the USB adapter and charge the battery at the same time.

Applies to: vehicles with Audi music interface

– **Audi music interface**: see ⇨ *page 217*.

Applies to: vehicles with USB charging ports in the rear

– **USB charging ports in the rear***: see ⇨ *page 218*.

Note

Handle the USB adapter carefully. Do not allow it to be pinched.

Audi music interface

Connect your mobile devices to the Audi music interface in order to operate them through the MMI and charge the battery.

The USB ports and AUX inputs on the Audi music interface are located in the storage compartment under the center armrest and in the front of the center console. The USB ports are labeled with ⇠, and the AUX inputs with AUX.

USB Input

– **Connecting or charging a mobile device using the USB adapter:** connect the matching USB adapter to the Audi music interface USB port and then connect it to the mobile device, such as an iPhone. The battery will charge automatically.
– **Disconnecting a mobile device from the Audi music interface:**: remove the USB adapter from the Audi music interface USB port.
– **Disconnecting mobile devices with an Apple Dock connector**: remove the Apple Dock connector from the Apple device with the release tabs pressed in ④ ⇨ *page 217, fig. 190*.

The media are started and operated through the mobile device or the MMI, depending on the device being used ⇨ *page 219*.

Connecting multiple mobile devices: if a mobile device (such as a smartphone) is connected at the respective USB port on the Audi music interface, then all devices can be used as a playback source.

AUX Input

– **Connecting a mobile device to the AUX input**: connect the AUX cable to an AUX input on the Audi music interface and then to the mobile device (such as an MP3 player or smartphone). ▶

– **Disconnecting a mobile device from the AUX input**: remove the AUX cable from the AUX input on the Audi music interface.
– **Operation**: select and confirm the **External audio player** source (5) ⇨ *page 219, fig. 191*. Media is started and operated on the mobile device.

WARNING

Driving requires your complete and undivided attention. As the driver, you have complete responsibility for safety in traffic. Never operate mobile devices while driving, because this increases the risk of an accident.

Note

– Use a USB extension cable to connect devices that have an integrated USB connector (such as a USB stick) to prevent damage to your USB device and the Audi music interface.
– Extremely high or low temperatures that can occur inside vehicles can damage mobile devices and/or impair their performance. Never leave mobile devices in the vehicle in extremely high or low temperatures.

Tips

– Always follow the information found in ⇨ *page 59*.
– When you switch the ignition off, the USB ports are still supplied with power until the energy management intervenes.
– Do not use an additional adapter or USB extension cable to connect mobile devices to the Audi music interface that already have a cable or that must be connected with a USB adapter (⇨ *page 217*). Using an additional adapter or US extension cable may impair functionality.
– You can purchase the AUX connector cable from an authorized Audi dealer or at specialty stores.
– Audi recommends setting the volume of a mobile device connected to the AUX input to approximately 70% of the maximum volume.
– Functionality is not guaranteed for mobile devices that do not conform to the USB 2.0 specification.
– USB hubs are not supported.
– Some versions of the iPod such as the iPod shuffle cannot be connected to the USB adapter for devices with Apple Dock connector. Connect these devices using a AUX connector cable.
– Changed content on a mobile device [1)] that is connected to the Audi music interface may not be displayed in the media center. In this case, reset the **Media settings** back to **Factory settings** ⇨ *page 231*.
– Video playback through the Audi music interface is only supported if the connected device is recognized as a USB storage device (for example a USB stick). Apple devices and MTP devices (such as smartphones) are not recognized as USB storage devices.
– iPod or iPhone malfunctions also affect the operation of the MMI. Reset your iPod or iPhone if this happens.
– For important information on operating your iPod or iPhone, refer to the user guide for the device. Audi recommends updating the iPod or iPhone software to the latest version.
– For more information about the Audi music interface and supported devices, check the Audi database for mobile devices at www.audi.com/mp3 or contact an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility.

USB charging ports in the rear

Applies to: vehicles with USB charging ports in the rear

You can charge the battery on your mobile device through a USB charging port. ▶

1) Applies only to MTP devices. Does not apply to Apple devices and USB mass storage devices.

Two USB charging ports* are located at the back of the center console.

– **USB adapter**: refer to ⇨ *page 217, USB adapter for Audi music interface*.
– **Charging a mobile device using the USB adapter**: connect your mobile device to a USB charging port using a suitable USB adapter.
– **Disconnecting a mobile device from the charging port**: remove the USB adapter from the USB charging port.
– **Disconnecting mobile devices with an Apple Dock connector**: remove the Apple Dock connector from the Apple device with the release tabs pressed in.

WARNING

Driving requires your complete and undivided attention. As the driver, you have complete responsibility for safety in traffic. Never operate your mobile devices while driving, because this increases the risk of an accident.

Note

Extremely high or low temperatures that can occur inside vehicles can damage mobile devices and/or impair their performance. Never leave mobile devices in the vehicle in extremely high or low temperatures.

Tips

– Always follow the information found in ⇨ *page 59*.
– When you switch the ignition off, the USB ports are still supplied with power until the energy management intervenes.
– Do not use any additional USB extension cables or adapters to connect mobile devices to the USB charging port that have already been connected by a USB adapter. Using an additional adapter or US extension cable may impair functionality.
– USB hubs are not supported.
– Refer to the manufacturer's operating manual for important information regarding the operation of your mobile device.
– Correct function of all mobile devices cannot be guaranteed.
– The vehicle battery drains when mobile devices are turned on but the engine is off.

Playing media

Accessing media



Fig. 191 Infotainment system: possible sources in the Media menu



Fig. 192 Infotainment system: possible sources in the Media menu

You can start and operate various media through the MMI control panel.

Requirement: a media source must contain audio/video* files ⇨ *page 212*.

- ▸ Press the MEDIA button. Press the left control button until the sources overview is displayed.
- ▸ Select and confirm the desired source, or
- ▸ press the MEDIA button repeatedly until the desired source is selected.

Depending on the vehicle equipment, the following sources may be displayed in the **Media** menu:

① **Jukebox*** 213
② **DVD/CD drive*** 212, 212
③ **SD card reader** 212
④ **Audi music interface*** 217
such as an iPhone, USB stick
⑤ **External audio player** 217
such as an MP3 player connected to the AUX input ▶

⑥ **Bluetooth audio player*** 214
⑦ **Wi-Fi audio player*** 214
⑧ **Online media*** and **Internet radio*** . 215

– **Playing audio/video files**: select a source in the **Media** menu > *category* (such as artists > *album* > *track*).
– **Moving one level up in the folder structure**: press the BACK button, or select and confirm **Folder up**.
– **Selecting the previous or next track/chapter***[1)]: press the On/Off knob on the MMI control panel briefly to the left ⏮ or right ⏭.
– **Fast-forwarding and rewinding audio/video* files**: press and hold the On/Off knob on the MMI control panel to the left ⏮ or right ⏭ for a longer time.
– **Pausing or resuming playback**: press the On/Off knob on the MMI control panel briefly.

Tips

– You can scroll through long lists quickly by turning the control knob quickly. The scrolling speed depends on the number of list entries.
– For safety reasons, the video image is only displayed when the vehicle is stationary. Only the sound from the video plays while driving.

Media center

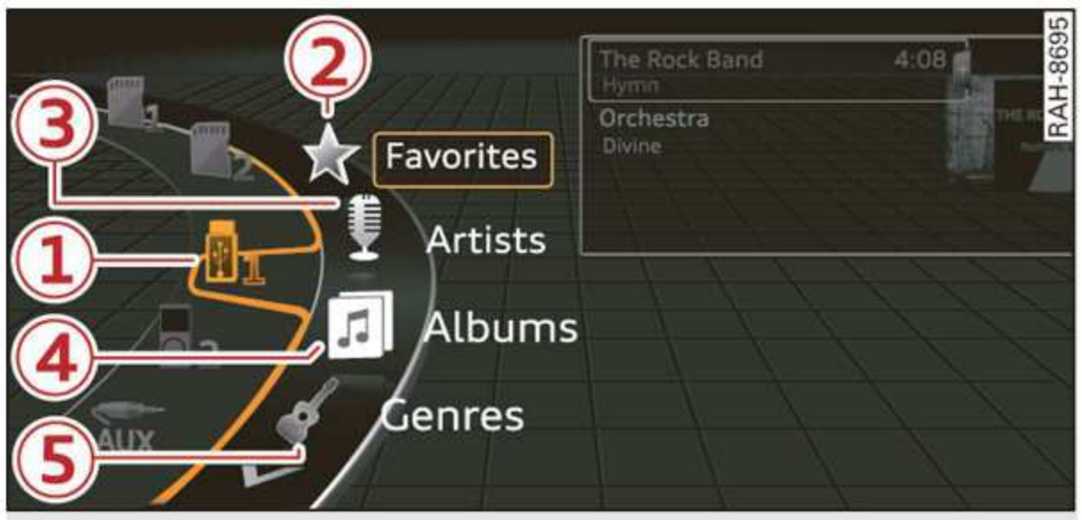


Fig. 193 Infotainment system: USB flash drive categories

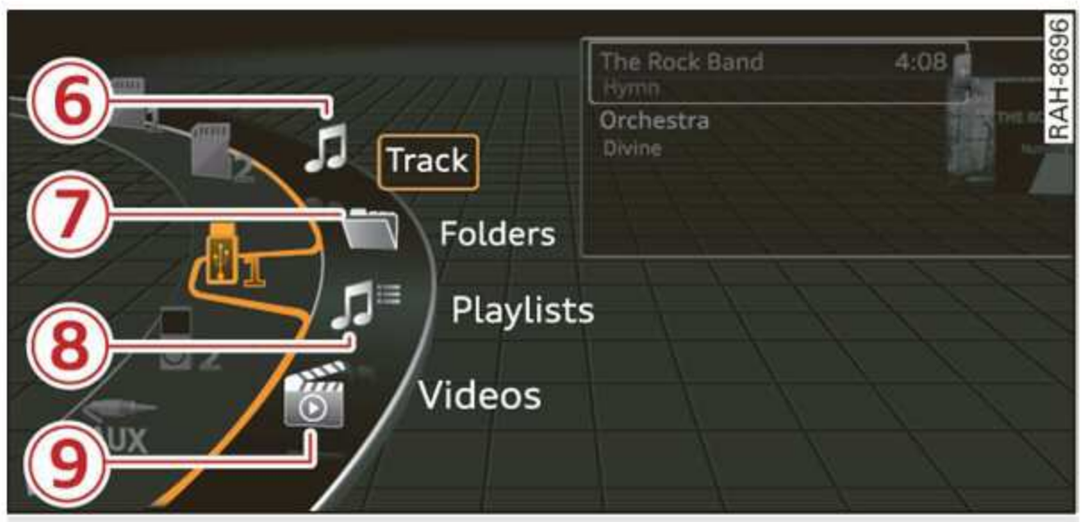


Fig. 194 Infotainment system: USB flash drive categories

Various categories for selecting audio/video* files are available in the media center.

▸ Press the MEDIA button. Press the left control button until the sources overview is displayed. Select and confirm the desired source.

① Active source

The active source is highlighted. The active source symbol ① may change depending on the connected device, the online media service* or Internet radio*. The device name may be displayed (for example: myPhone). As an example, a USB stick is shown ⇨ *fig. 193* connected to the Audi music interface*.

Depending on the active source, you can select audio/video files* from the following categories and add them to the playlist:

② Favorites

The **Favorites** category appears if at least one entry is stored in the favorites list. ⇨ *page 222*.

③ Artists

All available artists are displayed. Select and confirm an artist, an album and then a track.

④ Albums

All available albums are displayed. Select and confirm an album and then a track.

⑤ Genres

All available genres are displayed. Select and confirm a genre (such as **Pop**), an artist, an album and then a song. ▶

1) Depending on the DVD, this may not be possible during playback.

⑥ Tracks

All available tracks are displayed. Select and confirm a track.

⑦ Folders

The folder structure or track/chapter list is displayed. Select a folder, if necessary. Select and confirm a track.

⑧ Playlists

All available playlists from the source and the smart playlists are displayed. Select and confirm a playlist and then a track.

Smart playlists:

- **Last played tracks**: the last tracks played in the selected source are displayed.
- **Most played**: the most played tracks in the selected source are displayed.
- **5 stars** to **1 star**: tracks from the selected source are displayed according to their rating.
- **Unrated**: all files from the selected source without rating information (for example, in the ID3 tag) are displayed.

⑨ Videos*

All available video files are displayed. Select and confirm a video file.

Tips

- Only the categories supported by the medium are available. For example, CD/DVD-ROM tracks cannot be selected with categories such as **Artists**, **Albums** or **Genres**. With an iPod/iPhone (source: Audi music interface* ⇨ *page 217*), the **Podcasts**, **Audio books** and **Composers** categories are also available.
- For safety reasons, the video image is only displayed when the vehicle is stationary. Only the sound from the video plays while driving.
- When synchronizing a portable device with "Cloud“ services, playlists may display incorrectly in the MMI. Use the media center in the device.

Free text search

Applies to: vehicles with free text search



Fig. 195 Infotainment system: input field and results list for free text search

You can search in the active source by tracks and video files*, for example

You can open the **free text search** depending on the selected source.

Requirement: the playlist ⇨ *page 222* or media center ⇨ *page 220* must be displayed.

Opening free text search

▸ Keep turning the control knob to the left until the **free text search** input field ① appears, or:

▸ Push the control knob up.

Using the free text search: see ⇨ *page 154, Free text search*.

Entries that contain the entered search term are listed in the results list ⑤. You can search for artists ②, albums ③ or tracks ④ as well as genres and videos.

Tips

- Only files in the active source will be searched.
- If you open free text search in the **Folders** category ⑦ ⇨ *page 220, fig. 194* or the **Composers**, **Podcasts** and **Audio books** categories, it will only search through the files in that folder.

Playlist



Fig. 196 Infotainment system: playlist

The track, artist, album and album cover, if applicable, will appear in the playlist ⇨ *fig. 196*.

Options menu

See ⇨ *page 222, Additional settings*.

Favorites

Up to 50 entries for every media source can be stored in any order in the favorites list.

Requirement: the playlist or media center must be open.

– Select the desired entry from the playlist or media center.
– Select: right control button > **Store as favorite**, or press and hold the control knob for several seconds.

When you store a track as a favorite, the associated album will appear in the favorites list as an entry.

Requirement: at least one entry must be stored in the favorites list.

Displaying the favorites list: press the MEDIA button. Press the left control button until the sources overview ⇨ *page 219* is displayed. Select the source that contains the *categories* ⇨ *page 220* (for example, SD card). Select the **Favorites** *category*.

Requirement: the favorites list must be displayed.

– **Listening to a favorite**: select and confirm *a favorite from the list*.
– **Move favorite**: select *a favorite from the list* > right control button > **Move favorite**. Select and confirm the location of the selected favorite.
– **Deleting a favorite**: select *a favorite from the list* > right control button > **Delete favorite** > **Delete this favorite** or **Delete all favorites**.

Additional settings

Options menu

Context-specific functions and settings are available depending on the selected source.

▸ Press the right control button.

Sound settings

See ⇨ *page 234*.

Input level

Requirement: a mobile device must be connected to the AUX connection cable or to a USB adapter ⇨ *page 217, Multimedia connections*.

The volume of the mobile device is adapted to the MMI. Audi recommends adjusting the volume on the mobile device to 70% of the maximum volume output.

Bluetooth settings

See ⇨ *page 233*.

Wi-Fi settings*

See ⇨ *page 187, Wi-Fi settings*.

Connection manager

See ⇨ *page 231*.

Show "Now Playing" screen

With the function switched on ☑ and a playlist open, various information about the current track (such as artist, album and album cover*) as well as the playing time and the remaining playing time are displayed.

Jukebox memory capacity*

Information on the Jukebox memory capacity and the number of stored tracks in the Jukebox is displayed. ▸

Rewind/Fast forward

Turn the control knob to the left or right, or move your finger on the MMI touch control pad* from the left to the right.

Shuffle[1)]

With the function switched on ☑, all files in the playlist are played and shown in random order.

Repeat track[1)]

When the function is switched on ☑, the current track repeats.

Back to 'Playback'

The options menu is closed. The track currently playing appears in the playlist.

Play similar music*

The track currently playing is quickly analyzed for features such as artist, genres, mood, and beat, and a smart playlist with similar tracks will be shown.

Play more...

A smart playlist is shown based on the track currently playing. You can select between a playlist with more tracks **by this artist**, **from this album** or **of this genre**.

Copy to jukebox*

See ⇨ *page 213, Adding files to the Jukebox*.

Set as ringtone*[2)]

Requirement: a mobile device must be connected to the MMI. The track currently playing must be in the Jukebox* ⇨ *page 213*.

The selected track will be used as the ringtone for incoming calls.

Gracenote online database*

Requirement: the MMI must be connected to the Internet.

Depending on availability, various information will load about the track currently playing when this function is switched on ☑.

Favorites

See ⇨ *page 222*.

Additional options

Requirement: the vehicle must be stationary and a video file* or a DVD* must be playing.

Parental control*

Playback of video DVDs can be restricted using parental control.

Enter the password for parental control. Password set at the factory: **1234**. You have the following options:

– **Protection level**: select and confirm the protection level (for example, Level 5). Eight different protection levels can be set for parental control. If you set the parental control level at Level 5, all DVDs from levels 1-5 can be played. Video DVDs with a higher level will not play. Select **Unrestricted** to remove all of the restrictions.
– **Change password**: edit the current password.

Switch to full screen

The video image is displayed. Turn the control knob to display the playlist, or press the BACK button.

Replay video[1)]

When this function is switched on ☑, the current video will replay.

Show DVD menu

The DVD main menu opens in the Infotainment system display. ▶

1) The function automatically switches off when the source is changed.
2) This function is not available for all cell phones.

– **Selecting a menu item**: select and confirm a menu item, or move your finger on the MMI touch control pad* and press the control knob.

Audio track[1)]

You can manually set the audio track (language and audio format). The language and audio format options depend on the video DVD.

Subtitles[1)]

You can manually select subtitles for playback. The languages available depend on the DVD.

Aspect

Audi recommends the **Automatic** setting for the picture format. You can set the picture format depending on the active file or source (for example video file*, DVD*).

Aspect ratio	Description
Automatic	The MMI detects the picture format of the source and displays the image in the optimum ratio. Black bars may appear on the sides of the display, depending on the source format and the Infotainment system display that is installed.
Zoom	The image is enlarged to fill the entire Infotainment system display. Switch the function off if the image is distorted.
Cinemascope	Use this setting for films in cinema format 21:9. Black bars are shown in the upper and lower edges of the Infotainment system display.
Original	The image is displayed in the ratio of the source format. Select this option if the image is distorted or a section of the image is cut off when **Auto** is selected.
4:3	The image is set to the 4:3 picture format. Black bars are shown on the sides of the Infotainment system display.
16:9	The image is set to the 16:9 picture format. Black bars are shown in the upper and lower edges of the Infotainment system display.

Tips

– Not all video DVDs have parental control.
– The protection levels for the **Parental control** are based on the US standards from the Motion Picture Association of America (MPAA). Note that the age levels for video DVDs in European countries may differ.
– Password entry for **Parental control** will be locked for approximately one minute if you enter the incorrect password three times in a row. The password can only be reset by an authorized Audi dealer.

Supported media and file formats

Overview

The following audio/video file properties are supported by the DVD drive*, the Jukebox*, the SD card reader and the USB storage device* connection: ▶

1) Depending on the DVD, this may not be possible during playback.

	Audio files				Video files*		
Supported media	**SD/SDHC/SDXC/MMC memory cards**: with a capacity of up to 128 GB **DVD drive**: audio CDs (up to 80 min) with CD text (artist, album, song)*, CD-ROMs with a capacity of up to 700 MB; DVD±R/RW; DVD video; DVD audio with audio tracks that are compatible with a DVD video player; **Audi music interface***: mobile devices ⇨ *page 217* (such as an iPod, MTP player, USB storage device in "USB Device Subclass 1 and 6" that conforms to USB 2.0: USB sticks, USB MP3 players (Plug-and-Play-capable), external USB flash drives and hard drives						
File system	**Memory cards**: exFAT, FAT, FAT32, NTFS **USB storage device**: FAT, FAT32, NTFS **USB storage device partitions (primary/logical*)**: 2 per USB-connection **CD/DVD file system:** ISO9660, Joliet, UDF						
Metadata	**Album cover**: GIF, JPG, PNG with max. 800x800 px. The album cover from the medium or from Gracenote* is displayed, depending on availability.						
Format	MPEG 1/2 Layer 3	Windows Media Audio 9 and 10	MPEG 2/4	FLAC	MPEG 1/2	MPEG4 AVC (H.264)	Windows Media Video 9
File extension	.mp3	.wma	.m4a .m4b .aac	.flac	.mpg; .mpeg	.mp4 .m4v .mov .avi	.wmv .asf
Playlists	.M3U; .PLS; .WPL; .M3U8; .ASX						
Characteristics	up to maximum 320 kbit/s and 48 kHz sampling frequencies			48 kHz sampling frequency	up to maximum 2,000 kbit/s and 720x576 px. at maximum 25 fps		
Number of files	**DVD drive***: maximum 1,000 files per medium **Jukebox***: approximately 10 GB memory capacity; maximum 3,000 files can be imported **USB storage device and memory cards**: maximum 10,000 files per medium; maximum 1,000 files per playlist/directory						

Tips

- The media drives do not support the Windows Media Audio 9 Voice format.
- For compressing MP3 files, Audi recommends a bit rate of at least 160 kbit/s. The display showing the remaining play time may differ for audio files with variable bit rate.
- Special characters (such as those in ID3 tag information) may display differently or may not always display, depending on the system language.
- The manufacturer of the storage device can provide information about its "USB Device Subclass".
- Some MTP player functions are not supported, such as rating music tracks and video playback.

CD drive

Applies to: vehicles with a CD drive

The following audio file properties are supported by the CD drive:

	Audio files			
Supported media	Audio CDs (up to 80 min) with CD text (artist, album, track)*, CD-ROMs with a capacity of up to 700 MB			
File system	**CD file system**: ISO9660, Joliet, UDF			
Metadata	**Album cover**: GIF, JPG, PNG with max. 800x800 px. The album cover from the medium may be displayed, depending on availability.			
Format	MPEG 1/2 Layer 3	Windows Media Audio 9 and 10	MPEG 2/4	FLAC
File extension	.mp3	.wma	.m4a .m4b .aac	.flac
Playlists	.M3U; .PLS; .WPL; .M3U8; .ASX			
Characteristics	up to maximum 320 kbit/s and 48 kHz sampling frequencies			48 kHz sampling frequency
Number of files	Maximum 1,000 files per medium			

Tips

– For compressing MP3 files, Audi recommends a bit rate of at least 160 kbit/s. The display showing the remaining play time may differ for audio files with variable bit rate.

– Special characters (such as those in ID3 tag information) may display differently or may not always display, depending on the system language.

Troubleshooting

Problem	Solution
Audi music interface/Bluetooth audio player*: mobile device is not supported.	Read the instructions in the chapter ⇨ *page 217, Multimedia connections/* ⇨ *page 214, Bluetooth audio player*.
Audi music interface: the volume is too high/too low when starting playback through the AUX input.	Adjust the volume of the mobile device to approximately 70% of the maximum output ⇨ *page 222,* **Input level**.
Audi music interface: the mobile device is not recognized as a source.	For many cell phones or mobile devices, playback is not possible when the battery level is too low (less than 5% of its capacity). The mobile device will only be recognized as a source in the MMI after connecting if the battery charge is sufficient.
Audi music interface: malfunctions during audio playback through an iPod/iPhone.	The **Bluetooth audio player** function is switched on. Switch this function off ⇨ *page 233* when you are not using the **Bluetooth audio player**.

Problem	Solution
Audi music interface: contents that are changed on a mobile device connected to the Audi music interface [a)] are not displayed in the media center.	Reset the **Media settings** to the factory default settings ⇨ *page 231*.
AUX input: there is static when connecting and disconnecting the AUX connection cable.	When connecting and disconnecting, the **External audio player** source is already selected. Before connecting or disconnecting the mobile device, either mute the device (see ⇨ *page 234*) or switch to a different audio source (for example ⇨ *page 206, Opening the radio*).
Bluetooth audio player*/**Wi-Fi audio player***: audio playback interference.	Only *one* interface should be actively used at a time to ensure problem-free playback.
Wi-Fi audio player*: audio playback interference.	Audio playback interference can occur on some cell phones if the Internet connection in the vehicle was not established through the SIM card reader on the MMI control panel and the **mobile data** option on the cell phone is switched on. Deactivate the **mobile data** option on your cell phone.
Jukebox*: tracks on the imported playlist are grayed out.	When importing playlists, all of the files themselves must be imported.
Jukebox*: imported tracks cannot be played or found.	If you cannot find imported tracks in the media center, they may not be supported. Only copy supported files ⇨ *page 224* to the Jukebox.
Wi-Fi audio player*: multiple devices are connected to the Wi-Fi hotspot. A media player (such as a smartphone) appears as the source and cannot be changed.	Close the **myAudi** app on the connected devices (such as smartphones) that are not being used as the Wi-Fi audio player*. Likewise, close the UPnP server apps or the media permissions on the integrated UPnP/DLNA server. Connect the desired device as a Wi-Fi audio player* ⇨ *page 214*.
Online media*: connection failed between the MMI and the **myAudi** app.	To establish a connection to the MMI, the MMI connection switch must be switched on in the **myAudi** app status screen.
Bluetooth audio player*: interference with track display and audio playback.	Playback interference can occur when using the **Bluetooth audio player** if a music player app from a third party provider is open. Audi recommends using the integrated media player on your Bluetooth device (such as a smartphone).
Wi-Fi hotspot*: your Wi-Fi device is disconnected from the Wi-Fi hotspot.	Make sure the network optimization functions are switched off in the Wi-Fi settings or in the network settings for your Wi-Fi device. For additional information refer to the user guide for your Wi-Fi device.
Audi music interface: audio playback through the connected mobile device is not possible.	Make sure the USB mode *MTP* is selected in the settings on your mobile device.

a) Applies only to MTP devices. Does not apply to Apple devices and USB mass storage devices.

Audi smartphone interface

Setup

Applies to: vehicles with Audi smartphone interface

You can connect your smartphone to the MMI using the Audi smartphone interface. Certain content on your smartphone is adapted to the Infotainment system display while driving and can be operated through the MMI control panel.

Requirement

The vehicle must be stationary and the ignition must be switched on.

An iPhone generation 5 or newer with Lightning connector and iOS 7.1.2 operating system or higher is required. **Or**:

A smartphone with the Android Auto app and Android 5.0 Lollipop operating system or higher is required.

- ▸ Connect your smartphone to the Audi music interface ⇨ *page 217* using the applicable USB adapter ⇨ *page 217, fig. 190*.
- ▸ Select and confirm **Activate Apple CarPlay** or **Activate Android Auto now**.
- ▸ Follow the system instructions.
- ▸ Pay attention to any additional system prompts on your smartphone, if applicable.

If you chose not to use Apple CarPlay or Android Auto when connecting your smartphone for the first time, you can start the Audi smartphone interface later on using the **Connection manager**.

- ▸ Select: MENU button > **Audi smartphone interface** > **Change to connection manager**.
- ▸ Connect your smartphone to the Audi music interface using the appropriate USB adapter ⇨ *page 217, fig. 190*.
- ▸ Select and confirm **Audi smartphone interface** in the **Connection manager** ⇨ *page 231*. You can select your smartphone in the list of devices that are already paired ⇨ *page 233*.
- ▸ Follow the system instructions.

WARNING

Driving requires your complete and undivided attention. As the driver, you have complete responsibility for safety in traffic. Never operate mobile devices while driving, because this increases the risk of an accident.

Note

Always follow the information found in ⇨ *in General information on page 182*.

Tips

– The functions that can be used depend on the following factors, among others:
  – The brand of your smartphone
  – The version of the operating system in your smartphone
  – The software version of the app used
  – The USB adapter cable and correct connection
  – Your cell phone service provider
  – The customized settings on your smartphone
– One of the factors above or a combination of any of them could cause your smartphone to be incompatible with the Audi smartphone interface. Compatibility cannot be guaranteed for all types of smartphones. For more information and assistance, refer to the user guide and the manufacturer of your smartphone.
– If the connected smartphone has voice control, you can operate your smartphone using the external voice recognition system ⇨ *page 168*.
– The menu language shown in the MMI is based on the settings in your smartphone.
– The time displayed in the MMI is based on the settings in your smartphone.
– Some MMI functions are not available when Apple CarPlay or Android Auto is active.
– You cannot connect any mobile devices via Bluetooth when an Apple CarPlay connection is active.
– When the Apple CarPlay connection is active, **Tag this song for iTunes*** is not available ⇨ *page 207*.

Operating

Applies to: vehicles with Audi smartphone interface

Opening a menu

Apple CarPlay: you can go back to the Apple CarPlay main menu regardless of the selected menu item by pressing and holding the BACK button.

Android Auto: to go back to the Android Auto menu bar, push the control knob down.

Opening a menu item

Select and confirm a menu item using the MMI control panel.

Troubleshooting

Applies to: vehicles with Audi smartphone interface

Problem	Solution
Audi smartphone interface cannot be opened.	Check the battery charge level on your smartphone. Check the USB cable and use a different one if necessary. Check if Android Auto or Apple CarPlay is available in the country where the vehicle is being operated.
	Android Auto: check if the Android Auto app is installed on your smartphone.
Connecting the smartphone to the MMI failed.	Make sure that you are using the correct USB adapter and check if the USB adapter is connected correctly to your smartphone and the Audi music interface ⇨ *page 217*.
	Apple CarPlay: check if Apple CarPlay is activated on your smartphone.
	Android Auto: check in the Android Auto app if Android Auto permits new vehicles.
The smartphone is not automatically detected.	Make sure that you are using the correct USB adapter and check if the USB adapter is connected correctly to your smartphone and the Audi music interface ⇨ *page 217*. Check if the requirements needed to connect a smartphone have been met.

System settings

Setting the date and time

You can set the clock time manually or using the GPS*.

- ▸ Select: MENU button > **Settings** > left control button > **MMI settings** > **Date & time**, or:
- ▸ Select: MENU button > **Vehicle** > left control button > **Vehicle settings** > **Date & time**.

Automatic setting

When this function is switched on ☑, the time and date are automatically set.

Time

Requirement: the **Automatic setting** must be switched off.

Press the control knob. You can set the **Time** manually by turning and pressing the control knob.

Date

Requirement: the **Automatic setting** must be switched off.

Press the control knob. You can set the **Date** manually by turning and pressing the control knob.

Time zone

When selecting the appropriate time zone, a sampling of countries in this zone will be listed.

Automatic time zone*

When this function is switched on ☑, the time will automatically adjust to the corresponding time zone.

Automatic daylight saving time*

When this function is switched on ☑, the time will automatically switch to daylight saving time.

Time format

If you select **24h**, the clock will display, for example, **13:00**. If you select **AM/PM**, the clock will display, for example, **1:00 PM**.

Date format

If you select **DD.MM.YYYY**, the date display will show, for example, **31.03.2019**. If you select **MM/DD/YYYY**, the date display will show, for example, **03/31/2019**. If you select **YYYY-MM-DD**, the date display will show, for example, **2019-03-31**.

MMI settings

- ▸ Select: MENU button > **Settings** > left control button > **MMI settings**.

Language

You can change the display language as well as the language for the voice guidance* and voice recognition system*.

The number of languages available depends on the country.

Measurement units

The following measurement units can be set depending on availability: **Speed**, **Distance**, **Temperature**, **Fuel consumption**, **Volume**, **Pressure**.

Mobile device reminder signal

Applies to: vehicles with Audi phone box

Requirement: your cell phone must be Qi-capable [1)] or connected to the Audi music interface ① with a USB adapter cable ⇨ *page 171, fig. 162*.

When the device reminder signal is switched on, you will be notified that your mobile device is still in the Audi phone box when you leave the vehicle. You can select between **Spoken cue**, **Signal tone** and **Off**.

Mobile device reminder signal volume: you can adjust the reminder signal volume by turning the control knob. ▶

1) The Qi standard makes it possible to charge your mobile device wirelessly.

Switch off pop-up: when the function is switched on ☑, the messages in the Infotainment system display regarding the charging status of your cell phone in the Audi phone box are hidden. The reminder not to forget your cell phone when leaving the vehicle is also switched off.

Tool tips

When this function is switched on ☑, your MMI shows you tips for input. The frequency of how often it displays decreases with time.

Speech dialog system

Applies to: vehicles with voice recognition system

Depending on vehicle equipment, the following functions may be available:

Command display: when this function is switched on ☑, the MMI will show you the possible commands for voice input in the respective menu.

Short dialog: when this function is switched on ☑, a shorter form of the prompts is used.

Command during voice output: this function is switched on at the factory. When this function is switched on ☑, you can say new commands during announcements. You do not need to wait for the signal tone (beep) during an announcement. When the function is switched off ☐, you need to wait for the signal tone (beep) to say a new command.

Volume: you can adjust the volume of the prompts by turning the control knob.

Individual speech training (only when the vehicle is stationary): you can adapt the voice recognition system to your voice or pronunciation in order to improve the system's ability to recognize your speech. Individual speech training is comprised of 20 speech entries that consist of commands and sequences of numbers. You can delete the programmed voice training with the **Reset individual speech training** function.

Display brightness

You can adjust the brightness of the Infotainment system display by turning the control knob.

Factory settings

Depending on the vehicle equipment, the following functions can be reset to factory settings:

- **Sound settings**
- **Radio**
- **Media settings**
- **Jukebox**
- **Directory**
- **Telephone**
- **Bluetooth and Wi-Fi**
- **Navigation settings**
- **Navigation and online memory**
- **Speech dialog system**
- **Message settings**
- **Apps**
- **Tool tips**
- **Audi connect**
- **Audi smartphone interface**

You can select the desired functions individually or all at once with the option **Select all entries**. Select and confirm **Restore factory settings**.

Tips

Make sure that not only the settings were deleted but also the stored data, if necessary.

Connection manager

Introduction

The connection manager provides an overview of your connected devices and their network status:

- ▸ Select: MENU button > **Settings** > left control button > **MMI settings** > **Connection manager**.
- ▸ Select and confirm a menu item.

If a mobile device was already connected and you select and confirm the corresponding menu item, the device name and connection status are displayed under the menu item.

You can individually **connect** (☑) or **disconnect** (☐) a paired device.

Requirement: the vehicle must be stationary and the ignition must be switched on. The Bluetooth settings will open on your mobile device during the connection setup. The Bluetooth function and ▶

visibility of the MMI ⇨ *page 233* and mobile device must be switched on. The mobile device to be connected must not be connected to any other Bluetooth device.

Primary phone

Applies to: vehicles with telephone

- ▸ **Connect new device**: search for and connect a cell phone.
- ▸ **List of devices already paired**: select your cell phone from the list of all the devices that are already paired.

Secondary phone

Applies to: vehicles with telephone, and Audi phone box

- ▸ **Connect new device**: search for and connect a cell phone.
- ▸ **List of devices already paired**: select your cell phone from the list of all the devices that are already paired.

Data connection

Applies to: vehicles with Audi connect Infotainment

The data connection is made using the embedded SIM card [1] ⇨ *page 183*. You do not need to adjust any additional settings.

Note

Always follow the information found in ⇨ ⓘ *in General information on page 182*.

myAudi app

Applies to: vehicles with Audi connect Infotainment

Requirement: the **myAudi** app must be installed and open on your mobile device.

- ▸ **Connect new device**: search for and connect a mobile device (such as a smartphone).
- ▸ **List of devices already paired**: select your mobile device from the list of all the devices that are already paired.

Audio player

Applies to: vehicles with Bluetooth or Wi-Fi audio player

Bluetooth player

Requirement: the Bluetooth function and visibility must be switched on in the MMI ⇨ *page 233* and on the Bluetooth audio player.

- ▸ **Connect new device**: press the control knob.
- ▸ Select **Bluetooth audio player**.
- ▸ Search for and connect a mobile device.
- ▸ **List of devices already paired**: select a Bluetooth device from the list of all the devices that are already paired.

Wi-Fi audio player

Requirement: the Wi-Fi hotspot on the MMI ⇨ *page 187* and on your Wi-Fi audio player must be switched on.

- ▸ **Connect new device**: press the control knob. Search for and connect a Wi-Fi capable device.
- ▸ **Disconnecting** the **Wi-Fi audio player**: deactivate the Wi-Fi on your Wi-Fi capable device. The device will be automatically removed from the list.

Note

Always follow the information found in ⇨ ⓘ *in General information on page 182*.

Directory

Applies to: vehicles with telephone

Display contacts from a cell phone (or an additional cell phone).

Requirement: no cell phones can be connected to the MMI using the **Handsfree** profile.

- ▸ **Connect new device**: search for and connect a new cell phone.
- ▸ **List of devices already paired**: select your cell phone from the list of all the cell phones that are already paired.

[1] SIM card installed in the vehicle at the factory.

Audi smartphone interface

Applies to: vehicles with Audi smartphone interface

- ► Connect your cell phone to the Audi music interface ⇨ *page 217* using a USB adapter ⇨ *page 217, fig. 190*.
- ► Select your cell phone from the list of cell phones that have already been connected.

Additional options

Depending on the selected function, you can use the right control button to access the available additional options in the connection manager.

Delete Bluetooth device*

The selected cell phone/mobile device is disconnected from the MMI and is removed from the list of all devices that are already paired.

Show Bluetooth profiles*

You can individually **Connect** or **Disconnect** the **Handsfree**, **Messages***, **Directory/contacts** and **Bluetooth audio player** profiles.

Bluetooth settings*

- – **Bluetooth**: select and confirm a setting for the Bluetooth connection visibility. Select **Visible** for the MMI to be visible to other devices. Select **Invisible** for the MMI to not be visible to other devices. However, it is still possible to establish a Bluetooth connection with paired devices when the visibility is switched off. Select **Off** to turn visibility off. Then a Bluetooth connection is not possible.
- – **Bluetooth audio player**: when this function is switched on ☑, the Bluetooth audio player is available as a source in the **Media** menu.
- – **Bluetooth name**: the MMI Bluetooth name (for example "AUDI MMI") is displayed and can be changed.

Online settings*

- – **Data usage counter**: the amount of data packets that are sent and received through the MMI is displayed. You can reset the data usage information to zero using the **Reset data counter** option.
- – **Network status**: the mobile network provider for data service as well as the network status are displayed.

Wi-Fi settings*

See ⇨ *page 187*.

Storing as a default telephone

Applies to: vehicles with telephone

Requirement: a mobile device must be connected to the MMI ⇨ *page 169*.

When the mobile device is in range and the Bluetooth function on the mobile device and in the MMI is switched on, this mobile device will be given priority over the other Bluetooth devices and will be connected directly to the MMI. The connected mobile device is displayed first in the device list.

Network settings*

- – **Login**: you can chose an **Automatic** login to your cell phone service provider's network, or you can choose a **Manual** login from the list of available networks.
- – **Network selection**: available networks in the present location can be selected under network selection. This function is only available for the **Manual** login setting.

Apple CarPlay sound settings/Android Auto sound settings

Applies to: vehicles with Audi smartphone interface

See ⇨ *page 234*.

About Apple CarPlay/About Android Auto

Applies to: vehicles with Audi smartphone interface

Here you will find legal information regarding the use of Apple CarPlay or Android Auto and information about device-specific data exchange.

Delete Apple CarPlay device/Delete Android Auto device

Applies to: vehicles with Audi smartphone interface

Requirement: your cell phone must not be connected to the Audi music interface with a USB adapter.

Select: **Audi smartphone interface** > a device from the list > right control button. ►

To remove your mobile device from the list, select and confirm **Delete Apple CarPlay device** or **Delete Android Auto device**.

System update

▸ Select: MENU button > **Settings** > left control button > **System maintenance**.

– **System update**: insert the storage device with the update data into the appropriate drive ⇨ *page 212*. Select and confirm: *the drive* > **Start update**. The length of the process depends on the size of the update.
– **Reset driver installation**: the selected media driver package is reset to the settings at the time of delivery.
– **Version information**: information on the MMI software version and the navigation database* software version is displayed. The **Software information** function also provides information on the software contained in the MMI and the licensing agreement.

Sound settings

The sound distribution and volume of the MMI can be adjusted individually. The settings depend on the vehicle equipment.

▸ Select: MENU button > **Sound** > left control button > **Entertainment**.

Treble/Bass

You can adjust the **Treble** and **Bass** settings by turning the control knob. The changed settings only apply for the audio source that is active at the time. This allows you to adjust the sound settings for each audio source separately.

Balance/fader (Sound focus)

– **Adjusting the sound distribution to the left or right**: press the control knob. Turn the control knob to the left or right to the desired position.
– **Adjusting the sound distribution to the front or rear**: press the control knob again. Turn the control knob to the left or right to the desired position.
– **Adjusting the sound distribution using the MMI touch**: move your finger on the MMI touch control panel in the desired direction.

Sound effects

Select and confirm a **Focus** setting:
– **All**: all speakers in the vehicle are active (symmetrical sound distribution).
– **Front**: only the speakers in the front of the vehicle are active.
– **Rear**: only the speakers in the rear of the vehicle are active.

Surround level

Turn the control knob to adjust the surround sound level.

Subwoofer

Turn the control knob to adjust the subwoofer.

Speed dependent volume control

Turn the control knob to adjust the playback volume to the noise inside the vehicle.

Volume settings

Adjusting the volume

The volume of an audio source or a system message (for example, from the voice recognition system*) can be adjusted directly while the sound is playing using the On/Off knob.

▸ **Increasing or decreasing the volume**: turn the On/Off knob ① ⇨ *page 146, fig. 144* to the right or left.
▸ **Muting or pausing**: press the On/Off knob briefly, or:
▸ Turn the On/Off knob to the left until the symbol ⑫ ⇨ *page 155* appears. An active audio/video source is stopped.
▸ **Unmuting or resuming**: press the On/Off knob briefly, or:
▸ Turn the On/Off knob to the right.

WARNING

To reduce the risk of an accident, adjust the volume of the audio system so that audible signals from outside the vehicle, such as ▶

police and fire sirens, can be heard easily at all times.

Tips

The volume is automatically adjusted to a preset level when the MMI is switched on.

Adjusting the system volume

▸ Select: MENU button > **Sound** > left control button.

Telephone

Applies to: vehicles with telephone

Mute telephone: messages and ringtones are set to mute.

Ringtone: see ⇨ *page 180,* **Ringtone and volume settings**.

Ringtone volume: you can adjust the volume of the selected ringtone by turning the control knob.

Message volume: you can adjust the volume of the notification for an incoming text message by turning the control knob.

Microphone input level: you can adjust the call volume during a phone call by turning the control knob.

Navigation

Applies to: vehicles with navigation system

Voice guidance: see ⇨ *page 198*.

Voice guidance during phone call: see ⇨ *page 198*.

Voice guidance volume: you can adjust the voice guidance volume by turning the control knob or you can adjust it while route guidance is active by turning the On/Off knob.

Entertainment fader: the volume of audio playback can be temporarily lowered when the parking system or voice guidance is active.

Voice recognition system

Applies to: vehicles with voice recognition system

Command display: see ⇨ *page 231*.

Short dialog: see ⇨ *page 231*.

Speech dialog system volume: see ⇨ *page 231*.

Individual speech training: see ⇨ *page 231*.

Parking aid*

You can adjust the volume of the signal tone by turning the control knob.

– **Adjusting** the **Front volume**: select and confirm **High**, **Medium** or **Low**.
– **Adjusting** the **Rear volume**: select and confirm **High**, **Medium** or **Low**.

MMI touch*

Turn the control knob to adjust the volume of the spoken prompts from the MMI touch*.

Restarting the MMI

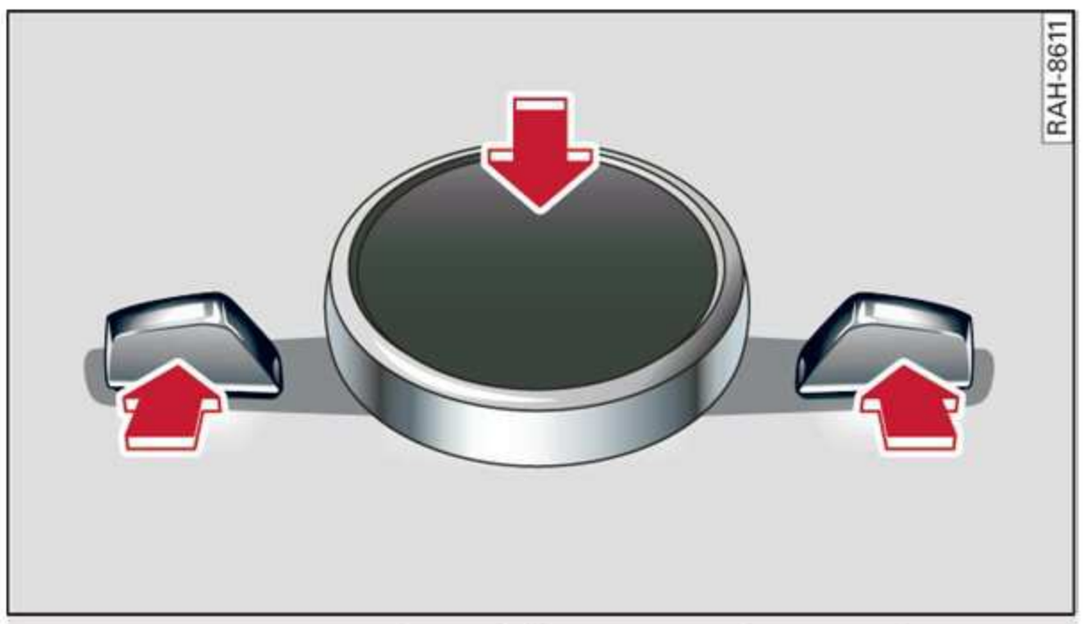


Fig. 197 MMI control panel: button combination for restart

▸ Briefly press the control knob and both buttons *at the same time* to immediately open the menu upward ⇨ *fig. 197*.

Software license information

Information on MMI software and licensing agreements

▸ Select: MENU button > **Settings** > left control button > **System maintenance** > **Version information**, or:
▸ online at www.audi.com/softwareinfo. ▶

Information on instrument cluster software and licensing agreements

- Press the reset button twice within five seconds after switching the ignition on [1].

1) Not available in all vehicles.

Driving safety

Basics

Safe driving habits

Please remember - safety first!

The individual safety features of your vehicle can work together as a system to help protect you and your passengers in a wide range of accidents. These features cannot work as a system if they are not always correctly adjusted and correctly used.

This chapter contains important information, tips, instructions and warnings that you need to read and observe for your own safety, the safety of your passengers and others. We have summarized here what you need to know about safety belts, airbags, child restraints as well as child safety. Your safety is for us *priority number 1*. Always observe the information and warnings in this section - for your own safety as well as that of your passengers.

The information in this section applies to all model versions of your vehicle. Some of the features described in this sections may be standard equipment on some models, or may be optional equipment on others. If you are not sure, ask your authorized Audi dealer.

WARNING

- Always make sure that you follow the instructions and heed the WARNINGS in this Manual. It is in your interest and in the interest of your passengers.
- Always keep the complete Owner's Literature in your Audi when you lend or sell your vehicle so that this important information will always be available to the driver and passengers.
- Always keep the Owner's literature handy so that you can find it easily if you have questions.

Important things to do before driving

Safety is everybody's job! Vehicle and occupant safety always depends on the informed and careful driver.

For your safety and the safety of your passengers, **before driving always:**

- ▸ Make sure that all lights and signals are operating correctly.
- ▸ Make sure that the tire pressure is correct.
- ▸ Make sure that all windows are clean and afford good visibility to the outside.
- ▸ Secure all luggage and other items carefully ⇨ *page 60*, ⇨ *page 60*.
- ▸ Make sure that nothing can interfere with the pedals.
- ▸ Adjust front seat, head restraint and mirrors correctly for your height.
- ▸ Instruct passengers to adjust the head restraints according to their height.
- ▸ Make sure to use the right child restraint correctly to protect children ⇨ *page 278, Child safety*.
- ▸ Sit properly in your seat and make sure that your passengers do the same ⇨ *page 54, Front seats*.
- ▸ Fasten your safety belt and wear it properly. Also instruct your passengers to fasten their safety belts properly ⇨ *page 245*.

What impairs driving safety?

Safe driving is directly related to the condition of the vehicle, the driver as well as the driver's ability to concentrate on the road without being distracted.

The driver is responsible for the safety of the vehicle and all of its occupants. If your ability to drive is impaired, safety risks for everybody in the vehicle increase and you also become a hazard to everyone else on the road ⇨ ⚠. Therefore:

- ▸ Do not let yourself be distracted by passengers or by using a cellular telephone.
- ▸ NEVER drive when your driving ability is impaired (by medications, alcohol, drugs, etc.).
- ▸ Observe all traffic laws, rules of the road and speed limits and plain common sense. ▶

- ALWAYS adjust your speed to road, traffic and weather conditions.
- Take frequent breaks on long trips. Do not drive for more than two hours at a stretch.
- Do NOT drive when you are tired, under pressure or when you are stressed.

WARNING

Impaired driving safety increases the risk of serious personal injury and death whenever a vehicle is being used.

Safety systems monitoring

The indicator light in the instrument cluster monitors the safety systems such as the airbags (including the control modules, sensors, and wiring) and the belt tensioners. It turns on when you switch the ignition on and turns off after several seconds.

If the indicator light does not turn on when the ignition is switched on, does not turn off after several seconds, or turns on or flashes while driving, there may be a malfunction in one of the safety systems. Drive to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility immediately to have the malfunction corrected.

WARNING

Have the malfunction in the safety systems inspected immediately. Otherwise, there is a risk that the systems may not activate during an accident, which increases the risk of serious or fatal injury.

Correct passenger seating positions

Proper seating position for the driver

The proper driver seating position is important for safe, relaxed driving.

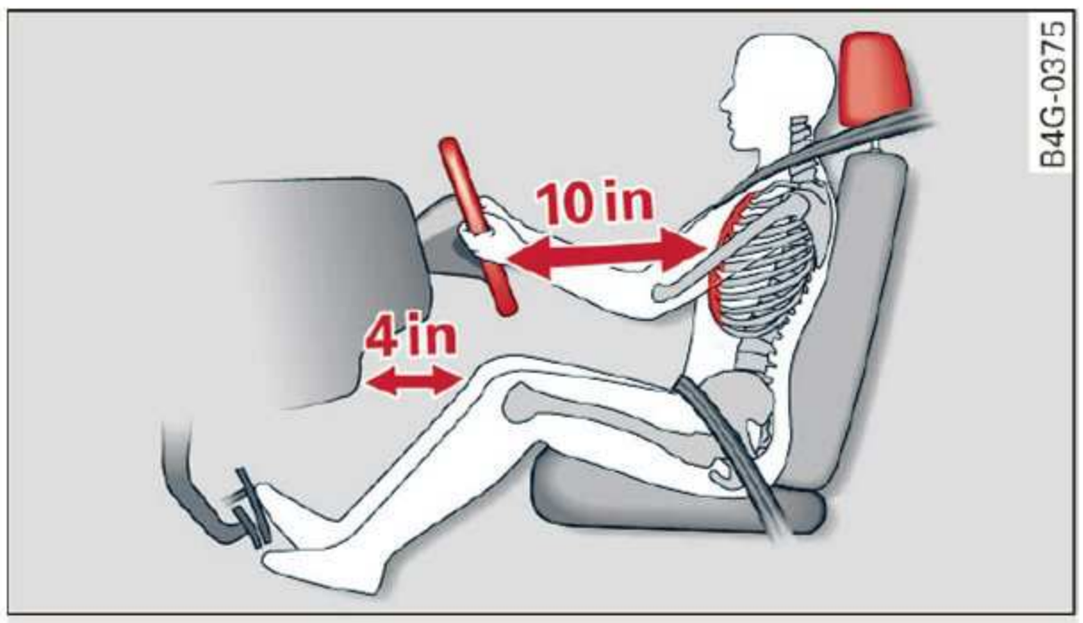


Fig. 198 Correct seating position

For your own safety and to reduce the risk of injury in the event of an accident, we recommend that you adjust the driver's seat to the following position:

- Adjust the driver's seat so that you can easily push the pedals all the way to the floor while keeping your knee(s) slightly bent ⇨ ⚠.
- Adjust the angle of the seatback so that it is in an upright position so that your back comes in full contact with it when you drive.
- Adjust the steering wheel so that there is a distance of at least 10 inches (25 cm) between the steering wheel and your breast bone ⇨ *fig. 198*. If not possible, see your authorized Audi dealership about adaptive equipment.
- Adjust the steering wheel so that the steering wheel and airbag cover points at your chest and not at your face.
- Grasp the top of the steering wheel with your elbow(s) slightly bent.
- For adjustable head restraints: Adjust the head restraint so the upper edge is as even as possible with the top of your head. If that is not possible, try to adjust the head restraint so that it is as close to this position as possible. Move the head restraint so that it is as close to the back of the head as possible.
- Fasten and wear safety belts correctly ⇨ *page 248*.

► Always keep both feet in the footwell so that you are in control of the vehicle at all times.

For detailed information on how to adjust the driver's seat, see ⇨ *page 54*.

WARNING

Drivers who are unbelted, out of position or too close to the airbag can be seriously injured by an airbag as it unfolds. To help reduce the risk of serious personal injury:

– Always adjust the driver's seat and the steering wheel so that there are at least 10 inches (25 cm) between your breastbone and the steering wheel.
– Always adjust the driver's seat and the steering wheel so that there are at least 4 inches (10 cm) between the knees and the lower part of the instrument panel.
– Always hold the steering wheel on the outside of the steering wheel rim with your hands at the 9 o'clock and 3 o'clock positions to help reduce the risk of personal injury if the driver's airbag inflates.
– Never hold the steering wheel at the 12 o'clock position or with your hands at other positions inside the steering wheel rim or on the steering wheel hub. Holding the steering wheel the wrong way can cause serious injuries to the hands, arms and head if the driver's airbag inflates.
– Pointing the steering wheel toward your face decreases the ability of the supplemental driver's airbag to protect you in a collision.
– Always sit in an upright position and never lean against or place any part of your body too close to the area where the airbags are located.
– Before driving, always adjust the front seats properly and make sure that all passengers are properly restrained.
– For adjustable head restraints: before driving, always also adjust the head restraints properly.
– Never adjust the seats while the vehicle is moving. Your seat may move unexpectedly and you could lose control of the vehicle.
– Never drive with the backrest reclined or tilted far back! The farther the backrests are tilted back, the greater the risk of injury due to incorrect positioning of the safety belt and improper seating position.
– Children must always ride in child seats ⇨ *page 278*. Special precautions apply when installing a child seat on the front passenger seat ⇨ *page 253*.

Proper seating position for the front passenger

The proper front passenger seating position is important for safe, relaxed driving.

For your own safety and to reduce the risk of injury in the event of an accident, we recommend that you adjust the seat for the front passenger to the following position:

► Adjust the angle of the seatback so that it is in an upright position and your back comes in full contact with it whenever the vehicle is moving.
► For adjustable head restraints: adjust the head restraint so the upper edge is as even as possible with the top of your head. If that is not possible, try to adjust the head restraint so that it is as close to this position as possible ⇨ *page 57*. Move the head restraint so that it is as close to the back of the head as possible.
► Keep both feet flat on the floor in front of the front passenger seat.
► Fasten and wear safety belts correctly ⇨ *page 248*.

For detailed information on how to adjust the front passenger's seat, see ⇨ *page 54*.

WARNING

Front seat passengers who are unbelted, out of position or too close to the airbag can be seriously injured or killed by the airbag as it unfolds. To help reduce the risk of serious personal injury:

– Passengers must always sit in an upright position and never lean against or place any part of their body too close to the area where the airbags are located.

– Passengers who are unbelted, out of position or too close to the airbag can be seriously injured by an airbag as it unfolds with great force in the blink of an eye.
– Always make sure that there are at least 10 inches (25 cm) between the front passenger's breastbone and the instrument panel.
– Always make sure that there are at least 4 inches (10 cm) between the front passenger's knees and the lower part of the instrument panel.
– Each passenger must always sit on a seat of their own and properly fasten and wear the safety belt belonging to that seat.
– Before driving, always adjust the front passenger seat properly.
– For adjustable head restraints: before driving, always also adjust the head restraints properly.
– Always keep your feet on the floor in front of the seat. Never rest them on the seat, instrument panel, out of the window, etc. The airbag system and safety belt will not be able to protect you properly and can even increase the risk of injury in a crash.
– Never drive with the backrest reclined or tilted far back! The farther the backrests are tilted back, the greater the risk of injury due to incorrect positioning of the safety belt and improper seating position.
– Children must always ride in child seats ⇨ *page 278*. Special precautions apply when installing a child seat on the front passenger seat ⇨ *page 253*.

Proper seating positions for passengers in rear seats

Rear seat passengers must sit upright with both feet on the floor consistent with their physical size and be properly restrained whenever the vehicle is in use.

To reduce the risk of injury caused by an incorrect seating position in the event of a sudden braking maneuver or an accident, your passengers on the rear bench seat must always observe the following:

- For adjustable head restraints: adjust the head restraint so the upper edge is as even as possible with the top of your head. If that is not possible, try to adjust the head restraint so that it is as close to this position as possible ⇨ *page 57*.
- Keep both feet flat in the footwell in front of the rear seat.
- Fasten and wear safety belts properly ⇨ *page 248*.
- Make sure that children are always properly restrained in a child restraint that is appropriate for their size and age ⇨ *page 278*.

WARNING

Passengers who are improperly seated on the rear seat can be seriously injured in a crash.
– Each passenger must always sit on a seat of their own and properly fasten and wear the safety belt belonging to that seat.
– Safety belts only offer maximum protection when the safety belts are properly positioned on the body and securely latched. By not sitting upright, a rear seat passenger increases the risk of personal injury from improperly positioned safety belts!
– For adjustable head restraints: always adjust the head restraint properly so that it can give maximum protection.

Examples of improper seating positions

The occupant restraint system can only reduce the risk of injury if vehicle occupants are properly seated.

Improper seating positions can cause serious injury or death. Safety belts can only work when they are properly positioned on the body. Improper seating positions reduce the effectiveness of safety belts and will even increase the risk of injury and death by moving the safety belt to critical areas of the body. Improper seating positions also increase the risk of serious injury and death when an airbag deploys and strikes an occupant who is not in the proper seating position. A driver is responsible for the safety of all vehicle occupants and especially for children. Therefore: ▶

► Never allow anyone to assume an incorrect seating position when the vehicle is being used ⇨ ⚠.

The following bulletins list only some sample positions that will increase the risk of serious injury and death. Our hope is that these examples will make you more aware of seating positions that are dangerous.

Therefore, whenever the vehicle is moving:

– never stand up in the vehicle
– never stand on the seats
– never kneel on the seats
– never ride with the seatback reclined
– never lie down on the seats
– never lean up against the instrument panel
– never sit on the edge of the seat
– never sit sideways
– never lean out the window
– never put your feet out the window
– never put your feet on the instrument panel
– never rest your feet on the seat cushion or back of the seat
– never ride in the footwell
– never ride in the cargo area

⚠ WARNING

Improper seating positions increase the risk of serious personal injury and death whenever a vehicle is being used.

– Always make sure that all vehicle occupants stay in a proper seating position and are properly restrained whenever the vehicle is being used.

Driver's and front passenger's footwell

Important safety instructions

Applies to: vehicles with knee airbags

⚠ WARNING

Always make sure that the knee airbag can inflate without interference. Objects between yourself and the airbag can increase the risk of injury in an accident by interfering with the way the airbag deploys or by being pushed into you as the airbag deploys.

– No persons or animals should ride in the footwell in front of the passenger seat. If the airbag deploys, this can result in serious or fatal injuries.
– No objects of any kind should be carried in the footwell area in front of the driver's or passenger's seat. Bulky objects (shopping bags, for example) can hamper or prevent proper deployment of the airbag. Small objects can be thrown through the vehicle if the airbag deploys and injure you or your passengers.

Pedal area

Pedals

The pedals must always be free to move and must never be interfered with by a floor mat or any other object.

Make sure that all pedals move freely without interference and that nothing prevents them from returning to their original positions.

Only use floor mats that leave the pedal area free and can be secured with floor mat fasteners.

If a brake circuit fails, increased brake pedal travel is required to bring the vehicle to a full stop.

⚠ WARNING

Pedals that cannot move freely can cause loss of vehicle control and increase the risk of serious injury.

– Never place any objects in the driver's footwell. An object could get into the pedal area and interfere with pedal function. In case of sudden braking or an accident, you would not be able to brake or accelerate!
– Always make sure that nothing can fall or move into the driver's footwell.

Floor mats on the driver side

Always use floor mats that can be securely attached to the floor mat fasteners and do not interfere with the free movement of the pedals.

- Make sure that the floor mats are properly secured and cannot move and interfere with the pedals ⇨ ⚠.

Use only floor mats that leave the pedal area unobstructed and that are firmly secured so that they cannot slip out of position. You can obtain suitable floor mats from your authorized Audi Dealer.

Floor mat fasteners are installed in your Audi.

Floor mats used in your vehicle must be attached to these fasteners. Properly securing the floor mats will prevent them from sliding into positions that could interfere with the pedals or impair safe operation of your vehicle in other ways.

⚠ WARNING

Pedals that cannot move freely can result in a loss of vehicle control and increase the risk of serious personal injury.

– Always make sure that floor mats are properly secured.
– Never place or install floor mats or other floor coverings in the vehicle that cannot be properly secured in place to prevent them from slipping and interfering with the pedals or the ability to control the vehicle.
– Never place or install floor mats or other floor coverings on top of already installed floor mats. Additional floor mats and other coverings will reduce the size of the pedal area and interfere with the pedals.
– Always properly reinstall and secure floor mats that have been taken out for cleaning.
– Always make sure that objects cannot fall into the driver footwell while the vehicle is moving. Objects can become trapped under the brake pedal and accelerator pedal causing a loss of vehicle control.

Active rollover protection system

Function

Applies to: vehicles with power top

The rollover protection system protects vehicle occupants in the event of a rollover.



Fig. 199 Rear seats: rollbar deployment range



Fig. 200 Rear seats: deployed rollbar

The active rollover protection system consists of:

– two rollbars
– the safety belts with belt tensioners
– the windshield frame
– the rollover sensors

The active rollover protection system provides additional safety in the event of a rollover. Within milliseconds, sensors deploy two rollbars located behind the head restraints in the rear seats ⇨ *fig. 200*.

The rollbars, reinforced windshield frame and belt tensioners help protect front and rear passengers in the event of a rollover.

The rollover protection system functions when the power top is both open and closed. ▶

WARNING

Do not use the area behind the rear seat head restraints ⇨ *fig. 199* as a seat or storage area. This is the area where the rollbars deploy. If the rollover protection system is triggered, objects placed there can be propelled through the vehicle and make it more difficult for the rollbars to deploy. This increases the risk for serious or life-threatening injuries.

When is rollover protection deployed?

Applies to: vehicles with power top

Rollover protection deploys in a collision or rollover.

Depending on the collision, sensors throughout the vehicle and the control module trigger the rollover system to deploy.

For safety reasons, rollover protection also deploys during front, side and rear collisions above a certain level of severity.

Retracting rollover protection

Applies to: vehicles with power top

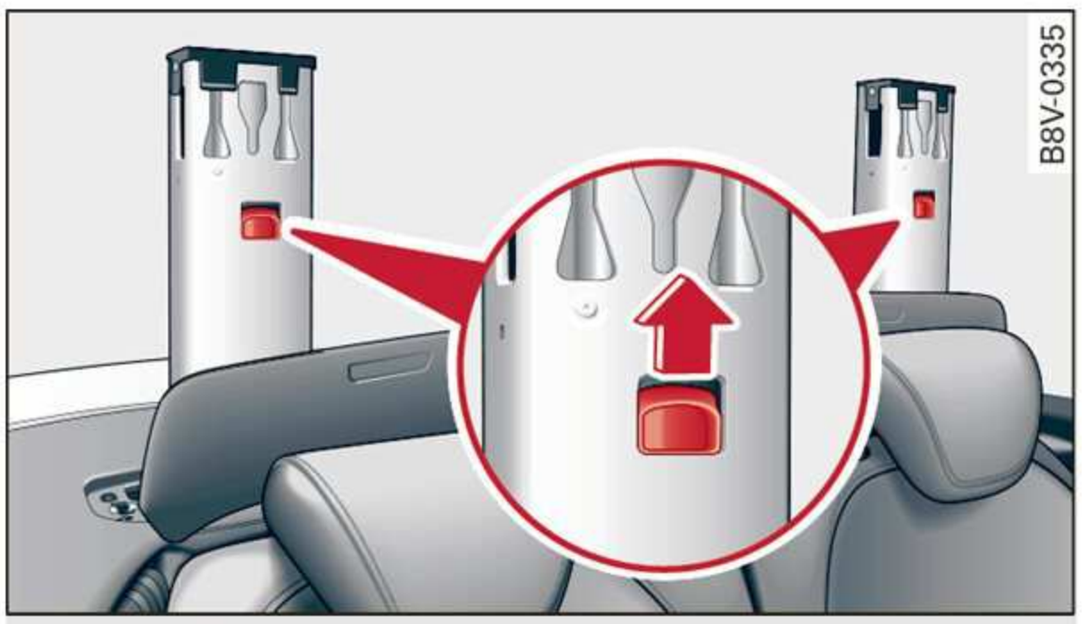


Fig. 201 Deployed rollbar with release loop.

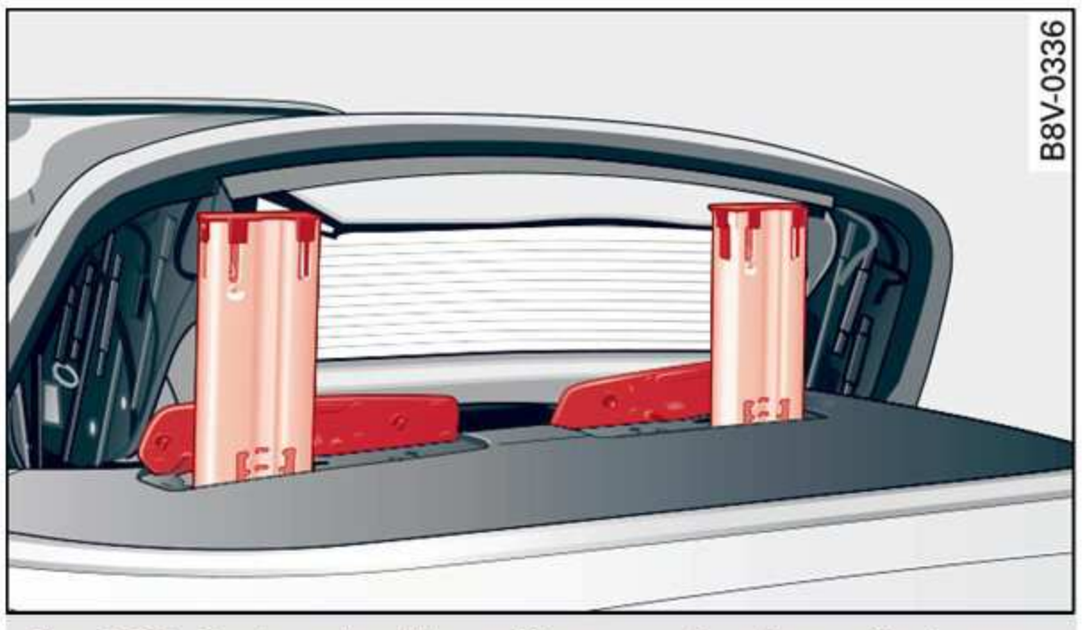


Fig. 202 Deployed rollbar with power top frame facing upward.

If the rollover protection has triggered but the vehicle was not involved in an accident, you can retract the rollover protection yourself in an emergency. Drive to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility immediately to have the malfunction corrected.

With the power top open

- ▸ Pull the loop upward in the direction of the arrow and hold it in place ⇨ *fig. 201*.
- ▸ Slide the rollbar down.
- ▸ Release the loop just before the rollbar reaches its end position (1-2 in. / 3-5 cm).
- ▸ Press the rollbar down until it stops.
- ▸ Make sure the rollbar is secure before releasing it.
- ▸ Close the cover Ⓐ ⇨ *fig. 202*.
- ▸ Repeat the procedure on the other rollbar.

With the power top closed

- ▸ Switch the ignition on.
- ▸ Press the power top switch to adjust the power top frame until it is vertical ⇨ *fig. 202*.
- ▸ Pull the loop upward in the direction of the arrow and hold it in place ⇨ *fig. 201*.
- ▸ Slide the rollbar down.
- ▸ Release the loop just before the rollbar reaches its end position (1-2 in. / 3-5 cm).
- ▸ Press the rollbar down until it stops.
- ▸ Make sure the rollbar is secure before releasing it.
- ▸ Close the cover Ⓐ ⇨ *fig. 202*.
- ▸ Repeat the procedure on the other rollbar.
- ▸ You can now close the power top again.

WARNING

– Make sure your head or other parts of your body are not located in the area above the rollbar when pressing the rollbar down. If the rollbar is not secured correctly, it could deploy again as soon as you release it and cause injuries.

– Have the rollover protection system checked by and authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility if it malfunctions. Otherwise the system may not deploy correctly in a collision.

– Modifying the rollover protection system or individual components is not permitted.
– Work on the rollover protection system should only be performed by an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility. Otherwise the system may not function correctly in a collision or it could deploy unexpectedly.
– Have the system inspected at service intervals. This ensures the system will always be ready for use. Have an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility check the rollover protection system every two years at the latest.

Safety belts

General notes

Always wear safety belts!

Wearing safety belts correctly saves lives!

This chapter explains why safety belts are necessary, how they work and how to adjust and wear them correctly.

► Read all the information that follows and heed all of the instructions and WARNINGS.

WARNING

Not wearing safety belts or wearing them improperly increases the risk of serious personal injury and death.

– Safety belts are the single most effective means available to reduce the risk of serious injury and death in automobile accidents. For your protection and that of your passengers, always correctly wear safety belts when the vehicle is moving.
– Pregnant women, injured, or physically impaired persons must also use safety belts. Like all vehicle occupants, they are more likely to be seriously injured if they do not wear safety belts. The best way to protect a fetus is to protect the mother - throughout the entire pregnancy.
– Never strap more than one person, including small children, into any belt. It is especially dangerous to place a safety belt over a child sitting on your lap.
– Never let more people ride in the vehicle than there are safety belts available.
– Be sure everyone riding in the vehicle is properly restrained with a separate safety belt or child restraint.

Number of seats

Applies to: vehicles without power top: Your Audi has a total of five seating positions: two in the front and three in the rear. Each seating position has a safety belt.

Applies to: vehicles with power top: Your Audi has a total of four seating positions: two in the front and two in the rear. Each seating position has a safety belt.

WARNING

Not wearing safety belts or wearing them improperly increases the risk of serious personal injury and death.

Safety belt warning light

Your vehicle has a warning system for the driver and front seat passenger to remind you about the importance of buckling-up.



Fig. 203 Safety belt warning light in the instrument cluster - enlarged

Before driving off, always:

► Fasten your safety belt and make sure you are wearing it properly.
► Make sure that your passengers also buckle up and properly wear their safety belts.
► Protect children with a child restraint system appropriate for the size and age.

The warning light in the instrument cluster lights up when the ignition is on as a reminder to fasten the safety belts. In addition, you will hear a warning tone for a certain period of time.

Fasten your safety belt and make sure that your passengers also properly put on their safety belts.

WARNING

– Safety belts are the single most effective means available to reduce the risk of serious injury and death in automobile accidents. ▶

For your protection and that of your passengers, always correctly wear safety belts when the vehicle is moving.
– Failure to pay attention to the warning light that come on, could lead to personal injury.

Why use safety belts?

Frontal collisions and the law of physics

Frontal crashes create very strong forces for people riding in vehicles.

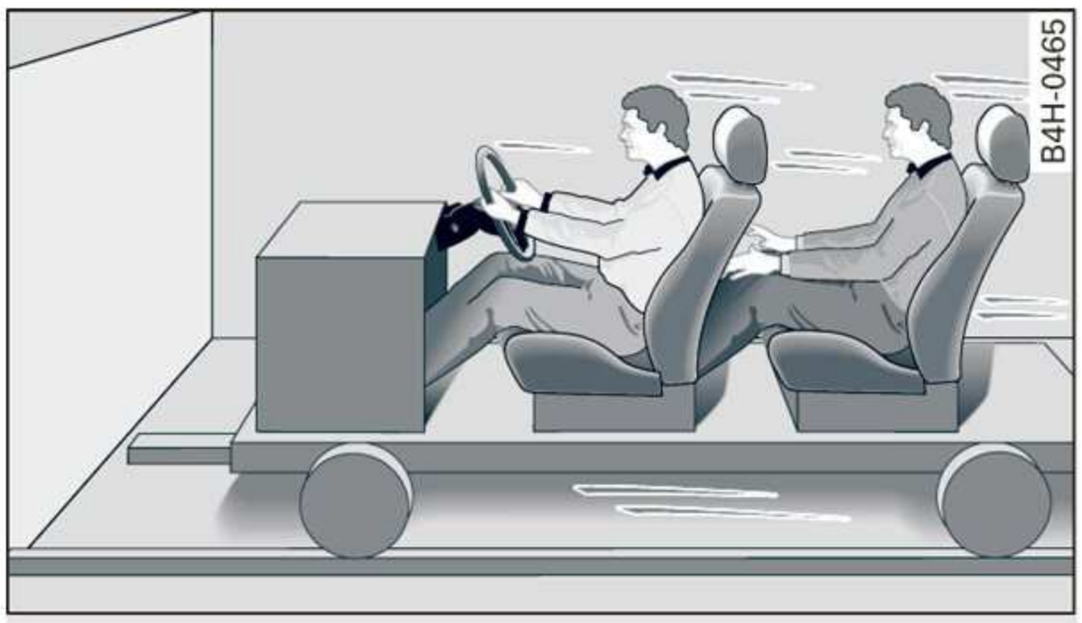


Fig. 204 Unbelted occupants in a vehicle heading for a wall

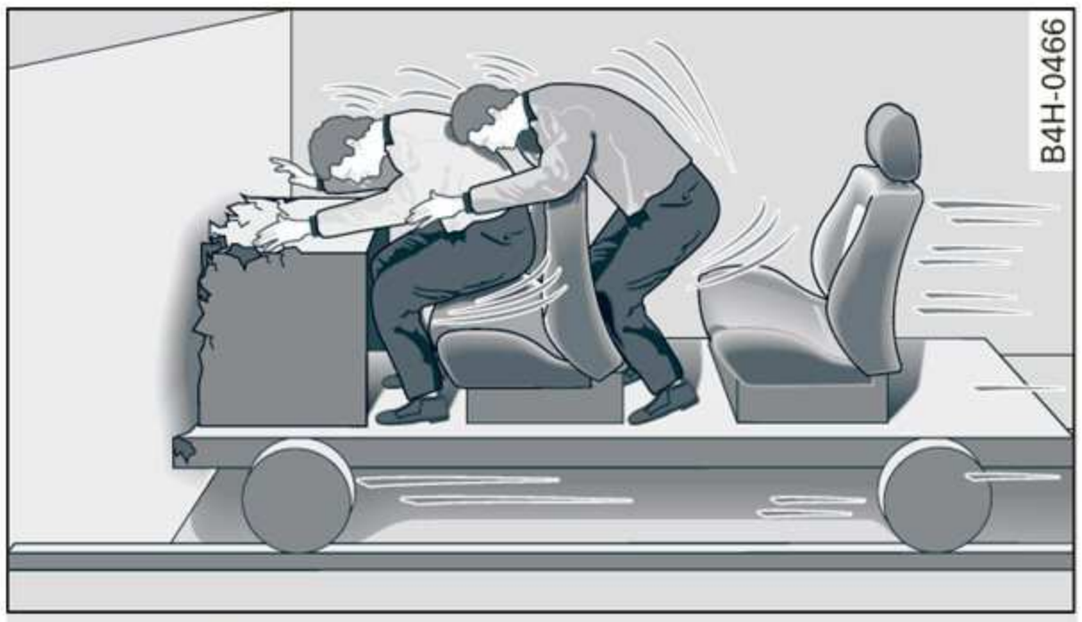


Fig. 205 The vehicle crashes into the wall

The physical principles are simple. Both the vehicle and the passengers possess energy which varies with vehicle speed and body weight. Engineers call this energy “kinetic energy.”

The higher the speed of the vehicle and the greater the vehicle's weight, the more energy that has to be “absorbed” in the crash.

Vehicle speed is the most significant factor. If the speed doubles from 15 to 30 mph (25 to 50 km/h), the energy increases 4 times!

Because the passengers of this vehicle are not using safety belts ⇨ *fig. 204*, they will keep moving at the same speed the vehicle was moving just before the crash, until something stops them - here, the wall ⇨ *fig. 205*.

The same principles apply to people sitting in a vehicle that is involved in a frontal collision. Even at city speeds of 20 to 30 mph (30 to 50 km/h), the forces acting on the body can reach one ton (2,000 lbs, or 1,000 kg) or more. At greater speeds, these forces are even higher.

People who do not use safety belts are also not attached to their vehicle. In a frontal collision they will also keep moving forward at the speed their vehicle was travelling just before the crash. Of course, the laws of physics don't just apply to frontal collisions, they determine what happens in all kinds of accidents and collisions.

What happens to occupants not wearing safety belts?

In crashes unbelted occupants cannot stop themselves from flying forward and being injured or killed. Always wear your safety belts!



Fig. 206 A driver not wearing a safety belt is violently thrown forward



Fig. 207 A rear passenger not wearing a safety belt will fly forward and strike the driver

Unbelted occupants are not able to resist the tremendous forces of impact by holding tight or ▶

bracing themselves. Without the benefit of safety restraint systems, the unrestrained occupant will slam violently into the steering wheel, instrument panel, windshield, or whatever else is in the way ⇨ *fig. 206*. This impact with the vehicle interior has all the energy they had just before the crash.

Never rely on airbags alone for protection. Even when they deploy, airbags provide only additional protection. Airbags are not supposed to deploy in all kinds of accidents. Although your Audi is equipped with airbags, all vehicle occupants, including the driver, must wear safety belts correctly in order to minimize the risk of severe injury or death in a crash.

Remember too, that airbags will deploy only once and that your safety belts are always there to offer protection in those accidents in which airbags are not supposed to deploy or when they have already deployed. Unbelted occupants can also be thrown out of the vehicle where even more severe or fatal injuries can occur.

It is also important for the rear passengers to wear safety belts correctly. Unbelted passengers in the rear seats endanger not only themselves but also the driver and other passengers ⇨ *fig. 207*. In a frontal collision they will be thrown forward violently, where they can hit and injure the driver and/or front seat passenger.

Safety belts protect

People think it's possible to use the hands to brace the body in a minor collision. It's simply not true!



Fig. 208 Driver is correctly restrained in a sudden braking maneuver

Safety belts used properly can make a big difference. Safety belts help to keep passengers in their seats, gradually reduce energy levels applied to the body in an accident, and help prevent the uncontrolled movement that can cause serious injuries. In addition, safety belts reduce the danger of being thrown out of the vehicle.

Safety belts attach passengers to the car and give them the benefit of being slowed down more gently or “softly” through the “give” in the safety belts, crush zones and other safety features engineered into today's vehicles. By “absorbing” the kinetic energy over a longer period of time, the safety belts make the forces on the body more “tolerable” and less likely to cause injury.

Although these examples are based on a frontal collision, safety belts can also substantially reduce the risk of injury in other kinds of crashes. So, whether you're on a long trip or just going to the corner store, always buckle up and make sure others do, too. Accident statistics show that vehicle occupants properly wearing safety belts have a lower risk of being injured and a much better chance of surviving an accident. Properly using safety belts also greatly increases the ability of the supplemental airbags to do their job in a collision. For this reason, wearing a safety belt is legally required in most countries including much of the United States and Canada.

Although your Audi is equipped with airbags, you still have to wear the safety belts provided. Front airbags, for example, are activated only in some frontal collisions. The front airbags are not activated in all frontal collisions, in side and rear collisions, in roll overs or in cases where there is not enough deceleration through impact to the front of the vehicle. The same goes for the other airbag systems in your Audi. So, always wear your safety belt and make sure everybody in your vehicle is properly restrained!

Important safety instructions about safety belts

Safety belts must always be correctly positioned across the strongest bones of your body.

- ► Always wear safety belts as illustrated and described in this chapter.
- ► Make sure that your safety belts are always ready for use and are not damaged.

⚠ WARNING

Not wearing safety belts or wearing them improperly increases the risk of serious personal injury and death. Safety belts can work only when used correctly.

- – Always fasten your safety belts correctly before driving off and make sure all passengers are correctly restrained.
- – For maximum protection, safety belts must always be positioned properly on the body.
- – Never strap more than one person, including small children, into any belt.
- – Never place a safety belt over a child sitting on your lap.
- – Always keep feet in the footwell in front of the seat while the vehicle is being driven.
- – Never let any person ride with their feet on the instrument panel or sticking out the window or on the seat.
- – Never remove a safety belt while the vehicle is moving. Doing so will increase your risk of being injured or killed.
- – Never wear belts twisted.
- – Never wear belts over rigid or breakable objects in or on your clothing, such as eye glasses, pens, keys, etc., as these may cause injury.
- – Never allow safety belts to become damaged by being caught in door or seat hardware.
- – Do not wear the shoulder part of the belt under your arm or otherwise out of position.
- – Several layers of heavy clothing may interfere with correct positioning of belts and reduce the overall effectiveness of the system.
- – Always keep belt buckles free of anything that may prevent the buckle from latching securely.
- – Never use comfort clips or devices that create slack in the shoulder belt. However, special clips may be required for the proper use of some child restraint systems.
- – Torn or frayed safety belts can tear, and damaged belt hardware can break in an accident. Inspect belts regularly. If webbing, bindings, buckles, or retractors are damaged, have belts replaced by an authorized Audi dealer or qualified workshop.
- – Safety belts that have been worn and loaded in an accident must be replaced with the correct replacement safety belt by an authorized Audi dealer. Replacement may be necessary even if damage cannot be clearly seen. Anchorages that were loaded must also be inspected.
- – Never remove, modify, disassemble, or try to repair the safety belts yourself.
- – Always keep the belts clean. Dirty belts may not work properly and can impair the function of the inertia reel ⇨ *table Interior cleaning on page 344*.

Safety belts

Fastening safety belts

Safety first - everybody buckle up!

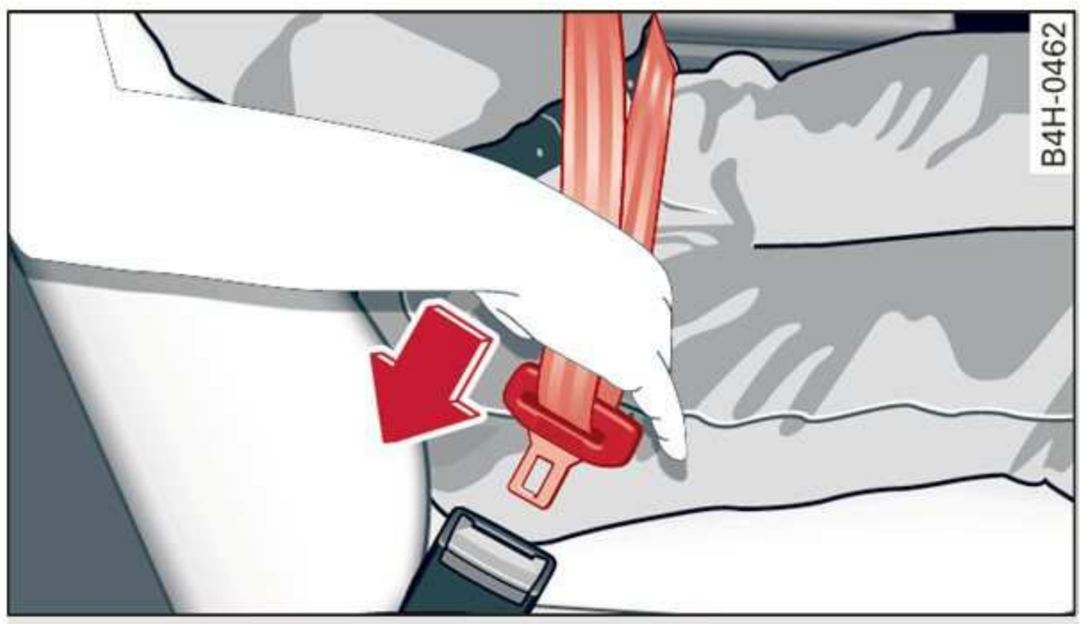


Fig. 209 Belt buckle and tongue on the driver's seat

To provide maximum protection, safety belts must always be positioned correctly on the wearer's body.

- ► Adjust the front seat and head restraint properly ⇨ *page 54, Front seats*. ▶

- ▸ Make sure the seatback of the rear seat bench is in an upright position and securely latched in place before using the belt ⇨ ⚠.
- ▸ Pull the safety belt evenly across the chest and pelvis ⇨ *fig. 209*, ⇨ ⚠.
- ▸ Insert the tongue into the correct buckle of your seat until you hear it latch securely.
- ▸ Pull on the belt to make sure that it is securely latched in the buckle.

Automatic safety belt retractors

Every safety belt is equipped with an automatic belt retractor on the shoulder belt. This feature locks the belt when the belt is pulled out fast, during hard braking and in an accident. The belt may also lock when you drive up or down a steep hill or through a sharp curve. During normal driving the belt lets you move freely.

Safety belt pretensioners

Safety belts with pretensioners help to tighten the safety belt and remove slack when the pretensioners are activated ⇨ *page 252*. The function of the pretensioner is monitored by a warning light ⇨ *page 238*.

Convertible locking retractor

Every safety belt except the one on the driver seat is equipped with a convertible locking retractor that **must** be used when the safety belt is used to attach a child seat. Be sure to read the important information about this feature ⇨ *page 289*.

⚠ WARNING

Improperly positioned safety belts can cause serious injury in an accident ⇨ *page 249, Safety belt position*.

– Safety belts offer optimum protection only when the seatback is upright and belts are properly positioned on the body.
– Always make sure that the rear seat backrest to which the center rear safety belt* is attached is securely latched whenever the rear center safety belt is being used. If the backrest is not securely latched, the passenger will move forward with the backrest during sudden braking, in a sudden maneuver and especially in a crash.
– Never attach the safety belt to the buckle for another seat. Attaching the belt to the wrong buckle will reduce safety belt effectiveness and can cause serious personal injury.
– A passenger who is not properly restrained can be seriously injured by the safety belt itself when it moves from the stronger parts of the body into critical areas like the abdomen.
– Always lock the convertible locking retractor when you are securing a child seat in the vehicle ⇨ *page 290*.

Safety belt position

Correct belt position is the key to getting maximum protection from safety belts.

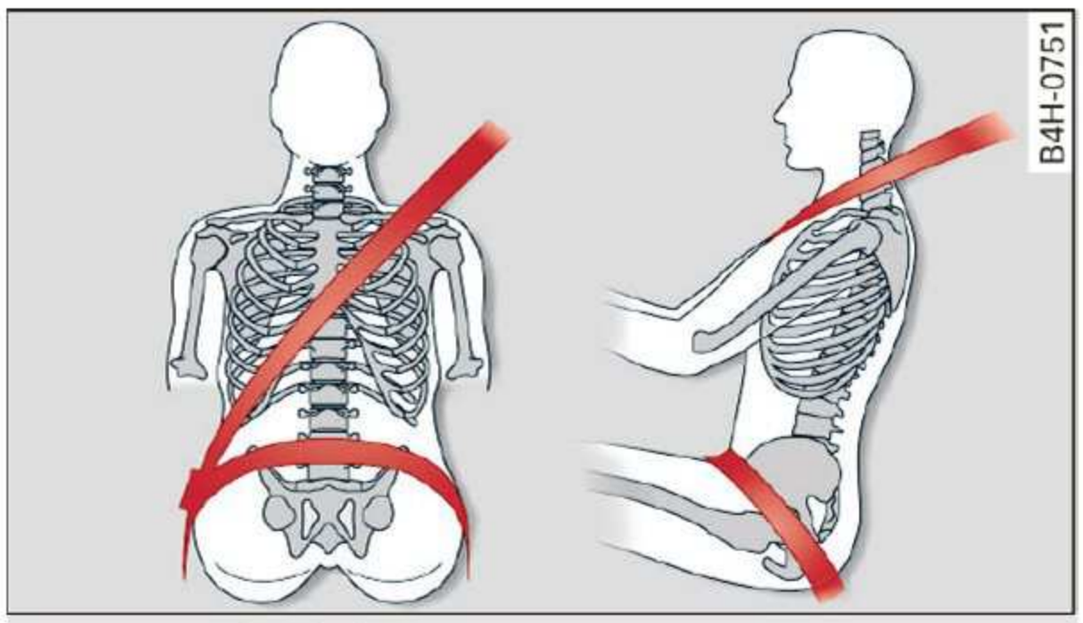


Fig. 210 Safety belt position

Standard features on your vehicle help you adjust the position of the safety belt to match your body size.

– belt height adjustment for the front seats*,
– height-adjustable front seats.

⚠ WARNING

Improperly positioned safety belts can cause serious personal injury in an accident.

– The shoulder belt should lie as close to the center of the collar bone as possible and should fit well on the body. Hold the belt above the latch tongue and pull it evenly across the chest so that it sits as low as possible on the pelvis and there is no pressure on the abdomen. The belt should always fit ▶

snugly ⇨ *fig. 210*. Pull on the belt to tighten if necessary.
– The lap belt portion of the safety belt must be positioned as low as possible across pelvis and never over the abdomen. Make sure the belt lies flat and snug ⇨ *fig. 210*. Pull on the belt to tighten if necessary.
– A loose-fitting safety belt can cause serious injuries by shifting its position on your body from the strong bones to more vulnerable, soft tissue and cause serious injury.
– Always read and heed all WARNINGS and other important information ⇨ *page 248*.

Pregnant women must also be correctly restrained

The best way to protect the fetus is to make sure that expectant mothers always wear safety belts correctly - throughout the pregnancy.



Fig. 211 Safety belt position during pregnancy

To provide maximum protection, safety belts must always be positioned correctly on the wearer's body ⇨ *page 249*.

- ▸ Adjust the front seat and adjustable head restraint* correctly ⇨ *page 54, Front seats*.
- ▸ Pull the safety belt evenly across the chest so that it sits as low as possible on the pelvis and there is no pressure on the abdomen ⇨ *fig. 211*, ⇨ ⚠.
- ▸ Insert the tongue into the correct buckle of your seat until you hear it latch securely.
- ▸ Pull on the belt to make sure that it is securely latched in the buckle.

⚠ WARNING

Improperly positioned safety belts can cause serious personal injury in an accident.
– Expectant mothers must always wear the lap portion of the safety belt as low as possible across the pelvis and below the rounding of the abdomen.
– Always read and heed all WARNINGS and other important information ⇨ ⚠ *in Fastening safety belts on page 249*.

Unfastening safety belts

Unbuckle the safety belt with the red release button only after the vehicle has stopped.

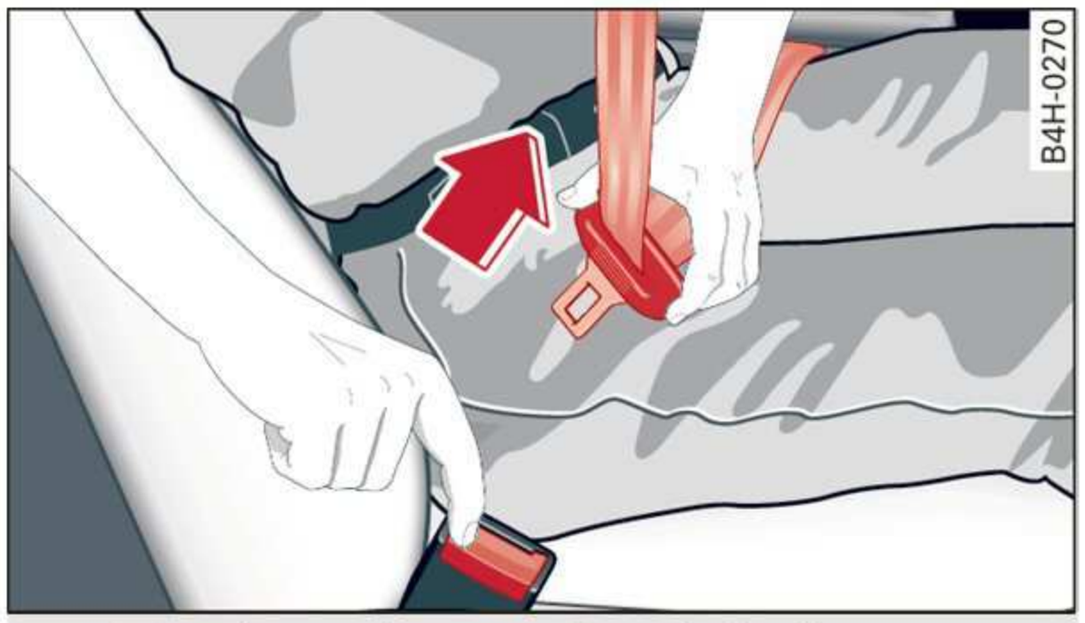


Fig. 212 Releasing the tongue from the buckle

- ▸ Push the red release button on the buckle ⇨ *fig. 212*. The belt tongue will spring out of the buckle ⇨ ⚠.
- ▸ Let the belt wind up on the retractor as you guide the belt tongue to its stowed position.

⚠ WARNING

Never unfasten safety belt while the vehicle is moving. Doing so will increase your risk of being injured or killed.

Adjusting the safety belt latch tongue

Applies to: vehicles with adjustable latch tongue

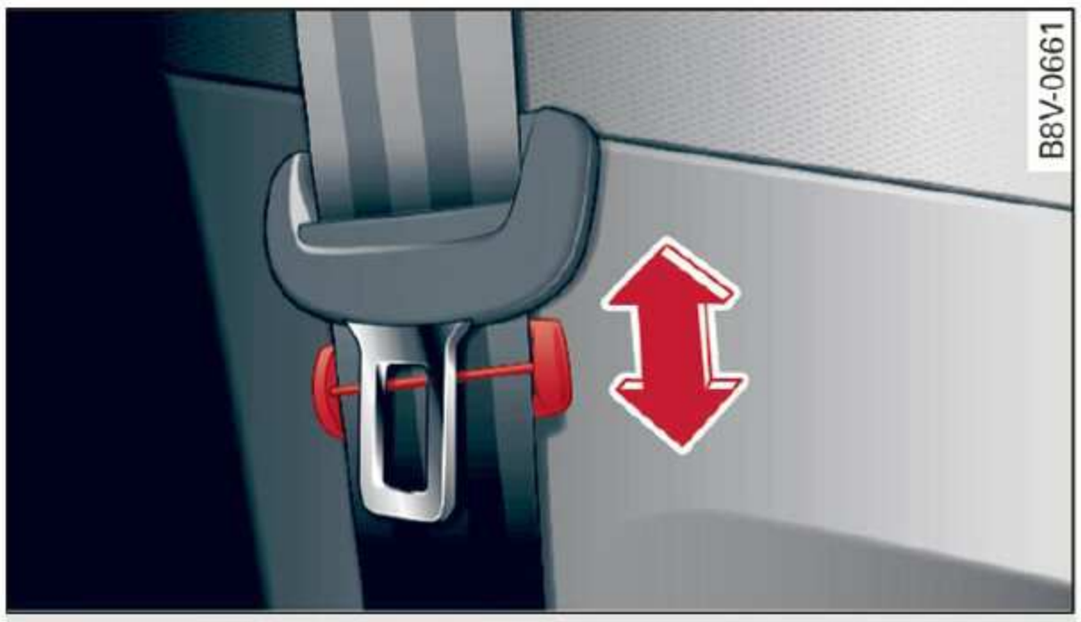


Fig. 213 Safety belt: latch tongue clip (example)

- ▸ Slide the clip so that you can easily reach the belt latch when putting the safety belt on.

Adjusting safety belt height

Applies to: vehicles with safety belt height adjustment

With the aid of the safety belt height adjustment, the three point safety belt strap routing can be fitted to the shoulder area, according to body size.

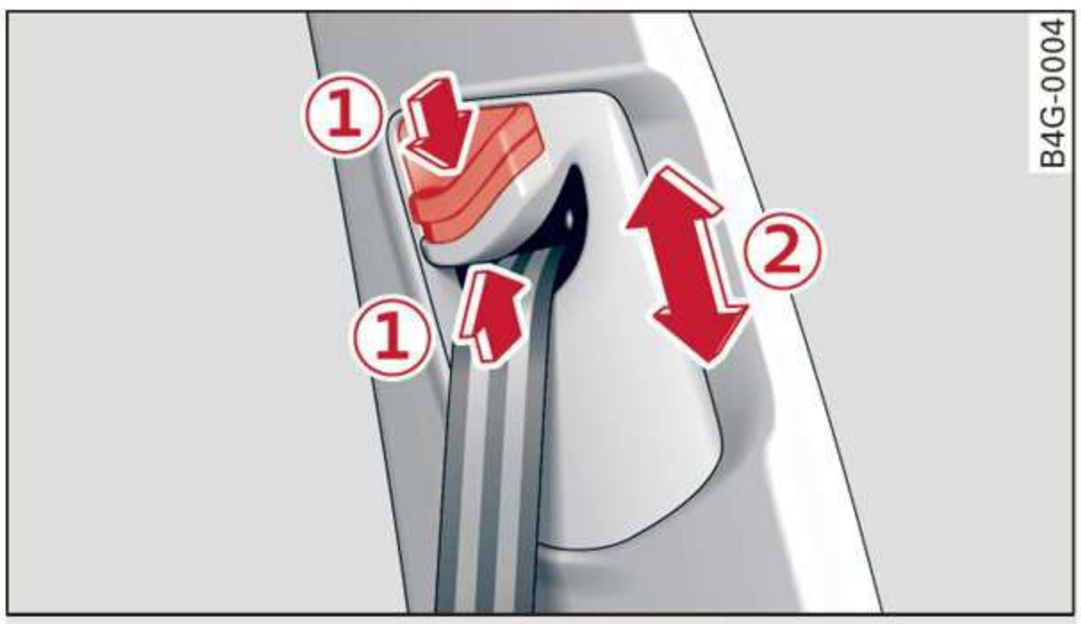


Fig. 214 Safety belt height adjustment for the front seats – loop-around fittings

The shoulder belt should lie as close to the center of the collar bone as possible and should fit well on the body ⇨ ⚠ *in Safety belt position on page 249*.

- ▸ *Push* the loop-around fittings **up** ⇨ *fig. 214* ②, or
- ▸ *squeeze* together the ① button, and *push* the loop-around fittings **down** ②.
- ▸ Pull the belt to make sure that the upper attachment is properly engaged.

⚠ WARNING

Always read and heed all WARNINGS and other important information ⇨ *page 248*.

Tips

With the front seats, the height adjustment of the seat can also be used to adjust the position of the safety belts.

Improperly worn safety belts

Incorrectly positioned safety belts can cause severe injuries.

Wearing safety belts improperly can cause serious injury or death. Safety belts can only work when they are correctly positioned on the body. Improper seating positions reduce the effectiveness of safety belts and will even increase the risk of injury and death by moving the safety belt to critical areas of the body. Improper seating positions also increase the risk of serious injury and death when an airbag deploys and strikes an occupant who is not in the correct seating position. A driver is responsible for the safety of all vehicle occupants and especially for children. Therefore:

- ▸ Never permit anyone to assume an incorrect sitting position in the vehicle while traveling ⇨ ⚠.

⚠ WARNING

Improperly worn safety belts increase the risk of serious personal injury and death whenever a vehicle is being used.

– Always make sure that all vehicle occupants are correctly restrained and stay in a correct seating position whenever the vehicle is being used.
– Always read and heed all WARNINGS and other important information ⇨ *page 248*.

Belt tensioners

How safety belt pretensioners work

Reversible safety belt tensioners

The following functions are available when safety belts with reversible safety belt tensioners are fastened:

– In certain driving situations, the safety belts may tighten with a reversible tensioning function ⇨ *page 125*.
– The safety belts may also tighten with this reversible tensioning function in minor collisions.

Pyrotechnic safety belt pretensioners

Seat belts with pyrotechnic safety belt pretensioners are tensioned automatically in severe collisions, depending on the circumstances. This helps to reduce the forward motion of the occupants.

WARNING

– It is possible for the pretensioners to deploy incorrectly.
– The pyrotechnic system can only provide protection for one collision. If the pyrotechnic pretensioners deploy, the pretensioning system must be replaced.

Tips

– A fine dust is released when the pyrotechnic safety belt pretensioners deploy. This is normal and is not caused by a fire in the vehicle.
– The relevant safety requirements must be observed when the vehicle or components of the system are scrapped. A qualified dealership is familiar with these regulations and will be pleased to pass on the information to you.

Service and disposal of safety belt pretensioner

The safety belt pretensioners are parts of the safety belts on your Audi. Installing, removing, servicing or repairing of belt pretensioners can damage the safety belt system and prevent it from working correctly in a collision.

There are some important things you have to know to make sure that the effectiveness of the system will not be impaired and that discarded components do not cause injury or pollute the environment.

WARNING

Improper care, servicing and repair procedures can increase the risk of personal injury and death by preventing a safety belt pretensioner from activating when needed or activating it unexpectedly:

– The belt pretensioner system can be activated only once. If belt pretensioners have been activated, the system must be replaced.
– Never repair, adjust, or change any parts of the safety belt system.
– Safety belt systems including safety belt pretensioners cannot be repaired. Special procedures are required for removal, installation and disposal of this system.
– For any work on the safety belt system, we strongly recommend that you see your authorized Audi dealer or qualified technician who has an Audi approved repair manual, training and special equipment necessary.

Airbag system

Important information

Importance of wearing safety belts and sitting properly

Airbags are only supplemental restraints. For airbags to do their job, occupants must always properly wear their safety belts and be in a proper seating position.

For your safety and the safety of your passengers, before driving off, always:

- Adjust the driver's seat and steering wheel properly ⇨ *page 238*,
- Adjust the front passenger's seat properly ⇨ *page 239*,
- Wear safety belts properly ⇨ *page 248*,
- Always properly use the proper child restraint to protect children ⇨ *page 278*.

In a collision, airbags must inflate within the blink of an eye and with considerable force. The supplemental airbags can cause injuries if the driver or the front seat passenger is not seated properly. Therefore in order to help the airbag to do its job, it is important, both as a driver and as a passenger to sit properly at all times.

By keeping room between your body and the steering wheel and the front of the passenger compartment, the airbag can inflate fully and completely and provide supplemental protection in certain frontal collisions ⇨ *page 238, Correct passenger seating positions*. For details on the operation of the seat adjustment controls ⇨ *page 54*.

It's especially important that children are properly restrained ⇨ *page 278*.

There is a lot that the driver and the passengers can and must do to help the individual safety features installed in your Audi work together as a system.

Proper seating position is important so that the front airbag on the driver side can do its job. If you have a physical impairment or condition that prevents you from sitting properly on the driver seat with the safety belt properly fastened and reaching the pedals, or if you have concerns with regard to the function or operation of the Advanced Airbag System, please contact your authorized Audi dealer or qualified workshop, or call Audi Customer Relations at 1-800-822-2834 for possible modifications to your vehicle.

When the airbag system deploys, a gas generator will fill the airbags, break open the padded covers, and inflate between the steering wheel and the driver and between the instrument panel and the front passenger. The airbags will deflate immediately after deployment so that the front occupants can see through the windshield again without interruption.

All of this takes place in the blink of an eye, so fast that many people don't even realize that the airbags have deployed. The airbags also inflate with a great deal of force and nothing should be in their way when they deploy. Front airbags in combination with properly worn safety belts slow down and limit the occupant's forward movement. Together they help to prevent the driver and front seat passenger from hitting parts of the inside of the vehicle while reducing the forces acting on the occupant during the crash. In this way they help to reduce the risk of injury to the head and upper body in the crash. Airbags do not protect the arms or the lower parts of the body.

Both front airbags will not inflate in all frontal collisions. The triggering of the airbag system depends on the vehicle deceleration rate caused by the collision and registered by the electronic control unit. If this rate is below the reference value programmed into the control unit, the airbags will not be triggered, even though the car may be badly damaged as a result of the collision. Vehicle damage, repair costs or even the lack of vehicle damage is not necessarily an indication of whether an airbag should inflate or not.

Since the circumstances will vary considerably between one collision and another, it is not possible to define a range of vehicle speeds that will cover every possible kind and angle of impact that will always trigger the airbags. Important factors include, for example, the nature (hard or soft) of the object which the car hits, the angle of impact, vehicle speed, etc. The front airbags will ▶

8V2012721BK

also not inflate in side or rear collisions, or in rollovers.

Always remember: Airbags will deploy only once, and only in certain kinds of collisions. Your safety belts are always there to offer protection in those situations in which airbags are not supposed to deploy, or when they have already deployed; for example, when your vehicle strikes or is struck by another vehicle after the first collision.

This is just one of the reasons why an airbag is a supplementary restraint and is not a substitute for a safety belt. The airbag system works most effectively when used with the safety belts. Therefore, always properly wear your safety belts ⇨ *page 245*.

WARNING

Sitting too close to the steering wheel or instrument panel will decrease the effectiveness of the airbags and will increase the risk of personal injury in a collision.

- Never sit closer than 10 inches (25 cm) to the steering wheel or instrument panel.
- If you cannot sit more than 10 inches (25 cm) from the steering wheel, investigate whether adaptive equipment may be available to help you reach the pedals and increase your seating distance from the steering wheel.
- All vehicle occupants and especially children must be restrained properly whenever riding in a vehicle. An unrestrained or improperly restrained child could be injured by striking the interior or by being ejected from the vehicle during a sudden maneuver or impact. An unrestrained or improperly restrained child is also at greater risk of injury or death through contact with an inflating airbag.
- If you are unrestrained, leaning forward, sitting sideways or out of position in any way, your risk of injury is much higher.
- You will also receive serious injuries and could even be killed if you are up against the airbag or too close to it when it inflates - even with an Advanced Airbag.
- To reduce the risk of injury when an airbag inflates, always wear safety belts properly ⇨ *page 248, Safety belts*.
- Always make certain that children age 12 or younger always ride in the rear seat. If children are not properly restrained, they may be severely injured or killed when an airbag inflates.
- Never let children ride unrestrained or improperly restrained in the vehicle. Adjust the front seats properly.
- Never ride with the backrest reclined.
- Always sit as far as possible from the steering wheel or the instrument panel ⇨ *page 238*.
- Always sit upright with your back against the backrest of your seat.
- Never place your feet on the instrument panel or on the seat. Always keep both feet on the floor in front of the seat to help prevent serious injuries to the legs and hips if the airbag inflates.
- Never recline the front passenger's seat to transport objects. Items can also move into the area of the side airbag or the front airbag during braking or in a sudden maneuver. Objects near the airbags can become projectiles and cause injury when an airbag inflates.

WARNING

Airbags that have deployed in a crash must be replaced.

- Use only original equipment airbags approved by Audi and installed by a trained technician who has the necessary tools and diagnostic equipment to properly replace any airbag in your vehicle and assure system effectiveness in a crash.
- Never permit salvaged or recycled airbags to be installed in your vehicle.

Child restraints on the front seat – some important things to know

► Be sure to read the important information and heed the WARNINGS for important details ▶

about children and Advanced Airbags ⇨ *page 278*.

Even though your vehicle is equipped with an Advanced Airbag System, make certain that all children, especially those 12 years and younger, always ride in the back seat properly restrained for their age and size. The airbag on the passenger side makes the front seat a potentially dangerous place for a child to ride. The front seat is not the safest place for a child in a forward-facing child seat. It can be a very dangerous place for an infant or a child in a rearward-facing seat.

The Advanced Airbag System in your vehicle has been certified to comply with the requirements of United States Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standard (FMVSS) 208, as well as Canada Motor Vehicle Safety Standard (CMVSS) 208 as applicable at the time your vehicle was manufactured. According to requirements, the front Advanced Airbag System on the passenger side has been certified for “suppression” for infants of about 12 month old and younger and for “low risk deployment” for children aged 3 to 6 years old (as defined in the standard).

The **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light in the instrument panel tells you when the front Advanced Airbag on the passenger side has been turned off by the electronic control unit.

Each time you switch on the ignition, the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light will come on for a few seconds and:

– will stay on if the front passenger seat is not occupied,
– will stay on if the electrical capacitance measured by the capacitive passenger detection system for the front passenger seat equals the combined capacitance of an infant up to about one year of age and one of the rearward-facing or forward-facing child restraints listed in Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standard 208 with which the Advanced Airbag System in your vehicle was certified. For a listing of the child restraints that were used to certify your vehicle's compliance with the U.S. Safety Standard ⇨ *page 280*.
– will stay on if there is a small child or child restraint on the front passenger seat,
– will go off if the front passenger seat is occupied by an adult as registered by the capacitive passenger detection system ⇨ *page 265, Monitoring the Advanced Airbag System*.

The **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light comes on when electrical capacitance registered on the front passenger seat is equal to or less than the combined capacitance of a typical 1 year-old infant and one of the rearward-facing or forward-facing child restraints listed in Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standard 208 with which the Advanced Airbag System in your vehicle was certified.

If the total electrical capacitance registered on the front passenger seat is more than that of a typical 1 year-old child but less than the weight of a small adult, the front airbag on the passenger side can deploy (the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light does not come on).

If the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light does not come on, the front airbag on the passenger side has not been turned off by the electronic control unit and can deploy if the control unit senses an impact that meets the conditions stored in its memory.

For example, the airbag may deploy if:

– a small child that is heavier than a typical 1 year-old child is on the front passenger seat (regardless of whether the child is in one of the child seats listed ⇨ *page 280*), or
– a child who has outgrown child restraints is on the front passenger seat.

If the front passenger airbag is turned off, the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light comes on in the instrument cluster and stays on.

If the front passenger airbag deploys, the Federal Standard requires the airbag to meet the “low risk” deployment criteria to reduce the risk of injury through interaction with the airbag. “Low risk” deployment occurs in those crashes that take place at lower decelerations as defined in the electronic control unit ⇨ *page 265, PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF light*. ▶

Always remember, a child seat or infant carrier installed on the front seat may be struck and knocked out of position by the rapidly inflating passenger's airbag in a frontal collision. The airbag could greatly reduce the effectiveness of the child restraint and even seriously injure the child during inflation.

For this reason, and because the back seat is the safest place for children - when properly restrained according to their age and size - we strongly recommend that children always sit in the back seat ⇨ *page 278, Child safety*.

WARNING

A child in a rearward-facing child seat installed on the front passenger seat will be seriously injured and can be killed if the front airbag inflates - even with an Advanced Airbag System.

- The inflating airbag will hit the child seat or infant carrier with great force and will smash the child seat and child against the backrest, center armrest, door or roof.
- Always install rear-facing child seats on the rear seat.
- If you must install a rearward facing child seat on the front passenger seat because of exceptional circumstances and the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light does not come on and stay on, immediately install the rear-facing child seat in a rear seating position and have the airbag system inspected by your Audi dealer.
- Forward-facing child seats installed on the front passenger's seat may interfere with the deployment of the airbag and cause serious personal injury to the child.

WARNING

If, in exceptional circumstances, you must install a forward-facing child restraint on the front passenger's seat:

- Always make sure the forward-facing seat has been designed and certified by its manufacturer for use on a front seat with a passenger front and side airbag.
- Never put the forward-facing child restraint up against or very near the instrument panel.
- Always move the front passenger seat to the highest position in the up and down adjustment range and move it back to the rearmost position in the seat's fore and aft adjustment range, as far away from the airbag as possible, before installing the forward-facing child restraint.
- Always make sure that the safety belt upper anchorage is behind the child restraint and not next to or in front of the child restraint so that the safety belt will be properly positioned.
- Make sure that the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light comes on and stays on all the time whenever the ignition is switched on.

WARNING

To reduce the risk of serious injury, make sure that the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light will be displayed whenever a child restraint is installed on the front passenger seat and the ignition is switched on.

- If the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light does not stay on, perform the checks described ⇨ *page 265, Monitoring the Advanced Airbag System*.
- Take the child restraint off the front passenger seat and install it properly at one of the rear seat positions if the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light does not stay on.
- Have the airbag system inspected by your Audi dealer immediately.
- Always carefully follow instructions from child restraint manufacturers when installing child restraints.

WARNING

If, in exceptional circumstances, you must install a forward or rearward-facing child restraint on the front passenger's seat:

- Improper installation of child restraints can reduce their effectiveness or even prevent them from providing any protection.

– An improperly installed child restraint can interfere with the airbag as it deploys and seriously injure or even kill the child – even with an Advanced Airbag System.
– Always carefully follow the manufacturer's instructions provided with the child seat or carrier.
– Always make sure that there is nothing on the front passenger seat that will cause the capacitive passenger detection system in the seat to signal to the Airbag System that the seat is occupied by a person when it is not, or to signal that it is occupied by someone who is heavier than the person actually sitting on the seat. The presence of additional objects could cause the passenger front airbag to be turned on when it should be off, or could cause the airbag to work in a way that is different from the way it would have worked without the object on the seat.

Front airbags

Description of front airbags

The airbag system can provide supplemental protection to properly restrained front seat occupants.



Fig. 215 Location of driver airbag: in steering wheel



Fig. 216 Location of front passenger's airbag: in the instrument panel

Your vehicle is equipped with an “Advanced Airbag System” in compliance with United States Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standard (FMVSS) 208, as well as Canada Motor Vehicle Safety Standard (CMVSS) 208 as applicable at the time your vehicle was manufactured.

The airbag for the driver is in the steering wheel hub ⇨ *fig. 215* and the airbag for the front passenger is in the instrument panel ⇨ *fig. 216*. The general location of the airbags is marked “AIRBAG”.

There is a lot you need to know about the airbags in your vehicle. We urge you to read the detailed information about airbags, safety belts and child safety in this and the other chapters that make up the owner's literature. Please be sure to heed the WARNINGS - they are extremely important for your safety and the safety of your passengers, especially infants and small children.

WARNING

Never rely on airbags alone for protection.
– Even when they deploy, airbags provide only supplemental protection.
– Airbag work most effectively when used with properly worn safety belts.
– Therefore, always wear your safety belts and make sure that everybody in your vehicle is properly restrained.
– Always hold the steering wheel with both hands on the outside of the steering wheel rim at the 9:00 o'clock and 3:00 o'clock positions to help reduce the risk of personal injury if the driver's airbag inflates.

– Never hold the steering wheel at the 12 o'clock position or with your hands anywhere inside the steering wheel or on the steering wheel hub. Holding the steering wheel the wrong way increases the risk of severe injury to the arms, hands, and head if the driver airbag deploys.

WARNING

Objects between you and the airbag will increase the risk of injury in a crash by interfering with the way the airbag unfolds and/or by being pushed into you as the airbag inflates.

– Always make sure nothing is in the front airbag deployment zone that could be struck by the airbag when it inflates.
– Objects in the zone of a deploying airbag can become projectiles when the airbag deploys and cause serious personal injury.
– Never hold things in your hands or on your lap when the vehicle is in use.
– Never place accessories or other objects (such as cup holders, telephone brackets, note pads, navigation systems, or things that are large, heavy, or bulky) on the doors; never attach them to the doors or the windshield; never place them over or near or attach them to the area marked „AIRBAG“ on the steering wheel, instrument panel or the seat backrests; never place them between these areas and you or any other person in the vehicle.
– Never attach objects to the windshield above the passenger front airbag, such as accessory GPS navigation units or music players. Such objects could cause serious injury in a collision, especially when the airbags inflate.
– Never recline the front passenger seat to transport objects. Items can also move into the deployment area of the side airbags or the front airbag during breaking or in a sudden maneuver. Objects near the airbags can fly dangerously through the passenger compartment and cause injury, particularly when the seat is reclined and the airbags inflate.

WARNING

A person on the front passenger seat, especially infants and small children, will receive serious injuries and can even be killed by being too close to the airbag when it inflates.

– Although the Advanced Airbag System in your vehicle is designed to turn off the front passenger airbag if an infant or a small child is on the front passenger seat, nobody can absolutely guarantee that deployment under these special conditions is impossible in all conceivable situations that may happen during the useful life of your vehicle.
– The Advanced Airbag System can deploy in accordance with the „low risk“ option for 3- and 6-year-old children under the U.S. Federal Standard if a child with electrical capacitance greater than the combined capacitance of a typical one-year old infant restrained in one of the forward facing or rearward-facing child seats with which your vehicle was certified is on the front passenger seat and the other conditions for airbag deployment are met.
– Accident statistics have shown that children are generally safer in the rear seat area than in the front seating position.
– For their own safety, all children, especially 12 years and younger, should always ride in the back properly restrained for their age and size.

Advanced front airbag system

Your vehicle is equipped with a front Advanced Airbag System in compliance with United States Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standard 208, as well as Canada Motor Vehicle Safety Standard (CMVSS) 208 as applicable at the time your vehicle was manufactured.

The front Advanced Airbag System supplements the safety belts to provide additional protection for the driver's and front passenger's heads and upper bodies in frontal crashes. The airbags inflate only in frontal impacts when the vehicle deceleration is high enough. ▶

The front Advanced Airbag System for the front seat occupants is not a substitute for your safety belts. Rather, it is part of the overall occupant restraint system in your vehicle. Always remember that the airbag system can only help to protect you, if you are sitting upright, wearing your safety belt and wearing it properly. This is why you and your passengers must always be properly restrained, not just because the law requires you to be.

The Advanced Airbag System in your vehicle has been certified to meet the “low risk” requirements for 3 and 6 year-old children on the passenger side and very small adults on the driver side. The low risk deployment criteria are intended to help reduce the risk of injury through interaction with the front airbag that can occur, for example, by being too close to the steering wheel and instrument panel when the airbag inflates.

In addition, the system has been certified to comply with the “suppression” requirements of the Safety Standard, to turn off the front airbag for infants 12 months old and younger who are restrained on the front passenger seat in child restraints that are listed in the Standard ⇨ *page 280, Child restraints and Advanced front airbag system*.

“Suppression” requires the front airbag on the passenger side to be turned off if:

– a child up to about one year of age is restrained on the front passenger seat in one of the rear-facing or forward-facing infant restraints listed in Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standard 208 with which the Advanced Airbag System in your vehicle was certified. For a listing of the child restraints that were used to certify your vehicle's compliance with the US Safety Standard ⇨ *page 280*,
– a person is detected on the front passenger seat that has an electrical capacitance that is more than the total electrical capacitance of a child that is about 1 year old restrained in one of the rear-facing or forward-facing infant restraints (listed in Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standard 208 with which the Advanced Airbag System in your vehicle was certified), the front airbag on the passenger side may or may not deploy.

The **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light comes on when the electronic control unit detects a total electrical capacitance on the front passenger seat that requires the front airbag to be turned off. If the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light does not come on, the front airbag on the passenger side has not been turned off by the control unit and can deploy if the control unit senses an impact that meets the conditions stored in its memory.

If the total electrical capacitance registered on the front passenger seat is more than that of a typical 1 year-old, but less than the weight of a small adult, the front airbag on the passenger side may deploy (the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light does not come on).

For example, the airbag may deploy if:

– a small child that is heavier than a typical 1 year-old child is on the front passenger seat (regardless of whether the child is in one of the child seats listed ⇨ *page 280*),
– a child who has outgrown child restraints is on the front passenger seat.

If the front passenger airbag is turned off, the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light in the center of the instrument panel will come on and stay on.

If the front passenger airbag deploys, the Federal Standard requires the airbag to meet the “low risk” deployment criteria to help reduce the risk of injury through interaction with the airbag. “Low risk” deployment occurs in those crashes that take place at lower decelerations as defined in the electronic control unit ⇨ *page 265*.

Always remember: Even though your vehicle is equipped with Advanced Airbags, the safest place for children is properly restrained on the back seat. Please be sure to read the important information in the sections that follow and be sure to heed all of the WARNINGS.

WARNING

To reduce the risk of injury when an airbag inflates, always wear safety belts properly. ▶

– If you are unrestrained, leaning forward, sitting sideways or out of position in any way, your risk of injury is much higher.
– You will also receive serious injuries and could even be killed if you are up against the airbag or too close to it when it inflates - even with an Advanced Airbag ⇨ *page 253*.

WARNING

A child in a rearward-facing child seat installed on the front passenger seat will be seriously injured and can be killed if the front airbag inflates - even with an Advanced Airbag System.

– Although the Advanced Airbag System in your vehicle is designed to turn off the front airbag when a rearward-facing child restraint has been installed on the front passenger seat, nobody can absolutely guarantee that deployment is impossible in all conceivable situations that may happen during the useful life of your vehicle.
– The inflating airbag will hit the child seat or infant carrier with great force and will smash the child seat and child against the backrest, center armrest, door, or roof.
– Always install rearward-facing child restraints on the rear seat.
– If you must install a rearward facing child seat on the front passenger seat because of exceptional circumstances and the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light does not come on and stay on, immediately install the rear-facing child seat in a rear seating position and have the airbag system inspected by your Audi dealer.

WARNING

If, in exceptional circumstances, you must install a forward-facing child restraint on the front passenger's seat:

– Always make sure the forward-facing seat has been designed and certified by its manufacturer for use on a front seat with a passenger front and side airbag.
– Never put the forward-facing child restraint up against or very near the instrument panel.
– Always move the front passenger seat to the highest position in the up and down adjustment range and move it back to the rearmost position in the seat's fore and aft adjustment range, as far away from the airbag as possible, before installing the forward-facing child restraint.
– Always make sure that the safety belt upper anchorage is behind the child restraint and not next to or in front of the child restraint so that the safety belt will be properly positioned.
– Always make sure that there is nothing on the front passenger seat that will cause the capacitive passenger detection system in the seat to signal to the Airbag System that the seat is occupied by a person when it is not, or to signal that it is occupied by someone who is heavier than the person actually sitting on the seat. The presence of additional objects could cause the passenger front airbag to be turned on when it should be off, or could cause the airbag to work in a way that is different from the way it would have worked without the object on the seat.
– Make sure that the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light comes on and stays on all the time whenever the ignition is switched on.

Advanced Airbag System components

The front passenger seat in your vehicle has a lot of very important parts of the Advanced Airbag System in it. These parts include the capacitive passenger detection system, wiring, brackets, and more. The control unit monitors the system on the front passenger seat when the ignition is switched on and turns the airbag indicator light on when a malfunction in the one of the system components is detected ⇨ *page 265*. Because the front passenger seat contains important parts of the Advanced Airbag System, you must take care to prevent it from being damaged. Damage to ▶

the seat may prevent the Advanced Airbag System for the front passenger seat from doing its job in a crash.

The front Advanced Airbag System consists of the following:

– Crash sensors in the front of the vehicle that measure vehicle acceleration/deceleration to provide information to the Advanced Airbag System about the severity of the crash.
– An electronic control unit, with integrated crash sensors for front and side impacts. The control unit "decides" whether to fire the front airbags based on the information received from the crash sensors. The control unit also "decides" whether the safety belt pretensioners should be activated.
– An Advanced Airbag with gas generator for the driver inside the steering wheel hub.
– An Advanced Airbag with gas generator inside the instrument panel for the front passenger.
– A capacitive passenger detection system underneath the front passenger seat cover. This system measures the electrical capacitance of the person in the seat. The information registered is sent continuously to the electronic control unit to regulate deployment of the front Advanced Airbag on the passenger side.
– An airbag monitoring system and indicator light in the instrument cluster ⇨ *page 265*.
– A sensor in each front seat registers the distance between the respective seat and the steering wheel or instrument panel. The information registered is sent continuously to the electronic control unit to regulate deployment of the front Advanced Airbags.
– The **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light comes on and stays on in the center of the instrument panel ⇨ *page 304* and tells you when the front Advanced Airbag on the passenger side has been turned off.
– A sensor in the safety belt latch for the driver and for the front seat passenger that senses whether that safety belt is latched or not and transmits this information to the electronic control unit.

WARNING

Damage to the front passenger seat can prevent the front airbag from working properly.
– Improper repair or disassembly of the front passenger and driver seat will prevent the Advanced Airbag System from functioning properly.
– Repairs to the front passenger seat must be performed by qualified and properly trained workshop personnel.
– Never remove the front passenger or driver seat from the vehicle.
– Never remove the upholstery from the front passenger seat.
– Never disassemble or remove parts from the seat or disconnect wires from it.
– Never carry sharp objects in your pockets or put them on the seat. The capacitive passenger detection mat in the front passenger seat will not function properly if it is punctured.
– Never carry things on your lap or carry objects on the front passenger seat. Such objects can influence the capacitance registered by the capacitive passenger detection system, so that incorrect information is provided to the airbag control unit.
– Never store items under the front passenger seat. Parts of the Advanced Airbag System under the passenger seat could be damaged, preventing them and the airbag system from working properly.
– Never place seat covers or replacement upholstery that have not been specifically approved by Audi on the front seats.
– Seat covers can prevent the Advanced Airbag System from recognizing child restraints or occupants on the front passenger seat and prevent the side airbag in the seat backrest from deploying properly.
– If a seat heater has been retrofitted or otherwise added to the front passenger seat, never install any child restraint system on this seat.
– Never use cushions, pillows, blankets, or similar items on the front passenger seat. The additional layers prevent the capacitive ▶

passenger detection system from accurately measuring the capacitance of the child safety seat and/or the person on the seat and thus keep the Advanced Airbag System from working properly.

– Never place or use any electrical device (such as a laptop, CD player, electronic games device, power inverter or seat heater for child seats) on the front passenger seat if the device is connected to the 12-volt socket or the cigarette lighter socket. Such devices can influence the capacitance registered by the capacitive passenger detection system, so that incorrect information is provided to the airbag control unit.
– If you must use a child restraint on the front passenger seat and the child restraint manufacturer's instructions require the use of a towel, foam cushion or something else to properly position the child restraint, make certain that the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light comes on and stays on whenever the child restraint is installed on the front passenger seat.
– If the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light does not come on and stay on, immediately install child restraint in a rear seating position and have the airbag system inspected by your Audi dealer.

WARNING

If the front passenger seat gets wet, dry it immediately.

– If liquid soaks into the front passenger seat, this can keep the airbag system from working properly and may, for instance, deactivate the passenger frontal airbag. If this happens, the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light will come on and stay on together with the airbag indicator light in the instrument cluster.
– If liquid is pooled on the seat, but has not soaked in, this may also keep the airbag system from working properly and cause the passenger frontal airbag to be enabled (turned on), even though there is a properly installed child restraint system on the seat. Wet towels or other wet things on the seat cushion can have the same effect. If the front passenger frontal airbag is turned on, the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light will turn off.

How the Advanced Airbag System components work together

The front Advanced Airbag System and the side airbags supplement the protection offered by the front three-point safety belts and the adjustable head restraints* to help reduce the risk of injury in a wide range of accident and crash situations. Be sure to read the important information about safety and heed the WARNINGS in this chapter.

Deployment of the Advanced Airbag System and the activation of the safety belt pretensioners depend on the deceleration measured by the crash sensors and registered by the electronic control unit. Crash severity depends on speed and deceleration as well as the mass and stiffness of the vehicle or object involved in the crash.

On the passenger side, regardless of safety belt use, the front passenger frontal airbag will be turned off if the electrical capacitance measured by the capacitive passenger detection system on the front passenger seat is less than the amount programmed in the electronic control unit. The front passenger frontal airbag will also be turned off if the capacitance measured by the system for the front passenger seat equals that of an infant of about one year of age in one of the child seats that was used to certify the Advanced Airbag System under Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standard 208. The **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light comes on and stays on to tell you when the front Advanced Airbag System on the passenger side has been turned off ⇨ *page 265*.

WARNING

To reduce the risk of injury when an airbag inflates, always wear safety belts properly.

– If you are unrestrained, leaning forward, sitting sideways or out of position in any way, your risk of injury is much higher.
– You will also receive serious injuries and could even be killed if you are up against the ▶

airbag or too close to it when it inflates - even with an Advanced Airbag ⇨ *page 253*.

More important things to know about front airbags



Fig. 217 Inflated front airbags

Safety belts are important to help keep front seat occupants in the proper seated position so that airbags can unfold properly and provide supplemental protection in a frontal collision.

The front airbags are designed to provide additional protection for the chest and face of the driver and the front seat passenger when:

– safety belts are worn properly,
– the seats have been positioned so that the occupant is properly seated
– and for adjustable head restraints: the head restraints have been properly adjusted.

Because airbags inflate in the blink of an eye with great force, things you have on your lap or have placed on the seat could become dangerous projectiles, and be pushed into you if the airbag inflates.

When an airbag deploys, fine dust is released. This is normal and is not caused by a fire in the vehicle. This dust is made up mostly of a powder used to lubricate the airbags as they deploy. It could irritate skin.

It is important to remember that while the supplemental airbag system is designed to reduce the likelihood of serious injuries, other injuries, for example swelling, bruising and minor abrasions, can also happen when airbags inflate. Airbags do not protect the arms or the lower parts of the body. Front airbags supplement the three-point safety belts only in some frontal collisions in which the vehicle deceleration is high enough to deploy the airbags.

Front airbags will not deploy:

– if the ignition is switched off when a crash occurs,
– in side collisions,
– in rear-end collisions,
– in rollovers,
– when the crash deceleration measured by the airbag system is less than the minimum threshold needed for airbag deployment as registered by the electronic control unit.

The front passenger airbag also will not deploy:

– when the front passenger seat is not occupied,
– when the electrical capacitance measured by the capacitive passenger detection system for the front passenger seat indicates that the passenger side frontal airbag must be switched off by the electronic control unit (the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light ⇨ *page 265* and how they work comes on and stays on).

WARNING

Sitting in the wrong position can increase the risk of serious injury in crashes.

– To reduce the risk of injury when the airbags inflate, the driver and passengers must always sit in an upright position, must not lean against or place any part of their body too close to the area where the airbags are located.
– Occupants who are unbelted, out of position or too close to the airbag can be seriously injured by an airbag as it unfolds with great force in the blink of an eye ⇨ *page 254*.

WARNING

A child in a rearward-facing child seat installed on the front passenger seat will be seriously injured and can be killed if the front airbag inflates - even with an Advanced Airbag System.

– The inflating airbag will hit the child seat or infant carrier with great force and will ▶

smash the child seat and child against the backrest, center armrest, door or roof.
– Always install rear-facing child seats on the rear seat.
– If you must install a rearward facing child seat on the front passenger seat because of exceptional circumstances and the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light does not come on and stay on, immediately install the rear-facing child seat in a rear seating position and have the airbag system inspected by your Audi dealer.

WARNING

Objects between you and the airbag will increase the risk of injury in a crash by interfering with the way the airbag unfolds or by being pushed into you as the airbag inflates.
– Never hold things in your hands or on your lap when the vehicle is in use.
– Never transport items on or in the area of the front passenger seat. Objects could move into the area of the front airbags during braking or other sudden maneuvers and become dangerous projectiles that can cause serious personal injury if the airbags inflate.
– Never place or attach accessories or other objects (such as cup holders, telephone brackets, large, heavy or bulky objects) on the doors, over or near the area marked “AIRBAG” on the steering wheel, instrument panel, seat backrests or between those areas and yourself. These objects could cause injury in a crash, especially when the airbags inflate.
– Never recline the front passenger's seat to transport objects. Items can also move into the area of the side airbag or the front airbag during braking or in a sudden maneuver. Objects near the airbags can become projectiles and cause injury, particularly when the seat is reclined.
– Never place or transport objects on the front passenger seat. Objects on the front passenger seat could cause the capacitive sensor in the seat to signal to airbag system that the seat is occupied by a person when it in fact is not, or that the person on the seat is heavier than he or she actually is. The change in electric capacitance because of such objects can cause the passenger front airbag to be turned on when it should be off, or can cause the airbag to work in a way that is different from the way it would have worked without objects on the seat.
– Always make sure that there is nothing on the front passenger seat that will cause the capacitive passenger detection system in the seat to signal to the Airbag System that the seat is occupied by a person when it is not, or to signal that it is occupied by someone who is heavier than the person actually sitting on the seat. The presence of an object could cause the passenger front airbag to be turned on when it should be off, or could cause the airbag to work in a way that is different from the way it would have worked without the object on the seat.

WARNING

The fine dust created when airbags deploy can cause breathing problems for people with a history of asthma or other breathing conditions.
– To reduce the risk of breathing problems, those with asthma or other respiratory conditions should get fresh air right away by getting out of the vehicle or opening windows or doors.
– If you are in a collision in which airbags deploy, wash your hands and face with mild soap and water before eating.
– Be careful not to get the dust into your eyes, or into any cuts or scratches.
– If the residue should get into your eyes, flush them with water.

Monitoring the Advanced Airbag System

Airbag monitoring indicator light

Two separate indicators monitor the function of the Advanced Airbag System: the  *light and the* **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** *light.*

The Advanced Airbag System as well as the side airbags and side curtain airbags with ejection mitigation features (including the electronic control unit, sensors and system wiring) are all monitored continuously to make sure that they are functioning properly whenever the ignition is on. Every time you turn on the ignition, the airbag system indicator light  will come on for a few seconds (function check).

The system must be inspected when the indicator light  **:**

– does not come on when the ignition is switched on,
– does not go out a few seconds after you have switched on the ignition, or
– comes on while driving.

If an airbag system malfunction is detected, the indicator light will come on to serve as a constant reminder to have the system inspected immediately.

If a malfunction occurs that turns the front airbag on the passenger side off, the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light will come on and stay on whenever the ignition is on.

WARNING

An airbag system that is not functioning properly cannot provide supplemental protection in a frontal crash.

– If the airbag indicator light ⇨ *page 238* comes when the vehicle is being used, have the system inspected immediately by your authorized Audi dealer. It is possible that the airbag will inflate when it is not supposed to, or will not inflate when it should.

PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF light



Fig. 218 Center console: passenger airbag off warning light

The **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light is located in the center of the instrument panel ⇨ *fig. 218*.

The **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light will come on and stay on to tell you when the front Advanced Airbag on the passenger side has been turned off by the electronic control unit. If the bulb for the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light burns out, the airbag indicator light  will come on to signal a malfunction in the Advanced Airbag System. Although the burned-out bulb will not change the way the front passenger's frontal airbag works, it will no longer be possible to use the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light to make sure that the airbag on/off status is correct for the occupant on the front passenger seat. Have the airbag system inspected immediately by your authorized Audi dealer.

The PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF light will blink for about 5 seconds when:

– the ignition is switched on and
– the capacitive passenger detection system, which switches the front seat passenger's frontal Advanced Airbag on and off, detects a change in the status of the front passenger seat.

As soon as the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light stops blinking, always make sure that the airbag status (on or off) as shown by the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light is proper for the age, size and electrical capacitance of the person occupying the front passenger seat. Always make sure that the safety belt for the front passenger seat is properly fastened. ▶

The PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF light will show the status of the front seat passenger's frontal Advanced Airbag a few seconds after the ignition is switched on and the airbag indicator light goes off. The PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF light:

– will stay on if the front passenger seat is not occupied;
– will stay on if the electrical capacitance measured by the capacitive passenger detection system for the front passenger seat equals the combined capacitance of an infant up to about one year of age and one of the rearward-facing or forward-facing child restraints listed in Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standard 208 with which the Advanced Airbag System in your vehicle was certified; For a listing of the child restraints that were used to certify your vehicle's compliance with the U.S. Safety Standard ⇨ *page 280*.
– will go out if the front passenger seat is occupied by an adult as registered by the capacitive passenger detection system.
– The **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light must come on and stay on if the ignition is on and...
– a car bed has been installed on the front passenger seat, or
– a rearward-facing child restraint has been installed on the front passenger seat, or
– a forward-facing child restraint has been installed on the front passenger seat,
– and if the electrical capacitance registered on the front passenger seat is equal to or less than the combined capacitance of a typical 1 year-old infant and one of the rearward-facing or forward-facing child restraints listed in Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standard 208 with which the Advanced Airbag System in your vehicle was certified.

If the front passenger seat is not occupied, the front airbag will not deploy, and the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light will stay on. Never install a rearward-facing child restraint on the front passenger seat, the safest place for a child in any kind of child restraint is at one of the seating positions on the rear seat ⇨ *page 254, Child restraints on the front seat – some important things to know* and ⇨ *page 278, Child safety*.

If the PASSENGER AIR BAG light comes on ...

If the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light comes on when one of the conditions listed above is met, be sure to check the light regularly to make certain that the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light stays on continuously whenever the ignition is on. If the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light does not appear on and does not stay on all the time, stop as soon as it is safe to do so and

– reactivate the system by turning the ignition off for more than 4 seconds and then turning it on again;
– remove and reinstall the child restraint. Make sure that the child restraint is properly installed and that the safety belt for the front passenger seat has been correctly routed through the child restraint as described in the child restraint manufacturer's instructions;
– make sure that the convertible locking retractor on the safety belt for the front passenger seat has been activated and that the safety belt has been pulled tight.
– make sure that no electrical device (such as a laptop, CD player, electronic games device, power inverter or seat heater for child seats) is placed or used on the front passenger seat if the device is connected to the 12-volt socket or the cigarette lighter socket;
– make sure that no seat heater has been retrofitted or otherwise added to the front passenger seat;
– make sure that nothing can interfere with the safety belt buckles and that they are not obstructed;
– make sure that there are no wet objects (such as a wet towel) and no water or other liquids on the front passenger seat cushion.

If the PASSENGER AIR BAG light still does not come on ...

If the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light still does not come on and does not stay on continuously (when the ignition is switched on), ▶

– take the child restraint off the front passenger seat and install it properly at one of the rear seat positions. Have the airbag system inspected by your Audi dealer immediately.
– move the child to a rear seat position and make sure that the child is properly restrained in a child restraint that is appropriate for its size and age.

The PASSENGER AIR BAG light should NOT come on ...

The **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light should NOT come on when the ignition is on and an adult is sitting in a proper seating position on the front passenger seat. If the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light comes on and stays on or flashes for about 5 seconds while driving, under these circumstances, make sure that:

– the adult on the front passenger seat is properly seated on the center of the seat cushion with his or her back up against the backrest and the backrest is not reclined,
– the adult is not taking weight off the seat by holding on to the passenger assist handle above the front passenger door or supporting their weight on the armrest,
– the safety belt is being properly worn and that there is not a lot of slack in the safety belt webbing,
– there are no aftermarket seat covers or cushions or other things (such as blankets) on the front passenger seat that might cause the capacitive passenger detection system to miscalculate electrical capacitance.

Important safety instructions on monitoring the Advanced Airbag System

WARNING

– If the status of the Advanced Airbag System has changed while the vehicle is moving, the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light blinks for about 5 seconds to catch the driver's attention. If this happens, always stop as soon as it is safe to do so and check the steps described above.

– If the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light does not go off when an adult who is not very small is sitting on the front passenger seat after taking the steps described above, make sure the adult is properly seated and restrained at one of the rear seating positions. Have the airbag system inspected by your authorized Audi dealer before transporting anyone on the front passenger seat.

WARNING

An airbag system that is not functioning properly cannot provide supplemental protection in a frontal crash.

– If the airbag indicator light ⇨ *page 238* comes when the vehicle is being used, have the system inspected immediately by your authorized Audi dealer. It is possible that the airbag will inflate when it is not supposed to, or will not inflate when it should.

WARNING

If the front airbag inflates, a child without a child restraint, or in a rearward-facing child safety seat, or in a forward-facing child restraint that has not been properly installed will be seriously injured and can be killed.

– Even though your vehicle is equipped with an Advanced Airbag System, make certain that all children, especially 12 years and younger, always ride on the back seat properly restrained for their age and size.
– Always install forward or rear-facing child seats on the rear seat – even with an Advanced Airbag System.
– If you must install a rearward-facing child seat on the front passenger seat because of exceptional circumstances and the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light does not appear and stay on, immediately install the rear-facing child seat in a rear seating position and have the airbag system inspected by your Audi dealer.
– If, in exceptional circumstances, you must install a forward-facing child restraint on the front passenger seat, always move the seat into its rearmost position in the seat's ▶

fore and aft adjustment range, as far away from the airbag as possible. The backrest must be adjusted to an upright position. Make sure that the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light comes on and stays on all the time whenever the ignition is switched on.

WARNING

– If the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light does not go out when an adult is sitting on the front passenger seat after taking the steps described above, make sure the adult is properly seated and restrained at one of the rear seating positions.
– Have the airbag system inspected by your Audi dealer before transporting anyone on the front passenger seat.

Tips

If the capacitive passenger detection system determines that the front passenger seat is empty, the frontal airbag on the passenger side will be turned off, and the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light will stay on.

Repair, care and disposal of the airbags

Parts of the airbag system are installed at many different places on your Audi. Installing, removing, servicing or repairing a part in an area of the vehicle can damage a part of an airbag system and prevent that system from working properly in a collision.

There are some important things you have to know to make sure that the effectiveness of the system will not be impaired and that discarded components do not cause injury or pollute the environment.

WARNING

Improper care, servicing and repair procedures can increase the risk of personal injury and death by preventing an airbag from deploying when needed or deploying an airbag unexpectedly:

– Never cover, obstruct, or change the steering wheel horn pad or airbag cover or the instrument panel or modify them in any way.
– Never attach any objects such as cup holders or telephone mountings to the surfaces covering the airbag units.
– For cleaning the horn pad or instrument panel, use only a soft, dry cloth or one moistened with plain water. Solvents or cleaners could damage the airbag cover or change the stiffness or strength of the material so that the airbag cannot deploy and protect properly.
– Never repair, adjust, or change any parts of the airbag system.
– All work on the steering wheel, instrument panel, front seats or electrical system (including the installation of audio equipment, cellular telephones and CB radios, etc.) must be performed by a qualified technician who has the training and special equipment necessary.
– For any work on the airbag system, we strongly recommend that you see your authorized Audi dealer or qualified workshop.
– Never modify the front bumper or parts of the vehicle body.
– Always make sure that the side airbag can inflate without interference:
  – Never install seat covers or replacement upholstery over the front seatbacks that have not been specifically approved by Audi.
  – Never use additional seat cushions that cover the areas where the side airbags inflate.
  – Damage to the original seat covers or to the seam in the area of the side airbag module must always be repaired immediately by an authorized Audi dealer.
– The airbag system can deploy only once. After an airbag has been deployed, it must be replaced with new replacement parts designed and approved especially for your Audi model version. Replacement of complete airbag systems or airbag components must be performed by qualified workshops only. Make sure that any airbag service action is ▶

entered in your Audi Warranty & Maintenance booklet under *AIRBAG REPLACEMENT RECORD*.
– Applies to plug-in hybrid* vehicles: In the event of a collision where the airbags deploy, the electrical connection to the high voltage battery is automatically disconnected. This prevents a short circuit.

Other things that can affect Advanced Airbag performance

Changing the vehicle's suspension system can change the way that the Advanced Airbag System performs in a crash. For example, using tire-rim combinations not approved by Audi, lowering the vehicle, changing the stiffness of the suspension, including the springs, suspension struts, shock absorbers etc. can change the forces that are measured by the airbag sensors and sent to the electronic control unit. Some suspension changes can, for example, increase the force levels measured by the sensors and make the airbag system deploy in crashes in which it would not deploy if the changes had not been made. Other kinds of changes may reduce the force levels measured by the sensors and prevent the airbag from deploying when it should.

WARNING

Changing the vehicle's suspension including use of unapproved tire-rim combinations can change Advanced Airbag performance and increase the risk of serious personal injury in a crash.
– Never install suspension components that do not have the same performance characteristics as the components originally installed on your vehicle.
– Never use tire-rim combinations that have not been approved by Audi.

Knee airbags

Description of knee airbags

Applies to: vehicles with knee airbags

The knee airbag system can provide supplemental protection to properly restrained front seat occupants.

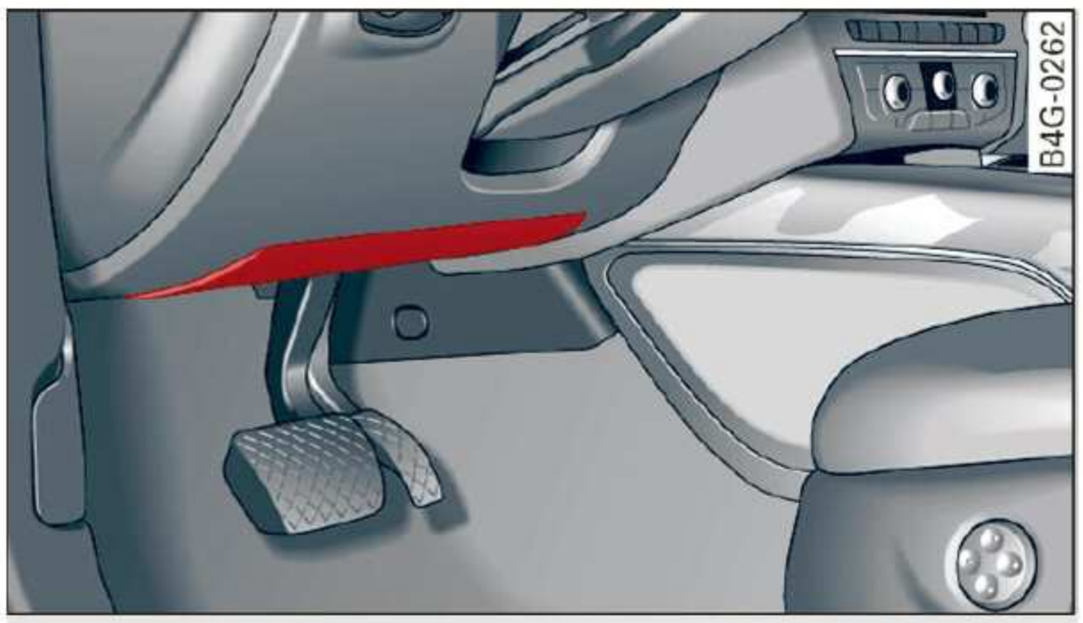


Fig. 219 Driver's knee airbag

The driver knee airbag is in the instrument panel underneath the steering wheel ⇨ *fig. 219*, the airbag for the passenger is at about the same height in the instrument panel underneath the glove compartment.

The knee airbag offers additional protection to the driver's and passenger's knees and upper and lower thigh areas and supplements the protection provided by the safety belts.

If the front airbags deploy, the knee airbags also deploy in frontal collisions when the deployment threshold stored in the control unit is met ⇨ *page 263, More important things to know about front airbags*.

In addition to their normal safety function, safety belts help keep the driver or front passenger in position in a frontal collision so that the airbags can provide supplemental protection.

The airbag system is not a substitute for your safety belt. Rather, it is part of the overall occupant restraint system in your vehicle. Always remember that the airbag system can only help to protect you if you are wearing your safety belt and wearing it properly. This is why you should always wear your safety belt, not just because the law requires you to do so ⇨ *page 245, General notes*.

Remember too, airbags will deploy only once and only in certain kinds of accidents - your safety belts are always there to offer protection in those accidents in which airbags are not supposed to deploy or when they have already deployed, for example when your vehicle strikes or is struck by another after the first collision.

This is just one of the reasons why an airbag is not a substitute for the safety belt. The airbag system works most effectively when used with the safety belts. Therefore, always wear your safety belts correctly.

It is important to remember that while the supplemental knee airbag system is designed to reduce the likelihood of serious injuries, other injuries, for example, swelling, bruising and minor abrasions and friction burns can also occur when an airbag inflates.

The knee airbag system basically consists of:

– The electronic control module
– Two inflatable airbags (airbag and gas generator), one for the driver and one for the front passenger
– The airbag indicator light in the instrument panel

The knee airbag system will not deploy:

– when the ignition is switched off
– in frontal collisions when the deceleration measured by the control unit is too low
– in side collisions
– in rear-end collisions
– in rollovers
– in the event of a system malfunction (warning/indicator light is on) ⇨ *page 238*.

WARNING

– Safety belts and the airbag system can only provide protection when occupants are in the proper seating position ⇨ *page 263*.
– If the airbag indicator light ⇨ *page 238* comes when the vehicle is being used, have the system inspected immediately by your authorized Audi dealer. It is possible that the airbag will inflate when it is not supposed to, or will not inflate when it should.

How knee airbags work

Applies to: vehicles with knee airbags

The risk of injury to the leg area can be reduced by fully inflated knee airbags.

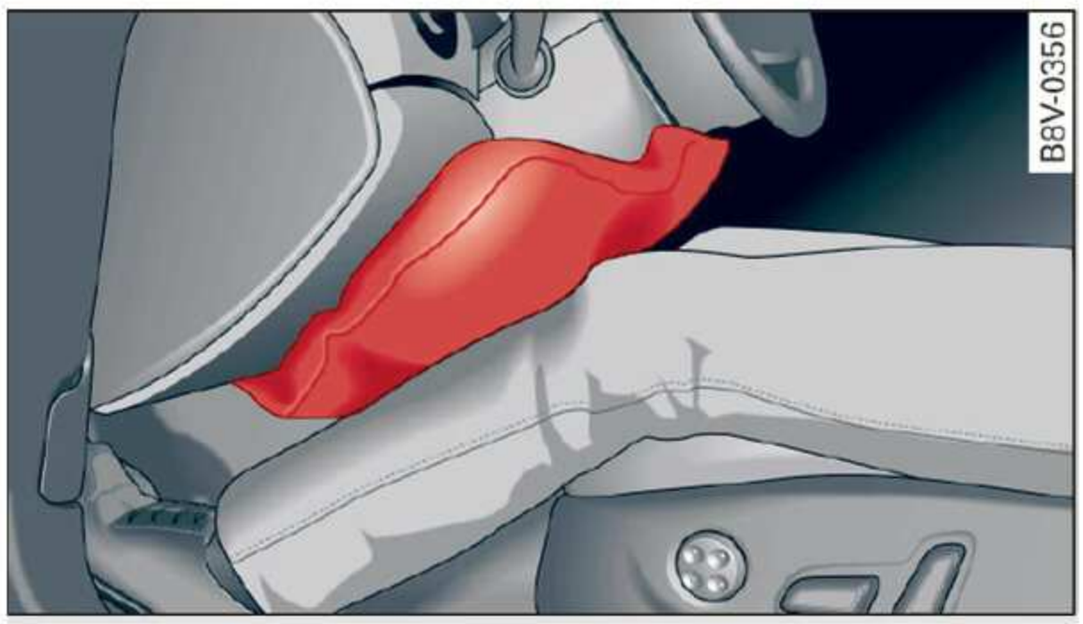


Fig. 220 Inflated airbags protecting in a frontal collision

The knee airbag system has been designed so that the airbags for the driver and front passenger deploy in certain but not all frontal collisions.

If the front airbags deploy, the knee airbags also deploy in frontal collisions when the deployment threshold stored in the control unit is met.

When the system deploys, the airbags fill with a compressed propellant gas, and inflate between the lower part of the instrument panel and the driver and the lower part of the instrument panel and the front passenger ⇨ *page 263, fig. 217*.

Although they are not a soft pillow, they can “cushion” the impact and in this way they can help to reduce the risk of injury to the lower extremities.

All of this takes place in the blink of an eye, so fast that many people don't even realize that the airbags have deployed. The airbags also inflate with a great deal of force and it is important for occupant safety that nothing should be in their way when they deploy.

Fully inflated airbags in combination with properly worn safety belts slow down and limit the occupant's forward movement and help to reduce the risk of injury.

Important safety instructions on the knee airbag system

Applies to: vehicles with knee airbags

Airbags are only supplemental restraints. Always wear safety belts correctly and ride in a proper seating position.

There is a lot that you and your passengers must know and do to help the safety belts and airbags to provide supplemental protection.

WARNING

An inflating knee airbag can cause serious injury. Wearing safety belts incorrectly and improper seating positions increase the risk of serious personal injury and death whenever a vehicle is being used.

- The knee airbag system cannot protect you properly if you are seated too close to any of the airbag locations. When adjusting their seat positions, it is important that both the driver and the front passenger keep their upper bodies and knees at the following minimum safe distances:
  - at least 10 inches (25 cm) between the chest and the steering wheel/instrument panel.
  - at least 4 inches (10 cm) between the knees and the lower part of the instrument panel.
- The risk of personal injury increases if you lean forward or to the side, or if the seat is improperly positioned and you are not wearing your safety belt. The risk increases even more should the airbag deploy.
- Always make sure that the knee airbag can inflate without interference. Objects between you and the airbag can increase the risk of injury in an accident by interfering with the way the airbag deploys or by being pushed into you as the airbag deploys.
- Never let anybody, especially children or animals ride in the footwell in front of the passenger seat. If the airbag deploys, this can result in serious or fatal injuries.
- Never carry objects of any kind in the footwell area in front of the driver's or passenger's seat. Bulky objects (shopping bags, for example) can interfere with or prevent proper deployment of the airbag. Small objects can be thrown through the vehicle if the airbag deploys and injure you or your passengers.
- Make sure there are no cracks, deep scratches or other damage in the area of the instrument panel where the knee airbags are located.
- If children are incorrectly seated, their risk of injury increases in a collision ⇨ *page 278, Child safety*.

Side airbags

Description of side airbags

The airbag system can provide supplemental protection to properly restrained occupants.

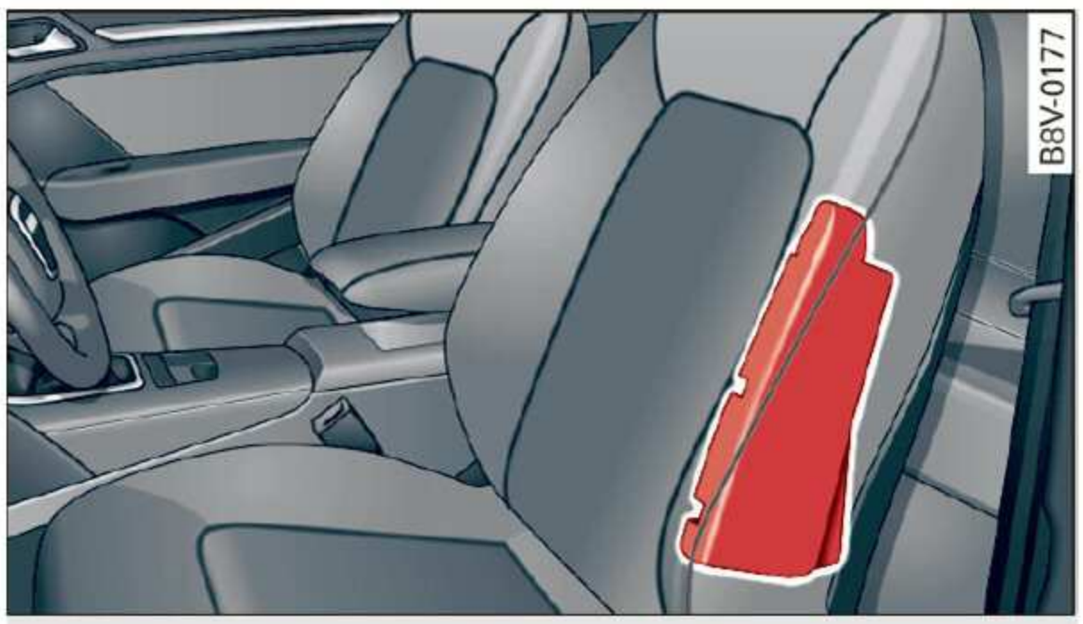


Fig. 221 Side airbag location in the driver's seat

The side airbags are located in the sides of the front seat backrests ⇨ *fig. 221* and the rear backrest* facing the doors.

The side airbags installed for the front seating positions have been designed and certified to help reduce the risk of injury that can be caused by airbags when they inflate, particularly when the occupant sitting next to it is not seated properly. The side airbag for the front passenger seat can be used with properly installed child restraints. Please be sure to read the important information and warnings whenever using a child restraint in a vehicle: Safety belts ⇨ *page 245*, Airbag system ⇨ *page 253*, Child safety ⇨ *page 278*.

The side airbag system basically consists of: ▶

– the electronic control module and external side impact sensors
– the two airbags located in the sides of the front backrests and the two airbags* located in the rear backrest
– the airbag warning light in the instrument cluster.

The airbag system is monitored electronically to make certain that it is functioning properly at all times. Each time you switch on the ignition, the airbag system indicator light will come on for a few seconds (self diagnostics).

The side airbag system supplements the safety belts and can help to reduce the risk of injury to the driver's, front and rear* passenger's upper torso on the side of the vehicle that is struck in a side collision. The airbag deploys only in side impacts and only when the vehicle acceleration registered by the control unit is high enough. If this rate is below the reference value programmed into the control unit, the side airbags will not be triggered, even though the car may be badly damaged as a result of the collision. It is not possible to define an airbag triggering range that will cover every possible angle of impact, since the circumstances will vary considerably between one collision and another. Important factors include, for example, the nature (hard or soft) of the impacting object, the angle of impact, vehicle speed, etc. ⇨ *page 273, Important safety instructions on the side airbag system*.

Aside from their normal safety function, safety belts work to help keep the driver or front passenger in position in the event of a side collision so that the side airbags can provide protection.

The airbag system is *not* a substitute for your safety belt. Rather, it is part of the overall occupant restraint system in your vehicle. Always remember that the side airbag system can only help to protect you if you are wearing your safety belt and wearing it properly. This is another reason why you should always wear your safety belts, not just because the law requires you to do so ⇨ *page 245, General notes*.

It is important to remember that while the supplemental side airbag system is designed to reduce the likelihood of serious injuries, other injuries, for example, swelling, bruising, friction burns and minor abrasions can also be associated with deployed side airbags. Remember too, side airbags will deploy only once and only in certain kinds of accidents - your safety belts are always there to offer protection.

Vehicle damage, repair costs or even the lack of vehicle damage are not necessarily an indication of over-sensitive or failed airbag activation. In some collisions, both front and side airbags may inflate. Remember too, that airbags will deploy only once and only in certain kinds of collisions – your safety belts are always there to offer protection in those accidents in which airbags are not supposed to deploy or when they have already deployed.

The side airbag system will not deploy:

– when the ignition is switched off
– in side collisions when the acceleration measured by the sensor is too low
– in front-end collisions
– in rear-end collisions
– in rollovers.

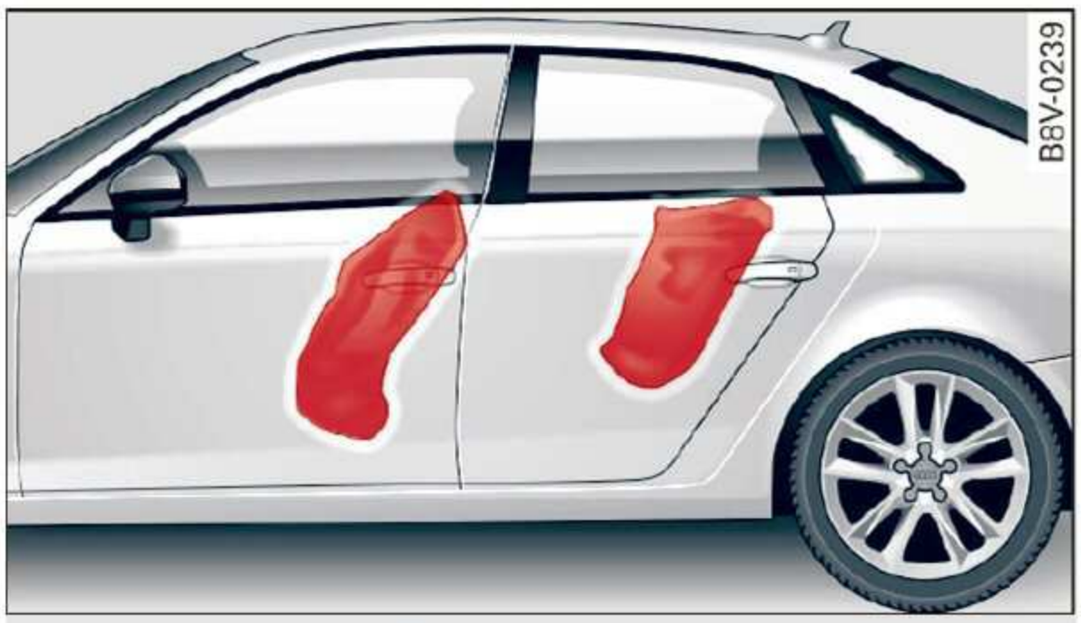
In some types of accidents the front airbags, side curtain airbags and side airbags may be triggered together.

WARNING

– Safety belts and the airbag system will only provide protection when occupants are in the proper seating position ⇨ *page 273*.
– If the airbag indicator light ⇨ *page 238* comes when the vehicle is being used, have the system inspected immediately by your authorized Audi dealer. It is possible that the airbag will inflate when it is not supposed to, or will not inflate when it should.

How supplemental side airbags work

Side airbags deploy instantly and can help reduce the risk of upper torso injuries for occupants who are properly restrained.



Applies to: vehicles without power top

Fig. 222 Side impact protection: inflated side airbags (example)



Applies to: vehicles with power top

Fig. 223 Side impact protection: inflated side airbags

When the system is triggered, the airbag is filled with propellant gas and breaks through a seam in the seat surface area marked “AIRBAG”. It expands between the side trim panel and the passenger. In order to help provide this additional protection, the side airbag must inflate within a fraction of a second at very high speed and with great force. The supplemental side airbag could injure you if your seating position is not proper or upright or if items are located in the area where the supplemental side airbag expands. This applies especially to children ⇨ *page 278, Child safety*. Supplemental side airbags inflate between the occupant and the door panel on the side of the vehicle that is struck in certain side collision ⇨ *fig. 222*, ⇨ *fig. 223*.

Although they are not a soft pillow, they can “cushion” the impact and in this way they can help to reduce the risk of injury to the upper part of the body.

A fine dust may develop when the airbag deploys. This is normal and does not mean there is a fire in the vehicle.

Important safety instructions on the side airbag system

Airbags are only supplemental restraints. Always properly wear safety belts and ride in a proper seating position.

There is a lot that you and your passengers must know and act accordingly to help the safety belts and airbags do their job to provide supplemental protection.

WARNING

An inflating side airbag can cause serious or fatal injury. Improperly wearing safety belts and improper seating positions increase the risk of serious personal injury and death whenever a vehicle is being used.

- In order to reduce the risk of injury when the supplemental side airbag inflates:
  - Always sit in an upright position and never lean against the area where the supplemental side airbag is located.
  - Never let a child or anyone else rest their head against the side trim panel in the area where the supplemental side airbag inflates.
  - Always make sure that safety belts are worn correctly,
  - Do not let anyone sitting in the front seat put their hand or any other parts of their body out of the window.
- Always make sure that the side airbag can inflate without interference.
  - Never install seat covers or replacement upholstery over the front seatbacks that have not been specifically approved by Audi.
  - Never use additional seat cushions that cover the areas where the side airbags deploy. ▶

– Damage to the original seat covers or to the seam in the area of the side airbag module must always be repaired immediately by an authorized Audi dealer.
– Objects between you and the airbag can increase the risk of injury in an accident by interfering with the way the airbag unfolds or by being pushed into you as the airbag inflates.
– Never place or attach accessories or other objects (such as cup holders, telephone brackets, or even large, bulky objects) on the doors, over or near the area marked “AIRBAG” on the seat backrests.
– Such objects and accessories can become dangerous projectiles and cause injury when the supplemental side airbag deploys.
– Never carry any objects or pets in the deployment space between them and the airbags or allow children or other passengers to travel in this position.
– Always use the built-in coat hooks only for lightweight clothing. Never leave any heavy or sharp-edged objects in the pockets that may interfere with side airbag deployment and can cause personal injury in an accident.
– Always prevent the side airbags from being damaged by heavy objects knocking against or hitting the sides of the seatbacks.
– The airbag system can only be triggered once. If the airbag has been triggered, the system must be replaced by an authorized Audi dealership.
– Damage (cracks, deep scratches etc.) to the original seat covers or to the seam in the area of the side airbag module must always be repaired immediately by an authorized Audi dealer.
– If children are seated improperly, their risk of injury increases in the case of an accident ⇨ *page 278, Child safety*.
– Never attempt to modify any components of the airbag system in any way.
– In a side collision, side airbags will not function properly if sensors cannot correctly measure increasing air pressure inside the doors when air escapes through larger, unclosed openings in the door panel.
– Never drive with interior door trim panels removed.
– Never drive when parts have been removed from the inside door panel and the openings they leave have not been properly closed.
– Never drive when loudspeakers in the doors have been removed unless the speaker holes have been properly closed.
– Always make certain that openings are covered or filled if additional speakers or other equipment is installed in the inside door panels.
– Always have work on the doors done by an authorized Audi dealer or qualified workshop.

Side curtain airbags

Description of side curtain airbags

Applies to: vehicles with side curtain airbags

The side curtain airbag system can provide supplemental protection to properly restrained occupants.

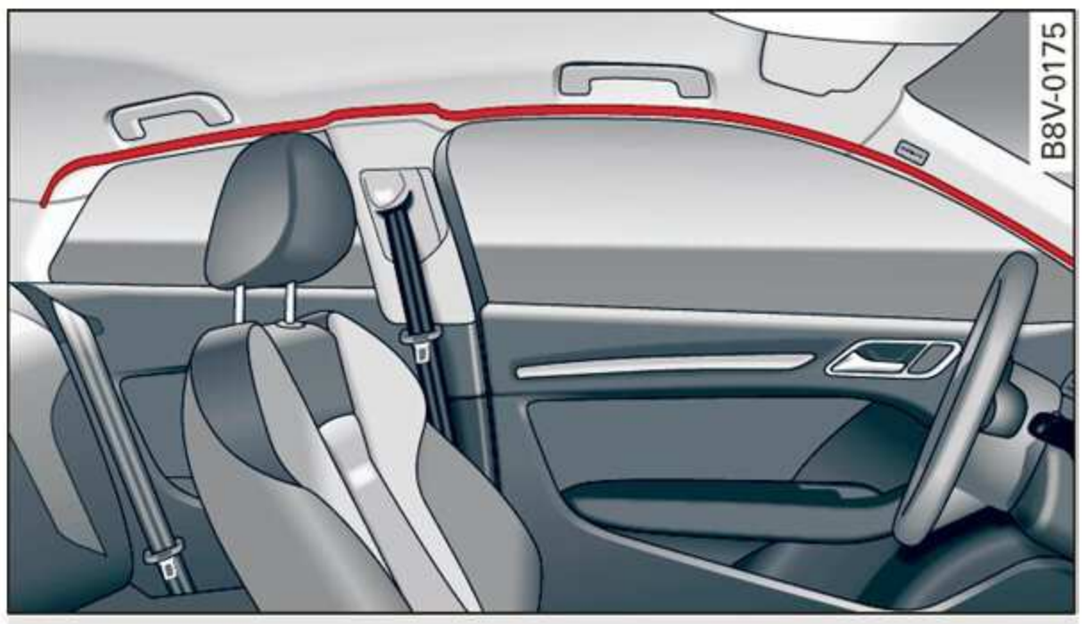


Fig. 224 Side curtain airbags, driver's side: side curtain airbag location (example)

The side curtain airbags are located on both sides of the interior above the front and rear side windows ⇨ *fig. 224*. They are identified by the word “AIRBAG” on the windshield frame and the center roof pillar.

The side curtain airbags contain features that provide ejection mitigation to help prevent vehicle occupants or parts of their bodies from being completely or partially ejected from the vehicle ▶

interior in certain side impacts and vehicle rollovers.

The side curtain airbag system supplements the safety belts and can help to reduce the risk of injury for occupants' heads and upper torso on the side of the vehicle that is struck in a side collision. The side curtain airbag inflates in side impacts and only when the vehicle acceleration registered by the control unit is high enough. If this rate is below the reference value programmed into the control unit, the side curtain airbag will not be triggered, even though the car may be badly damaged as a result of the collision. It is not possible to define an airbag triggering range that will cover every possible angle of impact, since the circumstances will vary considerably between one collision and another. Important factors include, for example, the nature (hard or soft) of the impacting object, the angle of impact, vehicle speed, etc. ⇨ *page 276, How side curtain airbags work*.

Aside from their normal safety function, safety belts work to help keep the driver or front passenger in position in the event of a collision so that the side curtain airbags can provide protection.

The airbag system is not a substitute for your safety belt. Rather, it is part of the overall occupant restraint system in your vehicle. Always remember that the airbag system can only help to protect you if you are wearing your safety belt and wearing it properly. This is another reason why you should always wear your safety belts, not just because the law requires you to do so ⇨ *page 245, General notes*.

It is important to remember that while the side curtain airbag system is designed to help reduce the likelihood of serious injuries, other injuries, for example, swelling, bruising, friction burns and minor abrasions can also be associated with these airbags upon deployment. Remember too, these airbags will deploy only once and only in certain kinds of accidents - your safety belts are always there to offer protection.

The side curtain airbag system basically consists of:

– The electronic control module and external side impact sensors
– The side curtain airbags above the front and rear side windows with ejection mitigation features
– The airbag indicator light in the instrument panel

The airbag system is monitored electronically to make certain it is functioning properly at all times. Each time you switch on the ignition, the airbag system indicator light will come on for a few seconds (self diagnostics).

The side curtain airbag is not activated:

– if the ignition is switched off,
– in side collisions when the acceleration measured by the sensor is too low,
– in rear-end collisions.

WARNING

– Safety belts and the airbag system will only provide protection when occupants are in the proper seating position ⇨ *page 54, Front seats*.
– If the airbag indicator light ⇨ *page 238* comes when the vehicle is being used, have the system inspected immediately by your authorized Audi dealer. It is possible that the airbag will inflate when it is not supposed to, or will not inflate when it should.

8V2012721BK

How side curtain airbags work

Applies to: vehicles with side curtain airbags

Side curtain airbags can work together with side airbags to help reduce the risk of head and upper torso injuries for occupants who are properly restrained.

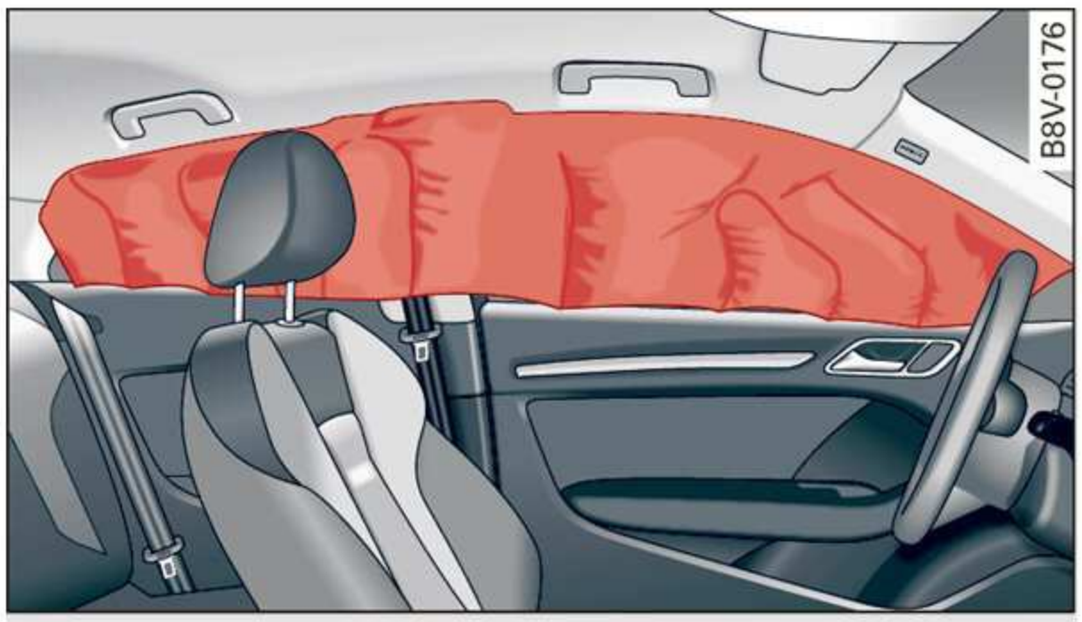


Fig. 225 Illustration of principle: Inflated side curtain airbags on the left side (example)

The side curtain airbags inflate between the occupant and the windows on the side of the vehicle that is struck in a side collision ⇨ *fig. 225*.

When the system is triggered, the side curtain airbag is filled with propellant gas and breaks through a seam above the front and rear side windows identified by the AIRBAG label. In order to help provide this additional protection, the side curtain airbag must inflate within the blink of an eye at very high speed and with great force. The side curtain airbag could injure you if your seating position is not proper or upright or if items are located in the area where the supplemental side curtain airbag inflates. This applies especially to children ⇨ *page 278*.

Although they are not a soft pillow, side curtain airbags can “cushion” the impact and in this way they can help to reduce the risk of injury to the head and the upper part of the body.

A fine dust may develop when the airbag deploys. This is quite normal and does not mean there is a fire in the vehicle.

Important safety instructions on the side curtain airbag system

Applies to: vehicles with side curtain airbags

Airbags are only supplemental restraints. Always properly wear safety belts and ride in a proper seating position.

There is a lot that you and your passengers must know and do to help the safety belts and airbags do their job to provide supplemental protection.

WARNING

Improperly wearing safety belts and improper seating positions increase the risk of serious personal injury and death whenever a vehicle is being used.

- Never let occupants place any parts of their bodies in the area from which the side curtain airbag inflate.
- Always make sure that the side curtain airbags can inflate without interference.
- Use the built-in coat hooks only for lightweight clothing. Never leave any heavy or sharp-edged objects in the pockets that may interfere with airbag deployment and can cause personal injury in a collision.
- Never use hangers to hang clothes on the hooks.
- Only use factory-installed sun shades or, if shades installed after the vehicle leaves the factory, use only genuine Audi sun shades.
- Never swing the sun visors over to the side windows if things such as pens, garage door openers, hands-free speakers, etc. are attached to the sun visors. They could come loose and cause serious injury if the side curtain airbag inflates.
- A deploying airbag inflates in a fraction of a second and with great force.
- Never attach objects to the cover or in the deployment zone of a side curtain airbag.
- The airbag deployment zones must be kept clear at all times. Make sure there are no objects, pets, or other persons in the space between any vehicle occupant and any airbag at any time.
- Do not attach any accessories to the doors. ▶

WARNING

- The airbag system can deploy only once. If the airbag has been triggered, the system must be replaced by an authorized Audi dealer or qualified workshop.
- Always have work involving the side curtain airbag system, removal and installation of the airbag components, or other repairs performed by a qualified dealership. Otherwise the airbag system may not work correctly.
- Never attempt to modify any components of the airbag system in any way.

Child safety

Important information

Introduction

The rear seat is generally the safest place in a collision.

The physical principles of what happens when your vehicle is in a crash apply also to children ⇨ *page 246, What happens to occupants not wearing safety belts?*. But unlike adults and teenagers, their muscles and bones are not fully developed. In many respects children are at greater risk of serious injury in crashes than adults.

Because children's bodies are not fully developed, they require restraint systems especially designed for their size, weight, and body structure. Many countries and all states of the United States and provinces of Canada have laws requiring the use of approved child restraint systems for infants and small children.

In a frontal crash at a speed of 20-35 mph (30-56 km/h) the forces acting on a 13-pound (6 kg) infant will be more than 20 times the weight of the child. This means the weight of the child would suddenly be more than 260 pounds (120 kg). Under these conditions, only an appropriate child restraint properly used can reduce the risk of serious injury. Child restraints, like adult safety belts, must be used properly to be effective. Used improperly, they can increase the risk of serious injury in an accident.

All children, especially those 12 years and younger must always ride in the back seat properly restrained for their age and size. If you must install a child restraint on the front passenger seat in exceptional circumstances, be sure to read and heed the important information and warnings ⇨ *page 254*. Infants and other children who are properly restrained in an appropriate child restraint that is for their size and age can benefit from the protection that supplemental side airbags provide in some kinds of crashes.

For more information please see information provided by the:

- National Highway Traffic Safety Administration (NHTSA), currently at : http://www.safercar.gov (for the USA)
- Transport Canada Information Centre, currently at: http://www.tc.gc.ca (for Canada)

Consult the child safety seat manufacturer's instructions in order to be sure the seat is right for your child's size ⇨ *page 282, Important safety instructions for using child safety seats*. Please be sure to read and heed all of the important information and WARNINGS about child safety, Advanced Airbags, and the installation of child restraints in this chapter.

There is a lot you need to know about the Advanced Airbags in your vehicle and how they work when infants and children in child restraints are on the front passenger seat. Because of the large amount of important information, we cannot repeat it all here. We urge you to read the detailed information in this owner's manual about airbags and the Advanced Airbag System in your vehicle and the very important information about transporting children on the front passenger seat. Please be sure to heed the WARNINGS - they are extremely important for your safety and the safety of your passengers, especially infants and small children.

WARNING

- Accident statistics have shown that children are generally safer in the rear seat area than in the front seating position. Always restrain any child age 12 and under in the rear.
- All vehicle occupants and especially children must be restrained properly whenever riding in a vehicle. An unrestrained or improperly restrained child could be injured by striking the interior or by being ejected from the vehicle during a sudden maneuver or impact. An unrestrained or improperly restrained child is also at greater risk of injury or death through contact with an inflating airbag.
- A suitable child restraint properly installed and used at one of the rear seating positions provides the highest degree of protection for infants and small children in most accident situations.

WARNING

Children on the front seat of any car even with Advanced Airbags can be seriously injured or even killed when an airbag inflates. A child in a rearward-facing child safety seat installed on the front passenger seat will be seriously injured and can be killed if the front airbag inflates.

- The inflating airbag will hit the child safety seat or infant carrier with great force and will smash the child safety seat and child against the backrest, center armrest, or door.
- Always install rear-facing child safety seats on the rear seat.
- If you must install a rearward facing child safety seat on the front passenger seat in exceptional circumstances and the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light does not come on and stay on, immediately install the rear-facing child safety seat in a rear seating position and have the airbag system inspected immediately by your Audi dealer.

WARNING

- Forward-facing child seats installed on the front passenger seat may interfere with the deployment of the airbag and cause serious personal injury to the child.
- If exceptional circumstances require the use of a forward-facing child restraint on the front passenger's seat, the child's safety and well-being require the following special precautions to be taken:
  - Always make sure that the forward-facing seat has been designed and certified by its manufacturer for use on a front passenger seat with a front and side airbag.
  - Always carefully follow the manufacturer's instructions provided with the child seat or infant carrier.
  - Never install a child restraint without a properly attached top tether strap if the child restraint manufacturer's instructions require the top tether strap to be used.
  - Never put the forward-facing child restraint up against or very near the instrument panel.
  - Applies to: vehicles with safety belt height adjustment: Always set the safety belt upper anchorage to the adjustment position that permits proper installation in accordance with the child restraint manufacturer's instructions.
  - Always move the front passenger seat to the highest position in the up and down adjustment range and move it back to the rearmost position in the seat's fore and aft adjustment range, as far away from the airbag as possible, before installing the forward-facing child restraint.
  - Always make sure that the safety belt upper anchorage is behind the child restraint and not next to or in front of the child restraint so that the safety belt will be properly positioned.
  - Always make sure that nothing prevents the front passenger's seat from being moved to the rearmost position in its fore and aft adjustment range.
  - Never place objects on the seat (such as a laptop, CD player, electronic games device, power inverter or seat heater for child seats). These may influence the electrical capacitance measured by the capacitive passenger detection system and can also fly around in an accident and cause serious personal injury.
  - Never place or use any electrical device (such as a laptop, CD player, electronic games device, power inverter or seat heater for child seats) on the front passenger seat if the device is connected to the 12-volt socket or the cigarette lighter socket.
  - If a seat heater has been retrofitted or otherwise added to the front passenger seat, never install any child restraint system on this seat.
  - Make sure that there are no wet objects (such as a wet towel) and no water or other liquids on the front passenger seat cushion.

– Always make sure that the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light comes on and stays on all the time whenever the ignition is switched on.
– If the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light does not come on and stay on, immediately install the forward-facing child seat in a rear seating position and have the airbag system inspected by your authorized Audi dealer.
– Always buckle the child seat firmly in place even if a child is not sitting in it. A loose child seat can fly around during a sudden stop or in a collision.
– Always read and heed all WARNINGS whenever using a child restraint in a vehicle ⇨ *page 245, Safety belts*, ⇨ *page 253, Airbag system* and ⇨ *page 278, Important information*.

Tips

Always replace child restraints that were installed in a vehicle during a crash. Damage to a child restraint that is not visible could cause it to fail in another collision situation.

Advanced front airbag system and children

Your vehicle is equipped with a front “Advanced Airbag System” in compliance with United States Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standard (FMVSS) 208, as well as Canada Motor Vehicle Safety Standard (CMVSS) 208 as applicable at the time your vehicle was manufactured.

The Advanced Airbag system in your vehicle has been certified to meet the “low-risk” requirements for 3- and 6-year old children on the passenger side and small adults on the driver side. The low risk deployment criteria are intended to reduce the risk of injury through interaction with the airbag that can occur, for example, by being too close to the steering wheel and instrument panel when the airbag inflates. In addition, the system has been certified to comply with the “suppression” requirements of the Safety Standard, to turn off the front airbag for infants up to 12 months who are restrained on the front passenger seat in child restraints that are listed in the Standard.

Even though your vehicle is equipped with an Advanced Airbag system, all children, especially those 12 years and younger, should always ride in the back seat properly restrained for their age and size. The airbag on the passenger side makes the front seat a potentially dangerous place for a child to ride. The front seat is not the safest place for a child in a forward-facing child safety seat. It can be a very dangerous place for an infant or a larger child in a rearward-facing seat.

The vehicle's Advanced Airbag System has a capacitive passenger detection system in the front passenger seat cushion that can detect the presence of a baby or a child in a child restraint system on this seat.

The capacitive passenger detection system registers the changes that result in an electrical field when a child, a child restraint, and a baby blanket are on the front passenger seat. The change in the measured capacitance due to the presence of a child, a child restraint, and a baby blanket on the front passenger seat is related to the child restraint system resting on the seat. The measured capacitance of a child restraint system varies depending on the type of system and specific make and model.

The electrical capacitance of the various types, makes, and models of child restraints specified by the U.S. National Highway Traffic Safety Administration (NHTSA) in the relevant safety standard are stored in the Advanced Airbag System control unit together with the capacitances typical of infants and a 1-year old child. When a child restraint is used on the front passenger seat with a typical 1 year-old infant, the Advanced Airbag System compares the capacitance measured by the capacitive passenger detection system with the data stored in the electronic control unit.

Child restraints and Advanced front airbag system

Regardless of the child restraint that you use, make sure that it has been certified to meet ▶

Safety Standards and has been certified by its manufacturer for use with an airbag. Always be sure that the child restraint is properly installed at one of the rear seating positions. If in exceptional circumstances you must use it on the front passenger seat, carefully read all of the information on child safety and Advanced Airbags and heed all of the applicable WARNINGS. Make certain that the child and child restraint are correctly recognized by the capacitive passenger detection system in the front passenger seat, that the front passenger airbag is turned off, and that the airbag status is always correctly signaled by the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light.

Many types and models of child restraints have been available over the years, new models are introduced regularly incorporating new and improved designs and older models are taken out of production. Child restraints are not standardized. Child restraints of the same type typically have different weights and sizes and different "footprints", the size and shape of the bottom of the child restraint that sits on the seat, when they are installed on a vehicle seat. These differences make it virtually impossible to certify compliance with the requirements for advanced airbags with each and every child restraint that has ever been sold in the past or will be sold over the course of the useful life of your vehicle.

For this reason, the United States National Highway Traffic Safety Administration has published a list of specific type, makes and models of child restraints that must be used to certify compliance of the Advanced Airbag System in your vehicle with the suppression requirements of Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standard 208. These child restraints are:

Subpart A – Car bed child restraints

Model	Manufactured on or after
Angel Guard Angel Ride AA2403FOF	September 25, 2007

Subpart B – Rear-facing child restraints

Model	Manufactured on or after
Century SmartFit 4543	December 1, 1999
Cosco Arriva 22-013PAW and base 22-999WHO	September 25, 2007
Evenflo Discovery Adjust Right 212	December 1, 1999
Evenflo First Choice 204	December 1, 1999
Graco Infant 8457	December 1, 1999
Graco Snugride	September 25, 2007
Peg Perego Primo Viaggio SIP IMUN00US	September 25, 2007

Subpart C – Forward-facing and convertible child restraints

Model	Manufactured on or after
Britax Roundabout E9L02xx	September 25, 2007
Cosco Touriva 02519	December 1, 1999
Cosco Summit Deluxe High Back Booster 22-262	September 25, 2007
Cosco High Back Booster 22-209	September 25, 2007
Evenflo Tribute V 379xxxx	September 25, 2007
Evenflo Medallion 254	December 1, 1999
Evenflo Generations 352xxxx	September 25, 2007
Graco ComfortSport	September 25, 2007
Graco Toddler Safety Seat Step 2	September 25, 2007
Graco Platinum Cargo	September 25, 2007

WARNING

To reduce the risk of serious injury, make sure that the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light comes on and stays on whenever a child restraint is installed on the front passenger seat and the ignition is switched on.

– Take the child restraint off the front passenger seat and install it properly at one of the rear seat positions if the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light does not stay on.
– Have the airbag system inspected by your authorized Audi dealer immediately.

Tips

The child seats listed in categories A to C have been statically tested by Audi only for the Advanced Airbag function.

Important safety instructions for using child safety seats

Correct use of child safety seats substantially reduces the risk of injury in an accident!

As the driver, you are responsible for the safety of everybody in the vehicle, especially children:

- Always use the right child safety seat for each child and always use it properly ⇨ *page 284*.
- Always carefully follow the child safety seat manufacturer's instructions on how to route the safety belt properly through the child safety seat.
- When using the vehicle safety belt to install a child safety seat, you must first activate the convertible locking retractor on the safety belt to prevent the child safety seat from moving ⇨ *page 289*.
- Push the child safety seat down with your full weight to get the safety belt really tight so that the seat cannot move forward or sideways more than one inch (2.5 cm).
- Secure unused safety belts on the rear seat ⇨ *page 284*.

Always remember: Even though your vehicle is equipped with an Advanced Airbag system, all children, especially those 12 years and younger, should always ride in the back seat properly restrained for their age and size.

WARNING

Not using a child safety seat, using the wrong child safety seat or improperly installing a child restraint increases the risk of serious personal injury and death.

– All vehicle occupants and especially children must be restrained properly whenever riding in a vehicle. An unrestrained or improperly restrained child could be injured by striking the interior or by being ejected from the vehicle during a sudden maneuver or impact. An unrestrained or improperly restrained child is also at greater risk of injury or death through contact with an inflating airbag.
– Commercially available child safety seats are required to comply with U.S. Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standard (FMVSS) 213 (in Canada CMVSS 213).
  – When buying a child restraint, select one that fits your child and the vehicle.
  – Only use child restraint systems that fully contact the flat portion of the seat cushion. The child restraint must not tip or lean to either side. Audi does not recommend using child safety seats that rest on legs or tube-like frames. They do not provide adequate contact with the seat.
  – Always heed all legal requirements pertaining to the installation and use of child safety seats and carefully follow the instructions provided by the manufacturer of the seat you are using.
– Never allow children under 57 inches (1.45 meters) to wear a normal safety belt. They must always be restrained by a proper child restraint system. Otherwise, they could sustain injuries to the abdomen and neck areas during sudden braking maneuvers or accidents.
– Never let more than one child occupy a child safety seat.
– Never let babies or older children ride in a vehicle while sitting on the lap of another passenger.
  – Holding a child in your arms is never a substitute for a child restraint system.
  – The strongest person could not hold the child with the forces that exist in an accident. The child will strike the interior of the vehicle and can also be struck by the passenger.

– The child and the passenger can also injure each other in an accident.
– Never install rear-facing child safety seats or infant carriers on the front passenger seat. A child will be seriously injured and can be killed when the passenger airbag inflates – even with an Advanced Airbag System.
– The inflating airbag will hit the child safety seat or infant carrier with great force and will smash the child safety seat and child against the backrest, center armrest, door or roof.
– Always install rear-facing child safety seats or infant carriers on the rear seat.
– Make sure there is enough space in front of the child in the child seat. If necessary, adjust the angle and position of the seat in front of the child seat.
– Forward-facing child safety seats installed on the front passenger's seat can interfere with the airbag when it inflates and cause serious injury to the child. Always install forward-facing child safety seats on the rear seat.
– If exceptional circumstances require the use of a forward-facing child restraint on the front passenger's seat, the child's safety and well-being require that the following special precautions be taken:
  – Make sure the forward-facing seat has been designed and certified by its manufacturer for use on a front seat with a passenger front and side airbag.
  – Always carefully follow the manufacturer's instructions provided with the child safety seat or carrier.
  – Always move the front passenger seat to the highest position in the up and down adjustment range and move it back to the rearmost position in the seat's fore and aft adjustment range, as far away from the airbag as possible, before installing the forward-facing child restraint.
  – Always make sure that the safety belt upper anchorage is behind the child restraint and not next to or in front of the child restraint so that the safety belt will be properly positioned.
  – Always make sure that nothing prevents the front passenger's seat from being moved to the rearmost position in its fore and aft adjustment range.
  – Always make sure that the backrest is in the upright position.
  – Never place or use any electrical device (such as a laptop, CD player, electronic games device, power inverter or seat heater for child seats) on the front passenger seat if the device is connected to the 12-volt socket or the cigarette lighter socket.
  – If a seat heater has been retrofitted or otherwise added to the front passenger seat, never install any child restraint system on this seat.
  – Make sure that there are no wet objects (such as a wet towel) and no water or other liquids on the front passenger seat cushion.
  – Never place objects on the seat (such as a laptop, CD player, electronic games device, power inverter or seat heater for child seats). These may influence the electrical capacitance measured by the capacitive passenger detection system and can also fly around in an accident and cause serious personal injury.
  – Always buckle the child safety seat firmly in place even if a child is not sitting in it. A loose child safety seat can fly around during a sudden stop or in a collision.
  – Always read and heed all WARNINGS whenever using a child restrained in a vehicle is being used ⇨ *page 245, Safety belts*, ⇨ *page 253, Airbag system* and ⇨ *page 278, Child safety*.

WARNING

To reduce the risk of serious injury, make sure that the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light comes on and stays on whenever a child restraint is installed on the front passenger seat and the ignition is switched on.

– Take the child restraint off the front passenger seat and install it properly at one of the rear seat positions if the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light does not stay on.

– Have the airbag system inspected by your authorized Audi dealer immediately.

Secure unused safety belts on the rear seat

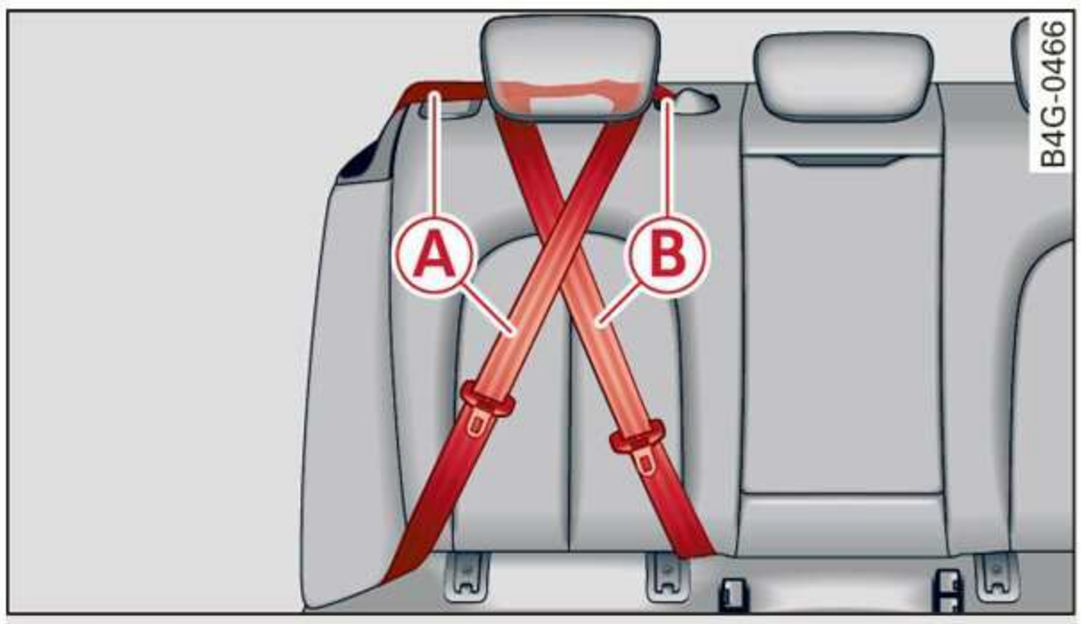


Fig. 226 Schematic overview: keep unused safety belts away from children in child safety seats. Ⓐ - outer rear safety belt, Ⓑ - center rear safety belt*

If a child safety seat is used on the rear bench, especially with LATCH universal lower anchorages, the unused safety belts **must** be secured so that the child in the child restraint cannot reach them ⇨ ⚠.

– Guide the safety belt webbings Ⓐ and Ⓑ* behind the head restraint of the seat where the child restraint is installed ⇨ *fig. 226*. When doing so, do not engage the convertible locking retractor! You should not hear a “clicking” sound when winding up the safety belt.
– Let the belt retractor wind up the safety belt webbing.

⚠ WARNING

A child in a child safety seat installed with the LATCH lower anchorages or with the standard safety belt or a child in a booster seat on the rear seat could play with unused rear seat safety belts and become entangled. This could cause the child serious personal injury and even death.

– Always secure unused rear seat safety belts out of reach of children in child seats such as by properly routing them around the head restraint of the seat where the child restraint is installed.
– Never activate the convertible locking retractor when routing the safety belts around the head restraints.

– Never let anyone sit at the center rear seating position* if the center rear safety belt has been routed around a rear head restraint.

Child safety seats

Infant seats

Babies and infants up to about one year old and 20 lbs. or 9 kg need special rearward-facing child restraints that support the back, neck and head in a crash.



Fig. 227 Schematic overview: rearward-facing infant seat, properly installed on the rear seat

- When using the vehicle safety belt to install a child safety seat, you must first activate the convertible locking retractor on the safety belt to prevent the child safety seat from moving ⇨ *page 289* or install the seat using the LATCH attachments.
- Push the child safety seat down with your full weight to get the safety belt really tight so that the seat cannot move forward or sideways more than one inch (2.5 cm).
- Secure unused safety belts on the rear seat ⇨ *page 284*.

Infants up to about one year (20 lbs. or 9 kg) are best protected in special infant carriers and child safety seats designed for their age group. Many experts believe that infants and small children should ride only in special restraints in which the child faces the back of the vehicle. These infant seats support the baby's back, neck and head in a crash ⇨ *fig. 227*.

The airbag on the passenger side makes the front seat a potentially dangerous place for a child to ▶

ride. The front seat is not the safest place for a child in a forward-facing child seat. It is a very dangerous place for an infant or a larger child in a rearward-facing seat.

WARNING

Not using a child safety seat, using the wrong child safety seat or improperly installing a child restraint increases the risk of serious personal injury and death in a crash.

- Never install rear-facing child safety seats or infant carriers on the front passenger seat - even with an Advanced Airbag System. A child will be seriously injured and can be killed when the inflating airbag hits the child safety seat or infant carrier with great force and smashes the child safety seat and child against the backrest, center armrest, door or roof ⇨ *page 254, Child restraints on the front seat – some important things to know*.
- Always install rear-facing child safety seats or infant carriers on the rear seat.
- Never install a rear-facing child restraint in the forward-facing direction. Such restraints are designed for the special needs of infants and very small children and cannot protect them properly if the seat is forward-facing.
- If you must install a rearward facing child safety seat on the front passenger seat because of exceptional circumstances and the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light does not come on and stay on, immediately install the rear-facing child safety seat in a rear seating position and have the airbag system inspected by your Audi dealer.
- Never place or use any electrical device (such as a laptop, CD player, electronic games device, power inverter or seat heater for child seats) on the front passenger seat if the device is connected to the 12-volt socket or the cigarette lighter socket.
- If a seat heater has been retrofitted or otherwise added to the front passenger seat, never install any child restraint system on this seat.
- Make sure that there are no wet objects (such as a wet towel) and no water or other liquids on the front passenger seat cushion.
- Never place objects on the seat (such as a laptop, CD player, electronic games device, power inverter or seat heater for child seats). These may influence the electrical capacitance measured by the capacitive passenger detection system and can also fly around in an accident and cause serious personal injury.
- Always read and heed all WARNINGS whenever using a child restrained in a vehicle is being used ⇨ *page 245, Safety belts*, ⇨ *page 253, Airbag system* and ⇨ *page 278, Important information*.

Convertible child safety seats

Properly used convertible child safety seats can help protect toddlers and children over age one who weigh between 20 and 40 lbs. (9 and 18 kg) in a crash.

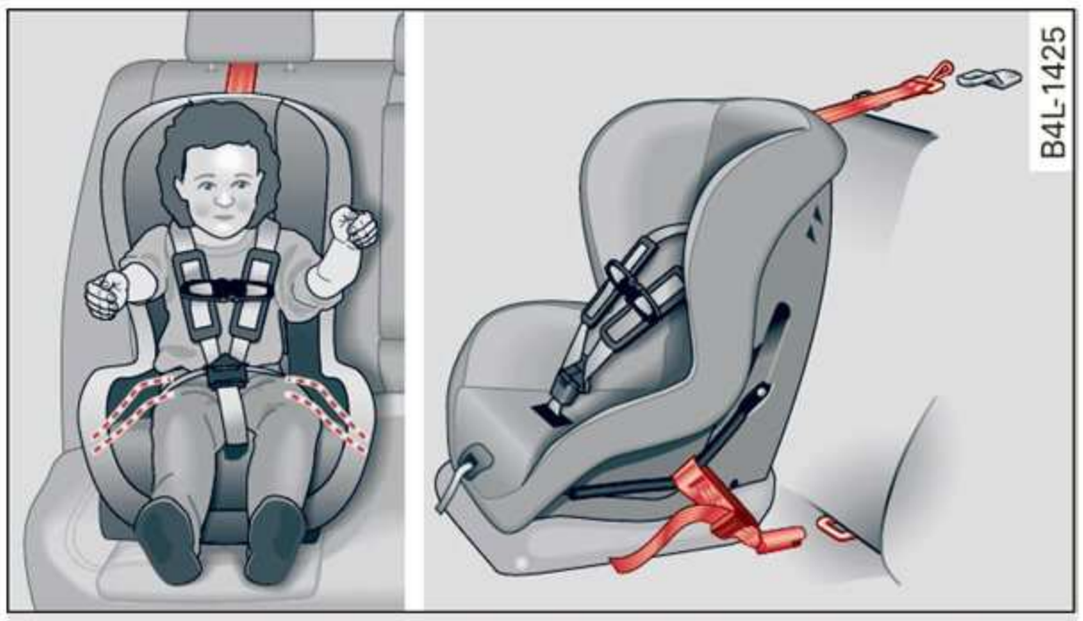


Fig. 228 Schematic overview: installation of the attachments applicable to a LATCH seat

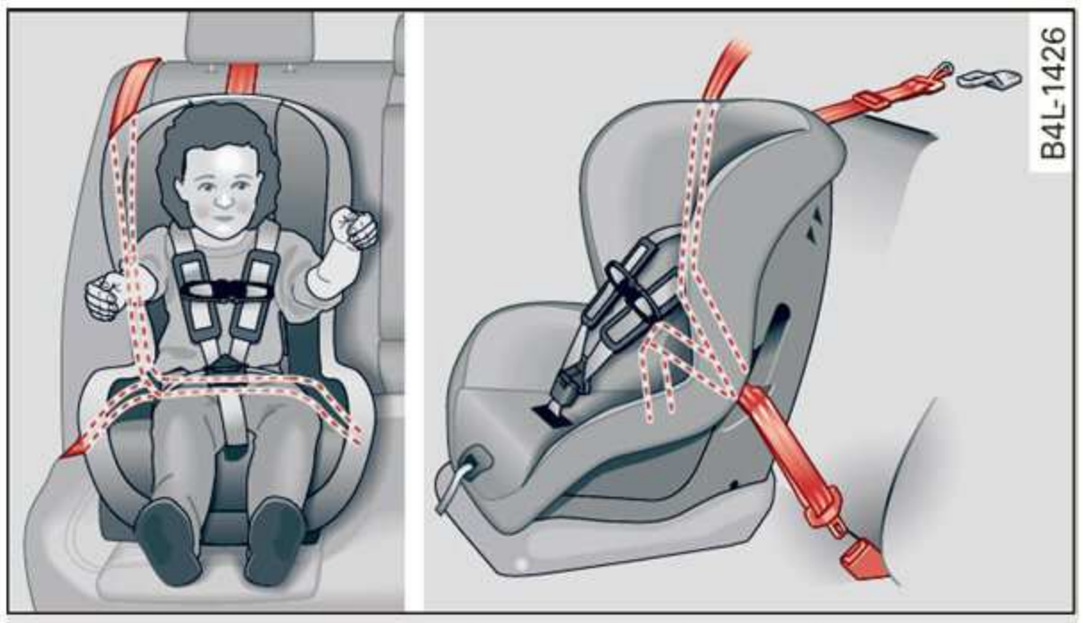


Fig. 229 Schematic overview: installation of the seat using the vehicle's safety belt system

▸ When using the vehicle safety belt to install a child safety seat, you must first activate the ▶

convertible locking retractor on the safety belt to prevent the child safety seat from moving ⇨ *page 289* or install the seat using the LATCH attachments.

- ► Push the child safety seat down with your full weight to get the safety belt really tight so that the seat cannot move forward or sideways more than one inch (2.5 cm) ⇨ *page 289*.
- ► If the child safety seat is equipped with a tether strap, attach it to the tether anchors ⇨ *page 294*.
- ► Secure unused safety belts on the rear seat ⇨ *page 284*.

A toddler or child is usually too large for an infant restraint if it is more than one year old and weighs more than 20 lbs. (9 kg).

Toddlers and children who are older than one year up to about 4 years old and weigh more than 20 lbs (9 kg) up to 40 lbs. (18 kg) must always be properly restrained in a child safety seat certified for their size and weight ⇨ *fig. 228* and ⇨ *fig. 229*.

The airbag on the passenger side makes the front seat a potentially dangerous place for a child to ride. The front seat is not the safest place for a child in a forward-facing child safety seat. It is a very dangerous place for an infant or a larger child in a rearward-facing seat.

WARNING

Not using a child safety seat, using the wrong child safety seat or improperly installing a child restraint increases the risk of serious personal injury and death in a collision or other emergency situation.

– Children on the front seat of any car, even with Advanced Airbags, can be seriously injured or even killed when an airbag inflates. A child in a rearward-facing child safety seat installed on the front passenger seat will be seriously injured and can be killed if the front airbag inflates – even with an Advanced Airbag System.
– The inflating airbag will hit the child safety seat or infant carrier with great force and will smash the child safety seat and child against the backrest, center arm rest, door or roof.
– Always install rear-facing child safety seats on the rear seat.
– If you must install a rearward facing child safety seat on the front passenger seat because of exceptional circumstances and the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light does not come on and stay on, immediately install the rear-facing child safety seat in a rear seating position and have the airbag system inspected by your Audi dealer.
– The rear side of the child safety seat should be positioned as close as possible to the backrest on the vehicle seat.
– For adjustable head restraints: adjust or remove the rear seat head restraint if it is difficult to install the child seat with the head restraint in place ⇨ *page 57*. Install the head restraint again immediately once the child seat is removed. Driving without head restraints or with head restraints that are not properly adjusted increases the risk of serious or fatal neck injury dramatically.
– Always read and heed all WARNINGS whenever using a child restrained in a vehicle is being used ⇨ *page 245, Safety belts*, ⇨ *page 253, Airbag system* and ⇨ *page 278, Important information*.

WARNING

If exceptional circumstances require the use of a forward-facing child restraint on the front passenger's seat, the child's safety and well-being require that the following special precautions be taken:

– Make sure the forward-facing seat has been designed and certified by its manufacturer for use on a front seat with a passenger front and side airbag.
– Always follow the manufacturer's instructions provided with the child safety seat or infant carrier.
– Always move the front passenger seat to the highest position in the up and down adjustment range and move it back to the rearmost position in the seat's fore and aft adjustment range, as far away from the airbag ▶

as possible, before installing the forward-facing child restraint.
– Always make sure that the safety belt upper anchorage is behind the child restraint and not next to or in front of the child restraint so that the safety belt will be properly positioned.
– Always make sure that nothing prevents the front passenger's seat from being moved to the rearmost position in its fore and aft adjustment range.
– Always make sure the backrest is in an upright position.
– Never place or use any electrical device (such as a laptop, CD player, electronic games device, power inverter or seat heater for child seats) on the front passenger seat if the device is connected to the 12-volt socket or the cigarette lighter socket.
– If a seat heater has been retrofitted or otherwise added to the front passenger seat, never install any child restraint system on this seat.
– Make sure that there are no wet objects (such as a wet towel) and no water or other liquids on the front passenger seat cushion.
– Never place objects on the seat (such as a laptop, CD player, electronic games device, power inverter or seat heater for child seats). These may influence the electrical capacitance measured by the capacitive passenger detection system and can also fly around in an accident and cause serious personal injury.
– Make sure that the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light comes on and stays on all the time whenever the ignition is switched on.
– If the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light does not come on and stay on, immediately install the forward-facing child seat at a seating position on the rear seat and have the airbag system inspected by your authorized Audi dealer.
– Take the child restraint off the front passenger seat and install it properly at one of the rear seat positions if the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light does not stay on whenever the ignition is switched on.

Booster seats and safety belts

Properly used booster seats can help protect children weighing between about 40 lbs. and 80 lbs. (18 kg and 36 kg) who are less than 4 ft. 9 in. (57 inches/1.45 meters) tall.



Fig. 230 Rear seat: child properly restrained in a booster seat

The vehicle's safety belts alone will not fit most children until they are at least 4 ft. 9 in. (57 inches/1.45 meters) tall and weigh about 80 lbs. (36 kg). Booster seats raise these children up so that the safety belt will pass properly over the stronger parts of their bodies and the safety belt can help protect them in a crash.

- ▸ Do not use the convertible locking retractor when using the vehicle's safety belt to restrain a child on a booster seat.
- ▸ The shoulder belt must lie as close to the center of the child's collar bone as possible and must lie flat and snug on the upper body. It must never lie across the throat or neck. The lap belt must lie across the pelvis and never across the stomach or abdomen. Make sure the belt lies flat and snug. Pull on the belt to tighten if necessary.
- ▸ Applies to: vehicles with safety belt height adjustment: If you must transport an older child in a booster seat on the front passenger seat, you can use the safety belt height adjustment to help adjust the shoulder portion properly.
- ▸ Secure unused safety belts on the rear seat ⇨ *page 284*.

Children up to at least 8 years old (over 40 lbs or 18 kg) are best protected in child safety seats designed for their age and weight. Experts say that the skeletal structure, particularly the pelvis, of ▶

these children is not fully developed, and they must not use the vehicle safety belts without a suitable child restraint.

It is usually best to put these children in appropriate booster seats. Be sure the booster seat meets all applicable safety standards.

Booster seats raise the seating position of the child and reposition both the lap and shoulder parts of the safety belt so that they pass across the child's body in the right places. The routing of the belt over the child's body is very important for the child's protection, whether or not a booster seat is used. Children age 12 and under must always ride in the rear seat.

Children who are at least 4 ft. 9 in. (57 inches/ 1.45 meters) tall can generally use the vehicle's three point lap and shoulder belts. Never use the lap belt portion of the vehicle's safety belt alone to restrain any child, regardless of how big the child is. Always remember that children do not have the pronounced pelvic structure required for the proper function of lap belt portion of the vehicle's three point lap and shoulder belts. The child's safety absolutely requires that a lap belt portion of the safety belt be fastened snugly and as low as possible around the pelvis. Never let the lap belt portion of the safety belt pass over the child's stomach or abdomen.

In a crash, airbags must inflate within a blink of an eye and with considerable force. In order to do its job, the airbag needs room to inflate so that it will be there to protect the occupant as the occupant moves forward into the airbag.

A vehicle occupant who is out of position and too close to the airbag gets in the way of an inflating airbag. When an occupant is too close, he or she will be struck violently and will receive serious or possibly even fatal injury. By keeping room between the child's body and the front of the passenger compartment, the airbag can inflate completely and provide supplemental protection in certain frontal collisions.

WARNING

Not using a booster seat, using the booster seat improperly, incorrectly installing a booster seat or using the vehicle safety belt improperly increases the risk of serious personal injury and death in a collision or other emergency situation. To help reduce the risk of serious personal injury and/or death:

- The shoulder belt must lie as close to the center of the child's collar bone as possible and must lie flat and snug on the upper body. It must never lie across the throat or neck. The lap belt must lie across the pelvis and never across the stomach or abdomen. Make sure that the belt lies flat and snug. Pull on the belt to tighten if necessary.
- Failure to properly route safety belts over a child's body will cause severe injuries in an accident or other emergency situation ⇨ *page 245*.
- The rear side of the child safety seat should be positioned as close as possible to the backrest on the vehicle seat.
- For adjustable head restraints: adjust or remove the rear seat head restraint if it is difficult to install the child seat with the head restraint in place ⇨ *page 57*. Install the head restraint again immediately once the child seat is removed. Driving without head restraints or with head restraints that are not properly adjusted increases the risk of serious or fatal neck injury dramatically.
- Never let a child put the shoulder belt under the arm or behind the back, because it could cause severe injuries in a crash.
- Children on the front seat of any car, even with Advanced Airbags, can be seriously injured or even killed when an airbag inflates.
- Never let a child stand or kneel on any seat, for example the front seat.
- Never let a child ride in the cargo area of your vehicle.
- Always remember that a child leaning forward, sitting sideways or out of position in any way during an accident can be struck by a deploying airbag. This will result in serious personal injury or death.
- If you must install a booster seat on the front passenger seat because of exceptional circumstances the **PASSENGER AIR BAG** ▶

OFF light must come on and stay on, whenever the ignition is switched on.
– If the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light does not come on and stay on, perform the checks described ⇨ *page 265, Monitoring the Advanced Airbag System*.
– Take the child restraint off the front passenger seat and install it properly at one of the rear seat positions if the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light does not stay on whenever the ignition is switched on.
– Always read and heed all WARNINGS whenever using a child restrained in a vehicle is being used ⇨ *page 245, Safety belts*, ⇨ *page 253, Airbag system* and ⇨ *page 278, Important information*.

Securing child safety seats

Securing a child safety seat using a safety belt

Safety belts for the rear seats and the front passenger can be locked with the convertible locking retractor to properly secure child safety seats.

The safety belts emergency locking retractors for the rear seats safety belts and for the front passenger's seat safety belt have a convertible locking retractor for child restraints. The safety belt must be locked so that belt webbing cannot unreel. The retractor can be activated to lock the safety belt and prevent the safety belt webbing from loosening up during normal driving. A child safety seat can only be properly installed when the safety belt is locked so that the child and child safety seat will stay in place.

Always remember: Even though your vehicle is equipped with an Advanced Airbag system, all children, especially those 12 years and younger, should always ride in the back seat properly restrained for their age and size.

WARNING

Improperly installed child safety seats increase the risk of serious personal injury and death in a collision.

– Always make sure that the safety belt retractor is locked when installing a child safety seat. An unlocked safety belt retractor cannot hold the child safety seat in place during normal driving or in a crash.
– Always buckle the child safety seat firmly in place even if a child is not sitting in it. A loose child safety seat can fly around during a sudden stop or in a collision.
– Always make sure that the rear seat backrest to which the center rear safety belt* is attached is securely latched whenever the rear center safety belt is being used to secure a child restraint.
– If the backrest is not securely latched, the child and the child restraint will be thrown forward together with the backrest and will strike parts of the vehicle interior. The child can be seriously injured or killed.
– Never install rear-facing child safety seats or infant carriers on the front passenger seat. A child will be seriously injured and can be killed when the passenger airbag inflates.
– The inflating airbag will hit the child safety seat or infant carrier with great force and will smash the child safety seat and child against the backrest, center armrest, door or roof.
– Always install rear-facing child safety seats or infant carriers on the rear seat.
– Forward-facing child safety seats or infant carriers installed on the front passenger's seat may interfere with the deployment of the airbag and cause serious injury to the child.
– It is safer to install a forward-facing child safety seat on the rear seat.
– Always read and heed all WARNINGS whenever using a child restrained in a vehicle is being used ⇨ *page 278*. Special precautions apply when installing a child safety seat on the front passenger seat ⇨ *page 254, Child restraints on the front seat – some important things to know*.

WARNING

Always take special precautions if you must install a forward or rearward-facing child restraint on the front passenger's seat in exceptional situations:

– Whenever a forward or rearward-facing child restraint is installed on the front passenger seat, the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light must come on and stay on whenever the ignition is switched on.
– If the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light does not come on and stay on, perform the checks described ⇨ *page 265, Monitoring the Advanced Airbag System*.
– Take the child restraint off the front passenger seat and install it properly at one of the rear seat positions if the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light does not stay on whenever the ignition is switched on.
– Improper installation of child restraints can reduce their effectiveness or even prevent them from providing any protection.
– An improperly installed child restraint can interfere with the airbag as it deploys and seriously injure or even kill the child.
– Always carefully follow the manufacturer's instructions provided with the child safety seat or carrier.
– After checking to make sure that the child restraint is properly installed, make certain that the child restraint is correctly recognized by the capacitive passenger detection system in the front passenger seat and that the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light signals the correct front passenger frontal airbag status.

WARNING

Forward-facing child restraints:

– Always make sure the forward-facing seat has been designed and certified by its manufacturer for use on a front seat with a passenger front and side airbag.
– Never put the forward-facing child restraint up, against or very near the instrument panel.
– Always move the front passenger seat to the highest position in the up and down adjustment range and move it back to the rearmost position in the seat's fore and aft adjustment range, as far away from the airbag as possible, before installing the forward-facing child restraint.
– Always make sure that the safety belt upper anchorage is behind the child restraint and not next to or in front of the child restraint so that the safety belt will be properly positioned.
– Make sure that the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light comes on and stays on all the time whenever the ignition is switched on.

WARNING

Rearward-facing child restraints:

– A child in a rearward-facing child safety seat installed on the front passenger seat will be seriously injured and can be killed if the front airbag inflates - even with an Advanced Airbag System.
– The inflating airbag will hit the child safety seat or infant carrier with great force and will smash the child safety seat and child against the backrest, center armrest, door or roof.
– Always be especially careful if you must install a rearward facing child safety seat on the front passenger seat in exceptional circumstances.
– Make sure that the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light comes on and stays on all the time whenever the ignition is switched on.
– If the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light does not come on and stay on, immediately install the rear-facing child safety seat in a rear seating position and have the airbag system inspected by your Audi dealer.

Activating the convertible locking retractor

Use the convertible locking retractor to secure a child restraint.

Always heed the child safety seat manufacturer's instructions when installing a child restraint in ▶

your vehicle. To activate the convertible locking retractor:

- ▸ Place the child restraint on a seat, preferably on the rear seat.
- ▸ Slowly pull the belt **all the way out**.
- ▸ Route it around or through the child restraint belt path ⇨ ⚠.
- ▸ Push the child safety seat down with your full weight to get the safety belt really tight.
- ▸ Insert the belt tongue into the buckle for that seating position.
- ▸ Guide the safety belt back into the retractor until the belt lies flat and snug on the child safety seat.
- ▸ You should hear a “clicking” noise as the belt winds back into the inertia reel. Test the convertible locking retractor by pulling on the belt. You should no longer be able to pull the belt out of the retractor. The convertible locking retractor is now activated.
- ▸ Make sure that the red release button is facing away from the child restraint so that it can be unbuckled quickly.
- ▸ Pull on the belt to make sure the safety belt is properly tight and fastened so that the seat cannot move forward or sideways more than one inch (2.5 cm).

⚠ WARNING

Using the wrong child restraint or an improperly installed child restraint can cause serious personal injury or death in a crash.

– Always make sure that the safety belt retractor is locked when installing a child safety seat. An unlocked safety belt retractor cannot hold the child safety seat in place during normal driving or in a crash.
– Always buckle the child safety seat firmly in place even if a child is not sitting in it. A loose child safety seat can fly around during a sudden stop or in a crash.
– Always make sure the seat backrest to which the child restraint is installed is in an upright position and securely latched into place and cannot fold forward. Otherwise, the seatback with the child safety seat attached to it could fly forward in the event of an accident or other emergency situation.
– Always read and heed all WARNINGS whenever using a child restrained in a vehicle is being used ⇨ *page 278*. Special precautions apply when installing a child safety seat on the front passenger seat ⇨ *page 254, Child restraints on the front seat – some important things to know*.

Deactivating the convertible locking retractor

The convertible locking retractor for child restraints will be deactivated automatically when the belt is wound all the way back into the retractor.

- ▸ Press the red button on the safety belt buckle. The belt tongue will pop out of the buckle.
- ▸ Guide the safety belt all the way back into its stowed position.

Always let the safety belt retract completely into its stowed position. The safety belt can now be used as an ordinary safety belt without the convertible locking retractor for child restraints.

If the convertible locking retractor should be activated inadvertently, the safety belt must be unfastened and guided completely back into its stowed position to deactivate this feature. If the convertible locking retractor is not deactivated, the safety belt will gradually become tighter and uncomfortable to wear.

⚠ WARNING

Improperly installed child safety seats increase the risk of serious personal injury and death in a collision.

– Never unfasten the safety belt to deactivate the convertible locking retractor for child restraints while the vehicle is moving. You would not be restrained and could be seriously injured in an accident.
– Always read and heed all WARNINGS whenever using a child restrained in a vehicle is being used ⇨ *page 278*. Special precautions apply when installing a child safety seat on ▶

the front passenger seat ⇨ *page 254, Child restraints on the front seat – some important things to know.*

LATCH system (lower anchorages and tethers for children)

Child Restraint System anchors and how are they related to child safety

To provide a simpler and more practicable way to attach the child restraint on the vehicle seat, Federal regulations require special lower anchorages in vehicles and devices on new child restraints to attach to the vehicle anchorages.

In the United States, the combination of the tether anchorages and the lower anchorages is now generally called the LATCH system for "**L**ower **A**nchorages and **T**ethers for **Ch**ildren". In Canada, the terms "top tether" with "lower universal anchorages" (or "lower universal anchorage bars") are used to describe the system.

In other countries the term "ISOFIX" is used to describe the lower anchorages.

Forward-facing child restraints manufactured after September 1, 1999, are required by U.S. federal regulations to comply with new child head movement performance requirements. These new performance requirements make a tether necessary on most new child seats.

Installing a child restraint that requires a top tether without one can seriously impair the performance of the child restraint and its ability to protect the child in a collision. Installing a child restraint that requires a top tether without the top tether may be a violation of state law.

Child restraint manufacturers offer LATCH lower anchorages on their child seats with hook-on or push-on connectors attached to adjustable straps.

In addition to the LATCH lower anchorages, these child restraint systems usually require the use of tether straps to help keep the child restraint firmly in place.

Some child restraints may require both the LATCH lower anchorages as well as the vehicle safety belt for proper installation. This concurrent use is allowed as long as it does not interfere with either attachment system or the adjoining seating positions' vehicle safety belts, if so applicable.

WARNING

Improper installation of child restraints will increase the risk of injury and death in a crash.

- Always follow the instructions provided by the manufacturer of the child restraint you intend to install in your vehicle.
- Never install a child restraint without a properly attached top tether strap if the child restraint manufacturer's instructions require the top tether strap to be used.
- Improper use of child restraint LATCH lower anchorage points can lead to injury in a collision. The LATCH lower anchorage points are designed to withstand only those loads imposed by correctly fitted child restraints.
- Never mount two child restraint systems on one LATCH lower anchorage point.
- Never secure or attach any luggage or other item to the LATCH lower anchorages.

Location

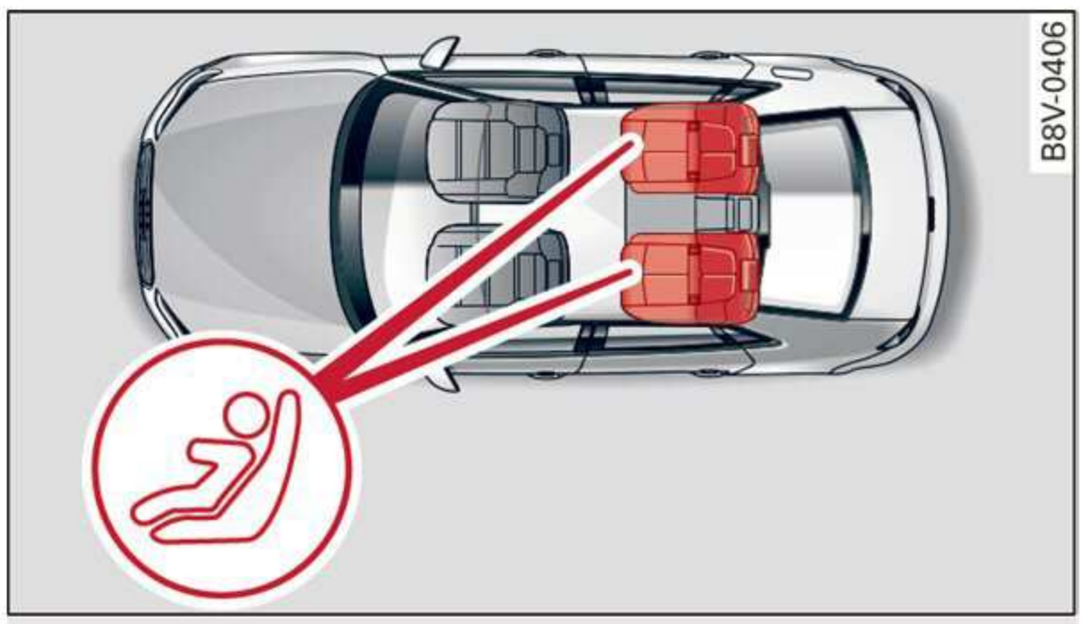


Fig. 231 Schematic overview: LATCH anchorage point locations (example)

The illustration shows the seating locations in your vehicle which are equipped with the lower anchorages system.

Description

The lower anchorage positions are marked for quick locating.

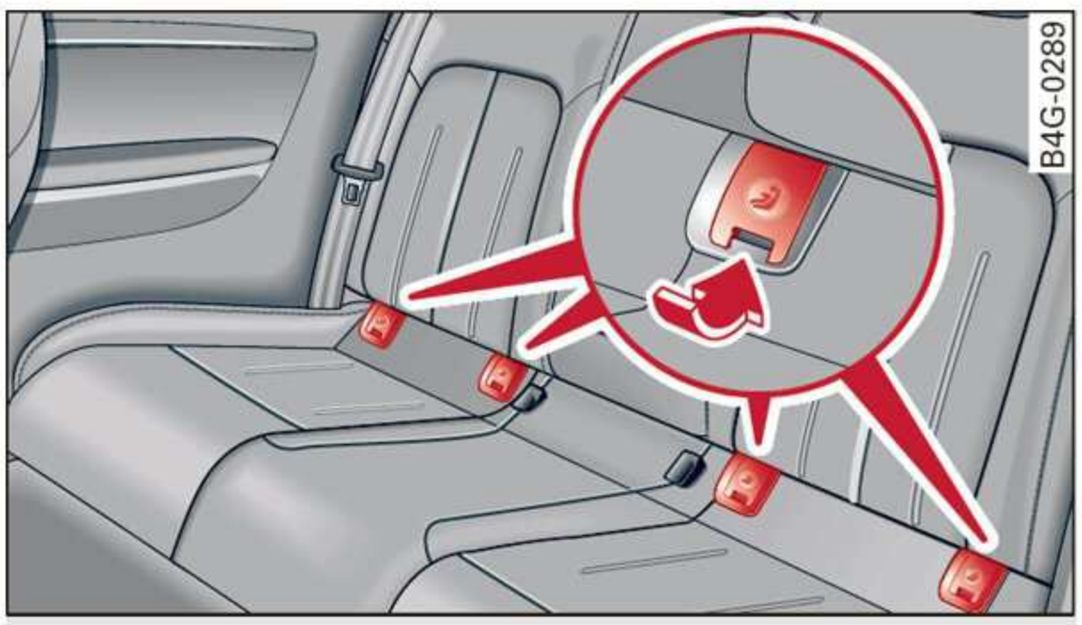


Fig. 232 Lower anchorages, covers marked

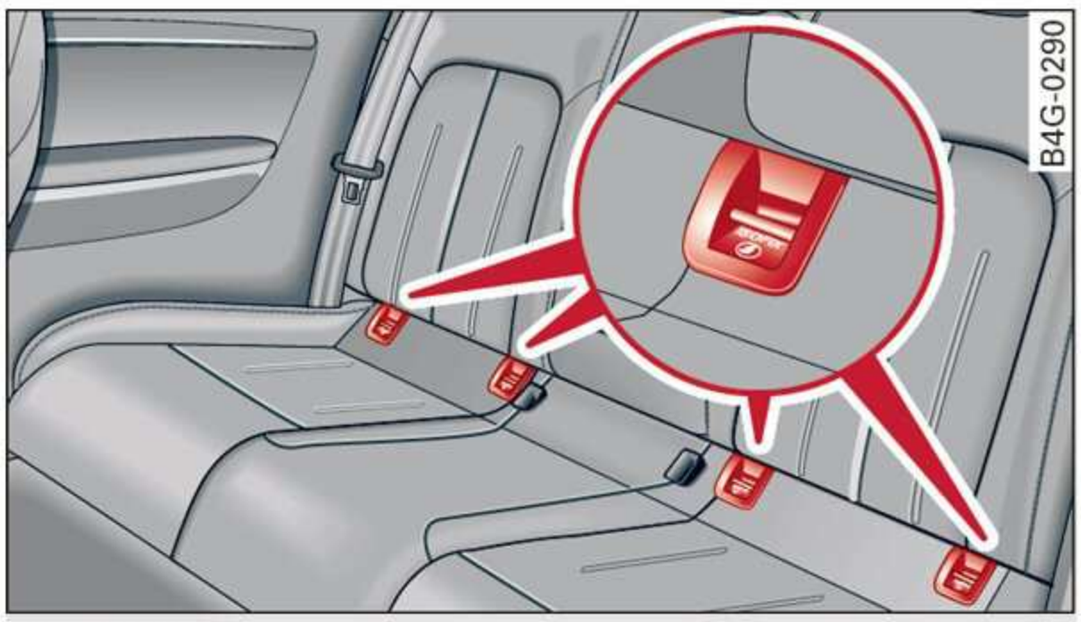


Fig. 233 Rear seats: lower anchorage bracket locations

Lower anchorages

The circular markings on the rear seat help you to identify the location of lower anchorages for the two outboard seating positions ⇨ *fig. 232*. The LATCH lower universal anchorage attachment points are between the rear seatback and rear seat cushion.

Remove the covers ⇨ *fig. 232* to access the lower anchorage attachment points.

The lower anchorage attachment points are visible ⇨ *fig. 233*.

Lower anchorages secure the child restraint in the seat without using the vehicle's safety belts. Anchorages provide a secure and easy-to-use attachment and minimize the possibility of improper child restraint installation.

All child restraints manufactured after September 1, 2002, must have lower anchorage attachments for the *LATCH* system.

Please remember that the lower anchorage points are only intended for installation and attachment of child restraints specifically certified for use with *LATCH* lower anchorages. Child restraints that are not equipped with the lower anchorage attachments can still be installed in compliance with the child restraint manufacturer's instructions on using vehicle safety belts.

WARNING

Improper use of LATCH lower anchorages can cause serious personal injury in an accident.

- Always carefully follow the child restraints manufacturer's instructions for proper installation of the child restraint and proper use of the lower anchorages or safety belts in your vehicle.
- Never secure or attach any luggage or other items to the *LATCH* lower anchorages.
- Always read and heed the important information about child restraints in this chapter and WARNINGS ⇨ *page 278, Child safety*.

Installing a child restraint with LATCH lower anchorages

Applies to: vehicles with Top Tether

Whenever you install a child restraint always follow the child restraint manufacturer's instructions.

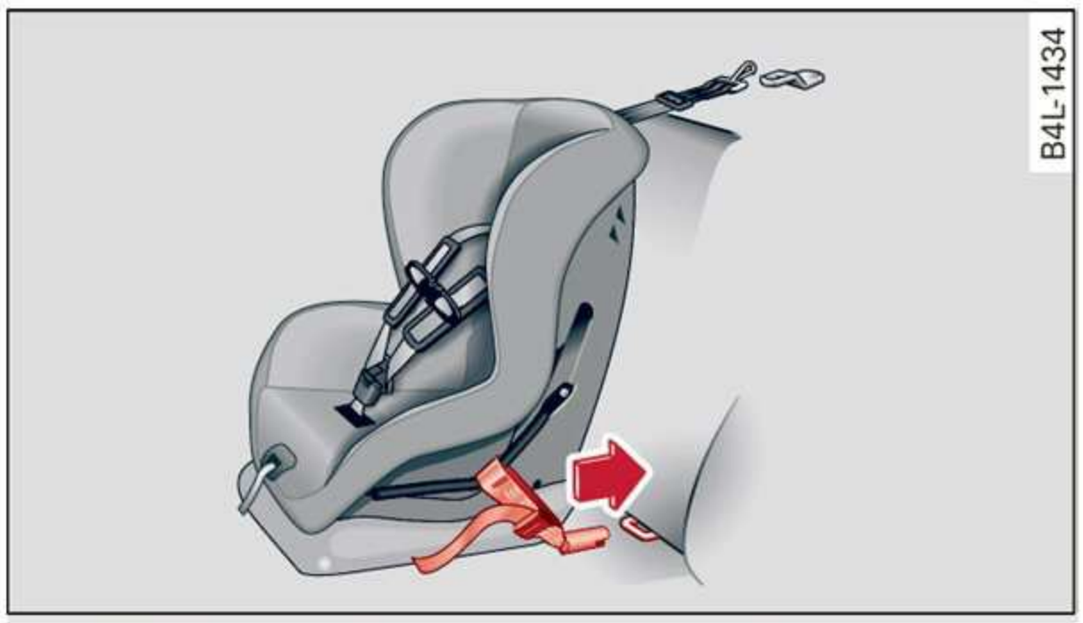


Fig. 234 Lower anchorages: proper mounting

Mounting

- ▸ Make sure the seatback of the rear seat bench is in the upright position and securely latched in place.
- ▸ Attach both hook-on connectors with the spring catch release on the child safety seat onto the ▶

LATCH lower anchorage so that the connectors lock into place ⇨ *fig. 234*.

- ► Pull on the connector attachments to make sure they are properly attached to the LATCH lower anchorage.
- ► Pull straps tight following the child restraint manufacturer's instructions.

Releasing

- ► Loosen the tension on the straps following the child restraint manufacturer's instructions.
- ► Depress the spring catches to release the anchorage hooks from the lower anchorages.

Remember: Use tether straps to help keep the child restraint firmly in place.

WARNING

Improper use of the LATCH system can increase the risk of serious personal injury and death in an accident.

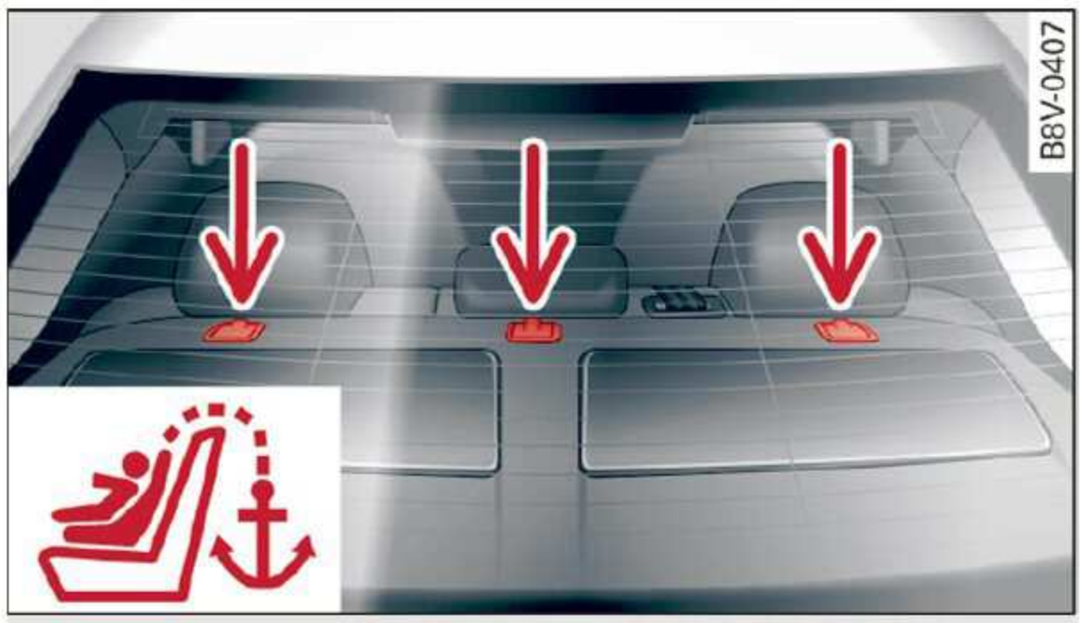
– These anchors were developed only for child safety seats using the “LATCH” system.
– Never attach other child safety seats, belts or other objects to these anchors.
– Always make sure that you hear a click when latching the seat in place. If you do not hear a click the seat is not secure and could fly forward and hit the interior of the vehicle, or be ejected from the vehicle.

WARNING

Improper installation of child restraints will increase the risk of injury in an accident.

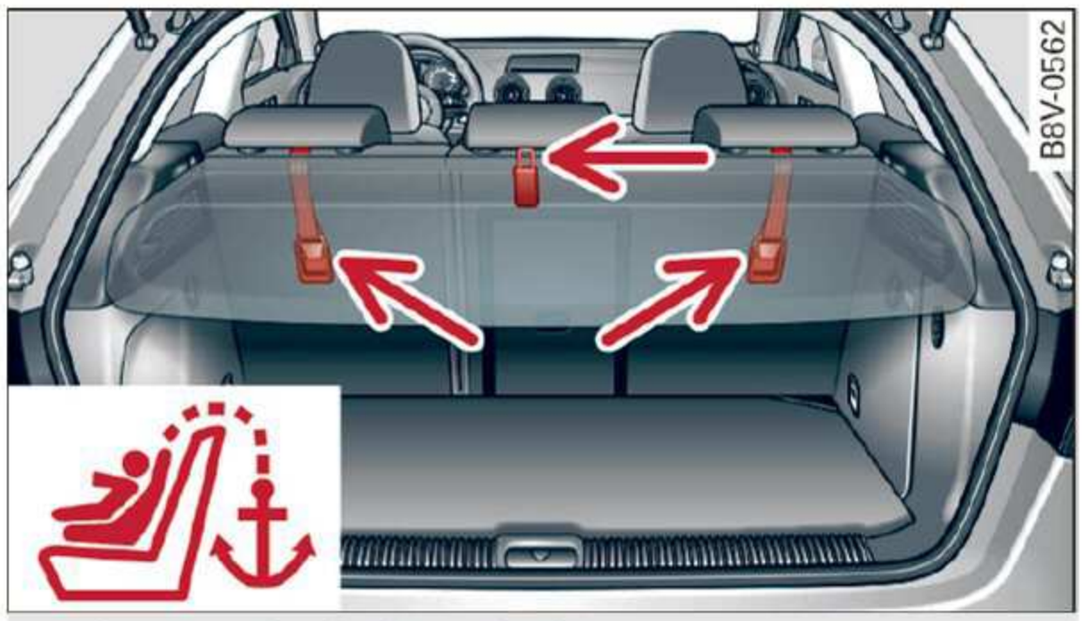
– Always follow the child restraint system manufacturer's instructions for proper installation of the child restraint system and proper use of tether straps as well as the lower anchorages or safety belts in your vehicle.
– Always read and heed the important information and WARNINGS about child safety and the installation of child restraint systems ⇨ *page 278, Child safety*.

Tether anchors and tether straps



Applies to: Sedan

Fig. 235 Tether anchors: recess flaps behind the rear seatbacks



Applies to: Cabriolet/Sportback

Fig. 236 Tether anchors: recess flaps behind the rear seatbacks

Applies to: Sedan: The tether anchors for the rear seating positions are located in recesses in the rear window shelf ⇨ *fig. 235*

Applies to: Cabriolet/Sportback: The tether anchors for the rear seating positions are located on the backside of the rear seatbacks ⇨ *fig. 236*.

A tether is a straight or V-shaped strap that attaches the top part of a child restraint to special anchorage points in the vehicle.

The purpose of the tether is to reduce the forward movement of the child restraint in a crash, in order to help reduce the risk of head injury that could be caused by striking the vehicle interior.

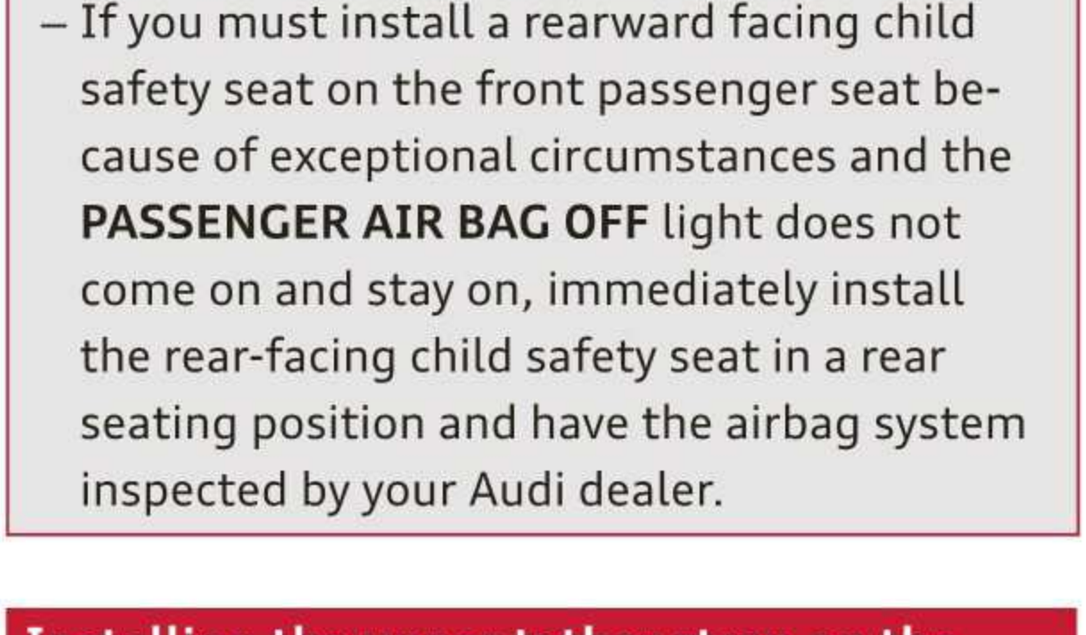
Forward facing child restraints manufactured after September 1, 1999, are required by U.S. federal regulations to comply with new child head movement performance requirements. These new performance requirements make a tether necessary on most new child safety seats. ▶

WARNING

Improper installation of child restraints will increase the risk of injury and death in a crash.

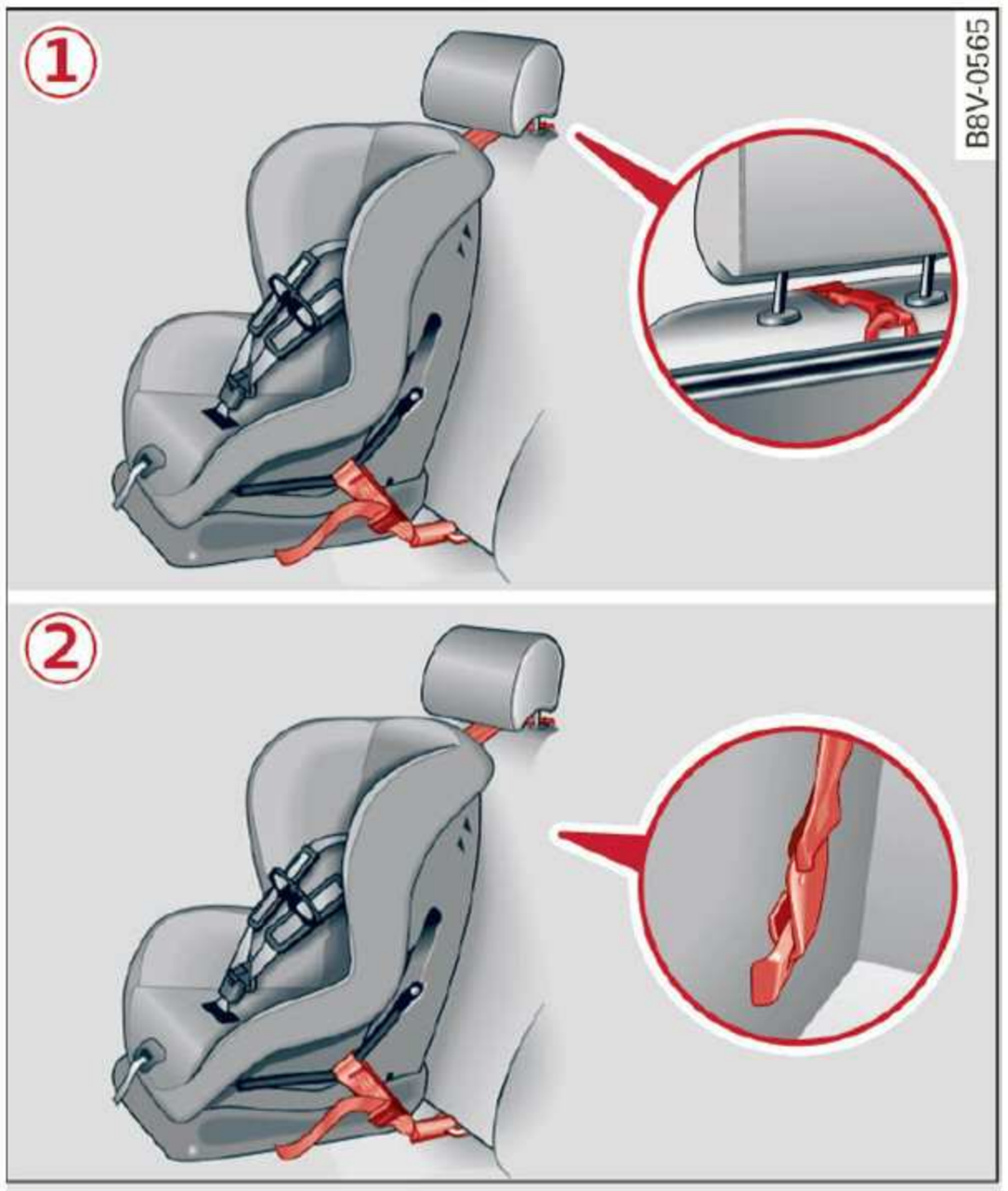
- Always follow the instructions provided by the manufacturer of the child restraint you intend to install in your Audi.
- Improper use of child restraint anchors (including tether anchors) can lead to injury in a collision. The anchors are designed to withstand only those loads imposed by correctly fitted child restraints.
- Never mount two child restraint systems on one LATCH lower anchor point.
- Never attach two child restraint systems to one tether strap or tether anchorage.
- Never attach a tether strap to a tie-down hook in the luggage compartment.
- Never use child restraint tether anchorages to secure safety belts or other kinds of occupant restraints.
- Never secure or attach any luggage or other items to the LATCH lower anchorages or to the tether anchors.
- If you must install a rearward facing child safety seat on the front passenger seat because of exceptional circumstances and the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light does not come on and stay on, immediately install the rear-facing child safety seat in a rear seating position and have the airbag system inspected by your Audi dealer.

Installing the upper tether strap on the anchorage



Applies to: Sedan

Fig. 237 Tether strap: proper routing and mounting



Applies to: Cabriolet/Sportback

Fig. 238 Tether strap: proper routing and mounting. ① center, ② outside

Installing the tether strap

Applies to: Sedan

- ▸ Release or deploy the tether strap on the child restraint according to the child restraint manufacturer's instructions.
- ▸ Guide the upper tether strap **under** the rear head restraint (raise the head restraint if necessary) ⇨ *fig. 237*. For child restraints with V-tether straps, always make sure that the head restraint guide rods do not interfere with any part of the top tether strap.
- ▸ Tilt the recess flap up to expose the anchor bracket.
- ▸ Attach the tether strap anchorage hook into the opening of the tether anchorage.
- ▸ Pull on the tether strap hook so that the spring catch of the hook engages.
- ▸ Tighten the tether strap firmly following the child restraint manufacturer's instructions.

Installing the tether strap

Applies to: Cabriolet/Sportback

- ▸ Release or deploy the tether strap on the child restraint according to the child restraint manufacturer's instructions. ▶

- ▸ Applies to: Sportback: Unlock the backrest and fold it slightly forward ⇨ *page 62, Increasing the cargo area* and locate the tether anchor behind the rear seat backrest.
- ▸ Applies to: Cabriolet: Unlock the backrest and fold it slightly forward ⇨ *page 63, Pass-through* and locate the tether anchor behind the rear seat backrest.
- ▸ Guide the upper tether strap **under** the rear head restraint (raise the head restraint if necessary) ⇨ *fig. 238*. For child restraints with V-tether straps, always make sure that the head restraint guide rods do not interfere with any part of the top tether strap.
- ▸ Attach the tether strap anchorage hook into the opening of the tether anchorage.
- ▸ Pull on the tether strap hook so that the spring catch of the hook is engaged.
- ▸ Straighten the backrest back up into its upright position and press it firmly into the locking mechanism.
- ▸ Tighten the tether strap firmly following the child restraint manufacturer's instructions.

Releasing the tether strap

- ▸ Loosen the tension on the straps following the child restraint manufacturer's instructions.
- ▸ Depress the spring catch on the hook and release it from the anchorage.

Remember: Use tether straps to help keep the child restraint firmly in place.

WARNING

Improper use of the LATCH system can increase the risk of serious personal injury and death in an accident.

– These anchors were developed only for child safety seats using the “LATCH” system.
– Never attach other child safety seats, belts or other objects to these anchors.
– Always make sure that you hear a click when latching the seat in place. If you do not hear a click the seat is not secure and could fly forward and hit the interior of the vehicle, or be ejected from the vehicle.

WARNING

Improper installation of child restraints will increase the risk of injury in an accident.

– Always follow the child restraint system manufacturer's instructions for proper installation of the child restraint system and proper use of tether straps as well as the lower anchorages or safety belts in your vehicle.
– Always read and heed the important information and WARNINGS about child safety and the installation of child restraint systems ⇨ *page 278, Child safety*.

Using tether straps on rearward-facing child restraints

Currently, few rear-facing child restraint systems come with a tether. Please read and heed the child restraint system manufacturer's instructions carefully to determine how to properly install the tether.

WARNING

A child in a rearward-facing child safety seat installed on the front passenger seat will be seriously injured and can be killed if the front airbag inflates - even with an Advanced Airbag System.

– The inflating airbag will hit the child safety seat or infant carrier with great force and will smash the child safety seat and child against the backrest, center armrest, or door.
– If you must install a rearward facing child safety seat on the front passenger seat because of exceptional circumstances and the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light does not come on and stay on, immediately install the rear-facing child safety seat in a rear seating position and have the airbag system inspected by your Audi dealer.

Additional information

Sources of information about child restraints and their use

There are a number of sources of additional information about child restraint selection, installation and use:

NHTSA advises that the best child safety seat is the one that fits your child and fits in your vehicle, and that you will use correctly and consistently.

Try before you buy!

U.S. National Highway Traffic Safety Administration
Tel.: 1-888-327-4236 (TTY: 1-800-424-9153)
http://www.nhtsa.gov
http://www.safercar.gov

National SAFE KIDS Campaign
Tel.: (202) 662-0600
http://www.safekids.org

Safety BeltSafe U.S.A.
Tel.: (800) 745-SAFE (English)
Tel.: (800) 747-SANO (Spanish)
http://www.carseat.org

Transport Canada Information Centre
Tel.: 1-800-333-0371 or call 1-613-998-8616 if you are in the Ottawa area
http://www.tc.gc.ca/eng/roadsafety/menu.htm

Audi Customer Experience Center
Tel.: (800) 822-2834

8V2012721BK

Checking and Filling

Fuel

Types of gasoline

The correct gasoline grade is stated on the inside of the fuel filler door.

The vehicle is equipped with a catalytic converter and must only be driven with **unleaded gasoline**.

Audi recommends using TOP TIER Detergent Gasoline. For additional information on TOP TIER Detergent Gasoline, visit www.toptiergas.com.

The individual gasoline grades are differentiated by **octane ratings**. This value is given with (R +M)/2 equating to AKI or in RON.

The headings below match the sticker in the fuel filler door (examples):

UNLEADED FUEL ONLY MIN. (R+M)/2 87 Regular / MIN. RON 91 Regular

Use regular gasoline with minimum 87 AKI / 91 RON ⇨ (!).

Audi recommends using premium gasoline with minimum 91 AKI / 95 RON to achieve the rated horsepower and torque.

UNLEADED FUEL ONLY PREMIUM MIN. (R +M)/2 91 / SUPER MIN. RON 95

Using premium gasoline with minimum 91 AKI / 95 RON is recommended.

If premium gasoline is not available, you can also use regular gasoline 87 AKI / 91 RON. However this does reduce the engine power slightly.

Note

– Filling the tank just one time with leaded fuel or other metallic additives will cause permanent deterioration to the catalytic converter function.
– When gasoline with an octane rating that is too low is used, high speeds or heavy engine load can lead to engine damage.

Tips

The vehicle may be filled with fuel that has a higher octane rating than what is required by the engine.

Gasoline mixture

Gasoline with alcohol or MTBE (Methyl-Tert-Butyl-Ether)

You can use unleaded gasoline mixed with alcohol or MTBE (generally labeled as oxygenated compounds) as long as the fuel meets the following conditions:

Gasoline with methanol content (methyl alcohol or methanol)

– Anti-Knock Index is at least 87 AKI
– No more than 3% methanol
– More than 2% solvent

Gasoline with ethanol content (ethyl alcohol or ethanol)

– Anti-Knock Index is at least 87 AKI
– No more than 15% ethanol

Gasoline with MTBE content

– Anti-Knock Index is at least 87 AKI
– No more than 15% MTBE

Gasoline adapted to the season

Many gasoline fuels are adapted to the seasons. When the season changes, we recommend refueling at high-traffic gas stations. It is more likely that the gasoline will be suitable for the season there.

Note

– Gasoline with methanol content that does not meet the specified conditions may cause corrosion damage and damage to plastic or rubber components in the fuel system.
– Do not use gasoline that does not meet the specifications.
– If you are unable to find out if a specific gasoline mixture meets the specifications, ask the gas station operator or their fuel supplier.

– Do not use any gasoline mixture whose composition cannot be identified.
– Audi does not assume any responsibility for damage to the fuel system or for performance problems caused by using gasoline mixtures different from those specified. This type of damage also does not fall under the New Vehicle Limited Warranty or under the emissions control system warranty.
– If you notice a higher fuel consumption or poor handling or performance problems due to such gasoline mixtures, we recommend fueling with unblended gasoline.

Gasoline additives

An important issue for many automobile manufacturers is combustion residue in the engine that results from the use of certain fuels.

Although types of gasoline differ depending on the manufacturer, there are similarities. Certain substances in the gasoline may cause deposits in the engine. Additives in the gasoline that should keep the engine and fuel system clean do not all function equally.

Audi recommends using TOP TIER Detergent Gasoline. For additional information on TOP TIER Detergent Gasoline, visit www.toptiergas.com.

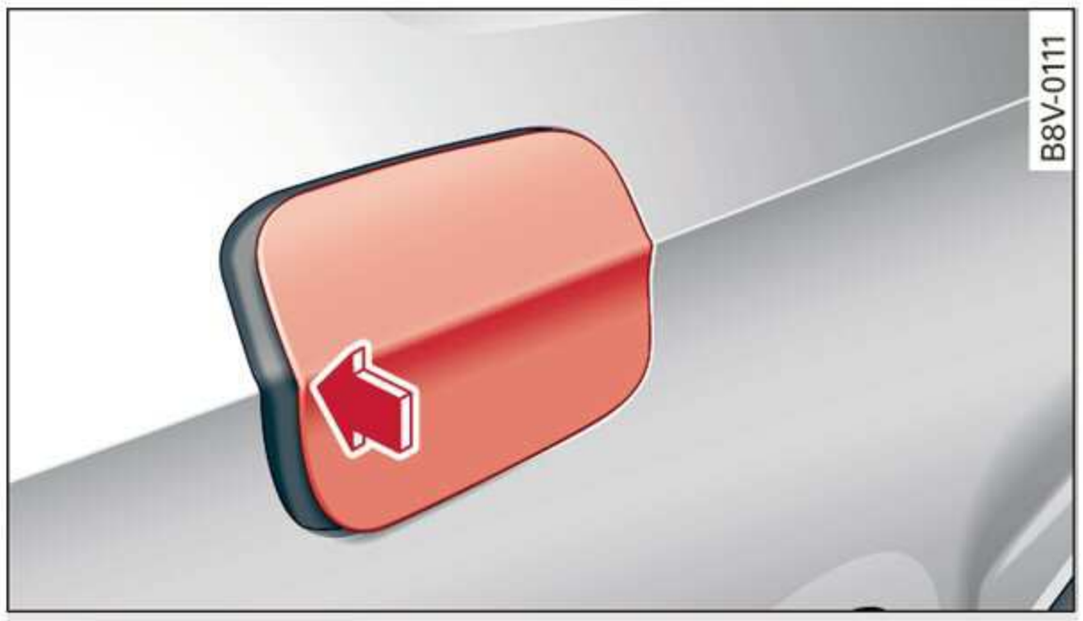
If you use incorrect fuels over a long period of time, the maximum engine performance may be impaired by combustion residue.

Note

– Damage or malfunctions caused by the use of incorrect types of gasoline are not covered by the New Vehicle Limited Warranty.
– Only gasoline additives that have been approved by Audi may be used.

Refueling

Fueling procedure



Applies to: vehicles with conventional drive system
Fig. 239 Right rear side of vehicle: opening the fuel filler door



Applies to: vehicles with conventional drive system
Fig. 240 Fuel filler door with tank cap on

Plug-in hybrid drive*: refer to the information under ⇨ *page 302, Refueling*.

The fuel filler door is unlocked or locked by the central locking system.

▸ Plug-in hybrid drive: read and follow the instructions under ⇨ *page 302, Opening the fuel filler door*.
▸ Unlock the vehicle if necessary.
▸ Conventional drive system: press on the left side of the fuel filler door to open it ⇨ *fig. 239*.
▸ Unscrew the tank cap counterclockwise.
▸ Place the cap from above on the open fuel filler door ⇨ *fig. 240*.
▸ Insert the fuel pump nozzle all the way into the fuel filler neck.
▸ Begin fueling. Once the fuel pump nozzle turns off the first time, the fuel tank is full. Do not continue fueling, or else the expansion space in the tank will be filled with fuel. ▶

- ▸ After the fuel pump has switched off, wait five seconds before removing the nozzle to allow the rest of the fuel to finish dripping into the fuel tank.
- ▸ Turn the fuel cap clockwise until it clicks into place.
- ▸ Close the fuel filler door and then press on the left side until it latches.

The correct fuel type for your vehicle can be found on a label located on the inside of the fuel filler door. For additional information on fuel, see ⇨ *page 298*.

For the tank capacity in your vehicle, refer to the Technical Data ⇨ *page 380*.

To reduce the risk of fuel leaking out or vapors escaping, make sure that the fuel tank is closed correctly. Otherwise the [1)] indicator light will turn on.

If the central locking system malfunctions, there is a fuel filler door emergency release ⇨ *page 301*.

Messages

Plug-in hybrid drive: for additional information on refueling, see ⇨ *page 302*.

Tank system: malfunction! Please contact Service

There is a malfunction in the fuel tank system. Drive to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility immediately to have the malfunction corrected.

WARNING

Improper fueling procedures and improper handling of fuel can lead to explosions, fires, severe burns, and other injuries.

- – Do not smoke. Keep away from open flames.
- – The ignition must be switched off when refueling.
- – Mobile devices, radio devices, and other radio equipment should always be switched off when refueling. Electromagnetic rays could cause sparks and start a fire.
- – If you do not insert the fuel pump nozzle all the way into the filler tube, then fuel can leak out. Spilled fuel can ignite and start a fire.
- – Never get into the vehicle when refueling. If there is an exceptional situation where you must enter the vehicle, close the door and touch a metal surface before touching the fuel pump nozzle again. This will reduce the risk of electrostatic discharge that can cause flying sparks. Sparks can start a fire when refueling.

WARNING

Transporting fuel containers inside the vehicle is not recommended. Fuel could leak out of the container and ignite, especially during an accident. This can cause explosions, fires, and injuries.

- – If you must transport fuel in a fuel container, note the following:
  - – Always place the fuel container on the ground before filling. Never fill the fuel container with fuel while it is inside or on the vehicle. Electrostatic discharge can occur while refueling and the fuel vapors could ignite.
  - – When using fuel containers made of metal, the fuel pump nozzle must always remain in contact with the container to reduce the risk of static charge.
  - – Insert the fuel pump nozzle as far as possible into the filler opening while refueling.
  - – Follow the applicable legal regulations in the country where you are driving when using, storing and transporting fuel containers.
  - – Make sure that the fuel container meets the industry standards, for example ANSI or ASTM F852-86.

1) Depending on the engine and country

Note

– Remove fuel that has overflowed onto any vehicle components immediately to reduce the risk of damage to the vehicle.
– Never drive until the fuel tank is completely empty. The irregular supply of fuel that results from that can cause engine misfires. Uncombusted fuel may enter the exhaust system and increase the risk of damage to the catalytic converter.

For the sake of the environment

– Do not overfill the fuel tank, or fuel could leak out when the vehicle is warming up.
– Fuel should never enter the sewer system or come into contact with the ground.

Tips

The fuel filler door on your vehicle does not lock if you lock the vehicle from the inside using the central locking switch.

Tips

Fuel can age and may lead to problems when starting. Audi recommends replacing the fuel in your vehicle within six months.

Tips

Applies to: vehicles with plug-in hybrid drive

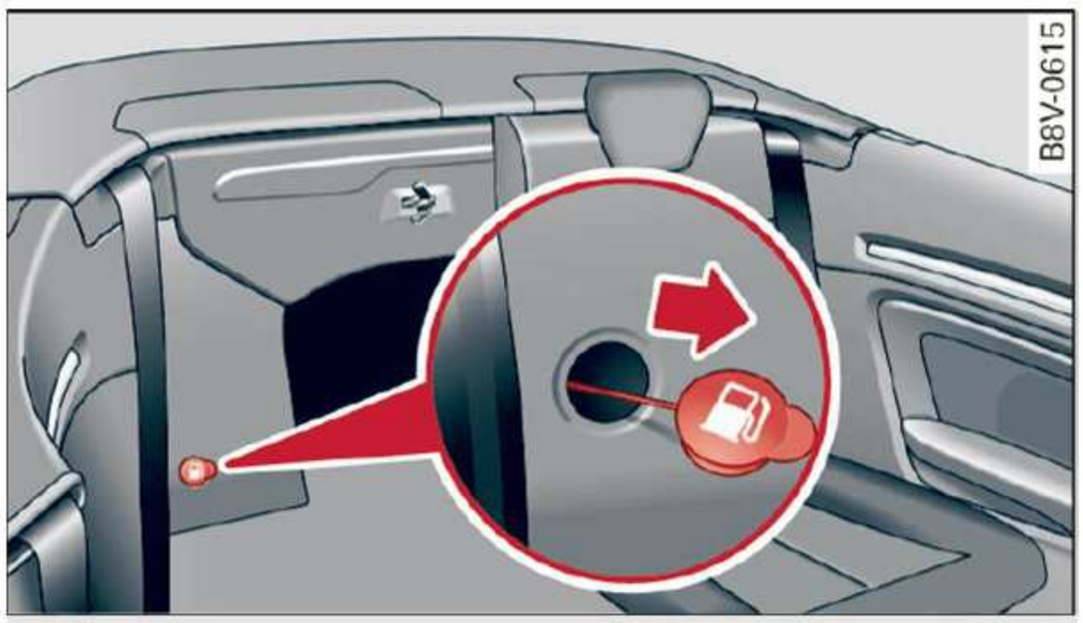
If the engine turned off because the fuel level was too low, then you may need to refuel with up to 4.0 gallons (15 liters) of fuel in order for the vehicle to detect the new fuel level. Otherwise, the engine may not restart.

Fuel filler door emergency release

If the central locking system malfunctions, the fuel filler door can be unlocked manually.



Applies to: version 1
Fig. 241 Right rear luggage compartment: emergency release (example)



Applies to: version 2
Fig. 242 Rear of the vehicle: right rear seat folded forward

Emergency release in the luggage compartment

Applies to: version 1

The emergency opening mechanism is located behind the right side trim panel in the luggage compartment.

► Remove the cover in the side panel.
► To unlock the fuel filler door, loosen the loop from the retainer and then pull on the loop carefully in the direction of the arrow ⇨ *fig. 241* ⇨ (!).
► Conventional drive system: press on the left side of the fuel filler door to open it ⇨ *page 299, fig. 239*.

Plug-in hybrid drive*: read and follow the instructions under ⇨ *page 302*. ▶

Emergency release behind the rear seat backrest

Applies to: version 2

The emergency release is located behind the right rear seat.

The pull cable for the emergency release is located on the cover.

- ▸ To access the emergency release, fold the right backrest forward ⇨ *page 63*.
- ▸ Remove the cover from the trim panel.
- ▸ To release the fuel filler door, pull the cover in the direction of the arrow carefully at a 45° angle toward the center of the vehicle ⇨ *fig. 242* ⇨ (!). The tab on the cover must point forward in the direction you are pulling when pulling on the cover.
- ▸ Press on the left side of the fuel filler door to open it ⇨ *page 299, fig. 239*.

(!) Note

Only pull on the loop/cover until you feel resistance. You will not hear it release. If you continue to pull, you could damage the emergency release mechanism.

Refueling

Opening the fuel filler door

Applies to: vehicles with plug-in hybrid drive



Fig. 243 Driver's door: button

The tank system must be vented before refueling

- ▸ Switch the ignition off with the START ENGINE STOP button.
- ▸ Pull the switch.
- ▸ The fuel filler door will open automatically after venting is complete.

Read and follow the directions for inserting the fuel pump nozzle ⇨ *page 302*.

Read and follow the instructions for refueling ⇨ *page 299*.

Inserting the fuel pump nozzle

Applies to: vehicles with plug-in hybrid drive



Fig. 244 Fueling procedure: insert the fuel pump nozzle correctly

Make sure when inserting the fuel pump nozzle that you do not press on the fuel filler door opener (1) with the fuel pump nozzle. See the label in the fuel filler door (2). Otherwise, a valve will close in the fuel filler neck and fueling will stop even if the tank is not full.

You must vent the tank system again if you press on the fuel filler door opener. The fuel pump nozzle can stay in the fuel filler neck when doing this. Vent the tank system by pulling the switch again in the driver's door ⇨ *page 302*.

Messages

Applies to: vehicles with plug-in hybrid drive

Fuel filler door open. Please press button again to refuel

Fueling is possible for a little while after pressing the button. You must press the button again if the time limit is exceeded.

Fuel filler door: malfunction! Unlock fuel filler door manually. See owner's manual

There is a malfunction. You must manually unlock the fuel filler door ⇨ *page 303*.

Warning! Vehicle performance may be limited ▸

The fuel tank is almost empty. You must anticipate a significant power loss. Drive immediately to a gas station.

POWER LIMIT / POWER LIMIT Warning! Limited performance

The gasoline engine is no longer available because there is not enough fuel. Drive immediately to a gas station.

Fuel filler door emergency release

Applies to: vehicles with plug-in hybrid drive

You must use the emergency release to open the fuel filler door when there is a malfunction ⇨ *page 301*.

The tank is **not** vented. You can only fill a small amount of fuel in the tank.

- ► Fill only until the automatic fuel pump nozzle turns off for the first time when it is operated correctly.

Drive to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility immediately to have the malfunction corrected.

Tips

Pressure can escape if you open the tank cap after using the emergency release. This can create noises.

Emissions control system

General information

WARNING

The temperature of the exhaust system is high, both when driving and after stopping the engine.

- – Never touch the exhaust tail pipes once they have become hot. This could result in burns.
- – Do not park your vehicle over flammable materials such as grass or leaves because the high temperature of the emissions system could start a fire.
- – Do not apply underbody protectant in the exhaust system area, because this increases the risk of fire.

Catalytic converter

Follow the safety precautions ⇨ *page 303, General information*.

The vehicle may only be driven with unleaded gasoline, or the catalytic converter will be destroyed.

Never drive until the tank is completely empty. The irregular supply of fuel that results from that can cause engine misfires. Uncombusted fuel could enter the exhaust system, which could cause overheating and damage to the catalytic converter.

On Board Diagnostic System (OBD)

The On Board Diagnostic System monitors the engine and transmission components that influence emissions.

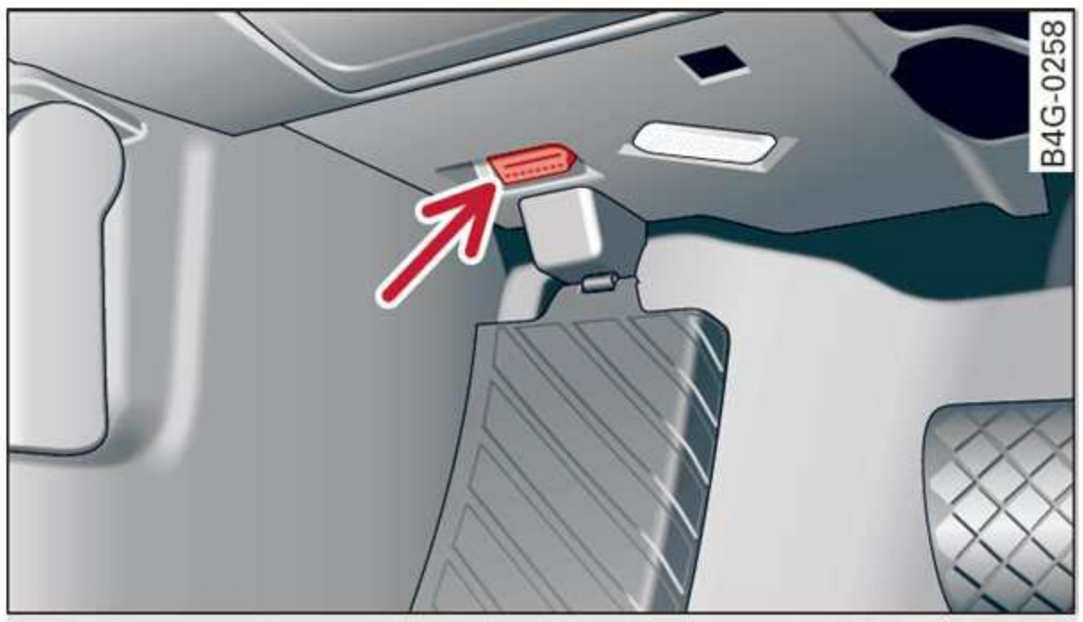


Fig. 245 Footwell on left side of the vehicle: connection port for the On Board Diagnostic System (OBD)

On Board Diagnostic System

Engine data can be read out at the On Board Diagnostic System connection port using a special testing device ⇨ *fig. 245*.

Indicator light

If the indicator light blinks or turns on, there is a malfunction that is causing poor emissions quality and that could damage the catalytic converter. Drive slowly to an authorized Audi dealer ►

or authorized Audi Service Facility to have the malfunction corrected.

The indicator light can also turn on if the fuel filler cap is not closed correctly ⇨ *page 299*[1)].

WARNING

Incorrect use of the connection port for the On Board Diagnostic System can cause malfunctions, which can then result in accidents and serious injuries.

– Only allow an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility to read out the engine data.

Engine compartment

General information

Special care is required if you are working in the engine compartment

For work in the engine compartment, such as checking and filling fluids, there is a risk of injury, scalding, accidents, and burns. For this reason, follow all the warnings and general safety precautions provided in the following information. The engine compartment is a dangerous area. ⇨ ⚠.

WARNING

– Turn the engine off.
– Switch the ignition off.
– Set the parking brake.
– Select the “P” (Park) selector lever position.
– Allow the engine to cool.
– Keep children away from the engine compartment.
– Never spill fluids on a hot engine. These fluids (such as the anti-freezing agent contained in the coolant) can ignite.
– Avoid short circuits in the electrical system.
– Never reach into the radiator fan. The fan is temperature-controlled and can turn on suddenly, even when the ignition is switched off.
– Never open the hood when there is steam or coolant escaping from the engine compartment, because there is a risk that you could be burned. Wait until no steam or coolant is escaping.
– Plug-in hybrid drive: the coolant expansion tank cap is equipped with a seal that must never be removed under any circumstances ⇨ *page 312, fig. 251*. If the coolant expansion tank for the high-voltage system is not sealed, please contact an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility.
– Plug-in hybrid drive: the sealed cap must only be opened by an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility.
– The cap on the coolant expansion tank must never be opened as long as the coolant is hot. The cooling system is under pressure. There is a risk of burns
– To protect your face, hands, and arms from hot steam or coolant, cover the cap with a thick cloth when opening.
– Do not remove the engine cover under any circumstances. This increases the risk of burns.
– Due to the risk of electric shock, never touch the ignition cable or other components in the electronic high-voltage ignition system when the engine is running or is starting.
– If a gear is engaged while the vehicle is stationary and the engine is running, do not press the accelerator pedal inadvertently. Pressing the accelerator pedal will cause the vehicle to move, and this could result in an accident.
– If inspections or repairs must be performed while the engine is running, moving components (such as the ribbed belt, generator, and radiator fan) pose an additional risk.
– Set the parking brake first and select the “P” (Park) selector lever position.
– Always make sure that no parts of the body, jewelry, ties, loose clothing, and long hair can be caught in moving engine ▶

1) Depending on the engine and country

components. Before any work, always remove any jewelry and/or ties, tie back long hair, and make sure all clothing fits close to the body to reduce the risk of anything becoming caught in engine components.

– Pay attention to the following warnings listed when work on the fuel system or on the electrical equipment is required.
  – Do not smoke.
  – Never work near open flames.
  – Always have a working fire extinguisher nearby.
– All work on the battery or electrical system in your vehicle can result in injuries, chemical burns, accidents, or burns. Because of this, all work must be performed **only** by an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility.
– Limit your exposure to exhaust and chemicals to as short a time as possible.

WARNING

California Proposition 65 Warning:

– Engine exhaust, some of its constituents, and certain vehicle components contain or emit chemicals known to the State of California to cause cancer and birth defects and reproductive harm. In addition, certain fluids contained in vehicles and certain products of component wear contain or emit chemicals known to the State of California to cause cancer and birth defects or other reproductive harm.
– Battery posts, terminals and related accessories contain lead and lead compounds, chemicals known to the State of California to cause cancer and reproductive harms. Wash hands after handling.

Note

When filling fluids, be sure not to add any fluids to the wrong reservoirs. Otherwise severe malfunctions and engine damage will occur.

For the sake of the environment

You should regularly check the ground under your vehicle in order to detect leaks quickly. If there are visible spots from oil or other fluids, bring your vehicle to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility to be checked.

Opening and closing the hood

The hood is released from inside the vehicle.



Fig. 246 Section from the driver's side footwell: release lever



Fig. 247 Rocker switch under the hood

Read and follow all WARNINGS before checking anything in the engine compartment ⇨ *page 304, General information*.

Make sure the wiper arms are not raised up from the windshield. Otherwise the paint could be damaged.

Opening the hood

Applies to: vehicles with plug-in hybrid drive:

Switch the ignition off before releasing the hood so that the gasoline engine does not start automatically. ▶

- ▸ With the door open, pull the lever [1] below the instrument panel in the direction of the arrow ⇨ *fig. 246*.
- ▸ Raise the hood slightly ⇨ ⚠.
- ▸ Press the rocker switch under the hood upward ⇨ *fig. 247*. This releases the catch.
- ▸ Open the hood.

Closing the hood

- ▸ Push the hood down until you override the force of the strut.
- ▸ Let the hood fall lightly into the latch. *Do not press it in.* ⇨ ⚠.

Message

Warning! Hood is not locked. Stop vehicle and check the lock

The hood latch is not locked correctly. Stop immediately and close the hood.

⚠ WARNING

– Never open the hood when there is steam or coolant escaping from the engine compartment, because there is a risk that you could be burned. Wait until no steam or coolant is escaping.
– For safety reasons, the hood must always be latched securely while driving. Because of this, always check the hood after closing it to make sure it is latched correctly. The hood is latched if the front corners cannot be lifted.
– If you notice that the hood is not latched while you are driving, stop immediately and close it, because driving when the hood is not latched increases the risk of an accident.
– If the hood is not latched completely, it could fly up while you are driving and obstruct your vision.

1) The symbol on the lever was still being designed at the time this manual was printed.

Engine compartment overview

The most important check points.

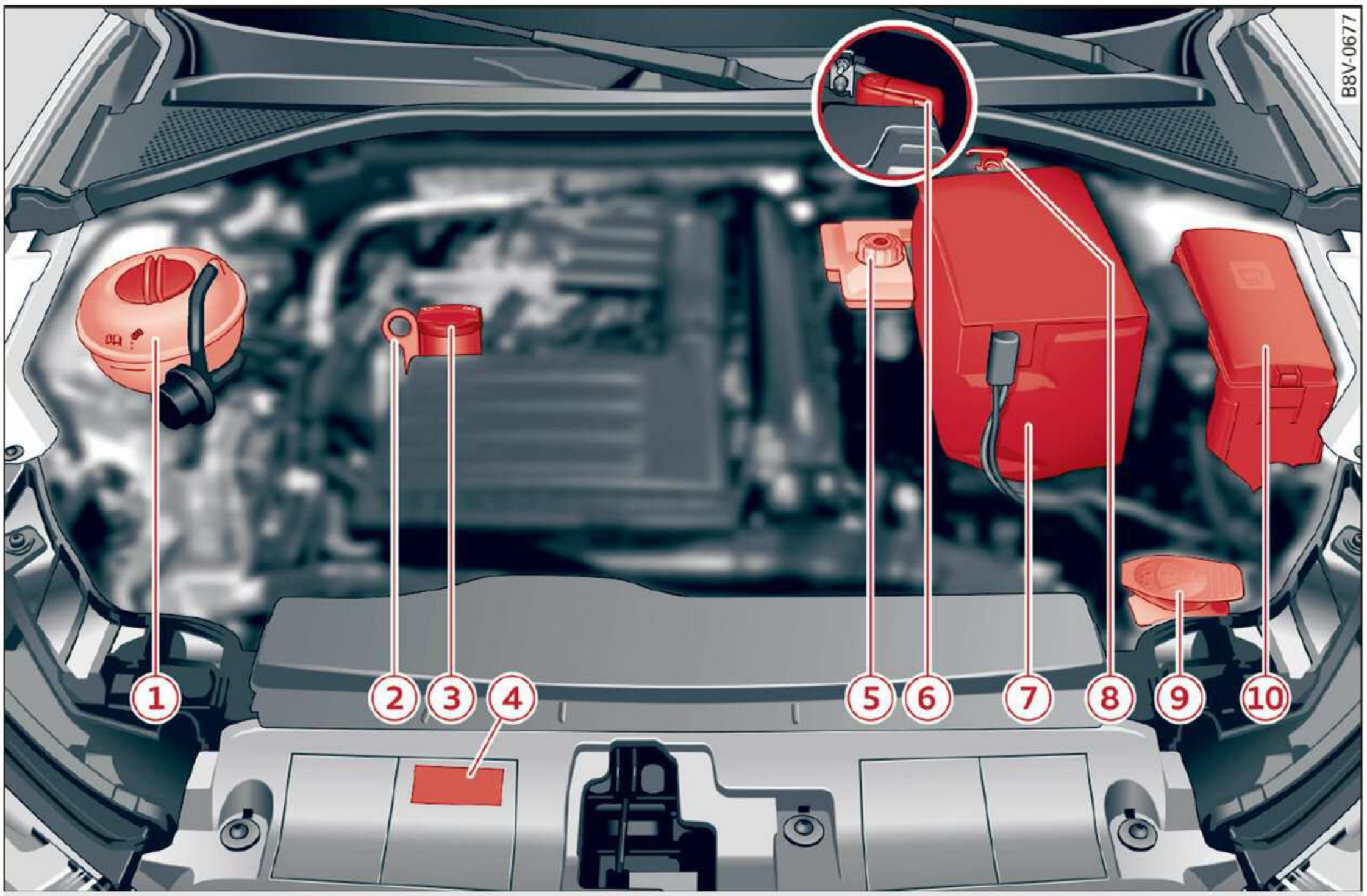


Fig. 248 Typical location of the reservoir, engine oil dipstick, and engine oil filler opening

Follow the safety precautions ⇨ *page 304*.

① Coolant expansion tank (🌡) ⇨ *page 312*
② Engine oil dipstick ⇨ *page 308*
③ Engine oil filler opening (🛢) ⇨ *page 308*
④ Sticker* for engine oil specification ⇨ *page 307*
⑤ Brake fluid reservoir (◎) ⇨ *page 313*
⑥ Applies to: vehicles with jump start point (+): Jump start point (+) under a cover ⇨ *page 316*, ⇨ *page 364*
⑦ Applies to: vehicles with the vehicle battery in the engine compartment: Vehicle battery (+) under the battery cover ⇨ *page 316*, ⇨ *page 364*
⑧ Body ground point (–) ⇨ *page 316*, ⇨ *page 364*
⑨ Washer fluid reservoir (🚿) ⇨ *page 317*
⑩ Fuse housing ⇨ *page 360*

The engine oil dipstick, the engine oil filling opening, and washer fluid reservoir may be located in different places within the engine compartment, depending on the engine version.

Tips

Applies to: vehicles with plug-in hybrid drive: Note the information for the coolant expansion tank in ⇨ *page 312* and for the vehicle battery (+) in ⇨ *page 365*.

Engine oil

If the engine oil level is too low

If you need to add engine oil, use an oil that is listed on the sticker. The sticker is located at the front of the engine compartment ⇨ *page 307, fig. 248*.

If the recommended engine oil is not available, **in an emergency** you may add a maximum of 1 ▶

quart (1 liter) of ACEA C3 or API SN engine oil **one time** until the next oil change.

For more information on the correct engine oil for your vehicle, contact an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility. Have the oil changed by an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Service Facility.

Audi recommends
Castrol EDGE Professional
Audi recommends using the LongLife high-performance engine oil from Audi Genuine Parts.

Messages

Engine oil pressure

Turn off engine! Oil pressure too low

Stop driving and switch the engine off. Check the engine oil level ⇨ *page 308*.

– If the engine oil level is too low, add engine oil ⇨ *page 309*. Only continue driving once the indicator light turns off.
– If the engine oil level is correct and the indicator light still turns on, turn the engine off and do not continue driving. See an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility for assistance.

Engine oil level

Applies to: vehicles with oil level warning

Please check oil level

– You may continue driving for the time being. Check the engine oil level as soon as possible ⇨ *page 308, Checking the engine oil level*.
– If the engine oil level is correct and the indicator light still turns on, drive at low engine speed to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility.

Engine oil sensor

Oil level sensor: oil change necessary. Please contact Service

Fuel has entered the engine oil. This will cause the engine oil level to rise slowly and the engine oil quality to decrease. Do not extract engine oil to reduce the level, because this will increase the risk of engine damage. Drive to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility immediately to have engine oil extracted.

Oil level system: malfunction! Please contact Service

The sensor that checks the engine oil level has malfunctioned. Drive immediately to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility to have the malfunction repaired.

Oil pressure sensor: malfunction! Please contact Service

The sensor that checks the engine oil pressure has malfunctioned. Drive immediately to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility to have the malfunction repaired.

Engine warm-up request*

Please drive to warm up engine

Fuel has entered the engine oil, either due to low outside temperatures or frequent short drives. Drive until the engine is warm so that the fuel in the engine oil will evaporate. Avoid high engine speeds, full accelerating, and heavy engine loads when doing this.

Tips

The oil pressure warning is not an oil level indicator. Always check the oil level regularly.

Checking the engine oil level

The engine oil dipstick varies depending on the engine type.

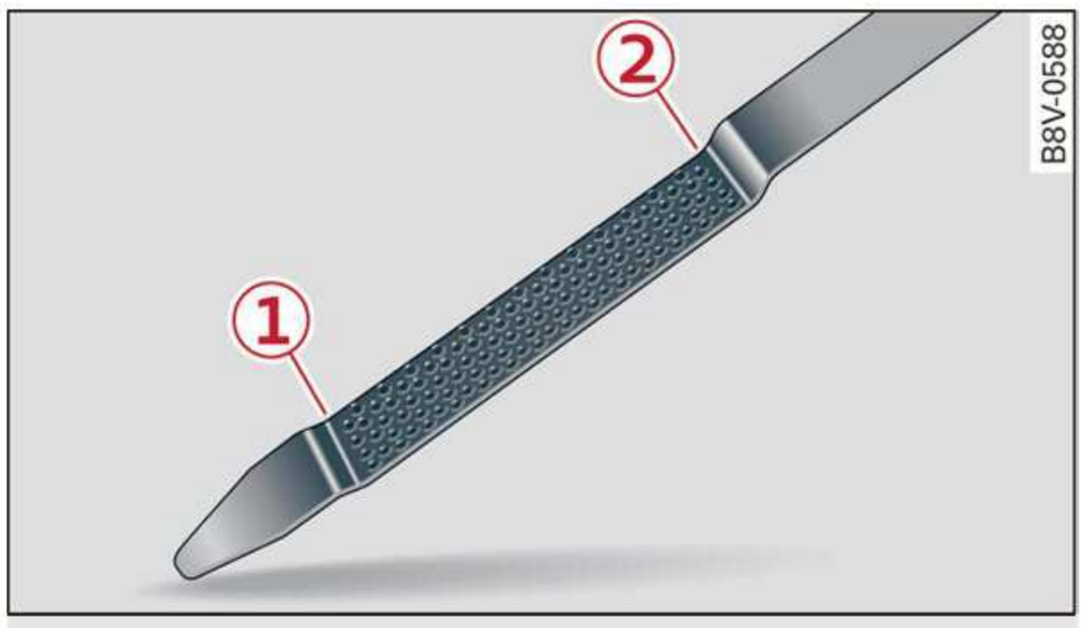


Fig. 249 Oil dipstick: checking the engine oil level (example)

Observe the safety precautions ⇨ ⚠ *in General information on page 304*.

- ▸ Park the vehicle on a level surface.
- ▸ Shut the engine off when it is warm.
- ▸ Wait approximately two minutes.
- ▸ Open the hood ⇨ *page 305*.
- ▸ Remove the oil dipstick ⇨ *page 307, fig. 248*, wipe it off with a clean cloth and insert it all the way in again.
- ▸ Remove the oil dipstick again and then read the oil level ⇨ *table on page 309*.
- ▸ Add engine oil if necessary ⇨ *page 309*.

Areas on the oil dipstick ⇨ *fig. 249*.	
①	If the engine oil level is just before the marking ①, then engine oil must be added. See ⇨ ⓘ.
②	Do not add engine oil.

ⓘ Note

– The engine oil level must not be below the marking ①, because this increases the risk of engine damage.
– After adding engine oil, the oil level must not be above the marking ② ⇨ *fig. 249*, because this increases the risk of catalytic converter and/or engine damage. If the oil level is above the marking ②, drive to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility immediately to have any engine oil extracted. Avoid high engine speeds, full acceleration, and heavy engine loads.

Tips

– The engine oil consumption may be up to 0.5 quart/600 miles (0.5 liter/1,000 km), depending on driving style and operating conditions. Consumption may be higher during the first 3,000 miles (5,000 km). The engine oil level must be checked regularly. It is best to check each time you refuel your vehicle and before long drives.
– Because of the lubrication and cooling of the engine, combustion engines consume oil. The oil consumption varies depending on the engine and may change during the service life of the engine. Engines generally consume more oil at the beginning during the break-in period. Then oil consumption stabilizes after the break-in period.
– Under normal conditions, oil consumption depends on the quality and viscosity of the oil, the engine RPM, the climate conditions, and the road conditions. The dilution of oil from condensation or fuel residue as well as the age of the oil also play a role. Because engine wear increases with mileage, oil consumption will increase again over time until it may be necessary to replace worn components.
– Because all these variables play a role, it is not possible to define an oil consumption standard. Therefore, the oil level must be checked regularly.
– If you believe that your engine has increased its oil consumption, contact an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility to determine the cause. Please note that an exact oil consumption measurement must be done with the necessary care and accuracy and may take time. An authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility is trained in accurately measuring the oil consumption.
– You can find information on engine oil and engine oil capacities for the USA at www.audiusa.com/help/maintenance, or for Canada at www.audi.ca/ca/web/en/customer-area/care-and-maintenance/audi-service-schedules.html, or call 800-822-2834.

Adding engine oil



Fig. 250 Engine compartment: engine oil filler opening cover

Observe the safety precautions ⇨ ⚠ *in General information on page 304*.

- ▸ Turn the engine off.
- ▸ Open the hood ⇨ *page 305*.
- ▸ Unscrew the cap for the engine oil filler opening ⇨ *fig. 250*.
- ▸ Carefully add 0.5 quart (0.5 liter) of the correct oil ⇨ *page 307*.
- ▸ Check the oil level again after two minutes ⇨ *page 308, Checking the engine oil level*.
- ▸ Add more oil if necessary.
- ▸ Close the engine oil filler cap and push the dipstick all the way in.
- ▸ Close the hood ⇨ *page 305*.

WARNING

– When adding oil, do not let oil drip onto hot engine components. This increases the risk of a fire.
– You must seal the cap on the oil filler opening correctly so that oil does not leak out onto the hot engine and exhaust system when the engine is running, because this is a fire hazard.
– Always clean skin thoroughly if it comes into contact with engine oil.
– Engine oil is poisonous and must be kept out of reach of children.
– Store the engine oil securely in the original container.

Note

– The New Vehicle Limited Warranty does not cover damage or malfunctions if the recommended intended use of the vehicle and maintenance measures listed in the Audi Owner's Manual and the Warranty & Maintenance Booklet were not followed.
– Only use high-grade engine oil that explicitly meets the Audi oil quality standard for your vehicle. Using another oil may cause severe vehicle damage.
– Do not mix any additives with the engine oil. Additives may cause engine damage that is not covered by your New Vehicle Limited Warranty.

For the sake of the environment

– Oil should never enter the sewer system or come into contact with the ground.
– Follow the legal regulations in the country where you are located when disposing of empty oil containers.

Changing engine oil

We recommend having the oil changed at an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility.

Follow the safety precautions ⇨ *page 304, General information*.

The engine oil must be changed at the intervals specified in the Warranty & Maintenance Booklet. This is very important because the lubrication function of the oil gradually declines during regular vehicle operation.

The engine oil should be changed more frequently under certain circumstances. Have the oil changed more frequently if you often drive short distances, your vehicle is predominantly in stop-and-go traffic situations, is in very dusty environments, or is operated for long periods of time in temperatures below zero.

Cleansing additives in the oil make fresh oil appear darker after the engine has run briefly. This is normal and no reason to change the engine oil more frequently than recommended.

Because correctly disposing of engine oil is difficult and special tools and technical knowledge are needed for an oil change, having your engine oil changed by an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility is recommended.

If you change the engine oil yourself, please note the following important information:

WARNING

If you change the engine oil on the vehicle yourself, the following precautions must be followed:
– Wear protective eyewear.
– Due to the risk of scalding, allow the engine to cool down sufficiently. ▸

– Maintain enough distance when you are removing the oil drain plug. While doing this, keep your forearm parallel to the ground to reduce the risk of hot oil dripping down your arm.
– Drain the oil into a container designed for this purpose that is large enough to hold the full amount of oil in your engine.
– Engine oil is poisonous. Always store out of reach of children.
– Prolonged contact of used engine oil with the skin may cause skin damage. Always wash oil off immediately with soap and water to protect your skin.

Note

Do not mix any additives with the engine oil. Additives may cause engine damage that is not covered by your New Vehicle Limited Warranty.

For the sake of the environment

– Before changing the engine oil, make sure you can dispose of the used engine oil correctly.
– Engine oil must always be disposed of correctly. Do not dump it in the yard, in the forest, or in open water, river channels, or sewers.
– Have your used engine oil recycled by bringing it to a used oil collection site or contact a gas station.

Cooling system

Coolant

The engine cooling system is filled with a mixture of purified water and coolant additive at the factory. This coolant must not be not changed.

The coolant level is monitored through the indicator light ⇨ *page 311*. However, occasionally checking the coolant level manually is recommended.

Messages

Turn off engine and check coolant level! See owner's manual

Stop vehicle and check coolant level! See owner's manual

The coolant level is too low.

Stop driving and switch the engine off. Check the coolant level ⇨ *page 311*.

Plug-in hybrid drive*: refer to ⇨ *page 312*.

– If the coolant level is too low, add coolant ⇨ *page 312*. Only continue driving once the indicator light turns off.

Coolant temperature too high! Please let engine run while vehicle is stationary

Let the engine run at idle for a few minutes to cool off, until the indicator light turns off.

– If the indicator light does not turn off, do not continue driving the vehicle. See an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility for assistance.

Coolant additive

The coolant additive is made of anti-freezing and corrosion protection agents. Only use the following coolant additives. These additives may be mixed with each other.

Coolant additive	Specification
G12evo	**TL 774 L**
G12++	TL 774 G
G13	TL 774 J

The amount of coolant additive that needs to be mixed with water depends on the climate where the vehicle will be operated. If the coolant additive percentage is too low, the coolant can freeze and damage the engine.

	Coolant additive	Freeze protection
Warm regions	min. 40% max. 45%	min. -13 °F (-25 °C)
Cold regions	min. 50% max. 55%	max. -40 °F (-40 °C)

Note

– Before the start of winter, have an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service ▶

Facility check if the coolant additive in your vehicle matches the percentage appropriate for the climate. This is especially important when driving in colder climates.

– If the appropriate coolant additive is not available in an emergency, do not add any other additive. You could damage the engine. If this happens, only use water and restore the correct mixture ratio with the specified coolant additive as soon as possible.
– Only refill with new coolant.
– Radiator sealant must not be mixed with the coolant.
– Due to the risk of engine damage, the cooling system should only be refilled by an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility. An authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility can also provide you with important information about the recommended coolant additive.

Tips

Applies to: RS models: In certain weather conditions, moisture such as rain or snow may evaporate on the radiator after stopping the vehicle. This may cause steam to escape from the front of the vehicle.

Coolant

Applies to: vehicles with plug-in hybrid drive



Fig. 251 Engine compartment: coolant expansion tank

Your vehicle has two coolant expansion tanks that are separate from each other:

Ⓐ: expansion tank for gasoline engine and electric motor.

Ⓑ: expansion tank for the high-voltage area.

The expansion tank Ⓑ must not be opened ⇨ ⚠.

- ▸ Switch the ignition off.
- ▸ Open the hood ⇨ *page 305*.
- ▸ Always check the coolant level in both coolant expansion tanks Ⓐ and Ⓑ using the outer markings.
- ▸ When you fill coolant in the expansion tank Ⓐ, please refer to ⇨ *page 311, Cooling system*.
- ▸ Do not drive any farther if the coolant level in the expansion tank Ⓑ is low. Contact an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility immediately ⇨ ⚠.

⚠ WARNING

– Read and follow the warnings in ⇨ *page 304, General information* before opening the hood and checking the coolant level.
– The expansion tank Ⓑ may only be opened and filled by an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility.
– Coolant can enter the inside of the high-voltage battery when filling the expansion tank Ⓑ and cause a short circuit, which increases the risk of fire.

Checking coolant

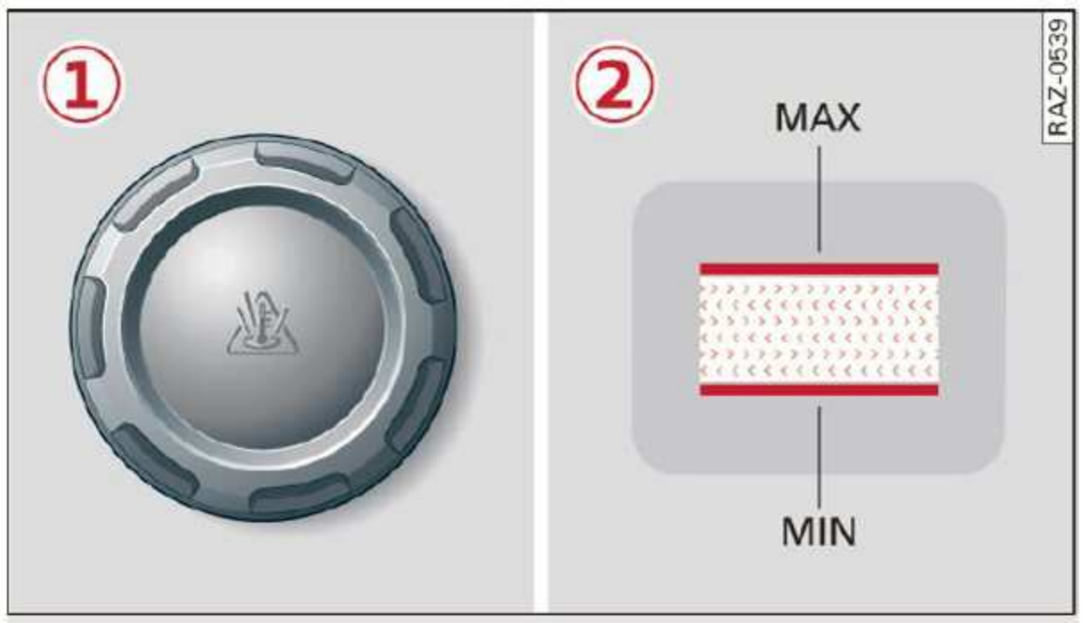


Fig. 252 Engine compartment - coolant expansion tank (diagram): ① cover; ② markings

Observe the safety precautions ⇨ *page 304, General information*.

Checking the engine coolant level

- ▸ Park the vehicle on a level surface.
- ▸ Switch the ignition off.
- ▸ Open the hood ⇨ *page 305*.

► Check the coolant level in the coolant expansion tank ⇨ *page 307, fig. 248* using the outer markings ② ⇨ *fig. 252*. The coolant level must be between the markings ② when the engine is cold. When the engine is warm it can be slightly above the upper marking.

Adding coolant

Applies to: vehicles with plug-in hybrid drive:
Your vehicle has two coolant expansion tanks that are separate from each other. The smaller of the two expansion tanks must not be opened ⇨ *page 312*. Read and follow the important safety precautions ⇨ ⚠ *in Coolant on page 312*.

Requirement: there must be a residual amount of coolant in the expansion tank ⇨ (!).

If you must add coolant, use a mixture of water and coolant additive. Mixing the coolant additive with distilled water is recommended.

► Allow the engine to cool.
► Place a large, thick towel on the coolant expansion tank cover.
► Remove the cover ① ⇨ *fig. 252* carefully to the left ⇨ ⚠.
► Add the correct mixture ratio of coolant ⇨ *page 311* up to the upper marking ② ⇨ *fig. 252*.
► Make sure that the fluid level remains stable. Add more coolant if necessary.
► Close the cap securely.

Coolant loss usually indicates that there is a leak. Immediately drive your vehicle to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility and have the cooling system inspected. If the cooling system is not leaking, coolant loss can result from the coolant boiling due overheating and then being forced out of the cooling system.

⚠ WARNING

– The engine compartment in any vehicle can be a dangerous area. Stop the engine and allow it to cool before working in the engine compartment. Always follow the information found in ⇨ *page 304, General information*.
– Never open the hood if you can see or hear steam or coolant escaping from the engine compartment. This increases the risk of burns. The cooling system is under pressure. When you no longer see or hear steam or coolant escaping, you may open the engine compartment with caution.
– When working in the engine compartment, remember that the radiator fan can switch on even if the ignition is switched off, which increases the risk of injury.
– Coolant additive and coolant can be dangerous to your health. For this reason, store the coolant in the original container and away from children. There is a risk of poisoning.

(!) Note

Do not add coolant if the expansion tank is empty. Air could enter the cooling system and damage the engine. If this is the case, do not continue driving. See an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility for assistance.

Brake fluid

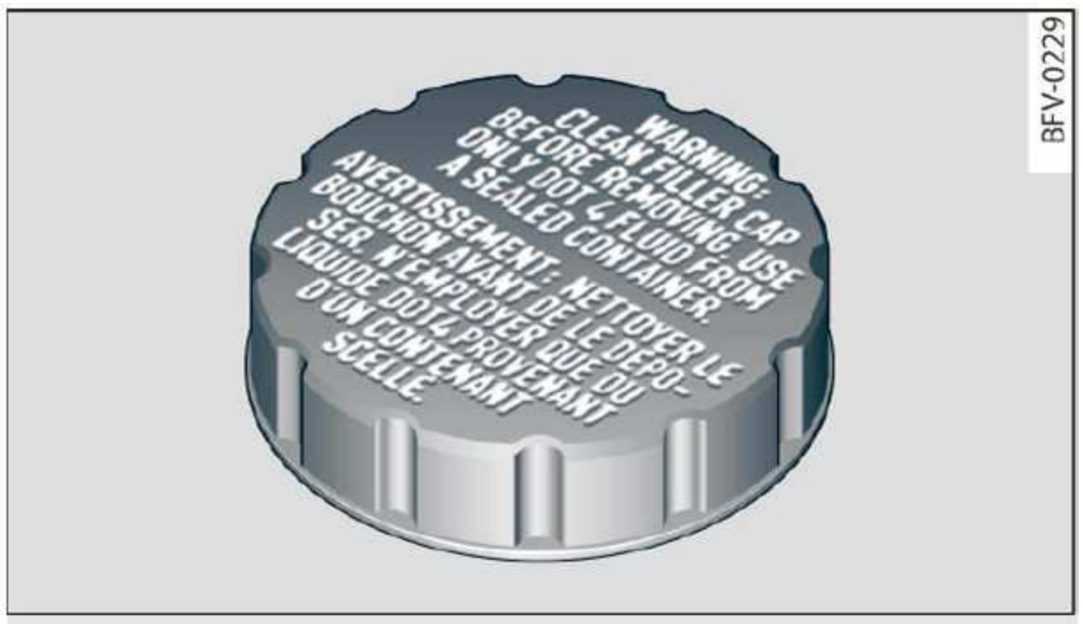


Fig. 253 Engine compartment: cap on brake fluid reservoir

Observe the safety precautions ⇨ *page 304, General information*.

Checking the brake fluid level

Read the brake fluid level on the brake fluid reservoir ⇨ *page 307, fig. 248*. The brake fluid level must be between the MIN and MAX markings ⇨ ⚠.

The brake fluid level is monitored automatically. ▶

Message

BRAKE / Brakes: stop vehicle and check brake fluid level

Stop the vehicle and check the brake fluid level. See an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility for assistance.

Changing the brake fluid

Brake fluid should be changed at regular intervals. Have the brake fluid changed by an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility. The authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility will inform you of the replacement intervals.

WARNING

- If the brake fluid level is below the MIN marking, it can impair the braking effect and driving safety, which increase the risk of an accident. Do not continue driving. See an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility for assistance.
- If the brake fluid is old, bubbles may form in the brake system during heavy braking. This could impair braking performance and driving safety, which increases the risk of an accident.
- The brake fluid in your vehicle must meet the standard VW 501 14 and is available at an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility. If this brake fluid is not available, another high-grade brake fluid of equivalent quality may be used, and it must meet the U.S. Federal Motor Vehicle Standard (FMVSS) 116 DOT 4, Class 6.

Note

- If the brake fluid level is above the MAX marking, brake fluid may leak out over the edge of the reservoir and result in damage to the vehicle.
- Do not allow any brake fluid to come into contact with the vehicle paint, because it will corrode the paint.

Electrical system

If the or indicator light turns on, there is a malfunction in the generator, the battery, or the vehicle electrical system.

Electrical system: malfunction! Battery is not charging

Safely stop your vehicle, do not continue driving and switch the ignition off ⇨ ⚠. See an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility for assistance.

Electrical system: malfunction! Restart not possible. Please contact Service

It will not be possible to restart the engine once you turn it off. Vehicle functions/driving stability may be limited. Drive to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility immediately.

Electrical system: malfunction! Please contact Service

Switch off all electrical equipment that is not needed. Vehicle functions/driving stability may be limited. Drive to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility immediately.

Electrical system: low battery charge. Battery will be charged while driving

The starting ability may be impaired.

If this message turns off after a little while, the vehicle battery has charged enough while driving.

If this message does not turn off, drive immediately to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility.

WARNING

When there is an electrical system malfunction, vehicle functions may not work and driving stability may be limited, which increases the risk of an accident. Do not continue driving and switch the ignition off. See an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility for assistance.

Battery

Battery general information

Because of the complex power supply, all work on batteries such as disconnecting, replacing, etc., should **only** be performed by an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility ⇨ ⚠.

Multiple batteries with different technologies may be installed in your vehicle:

– Vehicle battery (for example, for starting the engine, basic power supply) ⇨ *page 315, Lead battery* or ⇨ *page 316, Other battery types*
– Auxiliary battery (for example, for recuperation or optional equipment) ⇨ *page 316, Other battery types*
– Applies to: plug-in hybrid drive: High-voltage battery (for example, for electric driving) ⇨ *page 96*.

Not running the vehicle for long periods of time

The battery will gradually drain if the vehicle does not run for long periods of time. To ensure that the vehicle can still be started, the electrical equipment will be reduced or switched off ⇨ *page 82*. Some convenience functions, such as interior lighting or power seat adjustment, may not be available under certain circumstances. These convenience functions will be available again once you switch the ignition on and start the engine.

Even when electrical equipment is switched off, the equipment can still drain the battery if the vehicle is not driven for long periods of time. Deep draining results in a chemical reaction that destroys the inside of the battery. The battery must be charged every month to prevent this ⇨ *page 316*. Contact an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility for more information.

Winter operation

Cold weather places higher demands on the battery. This results in reduced starting ability. Have the battery checked by an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility before cold weather begins.

WARNING

– All work on the battery or electrical system in your vehicle can result in injuries, chemical burns, accidents, or burns. Because of this, all work must be performed **only** by an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility.
– Never connect the charging cable or jump start cable directly to your vehicle battery. Only use the connections in the engine compartment ⇨ *page 316*.

WARNING

California Proposition 65 Warning:
– Battery posts, terminals and related accessories contain lead and lead compounds, chemicals known to the State of California to cause cancer and reproductive problems. Wash hands after handling.

Note

If the vehicle will be parked for long periods of time, protect the battery against the cold so that it will not be destroyed by “freezing” ⇨ *page 316, Charging the battery*.

Lead battery

Explanation of warnings:

	Always wear eye protection.
	Battery acid is highly corrosive. Always wear protective gloves and eye protection.
	Fire, sparks, open flame, and smoking are forbidden.
	A highly explosive mixture of gases can form when charging batteries.
	Always keep children away from battery acid and the battery.
	Always follow the instructions in the operating manual.

For the sake of the environment

Lead-acid batteries must be disposed of using methods that will not harm the ▶

environment. Do not dispose of them in household trash. They contain harmful substances, such as sulfuric acid and lead, and also recyclable raw materials. Contact an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility for more information.

Other battery types

Explanation of warnings:

	Fire, sparks, open flame, and smoking are forbidden.
	Always keep children away from battery acid and the battery.
/	Always follow the instructions in the operating manual.

WARNING

All work on the batteries must **only** be performed by an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility.

– Gases that escape from these different battery types can be poisonous or flammable.
– The contents of these battery types can be corrosive. If any battery contents come into contact with the skin, flush the affected area for at least 15 minutes with clean water. Then wash the affected area with soap. Have the affected area examined by a medical professional.

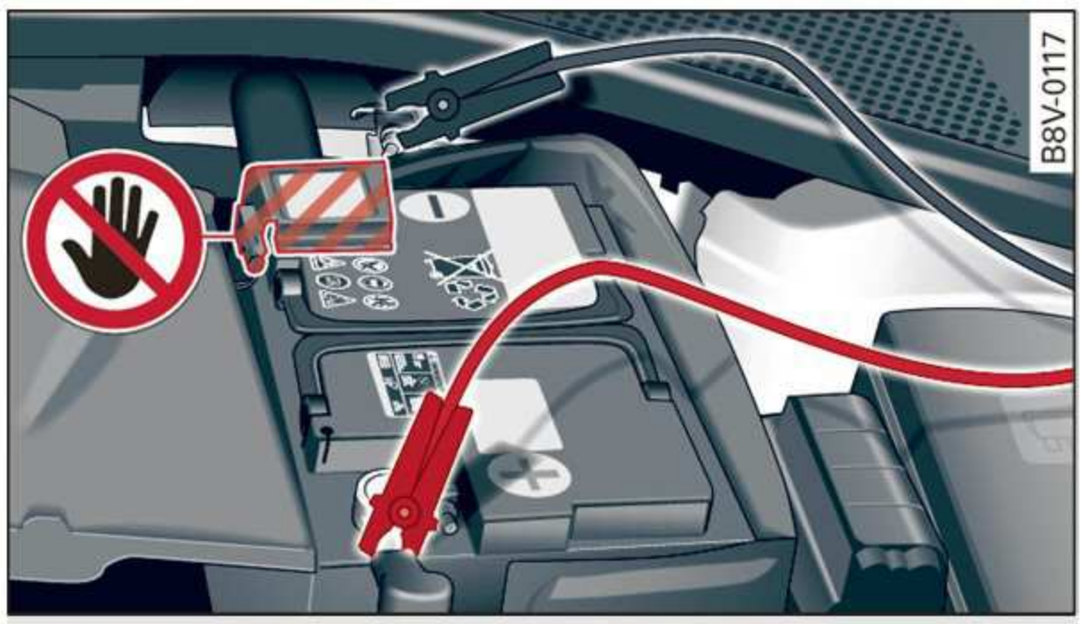
Note

Components must not be connected to the battery terminals and wires on these battery types because this increases the risk of damage, for example due to overvoltage.

For the sake of the environment

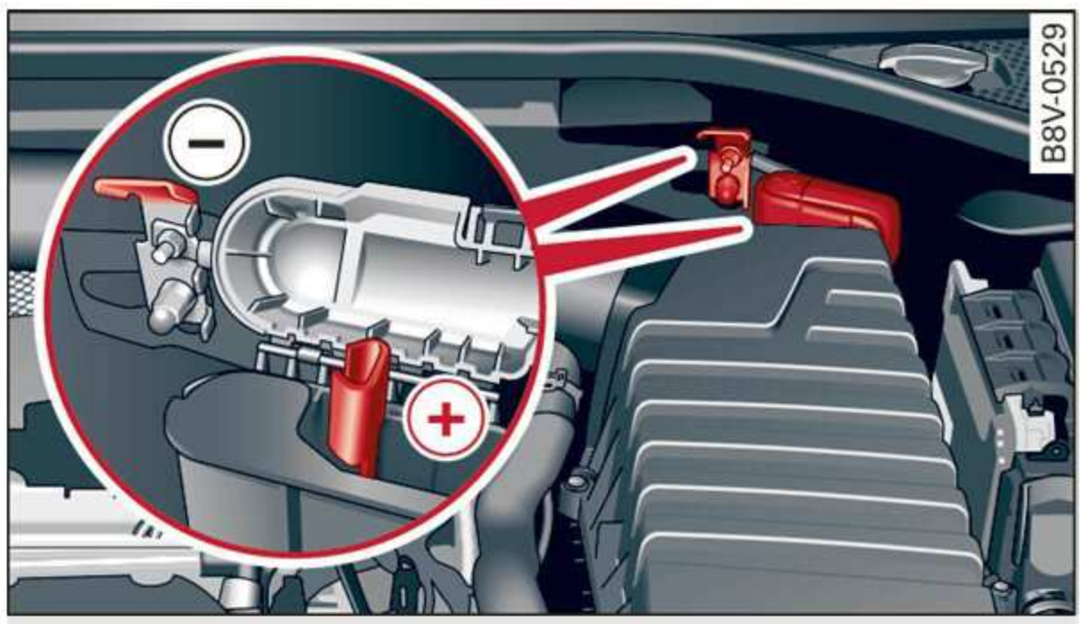
These types of batteries must be disposed of using methods that will not harm the environment. Do not dispose of them in household trash. They contain harmful substances and recyclable raw materials. Contact an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility for more information.

Charging the battery



Applies to: vehicles with vehicle battery in the engine compartment

Fig. 254 Engine compartment: connections for charger or jump start cable



Applies to: vehicles with jump start point (+)

Fig. 255 Engine compartment: connections for charger or jump start cable

Note the safety precautions ⇨ *page 304, General information*, ⇨ ⚠ *in Battery general information on page 315* and ⇨ ⚠.

Plug-in hybrid drive: ⇨ *page 365*.

Requirement: only use chargers with a **maximum charging current of 14.8 volts**. The battery cables remain connected.

Depending on the engine, the battery is located in the engine compartment or in the luggage compartment. For vehicles with the battery in the luggage compartment, a jump start point that is also used for battery charging is located in the engine compartment. The battery is always charged in the engine compartment. The ground point ⊖ is always located on the vehicle body.

- ▸ Switch off the ignition and all electrical equipment.
- ▸ Open the hood ⇨ *page 305*. ▶

- ▸ Applies to: vehicles with vehicle battery in the engine compartment: Open the cover on the positive terminal ⇨ *fig. 254*.
- ▸ Applies to: vehicles with jump start point (+): Open the cover on the positive terminal ⇨ *fig. 255*.
- ▸ Clamp the terminal clamps on the charger correctly onto the ground point ⊖ and the positive terminal ⊕.
- ▸ Insert the power cable for the charging device into the socket and switch the device on.
- ▸ At the end of the charging process, switch the charger off and pull the power cable out of the socket.
- ▸ Remove the charging device terminal clamps.
- ▸ Applies to: vehicles with vehicle battery in the engine compartment: Open the cover on the positive terminal.
- ▸ Applies to: vehicles with jump start point (+): Close the cover on the positive terminal.
- ▸ Close the hood ⇨ *page 305*.

WARNING

– Applies to: vehicles with jump start connections in the engine compartment: The charging cable must never be connected directly to the vehicle battery. Only use the connections in the engine compartment ⇨ *page 316*.
– A highly explosive mixture of gases can form when charging batteries. Only charge the battery in well-ventilated areas.
– A drained battery can freeze at temperatures around 32 °F (0 °C). Do not charge or use a frozen or thawed battery. If ice forms, the battery housing can crack and battery electrolyte can leak out, which increases the risk of an explosion and chemical burns. Contact an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility for more information.
– Do not connect or disconnect the charging cable while charging because this increases the risk of an explosion.

Tips

Read all of the manufacturer's instructions for the charger before charging the battery.

Windshield washer system



Fig. 256 Engine compartment: windshield washer fluid cover (example)

Observe the safety precautions ⇨ *page 304, General information*.

The windshield washer fluid reservoir contains the cleaning solution for the windshield and the headlight washer system* ⇨ *page 307, fig. 248*. The reservoir capacity can be found in ⇨ *page 380*.

To reduce the risk of lime scale deposits on the spray nozzles, use clean water with low amounts of calcium. Always add window cleaner to the water. When the outside temperatures are cold, an anti-freezing agent should be added to the water so that it does not freeze.

Messages

Please add washer fluid

Fill the washer fluid for the windshield washer system and the headlight washer system* when the ignition is switched off.

Note

– The concentration of anti-freezing agent must be adjusted to the vehicle operating conditions and the climate. A concentration that is too high can lead to vehicle damage.
– Never add radiator anti-freeze or other additives to the washer fluid.
– Do not use a glass cleaner that contains paint solvents, because this could damage the paint.

Service interval display

The service interval display detects when your vehicle is due for service.

The service interval display works in two stages:

– **Inspection or oil change reminder:** after driving a certain distance, a message appears in the instrument cluster display each time the ignition is switched on or off. The remaining distance or time is displayed briefly.
– **Inspection or oil change due:** if your vehicle has reached an inspection or oil change interval or both intervals at the same time, the message **Inspection due!** or **Oil change due!** or **Oil change and inspection due!** appears briefly after switching the ignition on/off.

Checking service intervals

You can check the remaining distance or time until the next oil change or next inspection in the Infotainment system. Select in the Infotainment system: the MENU button > **Vehicle** > left control button > **Service & checks** > **Service intervals**.

Resetting the indicator

An authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility will reset the service interval display after performing service.

If you have changed the oil yourself, you must reset the oil change interval.

To reset the display, select in the Infotainment system: the MENU button > **Vehicle** > left control button > **Service & checks** > **Service intervals** > **Reset oil change interval**.

Note

– Only reset the oil change indicator if the oil was changed.
– Following the service intervals is critical to maintaining the function, service life, and value of your vehicle, especially the engine. Even if the mileage on the vehicle is low, do not exceed the time for the next service.

Wheels

Wheels and Tires

General information

►Check your tires regularly for damage, such as punctures, cuts, cracks, and bulges. Remove foreign objects from the tire tread.

►If driving over curbs or similar obstacles, drive slowly and approach the curb at an angle.

►Have faulty tires or rims replaced immediately.

►Protect your tires from oil, grease, and fuel.

►Mark tires before removing them so that the same running direction can be maintained if they are reinstalled.

►Lay tires flat when storing and store them in a cool, dry location with as little exposure to light as possible.

WARNING

–Never drive faster than the maximum permitted speed for your tires. This could cause the tires to heat up too much. This increases the risk of an accident because it can cause the tire to burst.

–Always adapt your driving to the road and traffic conditions. Drive carefully and reduce your speed on icy or slippery roads. Even winter tires can lose traction on black ice.

Note

–Please note that summer and winter tires are designed for the conditions that are typical in those seasons. Audi recommends using winter tires during the winter months. Low temperatures significantly decrease the elasticity of summer tires, which affects traction and braking ability. If summer tires are used in very cold temperatures, cracks can form on the tread bars, resulting in permanent tire damage that can cause loud driving noise and unbalanced tires.

–Burnished, polished or chromed rims must not be used in winter driving conditions. The surface of the rims does not have sufficient corrosion protection for this and could be permanently damaged by road salt or similar substances.

8V2012721BK

Tire designations

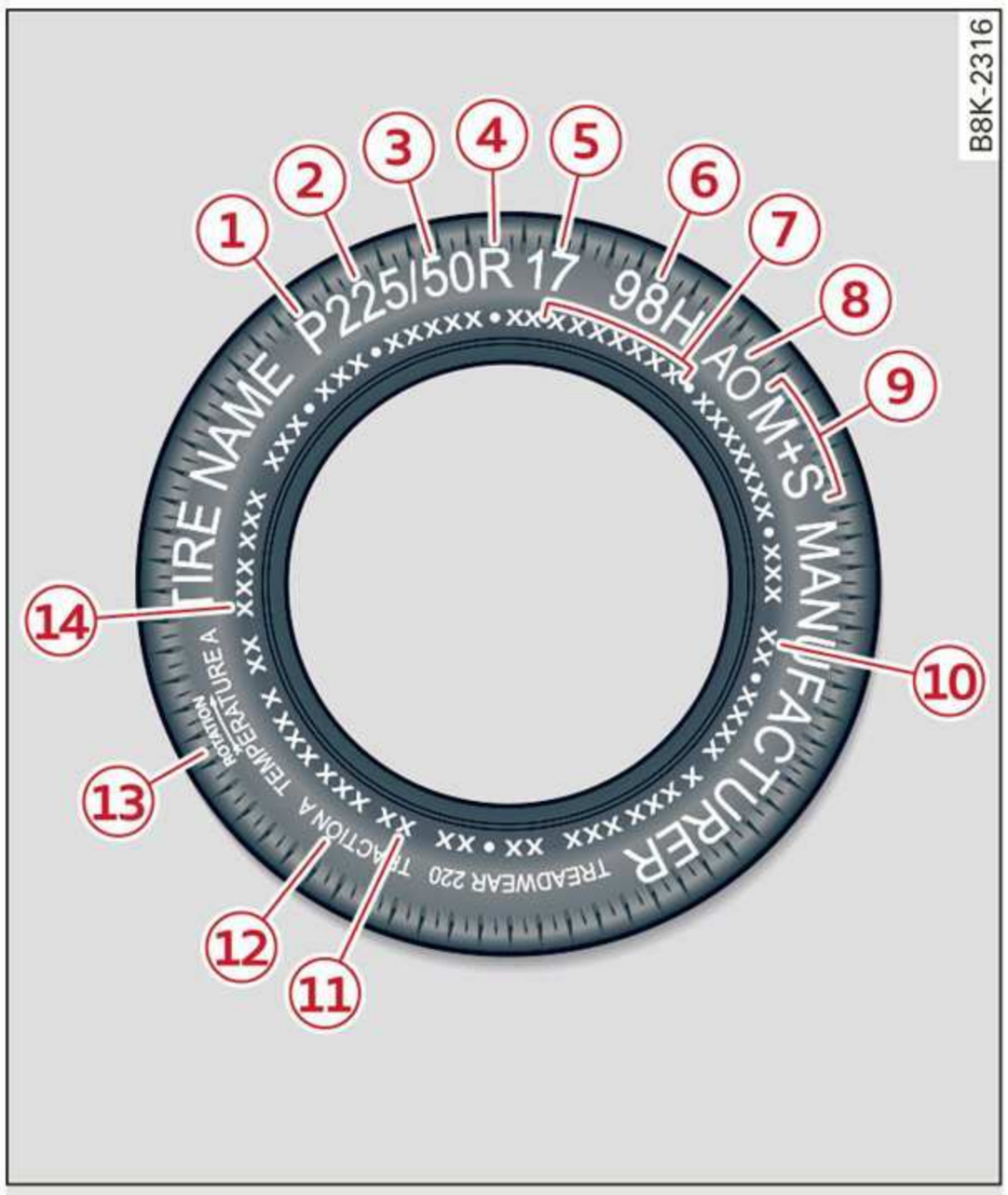


Fig. 257 Tire designations on the sidewall

① Tires for passenger vehicles (if applicable)

"P" indicates a tire for a passenger vehicle. "T" indicates a tire designated for temporary use.

② Nominal width

Nominal width of the tire between the sidewalls in millimeters. In general: the larger the number, the wider the tire.

③ Aspect ratio

Height/width ratio expressed as a percentage.

④ Tire construction

"R" indicates a radial tire.

⑤ Rim diameter

Size of the rim diameter in inches.

⑥ Load index and speed rating

The load index indicates the tire's load-carrying capacity.

The speed rating indicates the maximum permitted speed. Also see ⇨ ⚠ *in General information on page 319*.

"EXTRA LOAD", "xl" or "RF" indicates that the tire is reinforced or is an Extra Load tire.

Speed rating	Maximum permitted speed
P	up to 93 mph (150 km/h)
Q	up to 99 mph (160 km/h)
R	up to 106 mph (170 km/h)
S	up to 110 mph (180 km/h)
T	up to 118 mph (190 km/h)
U	up to 124 mph (200 km/h)
H	up to 130 mph (210 km/h)
V	up to 149 mph (240 km/h)[a)]
Z	above 149 mph (240 km/h)[a)]
W	up to 168 mph (270 km/h)[a)]
Y	up to 186 mph (300 km/h)[a)]

a) For tires above 149 mph (240 km/h), tire manufacturers sometimes use the code "ZR". ▶

⑦ US DOT number (TIN) and manufacture date

The manufacture date is listed on the tire sidewall (it may only appear on the inner side of the tire):

DOT ... 2219 ...

means, for example, that the tire was produced in the 22nd week of the year 2019.

⑧ Audi Original Tires

Audi Original equipment tires with the designation “AO” have been specially matched to your Audi. When used correctly, these tires meet the highest standards for safety and handling. An authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility will be able to provide you with more information.

⑨ Mud and snow capability

“M/S” or “M+S” indicates the tire is suitable for driving on mud and snow. ❄ indicates a winter tire.

⑩ Composition of the tire cord and materials

The number of plies indicates the number of rubberized fabric layers in the tire. In general: the more layers, the more weight a tire can carry. Tire manufacturers must also specify the materials used in the tire. These include steel, nylon, polyester and other materials.

⑪ Maximum permitted load

This number indicates the maximum load in kilograms and pounds that the tire can carry.

⑫ Uniform tire quality grade standards for treadwear, traction and temperature resistance

Treadwear, traction and temperature ranges ⇨ *page 336*.

⑬ Running direction

The arrows indicate the running direction of unidirectional tires. You must always follow the specified running direction ⇨ *page 356*.

⑭ Maximum permitted inflation pressure

This number indicates the maximum pressure to which a tire can be inflated under normal operating conditions.

8V2012721BK

Glossary of tire and loading terminology

Accessory weight

means the combined weight (in excess of those standard items which may be replaced) of automatic transmission, power steering, power brakes, power windows, power seats, radio, and heater, to the extent that these items are available as factory-installed equipment (whether installed or not).

Aspect ratio

means the ratio of the height to the width of the tire in percent. Numbers of 55 or lower indicate a low sidewall for improved steering response and better overall handling on dry pavement.

Bead

means the part of the tire that is made of steel wires, wrapped or reinforced by ply cords and that is shaped to fit the rim.

Bead separation

means a breakdown of the bond between components in the bead.

Cord

means the strands forming the plies in the tire.

Cold tire inflation pressure

means the tire pressure recommended by the vehicle manufacturer for a tire of a designated size that has not been driven for more than a couple of miles (kilometers) at low speeds in the three hour period before the tire pressure is measured or adjusted.

Curb weight

means the weight of a motor vehicle with standard equipment including the maximum capacity of fuel, oil, and coolant, air conditioning and additional weight of optional equipment.

Extra load tire

means a tire designed to operate at higher loads and at higher inflation pressures than the corresponding standard tire. Extra load tires may be identified as “XL”, “xl”, “EXTRA LOAD”, or “RF” on the sidewall. ▶

Gross Axle Weight Rating ("GAWR")

means the load-carrying capacity of a single axle system, measured at the tire-ground interfaces.

Gross Vehicle Weight Rating ("GVWR")

means the maximum total loaded weight of the vehicle.

Groove

means the space between two adjacent tread ribs.

Load rating (code)

means the maximum load that a tire is rated to carry for a given inflation pressure. You may not find this information on all tires because it is not required by law.

Maximum load rating

means the load rating for a tire at the maximum permissible inflation pressure for that tire.

Maximum loaded vehicle weight

means the sum of:

(a) Curb weight
(b) Accessory weight
(c) Vehicle capacity weight, and
(d) Production options weight

Maximum (permissible) inflation pressure

means the maximum cold inflation pressure to which a tire may be inflated. Also called "maximum inflation pressure."

Normal occupant weight

means 150 lbs. (68 kilograms) times the number of occupants seated in the vehicle up to the total seating capacity of your vehicle.

Occupant distribution

means distribution of occupants in a vehicle.

Outer diameter

means the overall diameter of an inflated new tire.

Overall width

means the linear distance between the exteriors of the sidewalls of an inflated tire, including elevations due to labeling, decorations, or protective bands or ribs.

Ply

means a layer of rubber-coated parallel cords. ▶

8V2012721BK

Production options weight

means the combined weight of those installed regular production options weighing over 5 lbs. (2.3 kg) in excess of those standard items which they replace, not previously considered in curb weight or accessory weight, including heavy duty brakes, ride levelers, roof rack, heavy duty battery, and special trim.

Radial ply tire

means a pneumatic tire in which the ply cords that extend to the beads are laid at substantially 90 degrees to the centerline of the tread.

Recommended inflation pressure

see ⇨ *page 322, Cold tire inflation pressure*.

Reinforced tire

means a tire designed to operate at higher loads and at higher inflation pressures than the corresponding standard tire. Reinforced tires may be identified as “XL”, “xl”, “EXTRA LOAD”, or “RF” on the sidewall.

Rim

means a metal support for a tire or a tire and tube assembly upon which the tire beads are seated.

Rim diameter

means nominal diameter of the bead seat. If you change your wheel size, you will have to purchase new tires to match the new rim diameter.

Rim size designation

means rim diameter and width.

Rim width

means nominal distance between rim flanges.

Sidewall

means that portion of a tire between the tread and bead.

Speed rating (letter code)

means the speed at which a tire is designed to be driven for extended periods of time. The ratings range from 93 mph (150 km/h) to 186 mph (298 km/h) ⇨ *table on page 320*. You may not find this information on all tires because it is not required by law.

The speed rating letter code, where applicable, is molded on the tire sidewall and indicates the ▶

maximum permissible road speeds. See also ⇨ ⚠ *in General information on page 319*.

Tire pressure monitoring system*

means a system that detects when one or more of a vehicle's tires are underinflated and illuminates a low tire pressure warning telltale.

Tread

means that portion of a tire that comes into contact with the road.

Tread separation

means pulling away of the tread from the tire carcass.

Treadwear indicators (TWI)

means the projections within the principal grooves designed to give a visual indication of the degrees of wear of the tread. See ⇨ *page 328, Treadwear indicator* for more information on measuring tire wear.

Uniform Tire Quality Grading

is a tire information system developed by the United States National Highway Traffic Safety Administration (NHTSA) that is designed to help buyers make relative comparisons among tires. The UTQG is not a safety rating and not a guarantee that a tire will last for a prescribed number of miles (kilometers) or perform in a certain way. It simply gives tire buyers additional information to combine with other considerations, such as price, brand loyalty and dealer recommendations. Under UTQG, tires are graded by the tire manufacturers in three areas: treadwear, traction, and temperature resistance. The UTQG information on the tires, molded into the sidewalls.

U.S. DOT Tire Identification Number (TIN)

This is the tire's "serial number". It begins with the letters "DOT" and indicates that the tire meets all federal standards. The next two numbers or letters indicate the plant where it was manufactured, and the last four numbers represent the week and year of manufacture. For example,

DOT ... 2219 ...

means that the tire was produced in the 22nd week of 2019. The other numbers are marketing codes that may or may not be used ▶

8V2012721BK

by the tire manufacturer. This information is used to contact consumers if a tire defect requires a recall.

Vehicle capacity weight

means the rated cargo and luggage load plus 150 lbs. (68 kilograms) times the vehicle's designated seating capacity.

Vehicle maximum load on the tire

means that load on an individual tire that is determined by distributing to each axle its share of the maximum loaded vehicle weight and dividing by two.

Vehicle normal load on the tire

means that load on an individual tire that is determined by distributing to each axle its share of the curb weight, accessory weight, and normal occupant weight (distributed in accordance with ⇨ *table on page 331*) and dividing by two.

Occupant loading and distribution for vehicle normal load for various designated seating capacities

Refer to the tire inflation pressure label ⇨ *page 330, fig. 260* for the number of seating positions. Refer to the table ⇨ *table on page 331* for the number of people that correspond to the vehicle normal load.

New tires or wheels

Audi recommends having all work on tires or wheels performed by an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility. These facilities have the proper knowledge and are equipped with the required tools and replacement parts.

- ►New tires do not yet have the optimum gripping properties. Drive carefully and at moderate speeds for the first 350 miles (500 km) with new tires.
- ►Only use tires with the same design, size (rolling circumference), and as close to the same tread pattern as possible on all four wheels.
- ►Applies to: RS models: Only use tires with the same design and the same tread pattern on all four wheels.
- ►Do not replace tires individually. At least replace both tires on the same axle at the same time. ►

- Audi recommends that you use Audi Original Tires. If you would like to use different tires, please note that the tires may perform differently even if they are the same size ⇨ ⚠.
- If you would like to equip your vehicle with a tire and rim combination that is different from what was installed at the factory, consult with an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility before making a purchase ⇨ ⚠.

Because the spare tire* is different from the regular tires installed on the vehicle (such as winter tires or wide tires), only use the spare tire* temporarily in case of emergency and drive carefully while it is in use. It should be replaced with a regular tire as soon as possible.

Applies to: vehicles with all wheel drive: All four wheels must be equipped with tires that are the same brand and have the same construction and tread pattern so that the drive system is not damaged by different wheel speeds. For this reason, in case of emergency, only use a spare tire* that is the same circumference as the regular tires.

⚠ WARNING

–Only use tire/rim combinations and suitable wheel bolts that have been approved by Audi. Otherwise, damage to the vehicle and an accident could result.

–For technical reasons, it is not possible to use tires from other vehicles. In some cases, you cannot even use tires from the same vehicle model.

–Make sure that the tires you select have enough clearance to the vehicle. Replacement tires should not be chosen simply based on the nominal size, because tires with a different construction can differ greatly even if they are the same size. If there is not enough clearance, the tires or the vehicle can be damaged and this can reduce driving safety and increase the risk of an accident.

–Only use tires that are more than six years old when absolutely necessary and drive carefully when doing so. ▶

–Do not use run-flat tires on your vehicle. Using them when not permitted can lead to vehicle damage or accidents.
–If you install wheel covers on the vehicle, make sure they allow enough air circulation to cool the brake system. If they do not, this could increase the risk of an accident.

Tire wear and damage

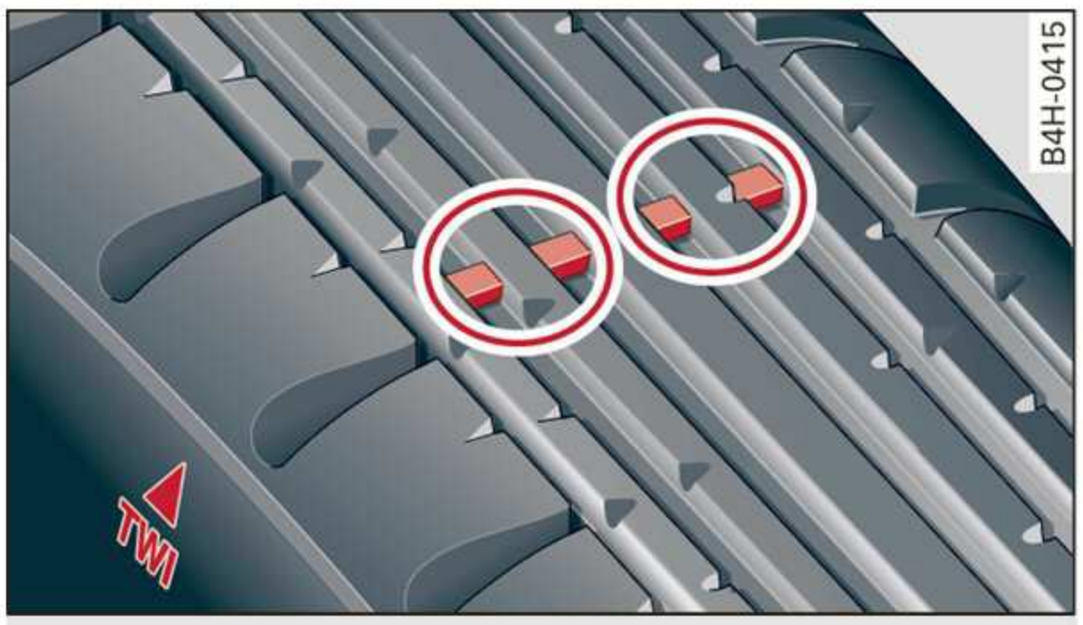


Fig. 258 Tire profile: treadwear indicator

Tire wear

Check the tires regularly for wear.

–Inflation pressure that is too low or high can increase tire wear considerably.
–Driving quickly through curves, rapid acceleration, and heavy braking increase tire wear.
–Have an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility check the wheel alignment if there is unusual wear.
–Have the wheels rebalanced if an imbalance is causing noticeable vibration in the steering wheel. If you do not, the tires and other vehicle components could wear more quickly.

Treadwear indicator

Original equipment tires contain treadwear indicators in the tread pattern, which are bars that are 1/16 in (1.6 mm) high and are spaced evenly around the tire perpendicular to the running direction ⇨ *fig. 258*. The letters “TWI” or triangles on the tire sidewall indicate the location of the treadwear indicators.

The tires have reached the minimum tread depth [1)] when they have worn down to the treadwear indicators. Replace the tires with new ones ⇨ ⚠. ▶

[1)] Obey any applicable regulations in the country where the vehicle is being operated.

Tire rotation

Applies to: RS models: Tires may only be rotated if the tires on the front and rear axles are the same size ⇨ ⚠.

Rotating the tires regularly is recommended to ensure the tires wear evenly. To rotate the tires, install the tires from the rear axle on the front axle and vice versa. This will allow the tires to have approximately the same length of service life.

For unidirectional tires, make sure the tires are installed according to the running direction indicated on the tire sidewall ⇨ *page 356*.

Hidden damage

Damage to tires and rims can often occur in locations that are hidden. Unusual vibrations in the vehicle or pulling to one side may indicate that there is tire damage. Reduce your speed immediately. Check the tires for damage. If no damage is visible from the outside, drive slowly and carefully to the nearest authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility to have the vehicle inspected.

⚠ WARNING

– Tread that has worn too low or uneven tread depths on the tires can reduce driving safety. This can increase the risk of an accident because it has a negative effect on handling, driving through curves, and braking, and because it increases the risk of hydroplaning when driving through deep puddles.
– Applies to: RS models: Depending on the equipment, the widths of the standard summer tires may be different on the front and rear axles. The wider tires are mounted on the front axle. The tires must not be rotated.

Tire pressure



Fig. 259 Driver's side B-pillar: tire pressure label

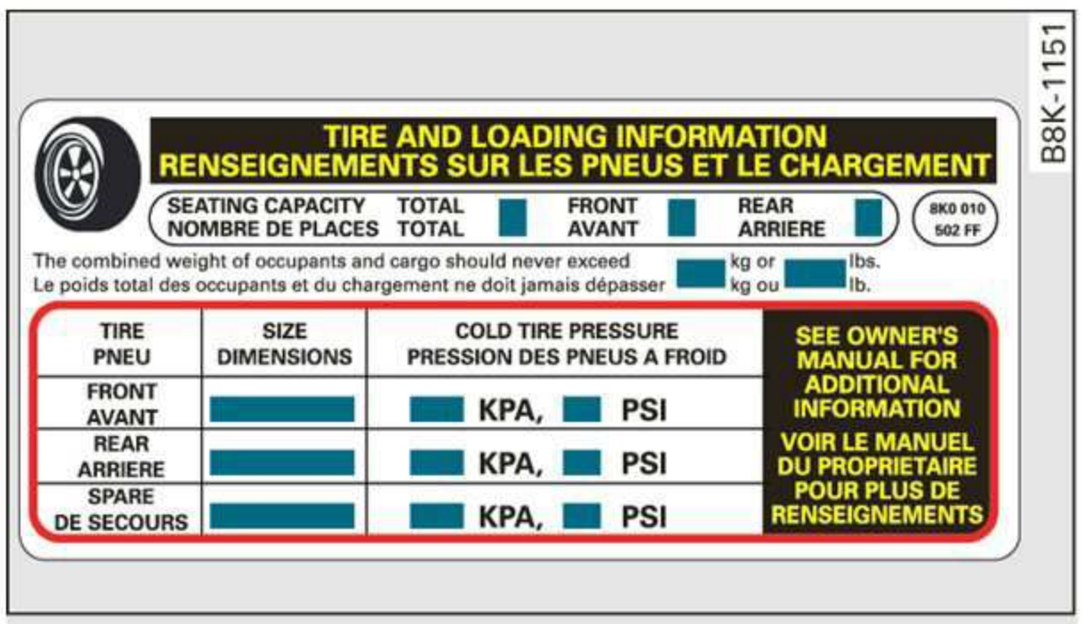


Fig. 260 Tire pressure label

The correct tire pressure for tires mounted at the factory and for the spare tire* is indicated on a label. The label is located on the B-pillar ⇨ *fig. 259*, ⇨ *fig. 260*. The location may vary depending on the model.

Use the tire pressure specified for a normal vehicle load when the vehicle is partially loaded ⇨ *table on page 331*. If driving the vehicle when fully loaded, you must increase the tire pressure to the maximum specified pressure ⇨ ⚠.

Checking and correcting tire pressure

- ▸Check the tire pressure at least once per month and also check it before every long drive.
- ▸Always check the tire pressure when the tires are *cold*. Do not reduce the pressure if it increases when the tires are warm.
- ▸Refer to the sticker ⇨ *fig. 260* for the correct tire pressure.
- ▸Correct the tire pressure if necessary.
- ▸Store the new tire pressure in the Infotainment system ⇨ *page 338* or ⇨ *page 341*.
- ▸Check the pressure in the emergency tire*/spare tire*. Always maintain the maximum temperature that is specified for the tire.

⚠ WARNING

Always adapt the tire pressure to your driving style and the vehicle load.

–Overloading can lead to loss of vehicle control and increase the risk of an accident. Read and follow the important safety precautions in ⇨ *page 332, Tires and vehicle load limits*. ▸

– The tire must flex more if the tire pressure is too low or if the vehicle speed or load are too high. This heats the tire up too much. This increases the risk of an accident because it can cause the tire to burst and result in loss of vehicle control.
– Incorrect tire pressure increases tire wear and has a negative effect on driving and braking behavior, which increases the risk of an accident.

Note

Replace lost valve caps to reduce the risk of damage to the tire valves.

For the sake of the environment

Tire pressure that is too low increases fuel consumption.

Tire pressure table

Please note that the information contained in the following table was correct at the time of printing, and the information is subject to change. If there are any differences, you should always follow the tire pressure sticker ⇨ *page 330, fig. 259*.

Make sure that the tire designation on your tire matches the designation on the tire pressure label and the tire pressure table.

The following table lists recommended tire pressures in cold tires according to the load and the size of the tires installed.

Model/ Engine	Tire designation	Tire pressure							
		Normal load (up to 2/3* people)[a)]				Maximum load			
		Front		Rear		Front		Rear	
		PSI	kPA	PSI	kPA	PSI	kPA	PSI	kPA
A3 sedan: 2.0 L 4-cylinder	225/40 R18 92Y	35	240	32	220	36	250	36	250
	225/45 R17 91H	33	230	30	210	41	280	41	280
	225/40 R18 92H	36	250	33	230	41	280	41	280
	235/35 R19 91Y	33	230	30	210	38	260	41	280
S3 sedan: 2.0 L 4-cylinder	225/40 R18 92Y	38	260	35	240	42	290	42	290
	225/40 R18 92H	38	260	35	240	41	280	41	280
	235/35 R19 91Y	39	270	36	250	44	300	44	300

8V2012721BK

Model/ Engine	Tire designation	Tire pressure							
		Normal load (up to 2/3* people)[a]				Maximum load			
		Front		Rear		Front		Rear	
		PSI	kPA	PSI	kPA	PSI	kPA	PSI	kPA
RS 3 sedan: 2.5L 5-cylinder	235/35 R19 91Y	39/ 44[b]	270/ 300[b]	35/ 39[b]	240/ 270[b]	44/ 46[b]	300/ 320[b]	39/ 44[b]	270/ 300[b]
	255/30 R19 91Y	39/ 44[b]	270/ 300[b]	–	–	44/ 46[b]	300/ 320[b]	–	–
A3 Cabriolet: 2.0 L 4-cylinder	225/40 R18 92Y	35	240	32	220	38	260	38	260
	225/45 R17 91H	33	230	30	210	39	270	39	270
	225/40 R18 92H	38	260	35	240	41	280	41	280
	235/35 R19 91Y	42	290	39	270	45	310	45	310
A3 Sportback e-tron: 1.4 l 4-cylinder	205/55 R16 91V	35	240	35	240	36	250	39	270
	225/40 R18 92Y	33	230	33	230	36	250	39	270
	225/45 R17 91H	38	260	38	260	38	260	38	260
	225/40 R18 92H	36	250	36	250	41	280	41	280

a) **Vehicles with four seating positions:** two people in the front, **Vehicles with five seating positions:** two people in the front, one person in the rear

b) The value before the forward slash applies to vehicles with a maximum speed up to 155 mph (250 km/h); the value after the slash is for up to 174 mph (280 km/h).

WARNING

Please note the important safety precautions regarding tire pressure ⇨ *page 330* and load limits ⇨ *page 332*.

Tires and vehicle load limits

There are limits to the amount of load or weight that any vehicle and any tire can carry. A vehicle that is overloaded will not handle well and is more difficult to stop. Overloading can not only lead to loss of vehicle control, but can also damage important parts of the vehicle and can lead to sudden tire failure, including a blowout and sudden deflation that can cause the vehicle to crash.

Your safety and that of your passengers also depends on making sure that load limits are not exceeded. Vehicle load includes everybody and everything in and on the vehicle. These load limits are technically referred to as the vehicle's **Gross Vehicle Weight Rating** ("GVWR").

The "GVWR" includes the weight of the basic vehicle, all factory ▶

installed accessories, a full tank of fuel, oil, coolant and other fluids plus maximum load. The maximum load includes the number of passengers that the vehicle is intended to carry ("seating capacity") with an assumed weight of 150 lbs. (68 kg) for each passenger at a designated seating position and the total weight of any luggage in the vehicle. If you tow a trailer, the weight of the trailer hitch and the tongue weight of the loaded trailer must be included as part of the vehicle load.

The **Gross Axle Weight Rating** ("GAWR") is the maximum load that can be applied at each of the vehicle's two axles.

The fact that there is an upper limit to your vehicle's Gross Vehicle Weight Rating means that the total weight of whatever is being carried in the vehicle (including the weight of a trailer hitch and the tongue weight of the loaded trailer) is limited. The more passengers in the vehicle or passengers who are heavier than the standard weights assumed mean that less weight can be carried as luggage.

The Gross Vehicle Weight Rating and the Gross Axle Weight Rating are listed on the safety compliance sticker label located on the driver's side B-pillar.

WARNING

Overloading a vehicle can cause loss of vehicle control, a crash or other accident, serious personal injury, and even death.

–Carrying more weight than your vehicle was designed to carry will prevent the vehicle from handling properly and increase the risk of the loss of vehicle control.

–The brakes on a vehicle that has been overloaded may not be able to stop the vehicle within a safe distance.

–Tires on a vehicle that has been overloaded can fail suddenly, including a blowout and sudden deflation, causing loss of control and a crash.

–Always make sure that the total load being transported – including the weight of a trailer hitch and the tongue weight of a loaded trailer – does not make the vehicle ▶

heavier than the vehicle's Gross Vehicle Weight Rating.

Determining correct load limit

Use the example below to calculate the total weight of the passengers and luggage or other things that you plan to transport so that you can make sure that your vehicle will not be overloaded.

Steps for Determining Correct Load Limit

1. Locate the statement "THE COMBINED WEIGHT OF OCCUPANTS AND CARGO SHOULD NEVER EXCEED XXX KG OR XXX LBS" on your vehicle's placard (tire inflation pressure label) ⇨ *page 330, fig. 259*.
2. Determine the combined weight of the driver and passengers that will be riding in your vehicle.
3. Subtract the combined weight of the driver and passengers from "XXX" kilograms or "XXX" pounds shown on the sticker ⇨ *page 330, fig. 259*.
4. The resulting figure equals the available amount of cargo and luggage load capacity. For example, if the "XXX" amount equals 1400 lbs. and there will be five 150 lbs. passengers in your vehicle, the amount of available cargo and luggage load capacity is 650 lbs. (1400-750 (5 x 150) = 650 lbs.)
5. Determine the combined weight of luggage and cargo being loaded on the vehicle. That weight may not safely exceed the available cargo and luggage load capacity calculated in Step 4.
6. If your vehicle will be towing a trailer, load from your trailer will be transferred to your vehicle. Consult this manual to determine how this reduces the available cargo and luggage load capacity of your vehicle.

► Check the tire sidewall (⇨ *page 320, fig. 257*) to determine the designated load rating for a specific tire.

Wheel bolts and rims

Wheel bolts

Wheel bolts must be clean and loosen/tighten easily. ▶

Rims

Rims with a bolted rim ring* or with bolted wheel covers* consist of multiple pieces. These components were bolted together using special bolts and a special procedure. You must not repair or disassemble them ⇨ ⚠.

WARNING

Wheel bolts that are tightened or repaired incorrectly can become loose and result in loss of vehicle control, which increases the risk of an accident. For the correct tightening specification, see ⇨ *page 352, After changing a wheel*.

– Always keep the wheel bolts and the threads in the wheel hub clean and free of grease.
– Only use wheel bolts that fit the rim.
– Always have damaged rims repaired by an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility. Never repair or disassemble rims yourself, because this increases the risk of an accident.

Winter tires

Winter tires significantly improve the vehicle's handling when driving in winter conditions. Because of their construction (width, compound, tread pattern), summer tires provide less traction on ice and snow.

- ► Use winter tires on all four wheels.
- ► Only use winter tires that are approved for your vehicle.
- ► Please note that the maximum permitted speed may be lower with winter tires ⇨ ⚠ *in General information on page 319*. An authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility can inform you about the maximum permitted speed for your tires.
- ► Check the tire pressure after installing wheels ⇨ *page 330*.

The effectiveness of winter tires is reduced greatly when the tread is worn down to a depth of 0.157 inch (4 mm). The characteristics of winter tires also decrease greatly as the tire ages, regardless of the remaining tread.

For the sake of the environment

Reinstall summer tires at the appropriate time, because they provide better handling when roads are free of snow and ice. Summer tires cause less road noise, tire wear, and fuel consumption.

Tips

You can also use all season tires instead of winter tires. Please note that in some countries where winter tires are required, only winter tires with the ⚠ symbol may be permitted.

Snow chains

Snow chains improve both driving and braking in winter road conditions.

- ► Only install snow chains on the front wheels.
- ► Check and correct the seating of the snow chains after driving a few feet, if necessary. Follow the instructions from the manufacturer.
- ► Note the maximum speed of 30 mph (50 km/h). Observe the local regulations.

Use of snow chains is only permitted with certain rim/tire combinations due to technical reasons. Check with an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility to see if you may use snow chains.

Use **fine-mesh snow chains**. They must not add more than 0.53 inch (13.5 mm) in height, including the chain lock.

You must remove the snow chains on roads without snow. Otherwise, you could impair driving ability and damage the tires.

WARNING

Using incorrect snow chains or installing snow chains incorrectly can result in loss of vehicle control, which increases the risk of an accident.

Note

Snow chains can damage the rims and wheel covers* if the chains come into direct contact ▶

with them. Remove the wheel covers* first. Use coated snow chains.

Tips

When using snow chains, it may be advisable to limit the ESC ⇨ *page 94*.

Low-profile tires

Applies to: vehicles with low-profile tires

Compared to other tire/rim combinations, low-profile tires offer a wider tread surface and a larger rim diameter with shorter tire sidewalls. This results in an agile driving style. However, it may reduce the level of comfort and increase road noise when driving on roads in poor condition.

Low-profile tires can become damaged more quickly than standard tires when driving over large bumps, potholes, manhole covers, and curbs. Therefore, it is particularly important to maintain the correct tire pressure ⇨ *page 330*.

To reduce the risk of damage to the tires and rims, drive very carefully on poor roads.

Check your wheels regularly every 2,000 mi (3,000 km) for damage. For example, check for bulges/cracks on the tires or deformations/cracks on the rims.

After a heavy impact or damage, have the tires and rims inspected or replaced immediately by an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility.

Low-profile tires can wear out faster than standard tires.

Uniform tire quality grading

– Tread wear
– Traction AA A B C
– Temperature A B C

Quality grades can be found where applicable on the tire side wall between tread shoulder and maximum section width ⇨ *page 320, fig. 257*.

For example: Tread wear **200**, Traction **AA**, Temperature **A**.

All passenger car tires must conform to Federal Safety Requirements in addition to these grades.

Tread wear

The *tread wear* grade is a comparative rating based on the wear rate of the tire when tested under controlled conditions on a specified government test course.

For example, a tire graded 150 would wear one and one half (1 1/2) times as well on the government course as a tire graded 100.

The relative performance of tires depends upon the actual conditions of their use, however, and may depart significantly from the norm due to variations in driving habits, service practices and differences in road characteristics and climate.

Traction

The *traction* grades, from highest to lowest, are AA, A, B and C. Those grades represent the tire's ability to stop on wet pavement as measured under controlled conditions on specified government test surfaces of asphalt and concrete. A tire marked C may have poor traction performance ⇨ ⚠.

Temperature

The *temperature* grades are A (the highest), B, and C, representing the tire's resistance to the generation of heat and its ability to dissipate heat when tested under controlled conditions on a specified indoor laboratory test wheel.

Sustained high temperature can cause the material of the tire to degenerate and reduce tire life, and excessive temperature can lead to sudden tire failure ⇨ ⚠.

The grade C corresponds to a level of performance which all passenger car tires must meet under the Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standard No. 109. Grades B and A represent higher levels of performance on the laboratory test wheel than the minimum required by law.

WARNING

The traction grade assigned to this tire is based on straight-ahead braking traction ▶

tests, and does not include acceleration, cornering, hydroplaning or peak traction characteristics.

WARNING

The temperature grade for this tire is established for a tire that is properly inflated and not overloaded. Excessive speed, underinflation, or excessive loading, either separately or in combination, can cause heat buildup and possible tire failure.

WARNING

Temperature grades apply to tires that are properly inflated and not over or underinflated.

Tire Pressure Monitoring System indicator

General notes

Each tire, including the spare (if provided), should be checked monthly when cold and inflated to the inflation pressure recommended by the vehicle manufacturer on the vehicle placard or tire inflation pressure label. (If your vehicle has tires of a different size than the size indicated on the vehicle placard or tire inflation pressure label, you should determine the proper tire inflation pressure for those tires).

As an added safety feature, your vehicle has been equipped with a tire pressure monitoring system (TPMS) that illuminates a low tire pressure telltale when one or more of your tires is significantly under-inflated. Accordingly, when the low tire pressure telltale illuminates, you should stop and check your tires as soon as possible, and inflate them to the proper pressure. Driving on a significantly under-inflated tire causes the tire to overheat and can lead to tire failure. Under-inflation also reduces fuel efficiency and tire tread life, and may affect the vehicle's handling and stopping ability.

Please note that the TPMS is not a substitute for proper tire maintenance, and it is the driver's responsibility to maintain correct tire pressure, even if under-inflation has not reached the level to trigger illumination of the TPMS low tire pressure telltale.

Your vehicle has also been equipped with a TPMS malfunction indicator to indicate when the system is not operating properly. The TPMS malfunction indicator is combined with the low tire pressure telltale. When the system detects a malfunction, the telltale will flash for approximately one minute and then remain continuously illuminated. This sequence will continue upon subsequent vehicle start-ups as long as the malfunction exists.

When the malfunction indicator is illuminated, the system may not be able to detect or signal low tire pressure as intended. TPMS malfunctions may occur for a variety of reasons, including the installation of replacement or alternate tires or wheels on the vehicle that prevent the TPMS from functioning properly. Always check the TPMS malfunction telltale after replacing one or more tires or wheels on your vehicle to ensure that the replacement or alternate tires and wheels allow the TPMS to continue to function properly.

If the Tire Pressure Monitoring System indicator appears

Applies to: vehicles with Tire Pressure Monitoring System indicator

The tire pressure indicator in the instrument cluster informs you if the tire pressure is too low or if there is a system malfunction.

Using the ABS sensors, the tire pressure monitoring system compares the tire tread circumference and vibration characteristics of the individual tires. If the pressure changes in one or more tires, this is indicated in the instrument cluster display with an (!) indicator light and a message. If only one tire is affected, the location of that tire will be indicated.

The tire pressures must be stored in the menu display again each time the pressures change (switching between partial and full load pressure) or after changing or replacing a tire on your vehicle ⇨ *page 338*. The tire pressure monitoring ▶

system only monitors the tire pressure you have stored. Refer to the tire pressure label for the recommended tire pressure for your vehicle ⇨ *page 330, fig. 260*.

Tire tread circumference and vibration characteristics can change and cause a tire pressure warning if:

– The tire pressure in one or more tires is too low
– The tire has structural damage
– The tire was replaced or the tire pressure was changed and it was not stored ⇨ *page 338*
– One side of the vehicle is more heavily loaded than the other
– The wheels on one axle are more heavily loaded than the others (for example, when towing a trailer or when driving up and down hills)
– Snow chains are installed
– The spare tire* is installed
– Only one tire was replaced on each axle

Indicator lights

(!) – loss of pressure in at least one tire ⇨ ⚠. Check the tires and replace or repair if necessary. Check/correct the pressures of all four tires. Then store the tire pressures in the menu ⇨ *page 338*.

TPMS (Tire Pressure Monitoring System) **Tire pressure: malfunction! See owner's manual**. If TPMS appears after switching the ignition on or while driving and the (!) indicator light in the instrument cluster blinks for approximately one minute and then stays on, there is system malfunction. Check/correct the pressures on all four tires and store the pressures ⇨ *page 338*. If the indicator light does turn off or turns on again after a short period of time, drive to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility immediately to have the malfunction corrected.

WARNING

– If the tire pressure indicator appears in the instrument cluster display, reduce your speed immediately and avoid any hard steering or braking maneuvers. Stop as soon as possible and check the tires and their pressures.
– The driver is responsible for maintaining the correct tire pressures. You must check the tire pressures regularly.
– Under certain conditions (such as a sporty driving style, winter conditions or unpaved roads), the pressure monitor indicator may be delayed.
– Do not use run-flat tires on your vehicle. Using them when not permitted can lead to vehicle damage or accidents.

Tips

– The tire pressure monitoring system can also stop working when there is an ESC/ABS malfunction.
– Using snow chains may result in a system malfunction.
– The tire pressure monitoring system in your Audi was calibrated with "Audi Original Tires" ⇨ *page 326*. Using these tires is recommended.
– The tire pressure monitoring system can only monitor the tire pressure of the driving tires. Check the tire pressure of the spare wheel in the luggage compartment so that if necessary it is ready for use.

Storing tire pressures

Applies to: vehicles with Tire Pressure Monitoring System indicator

A change in tire pressure or a change in tires must be stored in the system.

Before storing the tire pressures, make sure the tire pressures in all four tires meet the specified values and are adapted to the load ⇨ *page 328*.

▸ Select in the Infotainment system: MENU button > **Vehicle** > left control button > **Service & checks** > **Tire pressure monitoring** > **Store tire pressure** > **Yes, store now**.

Tips

Do not store the tire pressures if snow chains are installed.

Tire pressure monitoring system

General notes

Each tire, including the spare (if provided), should be checked monthly when cold and inflated to the inflation pressure recommended by the vehicle manufacturer on the vehicle placard or tire inflation pressure label. (If your vehicle has tires of a different size than the size indicated on the vehicle placard or tire inflation pressure label, you should determine the proper tire inflation pressure for those tires).

As an added safety feature, your vehicle has been equipped with a tire pressure monitoring system (TPMS) that illuminates a low tire pressure telltale when one or more of your tires is significantly under-inflated. Accordingly, when the low tire pressure telltale illuminates, you should stop and check your tires as soon as possible, and inflate them to the proper pressure. Driving on a significantly under-inflated tire causes the tire to overheat and can lead to tire failure. Under-inflation also reduces fuel efficiency and tire tread life, and may affect the vehicle's handling and stopping ability.

Please note that the TPMS is not a substitute for proper tire maintenance, and it is the driver's responsibility to maintain correct tire pressure, even if under-inflation has not reached the level to trigger illumination of the TPMS low tire pressure telltale.

Your vehicle has also been equipped with a TPMS malfunction indicator to indicate when the system is not operating properly. The TPMS malfunction indicator is combined with the low tire pressure telltale. When the system detects a malfunction, the telltale will flash for approximately one minute and then remain continuously illuminated. This sequence will continue upon subsequent vehicle start-ups as long as the malfunction exists.

When the malfunction indicator is illuminated, the system may not be able to detect or signal low tire pressure as intended. TPMS malfunctions may occur for a variety of reasons, including the installation of replacement or alternate tires or wheels on the vehicle that prevent the TPMS from functioning properly. Always check the TPMS malfunction telltale after replacing one or more tires or wheels on your vehicle to ensure that the replacement or alternate tires and wheels allow the TPMS to continue to function properly.

Description

Applies to: vehicles with tire pressure monitoring system

The tire pressure monitoring system monitors the pressure in the four tires when driving.

The system uses sensors that measure the temperature and pressure in the tires. The data is sent from these sensors to the control module by radio frequency.

The tire pressure monitoring system shows the current pressures and temperatures of the tires in the Infotainment system while driving ⇨ *page 340*. It also compares the current tire pressures with the stored tire pressures and gives a warning if the tire pressure is different from what is stored ⇨ *page 340*.

The system does not detect if the stored tire pressures match the recommended tire pressures. You must store the tire pressures again in each of the following situations ⇨ *page 341*:

– Each time the tire pressures change, for example when the load in the vehicle changes
– After replacing a tire
– If wheels with new wheel sensors are used

WARNING

– The tire pressure monitoring system assists the driver in monitoring tire pressures. The driver is responsible for having the tires inflated to the correct pressure.
– Do not change the tire pressure when the temperature of the tire is extremely high. This could result in serious damage to the tire and even cause the tire to burst, increasing the risk of an accident.
– A tire with low pressure flexes more. This heats the tire up too much. This could cause ▶

the tread to separate and even cause the tire to burst, increasing the risk of an accident.
– The tire pressure monitoring system does not warn about damage or defects in the tire construction that could cause the tire to burst, for example. Inspect your tires regularly.

Tips

– If tires are replaced, the sensors and valves do not need to be removed or replaced. Only replace the valve stem and, if necessary, the valve and the wheel electronics. If you have questions, see an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility.
– An incorrect display or a malfunction in the tire pressure monitoring system can occur after using the tire mobility kit. Have the sensors replaced by an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility.
– For an explanation on conformity with the FCC regulations in the United States and the Industry Canada regulations, see ⇨ *page 377*.

Displaying tire pressures and temperatures

Applies to: vehicles with tire pressure monitoring system

Requirement: you must be driving the vehicle.

► Select in the Infotainment system: the MENU button > **Vehicle** > left control button > **Service & checks** > **Tire pressure monitoring** > **Display tire pressure**.

The current tire pressures are shown in green, yellow or red numbers in the Infotainment system:

– **Green:** the current tire pressure and the specified tire pressure are approximately the same.
– **Yellow:** the current tire pressure is lower than the specified tire pressure.
– **Red:** the current tire pressure is much lower than the specified tire pressure.

The specified tire pressure is the last tire pressure that was stored ⇨ *page 341*.

Note that the tire pressure also depends on the temperature of the tire. The tire pressure increases as the engine becomes warmer while driving.

WARNING

Read and follow the important information and notes ⇨ *page 339*.

Tips

The tire pressure or temperature is not displayed while the vehicle is stationary and in adaptation mode. Dashes **--.--** are shown in place of the pressure and temperature.

Tire pressure loss

Applies to: vehicles with tire pressure monitoring system

If the (!) indicator light turns on, the pressure in at least one tire is too low or new sensors were not adapted:

(!) Indicator light turns on after turning the ignition on

The tire pressure is too low compared to the specified pressure.

► Check and store the tire pressure(s) the next time it is possible ⇨ *page 341*.

(!) Indicator light turns on while driving

Wheels with new sensors were not adapted or the tire pressure has reached a critical level compared to the specified pressure.

► Avoid unnecessary steering and braking maneuvers.
► Adapt your driving style to the situation.
► Stop as soon as possible and check the tire(s).
► If it is possible to continue driving, see an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility immediately and have your tire(s) repaired or replaced.

WARNING

Read and follow the important information and notes ⇨ *page 339*.

Storing new tire pressures

Applies to: vehicles with tire pressure monitoring system

The tire pressure specifications must be stored correctly for the tire pressure monitoring system to function reliably.

It is always necessary to store the tire pressures when the tire pressures are modified, for example due to a change in load or when new sensors are installed.

- ▸ Before storing the tire pressures, make sure the tire pressures of all four tires meet the specified values and are adapted to the load ⇨ *page 330, fig. 260*. Only correct and store the pressure in tires whose temperature is approximately the same as the ambient temperature. If the temperature of the tire is higher than the ambient air temperature, the tire pressure must be increased approximately 3.0 PSI (0.2 bar) above the value on the sticker.
- ▸ Switch the ignition on.
- ▸ Select in the Infotainment system: MENU button > **Vehicle** > left control button > **Service & checks** > **Tire pressure monitoring** > **Store tire pressure** > **Yes, store now**. After storing the tire pressures, the tire pressure monitoring system measures the current pressures while driving and stores them as the new specified pressures.
- ▸ If the changed tire pressures are not displayed in the Infotainment system, drive the vehicle for approximately 10 minutes so that the sensor signal from the wheels is received again.

During this adaptation phase, **--.--** is displayed for the pressure and temperature and the tire pressure monitoring system is only partially available. It only provides a warning if one or more tire pressures is below the minimum permitted specified pressure.

If the (!) indicator light turns on and the message **Tire pressure: wheel change detected. Please check all tires and store pressures in MMI** also appears, the system has detected that the position of the sensors has changed because of a tire rotation, or that new sensors were installed. Store the new tire pressures.

WARNING

Read and follow the important information and notes ⇨ *page 339*.

Malfunctions

Applies to: vehicles with tire pressure monitoring system

If the tire pressure monitoring system is not available, the TPMS indicator light appears in the instrument cluster display along with the message **Tire pressure: malfunction! See owner's manual**.

If the TPMS indicator light appears after switching the ignition on or while driving and the (!) indicator light also blinks for approximately one minute and then stays on, there is a system malfunction. The following are examples of situations that could cause a malfunction:

– If the message appears at the end of the adaptation phase, the system may not detect one or several of the wheel sensors necessary for pressure monitoring. This may result from one or more wheels without wheel sensors or with incompatible wheel sensors being installed.
– A wheel sensor or another component has failed.
– Using snow chains can affect the function of the system because of the shielding effect of the chains.
– The tire pressure monitoring system is not available due to a malfunction.
– Transmitters with the same frequency, such as headphones or remote-controlled devices, may cause a temporary system malfunction due to the strong electromagnetic field.

The TPMS indicator light and the message turn off once the tire pressure monitoring system is available again. If you cannot correct the malfunction and the TPMS indicator light stays on, drive immediately to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility to have the malfunction repaired.

Care and cleaning

General information

Regular, proper care helps to maintain your vehicle's value. It can also be a requirement when submitting warranty claims for corrosion damage and paint defects on the body.

The required cleaning and care products can be obtained from an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Service Facility. Read and follow the instructions for use on the packaging.

WARNING

- Using cleaning and care products incorrectly can be dangerous to your health.
- Always store cleaning and care products out of reach of children to reduce the risk of poisoning.

For the sake of the environment

- Purchase environmentally-friendly cleaning products if possible.
- Do not dispose of cleaning and care products with household trash.

Car washes

The longer that deposits such as insects, bird droppings, tree sap or road salt remain on the vehicle, the more the surface can be damaged. High temperatures such as those caused by sunlight increase the damaging effect.

Before washing, rinse off heavy deposits with plenty of water.

Stubborn deposits such as bird droppings or tree sap are best removed with plenty of water and a microfiber cloth.

Also, wash the underside of your vehicle once road salt stops being used for the season.

Pressure washers

When washing your vehicle with a pressure washer, always follow the operating instructions provided with the pressure washer. This is especially important in regard to the pressure and spraying distance. Do not aim the spray directly at seals on side windows, doors, the hood, the luggage compartment lid, or the panoramic glass roof* or at tires, rubber hoses, insulating material, the power top*, sensors*, or camera lenses*. Keep a distance of at least 16 in (40 cm).

Plug-in hybrid drive: do not direct the stream of water towards the wall mount clip*.

Do not remove snow and ice with a pressure washer.

Never use cone nozzles or high pressure nozzles.

The water temperature must not be above 140 °F (60 °C).

Automatic car wash

Spray off the vehicle before washing.

Make sure that the windows, the panoramic glass roof*, and the power top* are closed and the windshield wipers are off. Follow instructions from the car wash operator, especially if there are accessories attached to your vehicle.

If possible, use car washes that do not have brushes.

Washing by hand

Clean the vehicle starting from the top and working downward using a soft sponge or cleaning brush. Use solvent-free cleaning products.

Washing vehicles with matte finish paint by hand

To reduce the risk of damaging the paint when washing, first remove dust and large particles from your vehicle. Insects, grease spots, and fingerprints are best removed with a special cleaner for matte finish paint.

Apply the product using a microfiber cloth. To reduce the risk of damaging the paint surface, do not use too much pressure.

Rinse the vehicle thoroughly with water. Then clean using a neutral shampoo and a soft microfiber cloth.

Rinse the vehicle thoroughly again and let it air dry. Remove any water residue using a chamois. ▶

WARNING

- To reduce the risk of accidents, only wash the vehicle when the ignition is off and follow the instructions from the car wash operator.
- To reduce the risk of cuts, protect yourself from sharp metal components when washing the underbody or the inside of the wheel housings.
- After washing the vehicle, the braking effect may be delayed due to moisture on the brake rotors or ice in the winter. This increases the risk of an accident. The brakes must be dried with a few careful brake applications.

Note

- If you wash the vehicle in an automatic car wash, you must fold the exterior mirrors in to reduce the risk of damage to the mirrors. Power folding exterior mirrors* must only be folded in and out using the power folding function.
- To reduce the risk of paint damage, do not wash the vehicle in direct sunlight.
- To reduce the risk of damage, do not wash decorative decals* with a pressure washer.
- To reduce the risk of damage, do not wash the power top* with a pressure washer.
- To reduce the risk of damage to the surface, do not use insect removing sponges, kitchen sponges, or similar items.
- When washing matte finish painted vehicle components:
  - To reduce the risk of damage to the surface, do not use polishing agents or hard wax.
  - Never use protective wax. It can destroy the matte finish effect.
  - Do not place any stickers or magnetic signs on vehicle components painted with matte finish paint. The paint could be damaged when the stickers or magnets are removed.

For the sake of the environment

Only wash the vehicle in facilities specially designed for that purpose. This will reduce the risk of dirty water contaminated with oil from entering the sewer system.

Cleaning and care information

When cleaning and caring for individual vehicle components, refer to the following tables. The information contained there is simply recommendations. For questions or for components that are not listed, consult an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility. Also follow the information found in ⇨ ⚠.

Exterior cleaning

Component	Situation	Solution
Windshield wiper blades	Deposits	Soft cloth with glass cleaner ⇨ *page 50*
Headlights/ Tail lights	Deposits	Soft sponge with a mild soap solution[a)]
Sensors/ Camera lenses	Deposits	Sensors: soft cloth with solvent-free cleaning solution Camera lenses: soft cloth with alcohol-free cleaning solution
	Snow/ice	Hand brush/solvent-free de-icing spray
Wheels	Road salt	Water
	Brake dust	Acid-free special cleaning solution

Component	Situation	Solution
Exhaust tail pipes	Road salt	Water, cleaning solution suitable for stainless steel, if necessary
Power top	Deposits	Clean water, power top cleaning product, if necessary. Clean with the grain of the fabric using a soft brush and allow to air dry.
Wind deflector	Deposits	Water, mild soap solution, if necessary[a)]
Decorative parts/ Trim	Deposits	Mild soap solution [a)], a cleaning solution suitable for stainless steel, if necessary
Paint	Paint damage	Repair with touch-up paint
	Spilled fuel	Rinse with water immediately
	Surface rust	Rust remover, then treat with hard wax; for questions, consult an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility.
	Corrosion	Have it removed by an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility.
	Water no longer beads on the surface of clean paint	Treat with hard wax (at least twice per year)
	No shine even though paint has been protected/paint looks poor	Treat with suitable polish; then apply paint protectant if the polish that was used does not contain any protectant
	Deposits such as insects, bird droppings, tree sap, and road salt	Dampen with water immediately and remove with a microfiber cloth
	Grease-based contaminants such as cosmetics or sunblock	Remove immediately with a mild soap solution [a)] and a soft cloth
Carbon components	Deposits	Clean the same way as painted components ⇨ *page 342*
Decorative decals	Deposits	Soft sponge with a mild soap solution[a)]
Audi e-tron charging system	Deposits	Soft, dry towel
Wall mount clip	Deposits	Soft towel with alcohol-free cleaning solution

a) Mild soap solution: maximum two tablespoons of neutral soap in 1 quart (1 liter) of water

Interior cleaning

Component	Situation	Solution
Windows	Deposits	Glass cleaner, then wipe dry
Decorative parts/ Trim	Deposits	Mild soap solution[a)]

Component	Situation	Solution
Plastic parts	Deposits	Damp cloth
	Heavier deposits	Mild soap solution [a], detergent-free plastic cleaning solution, if necessary
Displays/instrument cluster	Deposits	Soft cloth with LCD cleaner
Controls	Deposits	Soft brush, then a soft cloth with a mild soap solution[a]
Safety belts	Deposits	Mild soap solution [a], allow to dry before letting them retract
Textiles artificial leather, Alcantara	Deposits adhering to the surface	Vacuum cleaner
	Water-based deposits such as coffee, tea, blood, etc.	Absorbent cloth and mild soap solution[a]
	Oil-based deposits such as oil, make-up, etc.	Apply a mild soap solution [a], blot away the dissolved oil or dye, treat afterward with water, if necessary
	Certain types of deposits such as ink, nail polish, latex paint, shoe polish, etc.	Special stain remover, blot with absorbent material, treat afterward with mild soap solution, if necessary [a]
Natural leather	Fresh stains	Cotton cloth with a mild soap solution[a]
	Water-based deposits such as coffee, tea, blood, etc.	Fresh stains: absorbent cloth Dried stains: stain remover suitable for leather
	Oil-based deposits such as oil, make-up, etc.	Fresh stains: absorbent cloth and stain remover suitable for leather Dried stains: grease dissolving spray
	Certain types of deposits such as ink, nail polish, latex paint, shoe polish, etc.	Spot remover suitable for leather
	Care	Regularly apply conditioning cream that protects from light and penetrates into the material. Use special colored conditioning cream, if necessary.
Carbon components	Deposits	Clean the same way as plastic components

a) Mild soap solution: maximum two tablespoons of neutral soap in 1 quart (1 liter) of water

WARNING

The windshield must not be treated with water-repelling windshield coating agents. Unfavorable conditions such as wetness, darkness, or low sun can result in increased glare. Wiper blade chatter is also possible.

8V2012721BK

WARNING

- Never immerse the Audi e-tron charging system and connectors in water.
- The Audi e-tron charging system must only be cleaned when the control unit is completely disconnected from the power supply and from the vehicle.

Note

- **Headlights and tail lights**
  - Never clean headlights or tail lights with a dry cloth or sponge.
  - Do not use any cleaning products that contain alcohol, because they could cause cracks to form.
- **Wheels**
  - Never use any paint polish or other abrasive materials.
  - Damage to the protective layer on the rims, such as stone chips or scratches, must be repaired immediately.
- **Camera lenses**
  - Never use warm or hot water to remove snow or ice from the camera lens. This could cause the lens to crack.
  - Never use abrasive cleaning materials or alcohol to clean the camera lens. This could cause scratches and cracks.
- **Power top**
  - Remove bird droppings immediately.
  - Never use gasoline, spot remover, benzene, paint thinner or other solvents to remove.
- **Door windows**
  - Remove snow and ice on windows and exterior mirrors with a plastic scraper. To reduce the risk of scratches, move the scraper only in one direction and not back and forth.
  - Never remove snow or ice from door windows and mirrors using warm or hot water because this could cause cracks to form.
  - To reduce the risk of damage to the rear window defogger, do not apply any stickers on the heating wires on the inside of the window.
- **Decorative parts and trim**
  - Never use chrome care or cleaning products.
- **Paint**
  - To reduce the risk of scratches, the vehicle must be free of dirt and dust before polishing or waxing.
  - To prevent paint damage, do not polish or wax the vehicle in direct sunlight.
  - To reduce the risk of paint damage, do not polish away rust spots.
  - Remove cosmetics and sunscreen immediately because they could damage the paint.
- **Decorative decals**
  - To reduce the risk of damage, do not use any rough powder or abrasive cleaning products.
  - To reduce the risk of damage, do not polish decorative decals that have a matte or printed finish.
  - Due to the risk of damage, do not use an ice scraper to remove snow and ice on windows with decorative decals on them.
- **Displays and instrument cluster**
  - The displays/instrument cluster and the trim surrounding them must not be cleaned with dry cleaning methods because they could be scratched.
  - Make sure that the instrument cluster is switched off and has cooled off before cleaning it.
  - Make sure no fluids enter the spaces between the instrument cluster and the trim, because that could cause damage.
- **Controls**
  - Make sure that no fluids enter the controls, because this could cause damage.
- **Safety belts**
  - Do not remove the safety belts to clean them.
  - Never clean safety belts or their components with chemicals or with corrosive fluids or solvents and never allow sharp objects to come into contact with the safety belts. This could cause damage to the belt webbing.

▶

– If there is damage to the webbing, the connections, the retractors, or the buckles, have them replaced by an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility.

– **Textiles, artificial leather, and Alcantara**
  – Never treat artificial leather or Alcantara with leather care products, solvents, floor polish, shoe polish, spot remover, or similar products.
  – Have a cleaning specialist remove stubborn stains to reduce the risk of damage.
  – Never use steam cleaners, brushes, hard sponges, etc. when cleaning.
  – Do not turn on the seat heating* to dry the seat.
  – Objects with sharp edges, such as zippers or rivets on clothing or belts, can cause damage to the surface.
  – Open hook and loop fasteners, for example on clothing, can damage seat covers. Make sure hook and loop fasteners are closed.

– **Natural leather**
  – Never treat leather with solvents, floor polish, shoe polish, spot remover or similar products.
  – Objects with sharp edges, such as zippers or rivets on clothing or belts, can cause damage to the surface.
  – Never use steam cleaners, brushes, hard sponges, etc. when cleaning.
  – Do not turn on the seat heating* to dry the seat.
  – To help prevent the leather from fading, do not leave the vehicle in direct sunlight for long periods of time. If leaving the vehicle parked for long periods of time, you should cover the leather to protect it from direct sunlight.

– **Wall mount clip**
  – Do not us any abrasive cleaning products or any that contain alcohol, because these increase the risk of discoloration.

Tips

– Insects are easier to remove from paint that has been freshly waxed.
– Regular waxing can prevent rust spots from forming.
– Decorative decals can age due to environmental conditions, which can result in damage such as brittleness. The color may fade if exposed to excessive sunlight.

Taking your vehicle out of service

If you would like to take your vehicle out of service for a long period of time, contact an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility. They will advise you of important measures, such as corrosion protection, service, and storage procedures. Also follow the information about the vehicle battery ⇨ *page 315*.

8V2012721BK

Emergency assistance

Trunk escape latch

Applies to: vehicles with trunk escape latch (Sedan and Cabriolet)

In case of an emergency, the rear lid can be opened from the inside using the trunk escape latch.

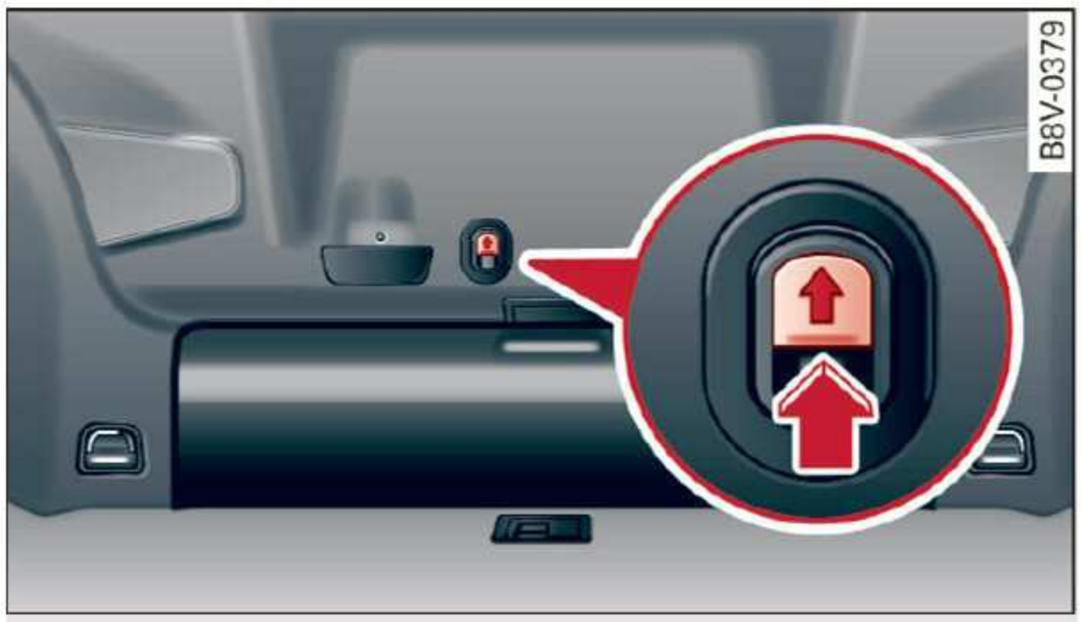


Fig. 261 Luggage compartment: Trunk escape latch

► Push the latch in the direction of the arrow until the lock releases.

The trunk escape latch inside the rear lid is made of fluorescent material to glow in the dark.

WARNING

The trunk escape latch is to be used only in an emergency.

General information

- ► Park the vehicle as far as possible from moving traffic in the event of a breakdown. In the event of a flat tire, park the vehicle on a level surface. If you are on a steep hill, be especially careful.
- ► Set the parking brake.
- ► Place the selector lever in the “P” position.
- ► Switch the emergency flashers on.
- ► Have the passengers exit the vehicle. They should move to a safe place, for example behind a guard rail.

WARNING

Pay attention to the steps above. They are for your protection and the for the safety of other drivers.

Equipment

Vehicle tool kit/tire mobility kit/ compressor

Applies to: vehicles with conventional drive system

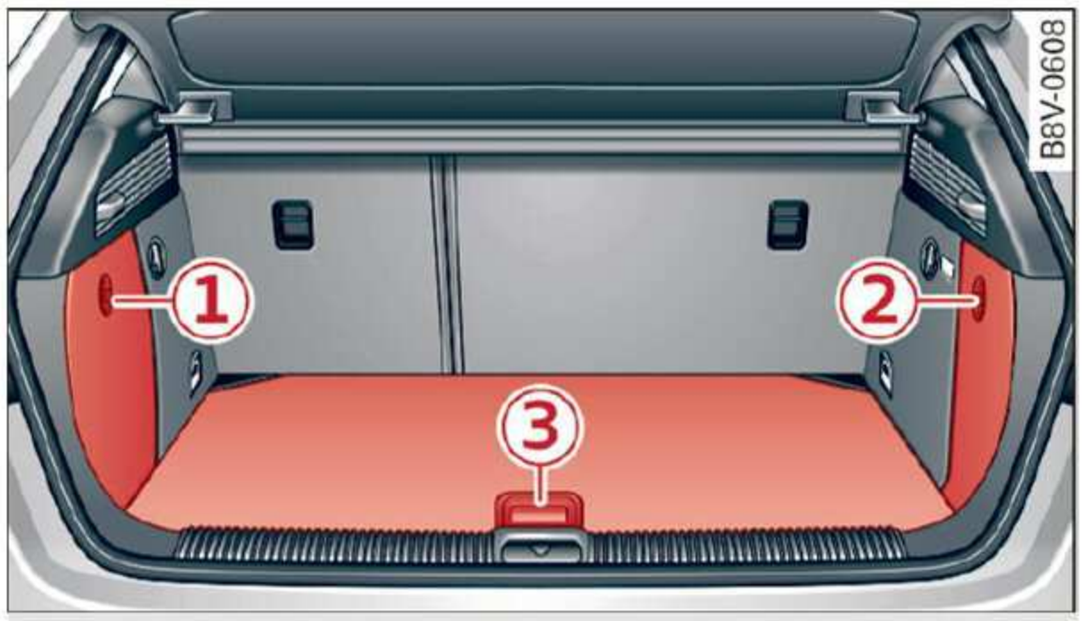


Fig. 262 Luggage compartment: vehicle tool kit, tire mobility kit and vehicle jack* placement

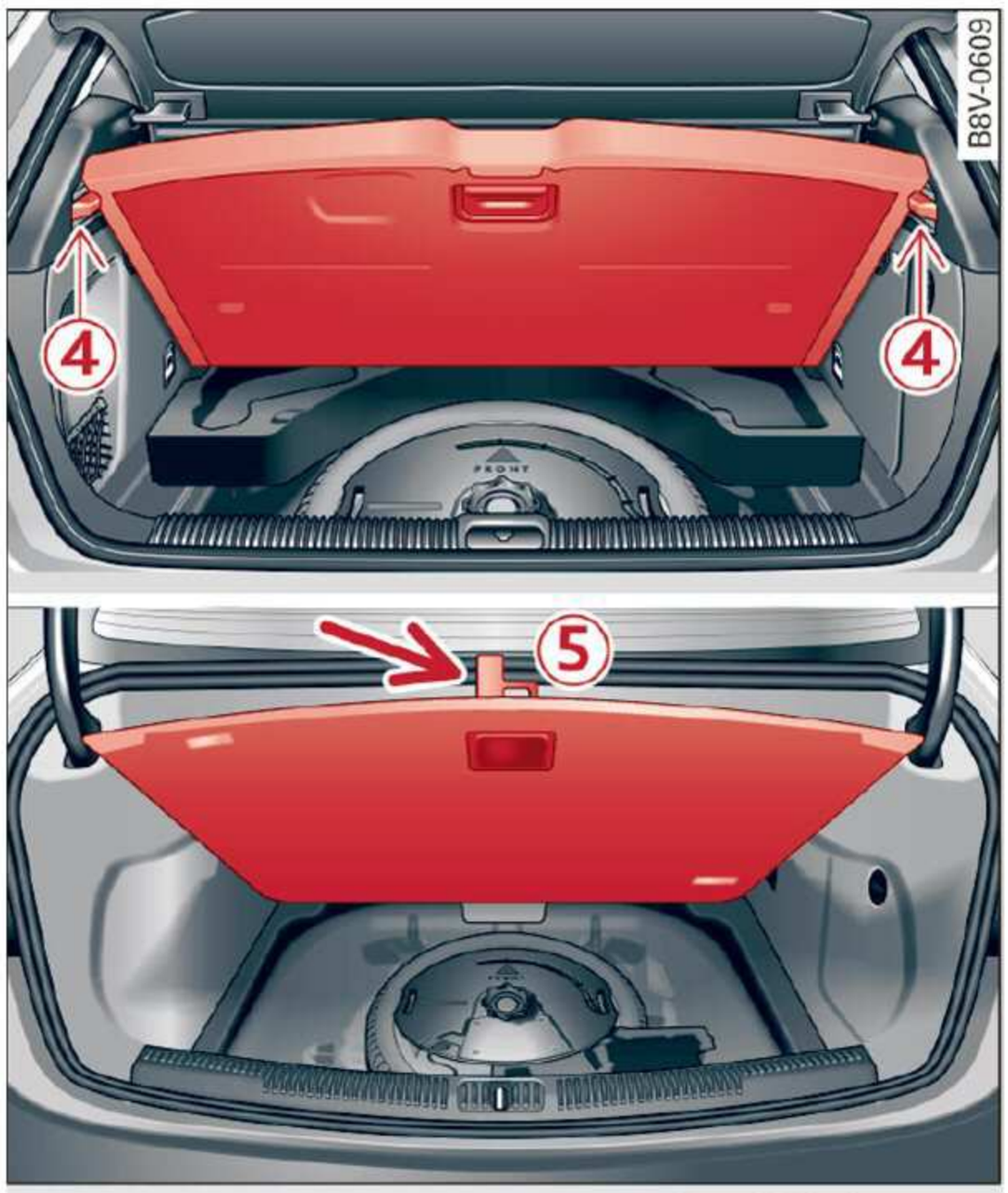


Fig. 263 Luggage compartment: cargo floor folded up (versions 1 and 2)

Vehicle tool kit, cargo floor cover and side panel

Applies to: vehicles with version 1

The vehicle tool kit, tire mobility kit* and the compressor* are located in the luggage compartment, separated in the side panels ①*/②, or under the cargo floor cover ③ ⇨ *fig. 262*.

- ► To open the side panel, turn the lock and remove the cover ①* / ② ⇨ *fig. 262*. ▶

- ▸ Lift the cargo floor using the plastic handle ③ until the cargo floor engages behind the tabs ④ in both side panels ⇨ *fig. 263* (upper image).
- ▸ Fold the cargo floor back before closing the luggage compartment lid.

Vehicle tool kit and cargo floor cover

Applies to: vehicles with version 2

The vehicle tool kit, tire mobility kit* and compressor* are stored in the luggage compartment under the cargo floor cover ③ ⇨ *fig. 262*.

- ▸ Engage the plastic hook ⑤ in the luggage compartment seal ⇨ *fig. 263*.
- ▸ Fold the cargo floor back before closing the luggage compartment lid.

WARNING

Applies to: vehicles with jack

Improper use of the vehicle jack can cause serious personal injuries.

- – Never use the screw driver hex head to tighten wheel bolts, since the bolts cannot attain the necessary tightening torque if you use the hex head, potentially causing an accident.
- – The factory-supplied jack is intended only for your vehicle model. Under no circumstances should it be used to lift heavy vehicles or other loads; you risk injuring yourself.
- – Never start the engine when the vehicle is raised, which could cause an accident.
- – Support the vehicle securely with appropriate stands if work is to be performed underneath the vehicle; otherwise, there is a potential risk for injury.
- – Never use the jack supplied with your Audi on another vehicle, particularly on a heavier one. The jack is only suitable for use on the vehicle it came with.

Tips

The vehicle jack* does not require any maintenance.

Vehicle tool kit/tire mobility kit/ compressor

Applies to: vehicles with plug-in hybrid drive

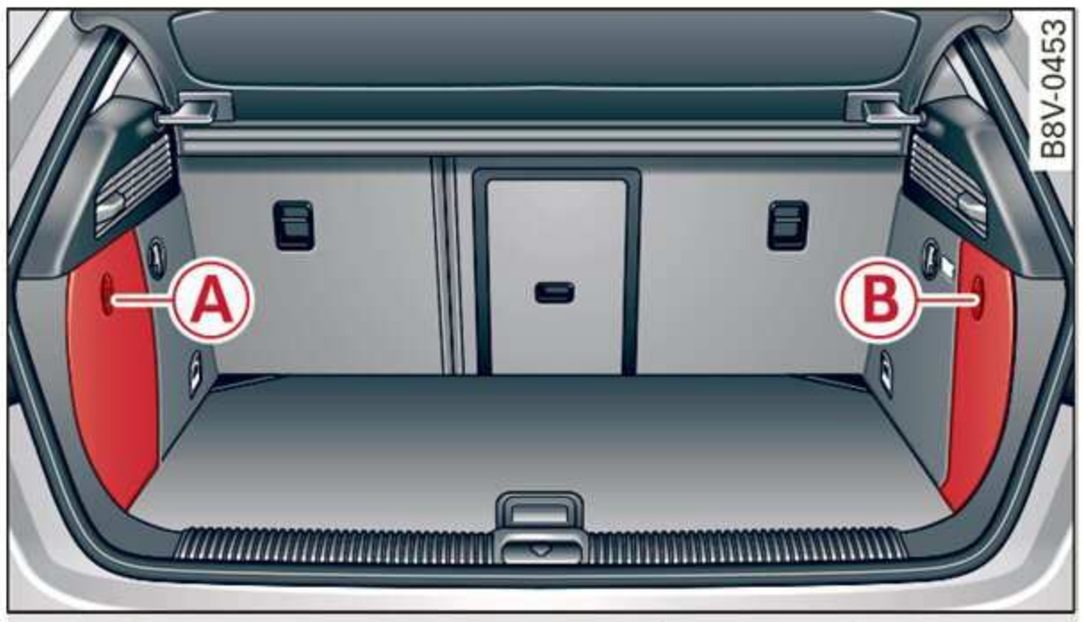


Fig. 264 Luggage compartment: side trim panel

The vehicle tool kit, tire mobility kit and the compressor are located in the side trim panel Ⓐ and Ⓑ in the luggage compartment.

Tips

The vehicle must not be operated without the tire repair set.

Tire mobility kit

Preparation

Applies to: vehicles with tire mobility kit

- ▸ Read and follow the important safety precautions in ⇨ *page 348*.
- ▸ Set the parking brake.
- ▸ Move the selector lever into the "P" position.
- ▸ Check if a repair with the tire mobility kit is possible ⇨ *page 349*.

Using the tire mobility kit

Applies to: vehicles with tire mobility kit

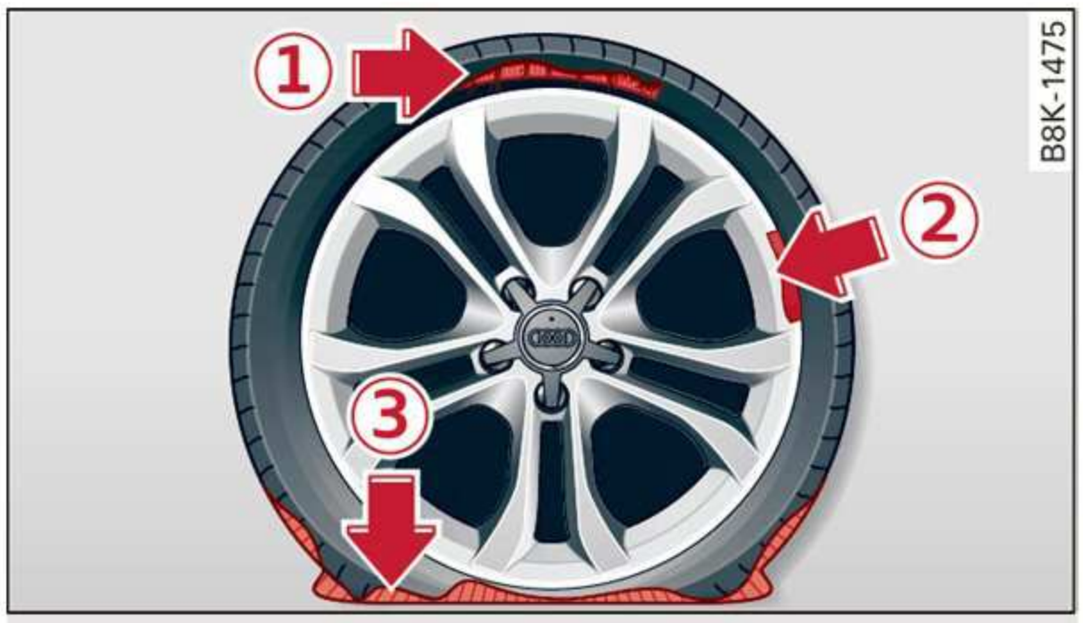


Fig. 265 Tire: tire damage that cannot be repaired

The tire repair is only meant for temporary use. Change the damaged tire as soon as possible ⇨ ⚠.

If the tire is pierced by an object such as a nail, do not remove the object from the tire.

The tire repair set is able to be used at temperatures as low as – 4 °F (– 20 °C).

The tire mobility kit must not be used:

– if the tire has cuts or punctures that are larger than 0.16 in (4 mm) ① ⇨ *fig. 265*
– if the rim is damaged ②
– if you drove with very low tire pressure or without air in the tire ③

In this case, see an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility for assistance.

⚠ WARNING

– Please note that the tire mobility kit cannot be used in all situations, and that it may only be used temporarily.
– The tire sealant must not come in contact with skin, eyes, or clothing.
– If tire sealant comes into contact with your eyes or your skin, thoroughly rinse the affected area immediately with clean water.
– Do not inhale the fumes.
– If you swallow any of the tire sealant, thoroughly rinse your mouth immediately and drink a lot of water. Do not induce vomiting. Seek medical attention immediately.
– Change your clothing immediately if it comes into contact with tire sealant.
– If an allergic reaction occurs, seek medical attention immediately.
– Keep the tire sealant away from children.
– In vehicles with a tire pressure monitoring system*, using tire sealant can result in an incorrect display or a system malfunction. Drive carefully to the nearest authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility.

Tips

– If sealant leaks, allow it to dry in place. You can then peel it off like a sticker.
– Note the expiration date on the sealant bottle. Replace the tire sealant at an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility.
– Radio reception can be interrupted when operating the compressor*.
– Follow the legal regulations that are applicable in the country where you are operating the vehicle.

Repairing tires

Applies to: vehicles with tire mobility kit

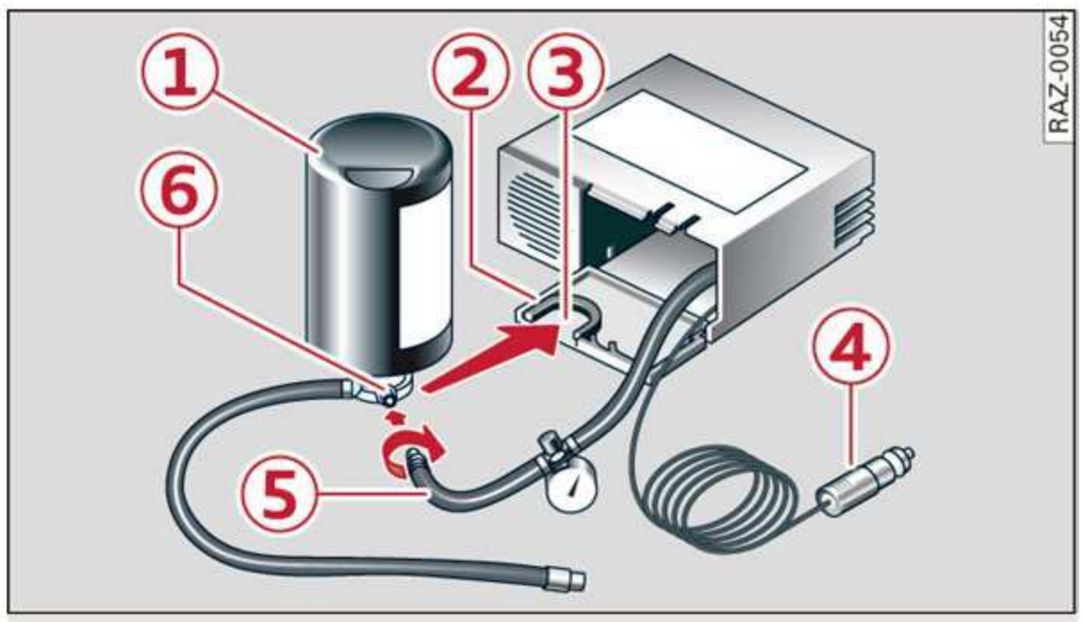


Fig. 266 Components of the tire mobility kit

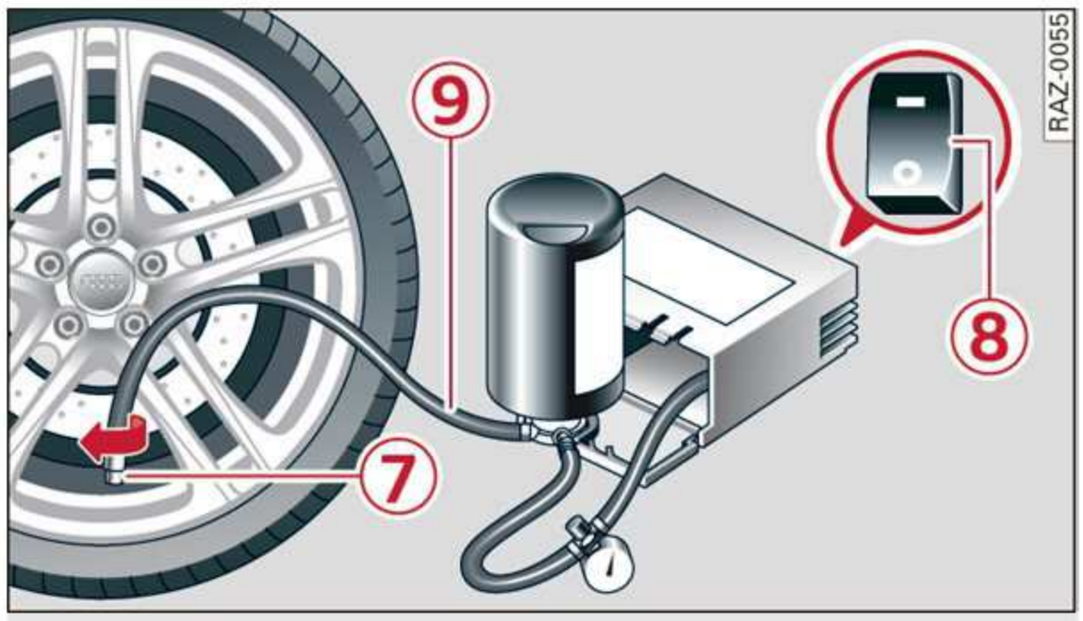


Fig. 267 Tire mobility kit connection

Requirement: the tire mobility kit must be laid out and ready for use ⇨ *page 348, Vehicle tool kit/tire mobility kit/compressor*.

Plug-in hybrid drive*: the placement of the vehicle tool kit varies ⇨ *page 349*. ▶

Setting up the tire mobility kit

- ▸ Open the cover (2) on the compressor[1] ⇨ *fig. 266*.
- ▸ Remove the connector (4) and pressure hose (5) with pressure gauge from the housing.
- ▸ Install the compressor pressure hose (5) onto the flange (6) of tire sealant bottle (1).
- ▸ Insert the sealant bottle with the flange at the bottom into the opening (3) on the compressor cover.
- ▸ Remove the valve cap from the faulty tire.
- ▸ Install the filler hose (9) on the valve (7) ⇨ *fig. 267*.
- ▸ Connect the plug (4) ⇨ *fig. 266* to a socket in the vehicle.
- ▸ Switch the ignition on.

Inflating a tire

- ▸ Move the switch (8) ⇨ *fig. 267* on the compressor into position **I**.
- ▸ Inflate the tire to between 29 psi (200 kPA) and 36 psi (250 kPA) and read the pressure on the gauge.
- ▸ If that tire pressure is not reached, drive your vehicle approximately 33 ft (10 m) forward or backward so that the sealant can be redistributed inside the tire.

WARNING

– Read and follow the manufacturer's safety precautions on the compressor and in the instructions on the bottle of sealant.
– If a tire pressure of 29 psi (200 kPA) cannot reached after inflating for 6 minutes, then the tire is too severely damaged. Do not continue driving.
– If the tire cannot be repaired with the tire sealant, see an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility for assistance.

Tips

Do not operate the compressor for more than six minutes continuously, or it can overheat.

Once the compressor has cooled, you can continue to use it.

Completing

Applies to: vehicles with tire mobility kit

- ▸ Affix the sticker that says “max. 50 mph (max. 80 km/h)” that is provided with the tire mobility kit within the driver's field of vision.
- ▸ Stop the vehicle after driving for about 10 minutes and check the tire pressure.
- ▸ If the tire pressure is lower than 19 psi (130 kPA), then the tire is too severely damaged. Do not continue driving.

WARNING

Pay attention to the following after repairing the tire:
– Do not drive faster than 50 mph (80 km/h).
– Avoid hard acceleration or braking and driving fast around curves.
– The vehicle may become more difficult to control.
– If the tire is too severely damaged, see an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility for assistance.

For the sake of the environment

You can give the used tire sealant bottle to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility for disposal.

Tips

Remember to obtain a new bottle of sealant from an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility after repairing a tire.

1) The compressor may look different. However, the way it is operated is generally the same.

Replacing wheels

Before changing a wheel

Observe the following precautions for your own and your passenger's safety when changing a wheel.

- ▸ After you experience a tire failure, pull the car well away from moving traffic and try to reach **level** ground before you stop ⇨ ⚠.
- ▸ All passengers should **leave the car** and move to a safe location (for instance, behind the guardrail) ⇨ ⚠.
- ▸ Engage the **parking brake** to prevent your vehicle from rolling unintentionally ⇨ ⚠.
- ▸ Move **selector lever to position P** ⇨ ⚠.
- ▸ If you are towing a trailer, unhitch the trailer from your vehicle.
- ▸ Take the **jack*** ⇨ *page 348* and the **spare tire*** ⇨ *page 357* out of the luggage compartment.

⚠ WARNING

You or your passengers could be injured while changing a wheel if you do not follow these safety precautions:

– If you have a flat tire, move a safe distance off the road. Turn off the engine, turn the emergency flashers on and use other warning devices to alert other motorists.
– Make sure that passengers wait in a safe place away from the vehicle and well away from the road and traffic.
– To help prevent the vehicle from moving suddenly and possibly slipping off the jack*, always fully set the parking brake and block the front and back of the wheel diagonally opposite the wheel being changed. When one front wheel is lifted off the ground, placing the Automatic Transmission in P (Park) will *not* prevent the vehicle from moving.
– Before you change a wheel, be sure the ground is level and firm. If necessary, use a sturdy board under the jack*.
– Always store the vehicle tool kit, the jack* and the replaced tire in the luggage compartment ⇨ *page 60*.

Tips

Obey all laws.

Changing a wheel

When you change a wheel, follow the sequence described below step-by-step and in exactly that order.

1. Remove the **decorative wheel cover***. For more details see also ⇨ *page 353, Decorative wheel covers* or ⇨ *page 353, Wheels with wheel bolt caps*.
2. Loosen the **wheel bolts** ⇨ *page 353*.
3. Locate the proper mounting point for the jack* and align the jack* below that point ⇨ *page 354*.
4. **Raise** the car with the jack* ⇨ *page 354*.
5. Remove the **wheel with the flat tire** and then install **the spare** ⇨ *page 355*.
6. Tighten all wheel bolts lightly.
7. **Lower** the vehicle with the jack*.
8. Use the wheel bolt wrench and **firmly** tighten all wheel bolts ⇨ *page 353*.
9. Replace the decorative **wheel cover***.

⚠ WARNING

Always read and follow all WARNINGS and information ⇨ ⚠ *in Raising the vehicle on page 355* and ⇨ *page 356*.

After changing a wheel

A wheel change is not complete without the doing the following.

- ▸ Always store the vehicle tool kit, the jack* and the replaced tire in the luggage compartment ⇨ *page 60*.
- ▸ Check the **tire pressure** on the spare wheel immediately after mounting it.
- ▸ As soon as possible, have the **tightening torques** on all wheel bolts checked with a torque wrench. The correct tightening torque is 90 ft lb (120 Nm).
- ▸ Have the flat tire **replaced** as soon as possible. ▶

Tips

- If you notice that the wheel bolts are corroded and difficult to turn while changing a tire, they should be replaced before you check the tightening torque.
- Drive at reduced speed until you have the tightening torques checked.
- After changing a wheel, the tire pressure in all four tires must be checked/corrected and the tire pressure monitoring indicator must be stored in the MMI ⇨ *page 338*.

Decorative wheel covers

Applies to: vehicles with decorative wheel covers

The decorative wheel covers must be removed first to access the wheel bolts.



Fig. 268 Changing a wheel: Removing the wheel cover

Removing

- Insert the **hook** (provided with the vehicle tool kit) in the hole in the wheel hub cover.
- Pull off the **decorative wheel cover** ⇨ *fig. 268*.

Wheels with wheel bolt caps

Applies to: vehicles with wheel bolts with caps

The caps must be removed first from the wheel bolts before the bolts can be unscrewed.



Fig. 269 Changing a wheel: removing the wheel bolt caps

Removing

- Push the **plastic clip** (provided with the vehicle tool kit) over the wheel bolt cap until the inner retainers on the clip align with the edge of the cover.
- Remove the cap with the **plastic clip** (vehicle tool kit) ⇨ *fig. 269*.

Refitting

- Place the caps over the wheel bolts and push them back on.

The caps are to protect and keep the wheel bolts clean.

Loosening and tightening the wheel bolts

The wheel bolts must be loosened before raising the vehicle.



Fig. 270 Changing a wheel: loosening the wheel bolts

Loosening

- ▸ Slide the **wheel wrench** onto the wheel bolt as far as it will go.
- ▸ Take tight hold of the *end* of the wrench handle and turn the wheel bolts **counter-clockwise** about *one single* turn in the direction of arrow ⇨ *fig. 270*.

Tightening

- ▸ Slide the wheel wrench onto the wheel bolt as far as it will go.
- ▸ Take tight hold of the *end* of the wrench handle and turn each wheel bolt **clockwise** until it is seated.

WARNING

– Do not use force or hurry when changing a wheel - you can cause the vehicle to slip off the jack* and cause serious personal injuries.
– *Do not* loosen the wheel bolts *more than one turn* before you raise the vehicle with the jack*. - You risk an injury.

Tips

– Never use the hexagonal socket in the handle of the screwdriver to loosen or tighten the wheel bolts.
– If a wheel bolt is very tight, you may find it easier to loosen by carefully pushing down on the end of the wheel bolt wrench with *one foot only*. As you do so, hold on to the car to keep your balance and take care not to slip.

Raising the vehicle

Applies to: vehicles with jack

The vehicle must be lifted with the jack first before the wheel can be removed.

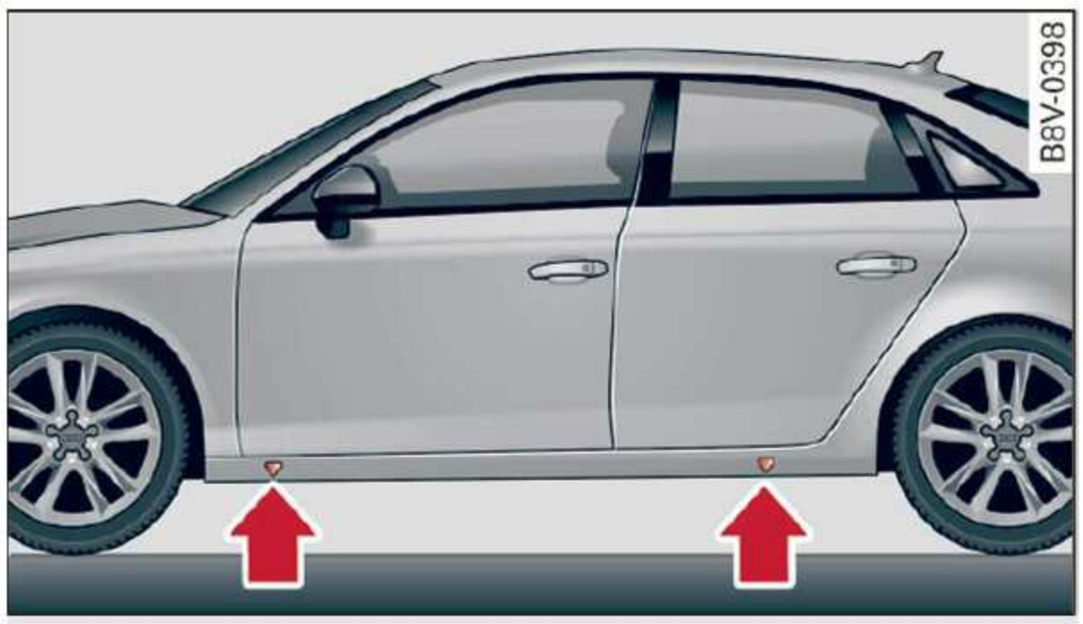


Fig. 271 Sill panels: markings (example)

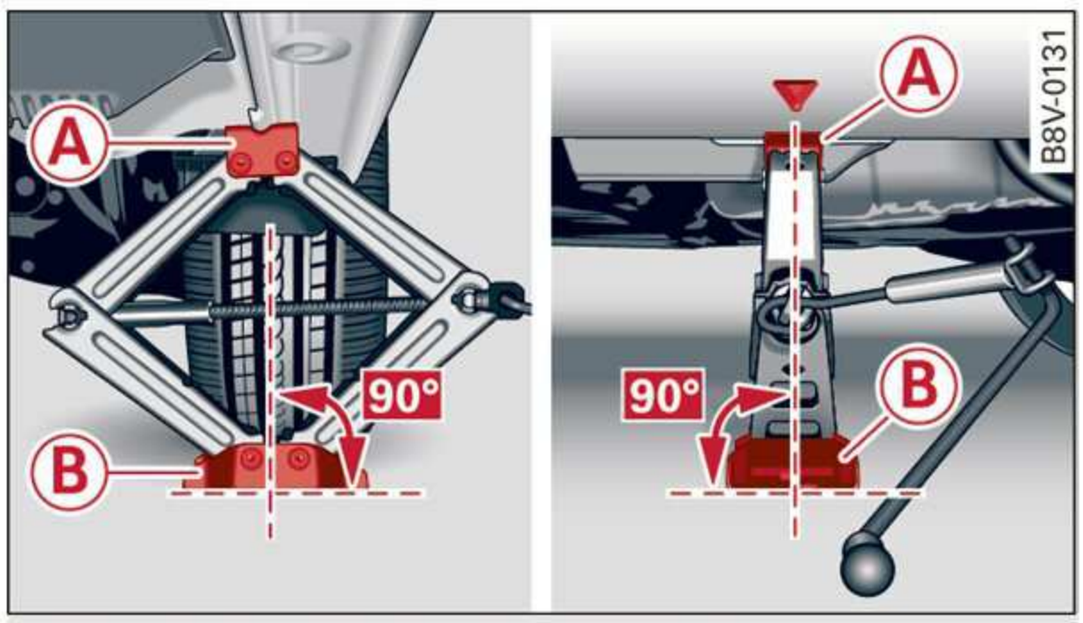


Fig. 272 Sill: positioning the vehicle jack

- ▸ Engage the **parking brake** to prevent your vehicle from rolling unintentionally.
- ▸ Move the **selector lever to position P**.
- ▸ Find the **marking** (imprint) on the sill that is nearest the wheel that will be changed ⇨ *fig. 271*. Behind the marking, there is a **lifting point** on the sill for the vehicle jack.
- ▸ Vehicles with a sill: Note the position of the sill when positioning the vehicle jack ⇨ *fig. 272*.
- ▸ Place the vehicle jack (vehicle tool kit) on a firm surface. Use a flat, stable support if necessary. On a slippery surface such as tile, you should use a non-slip pad (such as a rubber mat) ⇨ ⚠.
- ▸ Turn the **vehicle jack** located under the lifting point on the sill to raise the jack until its arm Ⓐ ⇨ *fig. 272* is located under the designated plastic mount ⇨ ⚠, ⇨ Ⓘ.
- ▸ Align the jack so that its arm Ⓐ ⇨ *fig. 272* engages in the designated lifting point in the door sill and the movable base Ⓑ lies flat on the ground. The base Ⓑ must be *vertical* under the lifting point Ⓐ.

► Wind the jack up further until the flat tire comes off the ground ⇨ ⚠.

Position the vehicle jack **only** under the designated lifting points on the sill ⇨ *fig. 271*. There is exactly *one* location for each wheel. The jack must not be positioned at any other location ⇨ ⚠ ⇨ ⓘ.

An **unstable surface** under the jack can cause the vehicle to slip off the jack. Always provide a firm base for the jack on the ground. If necessary place a sturdy board or similar support under the jack. On **hard, slippery surfaces** (such as tiles) use a rubber mat or similar to prevent the jack from slipping ⇨ ⚠.

⚠ WARNING

– You or your passengers could be injured while changing a wheel if you do not follow these safety precautions:
  – Position the vehicle jack only at the designated lifting points and align the jack. Otherwise, the vehicle jack could slip and cause an injury if it does not have sufficient hold on the vehicle.
  – A soft or unstable surface under the jack may cause the vehicle to slip off the jack. Always provide a firm base for the jack on the ground. If necessary, use a sturdy board under the jack.
  – On hard, slippery surface (such as tiles) use a rubber mat or similar to prevent the jack from slipping.
  – Only raise your vehicle with the vehicle jack provided by the factory. If you use a vehicle jack for another vehicle, your vehicle can slide and cause injury.
  – Changes in load can affect the height of the vehicle.
  – Never start the engine when the vehicle is raised, which could cause an accident.
  – Support the vehicle securely with appropriate stands if work is to be performed underneath the vehicle; otherwise, there is a potential risk for injury.
– To help prevent injury to yourself and your passengers:
  – Do not raise the vehicle until you are sure the jack is securely engaged.
  – Passengers must not remain in the vehicle when it is jacked up.
  – Make sure that passengers wait in a safe place away from the vehicle and well away from the road and traffic.
  – Make sure jack position is correct, adjust as necessary and then continue to raise the jack.

ⓘ Note

Do not lift the vehicle by the sill. Position the vehicle jack only at the designated lifting points on the sill. Otherwise, your vehicle will be damaged.

Taking the wheel off/installing the spare

Follow these instructions step-by-step for changing the wheel.

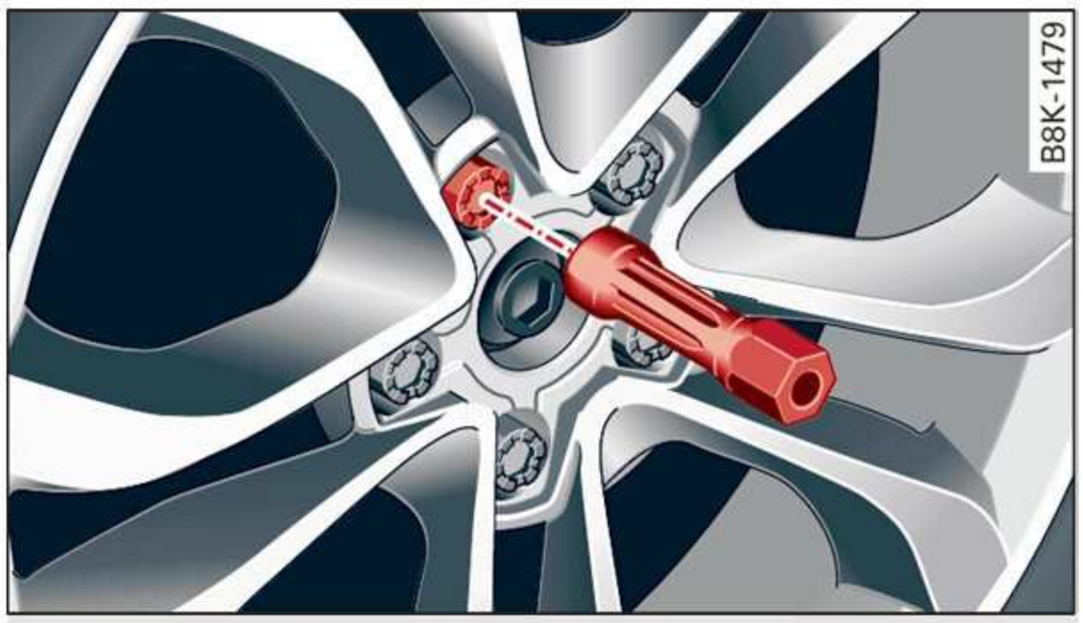


Fig. 273 Changing a wheel: using the screwdriver handle (with the blade removed) to turn the bolts



Fig. 274 Changing a wheel: alignment pin inside the top hole

After you have loosened all wheel bolts and raised the vehicle off the ground, remove and replace the wheel as follows: ►

Removing the wheel

- ▸ Use the **hexagonal socket in the screwdriver handle** to completely remove the topmost wheel bolt and set it aside on a *clean* surface ⇨ *fig. 273*.
- ▸ Screw the threaded end of the **alignment pin** from the tool kit hand-tight into the empty bolt hole ⇨ *fig. 274*.
- ▸ Then remove the other wheel bolts as described above.
- ▸ Take off the wheel leaving the alignment pin in the bolt hole ⇨ (!).

Putting on the compact spare wheel

- ▸ Lift the spare wheel and carefully slide it over the alignment pin to guide it in place ⇨ (!).
- ▸ Use the hexagonal socket in the screwdriver handle to screw in and tighten all wheel bolts *slightly*.
- ▸ Remove the alignment pin and insert and tighten the remaining wheel bolt slightly like the rest.
- ▸ Turn the jack handle counter-clockwise to lower the vehicle until the jack* is fully released.
- ▸ Use the wheel bolt wrench to tighten all wheel bolts firmly ⇨ *page 353*. Tighten them *crosswise*, from one bolt to the (approximately) opposite one, to keep the wheel centered.

(!) Note

When removing or installing the wheel, the rim could hit the brake rotor and damage the rotor. Work carefully and have a second person help you.

(i) Tips

Never use the hexagonal socket in the handle of the screwdriver to loosen or tighten the wheel bolts.

– Pull the reversible blade from the screwdriver before you use the hexagonal socket in the handle to turn the wheel bolts.
– When mounting tires with **unidirectional tread design** make sure the tread pattern is pointed the right way ⇨ *page 356*.
– The wheel bolts should be clean and easy to turn. Check for dirt and corrosion on the mating surfaces of both the wheel and the hub. Remove all dirt from these surfaces before remounting the wheel.

Tires with unidirectional tread design

Tires with unidirectional tread design must be mounted with their tread pattern pointed in the right direction.

Using a spare tire with a tread pattern intended for use in a specific direction

When using a spare tire with a tread pattern intended for use in a specific direction, please note the following:

– The direction of rotation is marked by an arrow on the side of the tire.
– If the spare tire has to be installed in the incorrect direction, use the spare tire only temporarily since the tire will not be able to achieve its optimum performance characteristics with regard to aquaplaning, noise and wear.
– We recommend that you pay particular attention to this fact during wet weather and that you adjust your speed to match road conditions.
– Replace the flat tire with a new one and have it installed on your vehicle as soon as possible to restore the handling advantages of a unidirectional tire.

Notes on wheel changing

Please read the information ⇨ *page 326* if you are going to use a spare tire which is different from the tires on your vehicle.

After you change a tire:

– **Check the tire pressure on the spare immediately after installation.**
– **Have the wheel bolt tightening torque checked with a torque wrench as soon as possible by your authorized Audi dealer or a qualified service station.**
– **With steel and alloy wheel rims, the wheel bolts are correctly tightened at a torque of 90 ft lbs (120 Nm).** ▸

– If you notice that the wheel bolts are corroded and difficult to turn while changing a tire, they should be replaced before you check the tightening torque.
– Replace the flat tire with a new one and have it installed on your vehicle as soon as possible. Remount the wheel cover.

Until then, drive with extra care and at reduced speeds.

WARNING

– If you are going to equip your vehicle with tires or rims which differ from those which were factory installed, then be sure to read the information ⇨ *page 326*.
– Always make sure the damaged wheel or even a flat tire and the jack* and tool kit are properly secured in the luggage compartment and are not loose in the passenger compartment.
– In an accident or sudden maneuver they could fly forward, injuring anyone in the vehicle.
– Always store damaged wheel, jack* and tools securely in the luggage compartment. Otherwise, in an accident or sudden maneuver they could fly forward, causing injury to passengers in the vehicle.

Spare tire

General information

Applies to: vehicles with space-saving spare tire (compact spare tire)

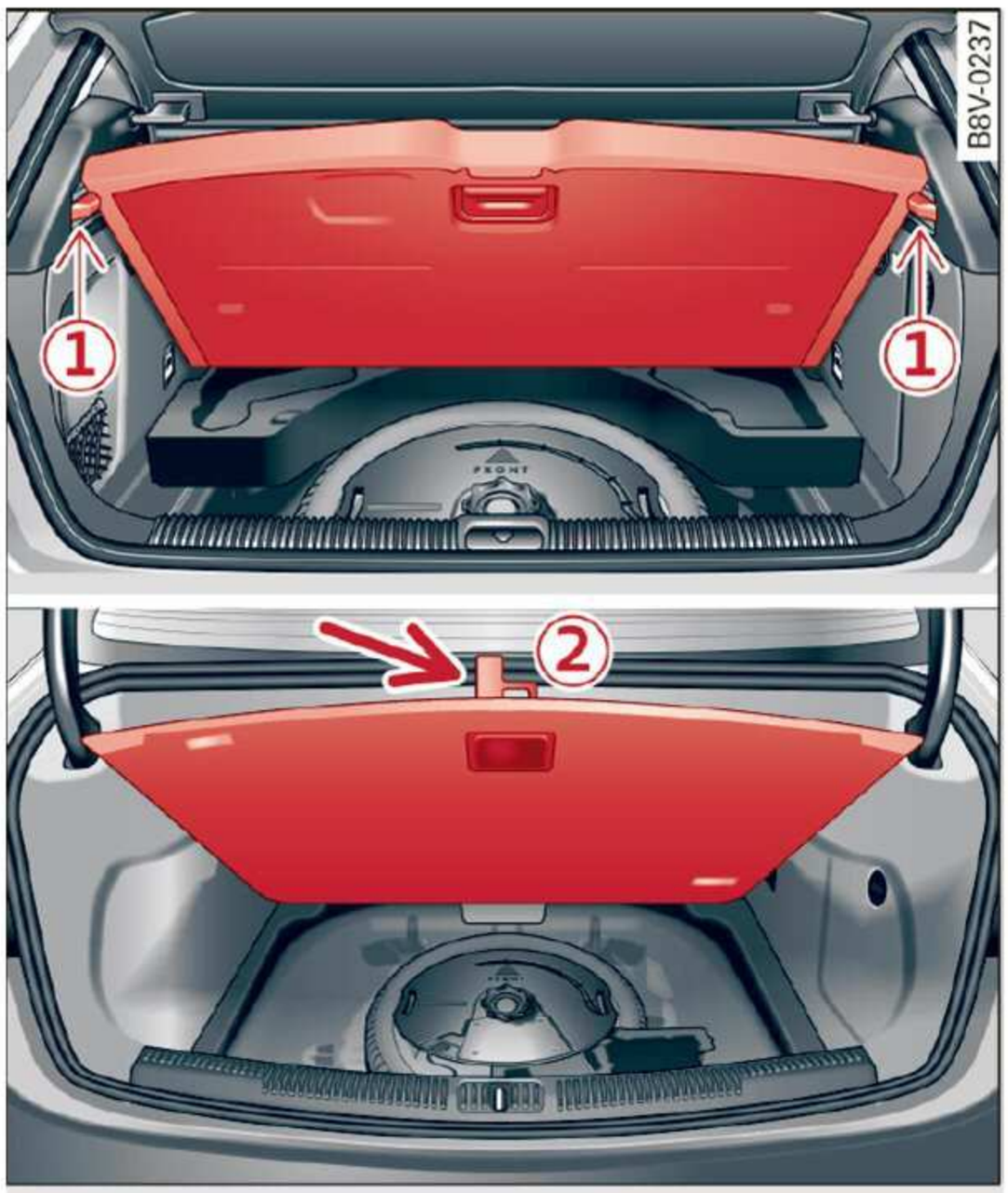


Fig. 275 Luggage compartment: cargo floor folded up (versions 1 and 2)

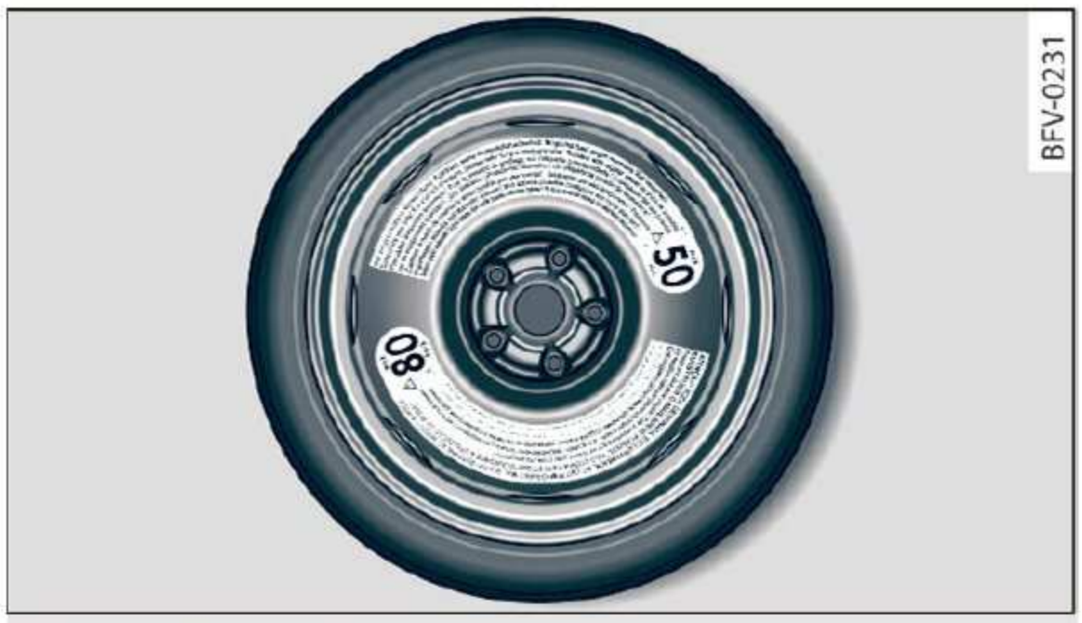


Fig. 276 Compact spare tire

The spare tire ⇨ *fig. 276* is intended for short-term use only. Have the damaged tire checked and replaced if necessary by an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility as soon as possible.

There are some restrictions on the use of the compact spare tire. The compact spare tire has been designed specifically for your type of vehicle. Do not replace it with the spare tire from another type of vehicle. ▶

Removing the spare tire

Applies to: vehicles with version 1

- ► Lift up the cargo floor with the plastic handle until the cargo floor is clamped behind the tabs on both side panels (1) ⇨ *fig. 275*.
- ► Applies to: vehicles with subwoofer in the spare wheel well: Remove the subwoofer*. Check which subwoofer is installed based on the connector: ⇨ *page 358*.
- ► Turn the handwheel counter-clockwise and remove it.
- ► Remove the spare tire.

Removing the spare tire

Applies to: vehicles with version 2

- ► Lift the cargo floor up using the plastic handle.
- ► Hang the plastic hook on the luggage compartment weather strip (2) ⇨ *fig. 275*.
- ► Turn the handwheel counter-clockwise and remove it.
- ► Remove the spare tire.

Snow chains

For technical reasons, the use of snow chains on the compact spare tire is not permitted.

If you have to drive with snow chains and a front tire fails, mount the spare tire in place of a rear tire. Install the snow chains on the rear tire that you removed, and install that in place of the front tire that failed.

⚠ WARNING

- – After installing a spare tire, the tire pressure must be checked as soon as possible. The tire pressure is available on ⇨ *page 330, fig. 260*
- – Do not drive faster than 50 mph (80 km/h) with a compact spare tire. Driving faster than that increases the risk of an accident.
- – To reduce the risk of an accident, avoid hard acceleration or braking and driving fast around curves with the compact spare tire.
- – To reduce the risk of an accident, never drive with more than one compact spare tire.
- – Normal summer or winter tires must not be mounted on the compact spare wheel rim.

Removing the subwoofer

Applies to: vehicles with subwoofer in the spare wheel well

The subwoofer must be removed before the spare wheel can be removed.*

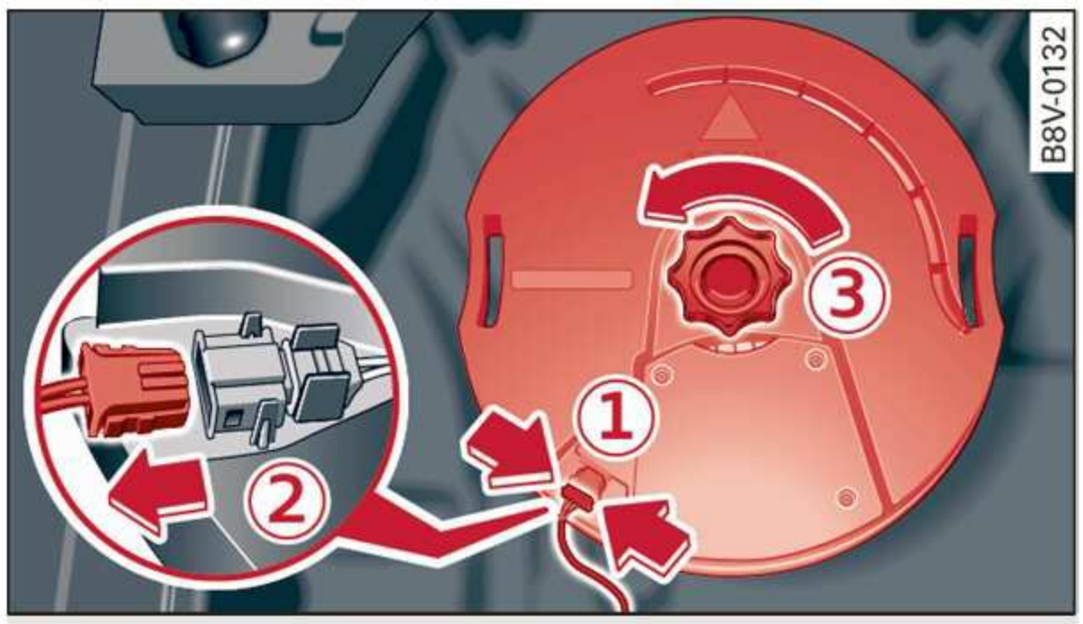


Fig. 277 Spare tire well: subwoofer (version 1)

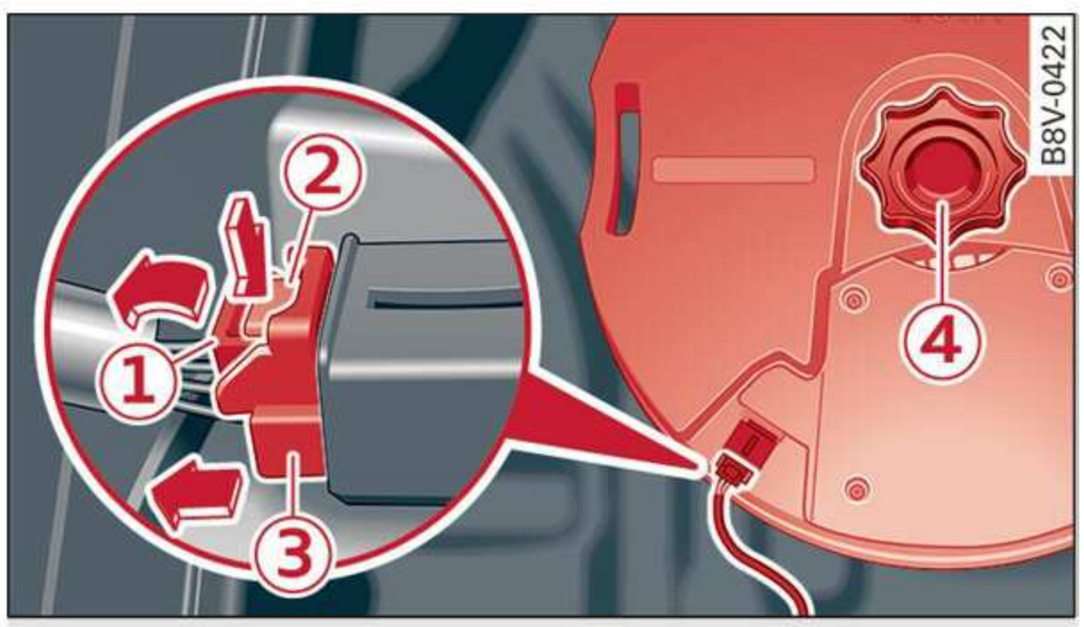


Fig. 278 Spare tire well: subwoofer (version 2)

Removing the subwoofer (version 1)

- ► Lift up the cargo floor ⇨ *page 357, fig. 275*.
- ► Press the connector tabs (1) ⇨ *fig. 277* together.
- ► Remove the connector (2) and set the disconnected cable aside.
- ► Remove the bolt (3).
- ► Carefully remove the subwoofer.

Removing the subwoofer (version 2)

- ► Lift up the cargo floor ⇨ *page 357, fig. 275*.
- ► Pull the lock (1) ⇨ *fig. 278* toward the cable.
- ► Press the locking tab (2) down.
- ► Remove the connector (3) and set the removed cable aside.
- ► Remove the bolt (4).
- ► Carefully remove the subwoofer.

Installing the subwoofer

- ► Carefully place the subwoofer in the rim well. The word “FRONT” on the subwoofer must face forward. ▶

- ▸ Insert the connector that was removed.
- ▸ Applies to: vehicles with subwoofer (version 2): Slide the lock (1) back toward the subwoofer.
- ▸ Secure the subwoofer with the bolt.
- ▸ Fold the cargo floor cover back into place.

Tips

The subwoofer can also be mounted when the spare tire is not in the spare wheel well.

Fuses and bulbs

Fuses

Changing fuses

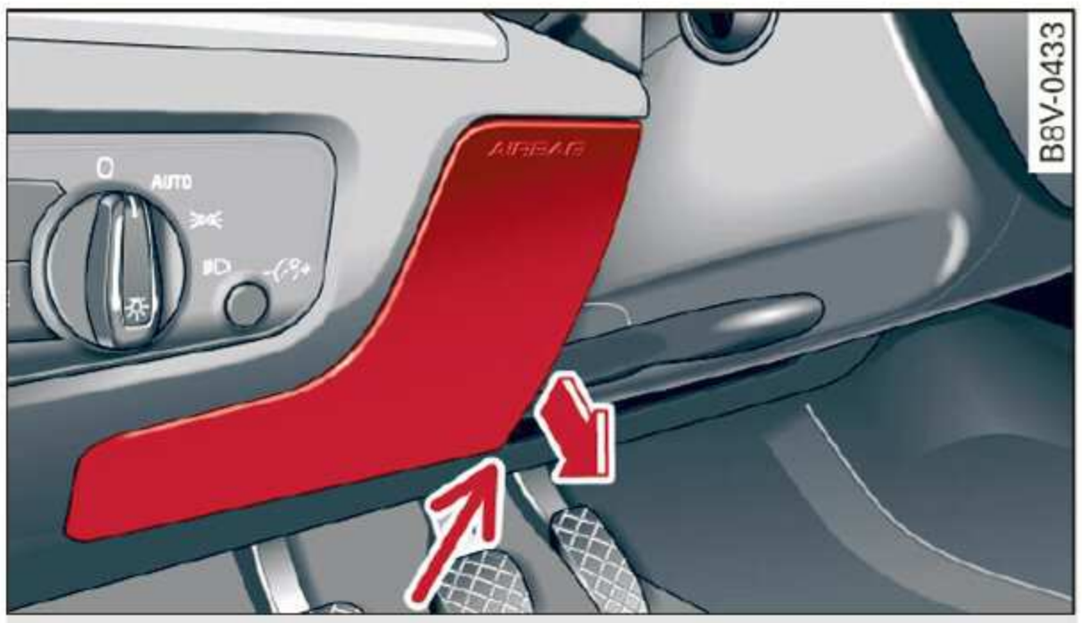


Fig. 279 Steering column area: cover

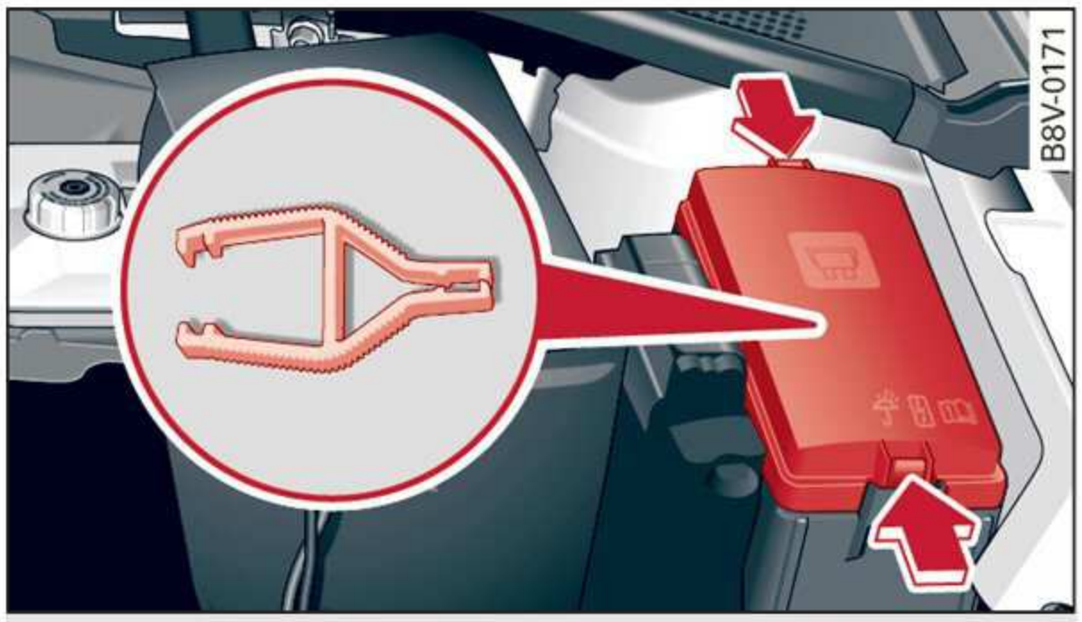


Fig. 280 Left side of the engine compartment: fuse cover

A fuse that has blown will have metal strips that have burned through.

The fuses are located behind a cover in the steering column area ⇨ *fig. 279* or under a cover on the left side of the engine compartment ⇨ *fig. 280*.

- ▸ Switch the ignition and all electrical equipment off.
- ▸ Check the following table to see which fuse belongs to the equipment ⇨ *page 361*.
- ▸ Remove the cover.
- ▸ Remove the plastic clip from the fuse panel cover in the engine compartment ⇨ *fig. 280*.
- ▸ Remove the fuse using the plastic clamp.
- ▸ Replace the blown fuse with a fuse that has the same amp rating.
- ▸ Reinsert the cover.

Fuse color identification

Color	Current rating in amps
Black	1
Purple	3
Light brown	5
Brown	7.5
Red	10
Blue	15
Yellow	20
White or transparent	25
Green	30
Orange	40

WARNING

Do not repair fuses and never replace a blown fuse with one that has a higher amp rating. This can cause damage to the electrical system and increases the risk of fire.

Note

If a new fuse burns out again shortly after you have installed it, have the electrical system checked as soon as possible by an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility.

Tips

- – The following table does not list fuse locations that are not used.
- – Some of the equipment listed in the following tables applies only to certain model versions or certain optional equipment.

Fuse assignment - Interior

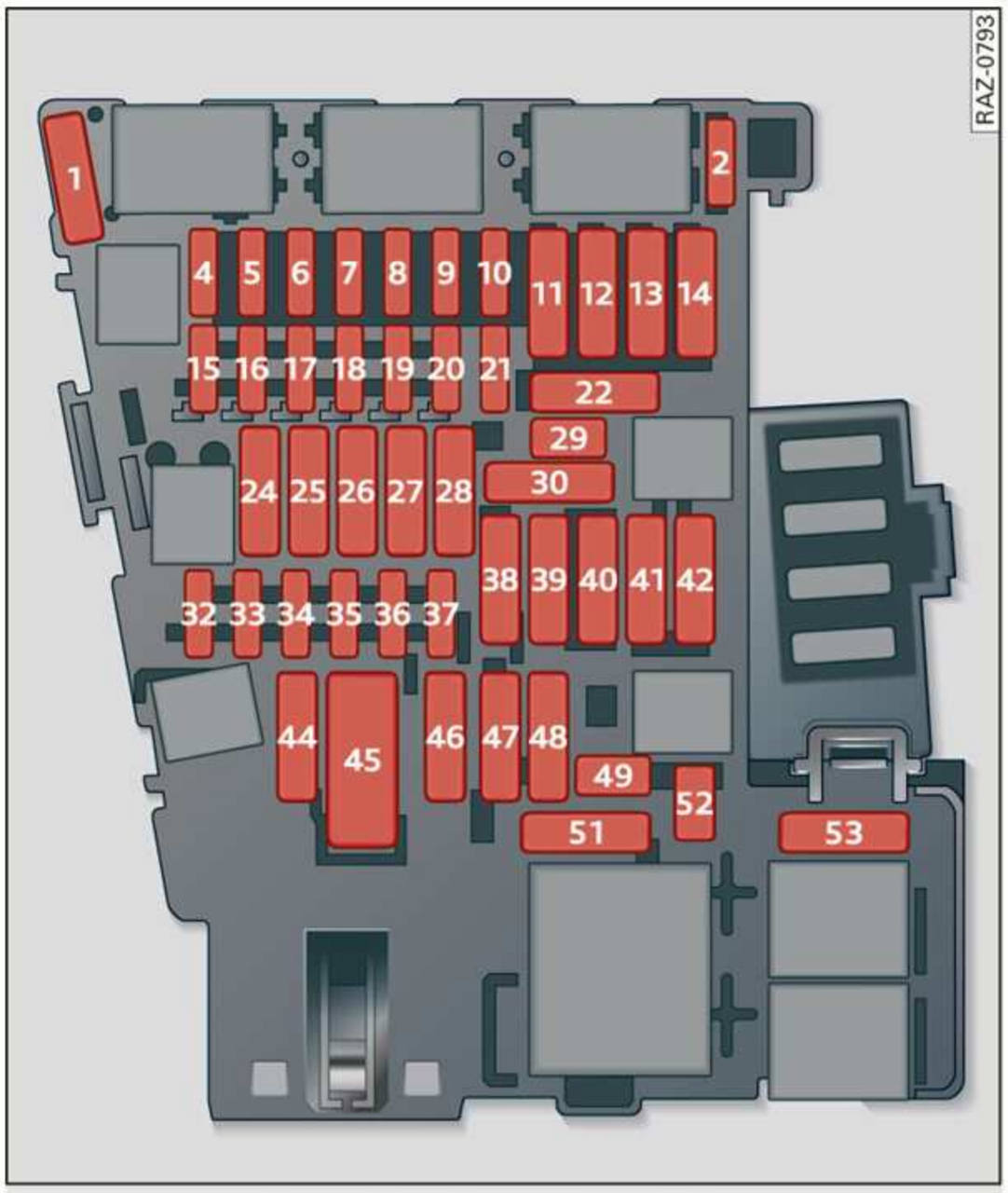


Fig. 281 Vehicle interior: fuse assignment

No.	Equipment
F1	Engine components, AdBlue
F2	Seat adjustment
F4	Infotainment control panel, Infotainment components
F5	Gateway
F6	Selector lever (automatic transmission), steering lock
F7	Air conditioning/heating controls, auxiliary heating, rear window defogger, tire pressure monitor
F8	Electromechanical parking brake switch, light switch, rain/light sensor, anti-theft alarm system, diagnostic connector, roof module, emergency call system, headlight range control
F9	Steering column electronics
F10	Infotainment system display
F11	Left vehicle electrical system control module, airbag
F12	Infotainment components
F13	Driver's side safety belt tensioner, airbag
F14	Heating and A/C system blower control
F15	Electronic steering column lock, convenience access control module
F16	TV tuner, telephone antenna
F17	Instrument cluster
F18	Rearview camera
F19	Vehicle positioning
F20	Engine components, AdBlue, charging system
F21	Steering column, steering wheel heating switch module
F24	Right vehicle electrical system control module
F25	Driver's side front/rear power windows
F26	Seat heating
F27	Vehicle electrical system control module
F28	Power top control module
F29	Vehicle electrical system control module, interior lighting
F30	Diagnostic connector
F32	Front camera, parking system, ACC sensor, lane change assist
F33	Airbag
F34	Hold assist button, interior sound, back-up light switch, temperature sensor, neck heating and sockets, power top operation button
F35	Air quality sensor, automatic dimming rearview mirror, diagnostic connector, center console power supply
F36	Right headlight (LED, Matrix LED)
F37	Left headlight (LED, Matrix LED)
F38	High-voltage battery
F39	Passenger's side front/rear power windows
F40	Cigarette lighter, sockets
F41	Passenger's side safety belt tensioner
F42	Central locking area
F44	All wheel drive
F45	Driver's side seat adjustment
F47	Rear window wiper
F48	Outer sound actuator

No.	Equipment
F49	Clutch sensor, engine start, high-voltage battery, power electronics
F52	Level control system control module
F53	Rear window defogger

The power seats* are protected via **circuit breakers** that automatically switch on after a few seconds after the overload has been reduced.

Fuse assignment - Engine compartment

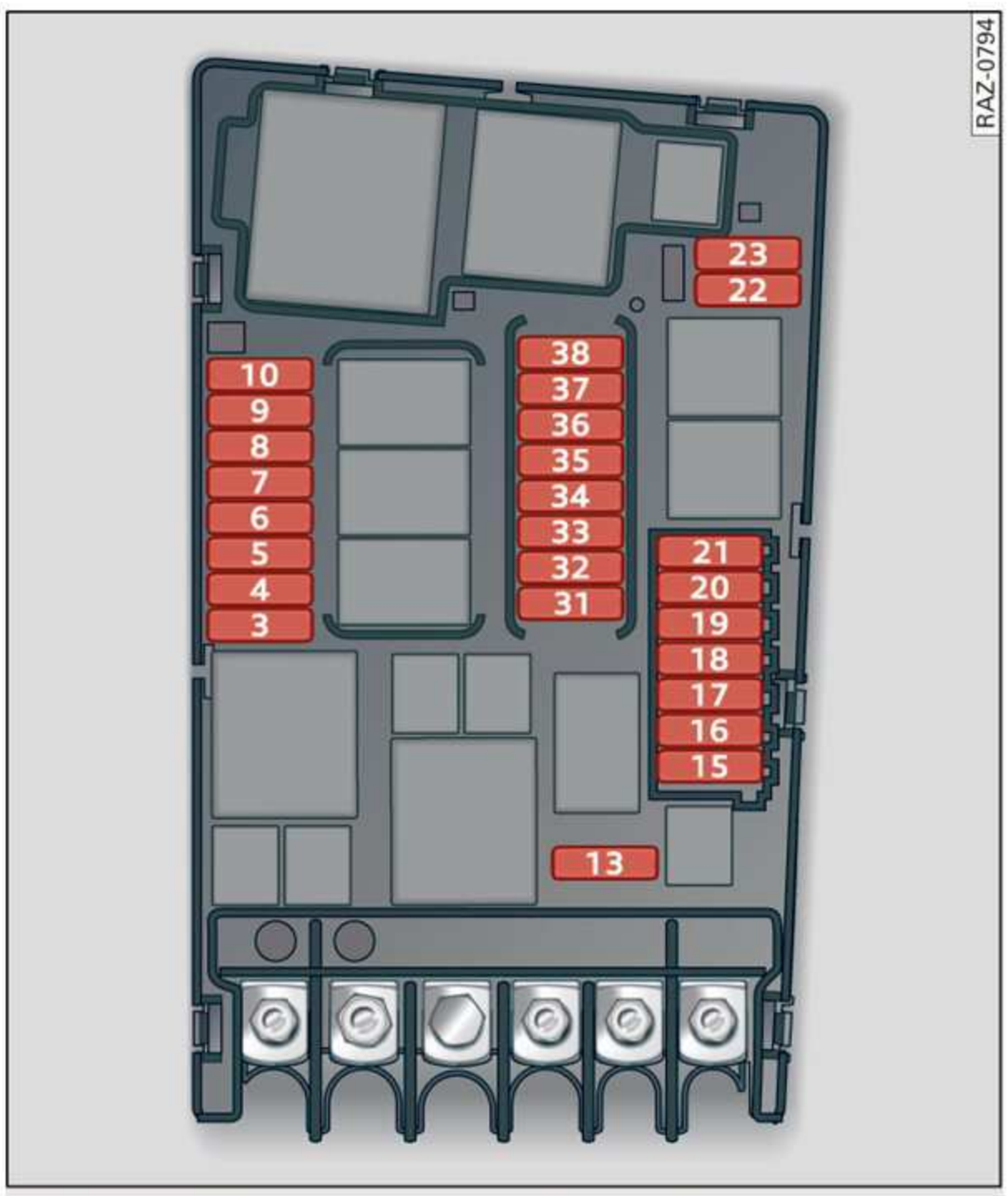


Fig. 282 Engine compartment: fuse assignment

No.	Equipment
F3	Engine control module
F4	Engine components, engine cooling, auxiliary heater, exhaust treatment
F5	Engine components, fuel tank system (diesel), CNG cut-off valve
F6	Brake light switch
F7	Engine components, water pumps, tank system (gasoline engine), electrification
F8	Heat oxygen sensor
F9	Engine components, exhaust door, glow time control module
F10	Fuel control module, fuel pump

No.	Equipment
F13	Transmission fluid pump
F15	Horn
F16	Power and control electronics, engine components, ignition coil, options module
F17	Electronic Stabilization Control (ESC), engine control module
F18	Terminal 30 (voltage reference), battery monitoring
F19	Windshield wipers
F20	Anti-theft alarm system
F21	Automatic transmission
F22	Terminal 50 diagnosis, engine control module
F23	Engine start
F31	Vacuum pump, water pump, high pressure pump, fuel injectors
F33	Brake pressure reservoir, recuperation
F34	Brake booster
F35	Climate control system
F36	Left front headlamp
F37	Parking heater
F38	Right front headlamp

Bulbs

Replacing light bulbs

For your safety, we recommend that you have your authorized Audi dealer replace any bulbs for you.

It is becoming increasingly more and more difficult to replace vehicle light bulbs since in many cases, other parts of the car must first be removed before you are able to get to the bulb. This applies especially to the light bulbs in the front of your car which you can only reach through the engine compartment.

Sheet metal and bulb holders can have sharp edges that can cause serious cuts, parts must be correctly taken apart and then properly put back together to help prevent breakage of parts and ▶

long term damage from water that can enter housings that have not been properly resealed.

For your safety, we recommend that you have your authorized Audi dealer replace any bulbs for you, since your dealer has the proper tools, the correct bulbs and the expertise.

Gas discharge lamps (Xenon lights)

Due to the high electrical voltage, have the bulbs replaced by a qualified technician. Headlights with Xenon light are identified by the high voltage sticker.

LED headlights*

LED headlights require no maintenance. Please contact your authorized Audi dealer if a bulb needs to be replaced.

WARNING

Changing Xenon lamps without the necessary equipment can cause serious personal injury.

- Bulbs are pressurized and can explode when being changed. Potential risk of injury!
- On vehicles equipped with gas discharge bulbs (Xenon light) life-threatening injuries can result from improper handling of the high-voltage portions of such lamps!
- Only your authorized Audi dealer or qualified workshop should change the bulbs in gas discharge lamps. There are parts with sharp edges on the openings and on the bulb holders that can cause serious cuts. If you are uncertain about what to do, have the work performed by an authorized Audi dealer or qualified workshop. Serious personal injury may result from improperly performed work.

Tips

- If you still prefer to replace the light bulbs yourself, be aware that the engine compartment is a hazardous area to work in ⇨ ⚠ *in General information on page 304*.
- It is best to ask your authorized Audi dealer whenever you want to change a bulb.

Emergency situations

General

This chapter is intended for trained emergency crews and working personnel who have the necessary tools and equipment to perform these operations.

Starting by pushing or towing

Note

Vehicles with an automatic transmission cannot be started by pushing or towing.

Jump starting

Preparation

If needed, the engine can be jump started by another vehicle battery.

Applies to: vehicles with plug-in hybrid drive: The connection points for the jump start cable are different ⇨ *page 365*.

If the engine does not start because the vehicle battery is drained, you can jump start your vehicle using another vehicle. Jump start cables are needed to do this.

Both vehicle batteries must have 12 V nominal voltage. The voltage capacity (Ah) of the vehicle battery that is giving power must not be less than the capacity of the drained vehicle battery.

Jump start cable

Only use a jump start cable with a large enough diameter. Note the manufacturer's specifications.

Only use a jump start cable with insulated terminal clamps.

Positive cable - usually red.

Negative cable - usually black.

WARNING

– A drained battery can freeze at temperatures around 32 °F (0 °C). If the vehicle battery is frozen, it must be thawed before connecting the jump start cables. If it is not, the risk of an explosion and chemical burns increases. After jump starting the vehicle, drive to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility immediately to have the vehicle battery checked.
– Read the warnings when working in the engine compartment ⇨ *page 304*.
– Handling the jump start cables incorrectly may cause the vehicle battery to explode and lead to serious injuries.
– Applies to: vehicles with plug-in hybrid drive: You must **not** give a jump start with your vehicle. This could cause significant damage to the electrical system in your vehicle ⇨ *page 365*.
– Applies to: vehicles with the battery in the engine compartment: To reduce the risk of chemical burns, do not bend over the vehicle battery.

Note

Jump start cables can cause considerable damage to the vehicle electrical system if they are connected incorrectly.

Tips

– There must be no contact between the vehicles, or else voltage could flow when connecting the positive terminal and drain the vehicle battery of the vehicle providing the jump start.
– The drained vehicle battery must be connected correctly to the electrical system.
– Switch off electrical equipment that is not needed.

Jump start

Applies to: vehicles with plug-in hybrid drive

The term "vehicle battery" refers to the 12 volt battery in your vehicle.

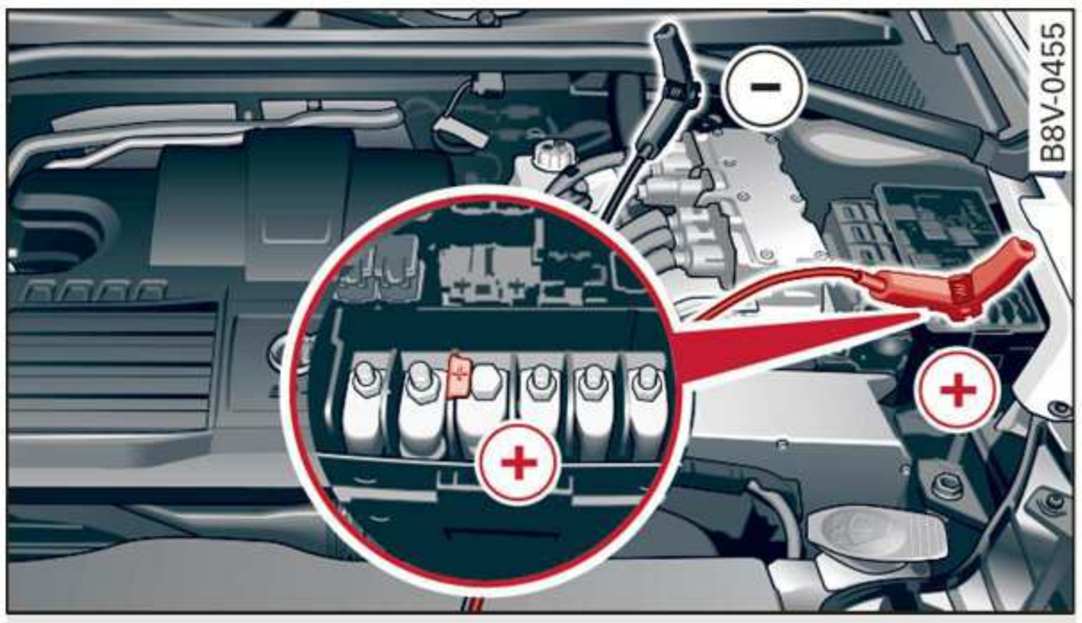


Fig. 283 Engine compartment: connectors for a charger and jump start cables

The vehicle is equipped with one vehicle battery and one high-voltage battery.

If the vehicle battery is drained, it can be charged with a charger or you can jump start the vehicle using another vehicle's battery in the same way as a conventional vehicle.

Read the information about charging the vehicle battery ⇨ *page 316* and for jump starting the vehicle ⇨ *page 364*.

- ▸ Open the hood ⇨ *page 305*.
- ▸ Remove the fuse box cover (8) to access the positive terminal (+) ⇨ *page 307*.
- ▸ Clamp the terminal clamps from the charging device or jump start cable to the positive terminal (+) and to the body ground point (-).

! Note

You must **not** give a jump start with your vehicle. This could cause significant damage to the electrical system in your vehicle.

A3 models: jump starting

Applies to: vehicles with conventional drive system

Both jump start cables must be connected in the correct order.

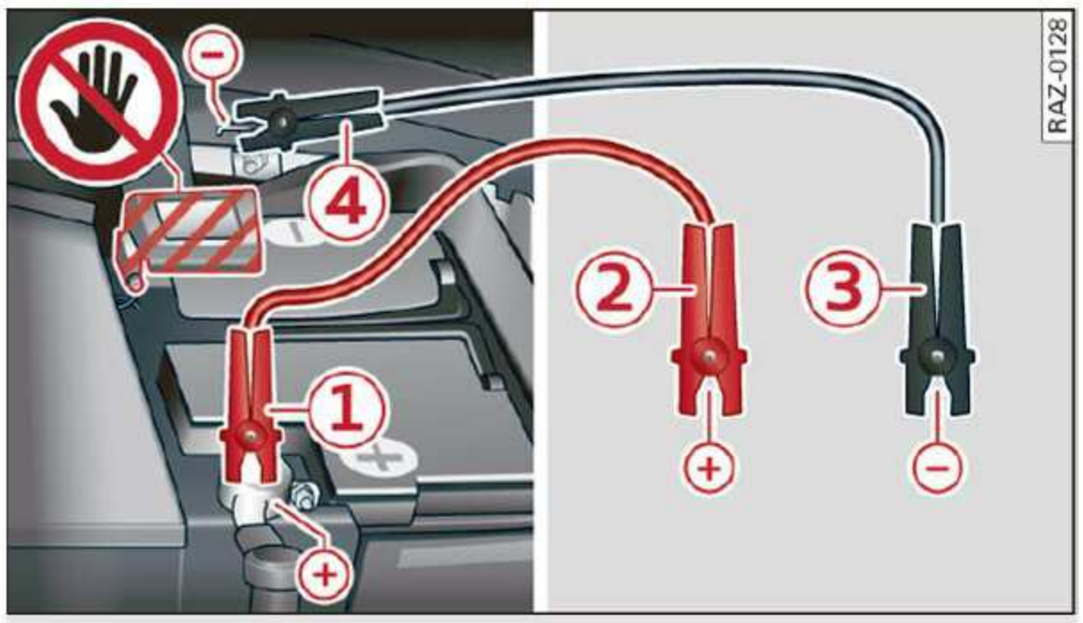


Fig. 284 Engine compartment: connecting the jump start cable

The vehicle battery is located on the left front side of the engine compartment. Open the cover to access the positive terminal of the vehicle battery. The procedure for connecting jump start cables that is described next is designed to help jump start your vehicle.

Follow the information about the vehicle battery ⇨ *page 315*.

Preparations

1. Read the following carefully ⇨ *page 364, Preparation*.
2. Set the parking brake and place the selector lever in the "P" position.
3. Turn the ignition and electrical equipment off in both vehicles.

Connecting/disconnecting the jump start cable

4. Fold the battery cover upward.
5. Clamp the end of the red jump start cable to the positive terminal (1) ⇨ *fig. 284* on your vehicle ⇨ (!) *in Preparation on page 364*.
6. Clamp the other end of the red jump start cable to the positive terminal (2) on the vehicle battery providing the current.
7. Clamp the black end of the jump start cable **preferably to the ground point**, or to the negative terminal of the vehicle battery (3) on the vehicle providing the current. ▶

8. Clamp the other end of the black jump start cable **only** to the **ground point** (4) on your vehicle ⇨ (!).
9. Route the jump start cables so they cannot get caught in the moving parts in the engine compartment.

Starting the engine

10. First start the engine in the vehicle giving the charge and let it run at idle.
11. Now start the engine in the vehicle with the drained vehicle battery and wait two to three minutes until it “runs smoothly”.
12. If the engine does not start, stop the starting procedure after 10 seconds and then repeat it after approximately 30 seconds.
13. In the vehicle that is being jump started, switch the heater fan and rear window defroster on to reduce any voltage peaks that may occur when disconnecting the jumper cables. The headlights must be switched off.
14. While the engines are running, remove the cables in *reverse* order from the way they were installed, as described in ⇨ *page 365*. Make sure the cables do not get caught in moving engine components.
15. Fold the cover back on the battery correctly.
16. Switch the heater fan and rear window defroster off.

WARNING

– Do not touch the non-insulated parts of the terminal clamps. The cable must also not come into contact with vehicle components that conduct electricity when it is connected to the positive terminal. This can cause a short circuit.
– The plugs on the battery cells must not be opened.
– Keep ignition sources (such as open flames, burning cigarettes, etc.) away from the vehicle batteries to reduce the risk of an explosion.
– Route the jump start cables so they cannot get caught in the moving parts in the other vehicle's engine compartment.

Note

Do not use the negative terminal on the vehicle battery for jump starting. A malfunction could occur in the vehicle electrical system.
– Please note that the connecting process described below for the jump start cables is intended for when your vehicle is being jump started.

Tips

Make sure that the connected positive terminal clamps have sufficient contact with metal.

RS models: jump starting

Applies to: vehicles with conventional drive system

Both jump start cables must be connected in the correct order.

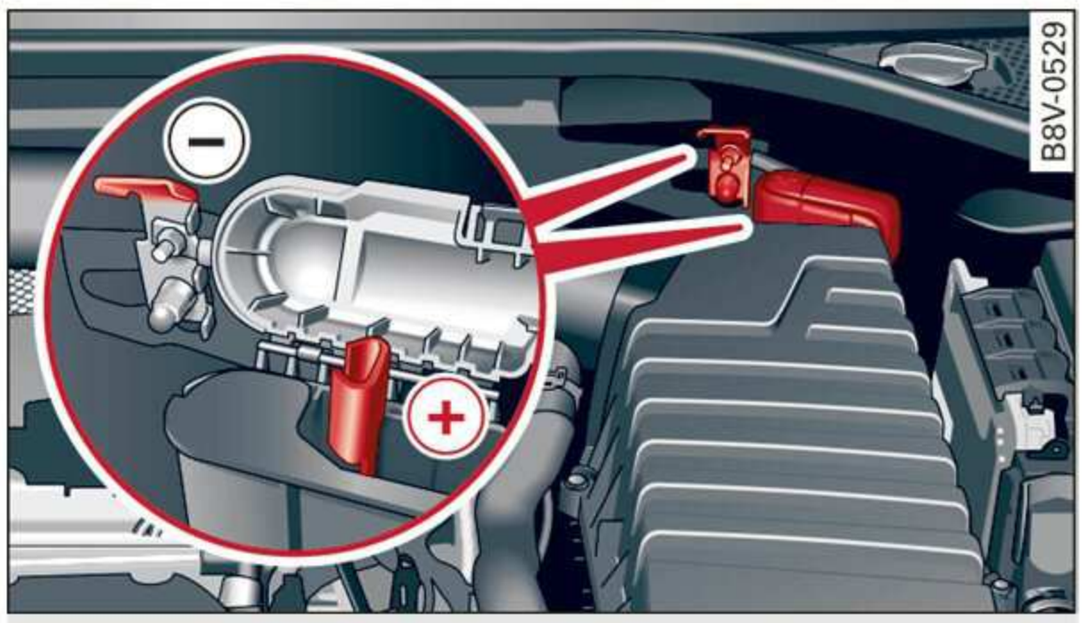


Fig. 285 Engine compartment: connectors for a charger and jump start cables

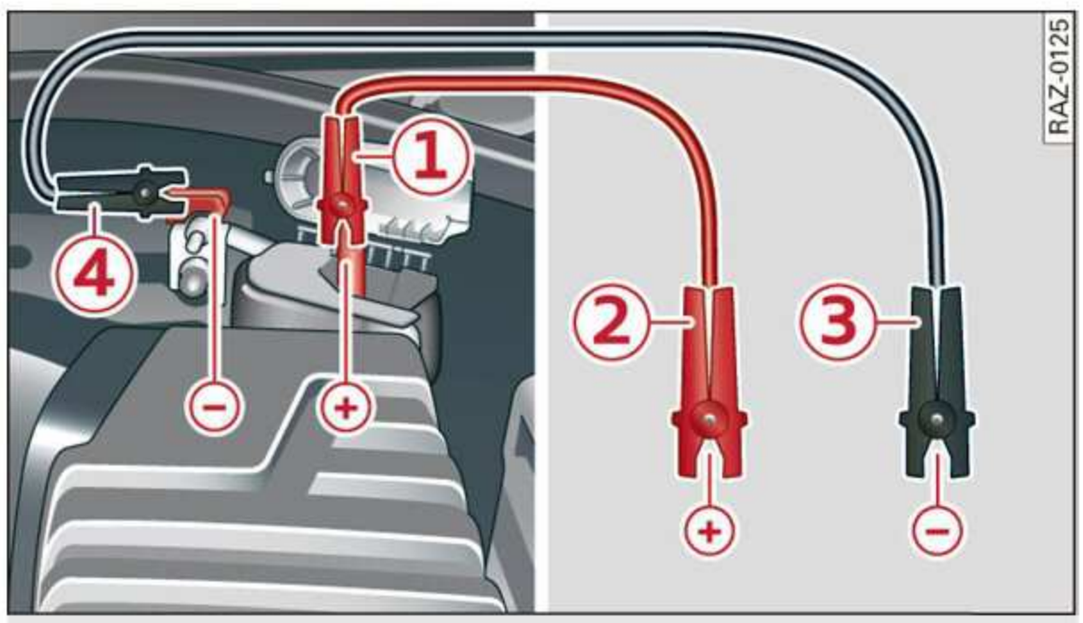


Fig. 286 Connecting the jump start cables

Jump start points are located on the left side of the engine compartment instead of the vehicle battery ⇨ *fig. 285*. Open the cap on the positive terminal. The procedure for connecting jump start cables that is described next is designed to help jump start your vehicle. ▶

Follow the information about the vehicle battery ⇨ *page 315*.

Preparations

1. Read the following carefully ⇨ *page 364, Preparation*.
2. Set the parking brake and place the selector lever in the "P" position.
3. Turn the ignition and electrical equipment off in both vehicles.

Connecting/disconnecting the jump start cable

4. Open the cover on the positive terminal.
5. Clamp the end of the red jump start cable to the positive terminal (1) ⇨ *page 365, fig. 284* on your vehicle ⇨ (!) *in Preparation on page 364*.
6. Clamp the other end of the red jump start cable to the positive terminal (2) on the vehicle battery providing the current.
7. Clamp the black end of the jump start cable **preferably to the ground point**, or to the negative terminal of the vehicle battery (3) on the vehicle providing the current.
8. Clamp the other end of the black jump start cable **only** to the **ground point** (4) on your vehicle.
9. Route the jump start cables so they cannot get caught in the moving parts in the engine compartment.

Starting the engine

10. First start the engine in the vehicle giving the charge and let it run at idle.
11. Now start the engine in the vehicle with the drained vehicle battery and wait two to three minutes until it “runs smoothly”.
12. If the engine does not start, stop the starting procedure after 10 seconds and then repeat it after approximately 30 seconds.
13. In the vehicle that is being jump started, switch the heater fan and rear window defroster on to reduce any voltage peaks that may occur when disconnecting the jumper cables. The headlights must be switched off.
14. While the engines are running, remove the cables in *reverse* order from the way they were installed, as described in ⇨ *page 365*. Make sure the cables do not get caught in moving engine components.
15. Close the cap on the positive terminal.
16. Switch the heater fan and rear window defroster off.

WARNING

- Never connect the jump start cable directly to your vehicle battery. Only use the connections in the engine compartment.
- Do not touch the non-insulated parts of the terminal clamps. The cable must also not come into contact with vehicle components that conduct electricity when it is connected to the positive vehicle battery terminal. This can cause a short circuit.
- The plugs on the battery cells must not be opened.
- Keep ignition sources (such as open flames, burning cigarettes, etc.) away from the vehicle batteries to reduce the risk of an explosion.
- Route the jump start cables so they cannot get caught in the moving parts in the other vehicle's engine compartment.

Note

Please note that the connecting process previously described for the jump start cables is intended for when your vehicle is being jump started.

Tips

Make sure that the connected jump start cables have sufficient contact with metal.

Towing with a tow truck

General hints

Your Audi requires special handling for towing.

The following information is to be used by commercial tow truck operators who know how to operate their equipment safely.

- **Never tow your Audi. Towing will cause damage to the engine and transmission.** ▶

- **Never wrap the safety chains or winch cables around the brake lines.**
- **To prevent unnecessary damage, your Audi must be transported with a flatbed truck.**
- **To load the vehicle on to the flatbed, use the towing loop found in the vehicle tools and attach to the front or rear anchorage** ⇨ *page 368* and ⇨ *page 368*.

WARNING

A vehicle being towed is not safe for passengers. Never allow anyone to ride in a vehicle being towed, for any reason.

Front towing loop

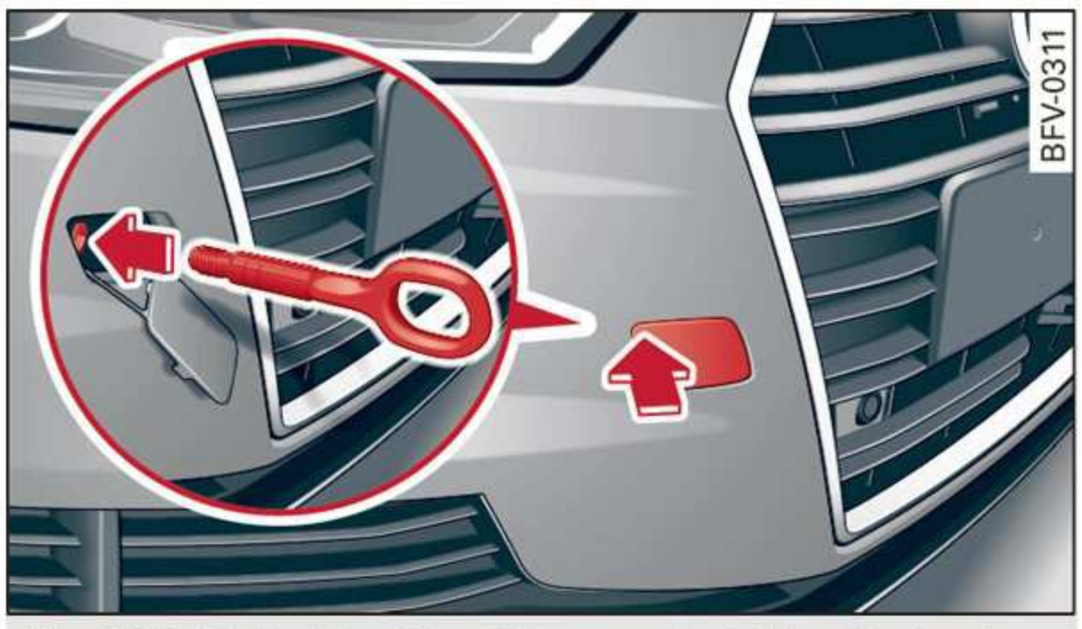


Fig. 287 Right side of front bumper: installing the towing loop

The threaded opening for the towing loop is located behind a cover on the right side of the front bumper.

- ▸ Remove the towing loop from the vehicle tool kit ⇨ *page 348*.
- ▸ Press inward on the *upper left* area of the cap with brief, strong pressure to remove it from the bumper ⇨ *fig. 287*.
- ▸ Insert the towing loop in the threaded opening until it stops, and then tighten it with the wheel wrench.
- ▸ After using, place the towing loop back in the vehicle tool kit.

WARNING

If the towing loop is not tightened until it stops when installing, the threads may be pulled out when towing the vehicle and result in an accident.

Tips

Depending on the model, the shape of the cover can vary.

Rear towing loop

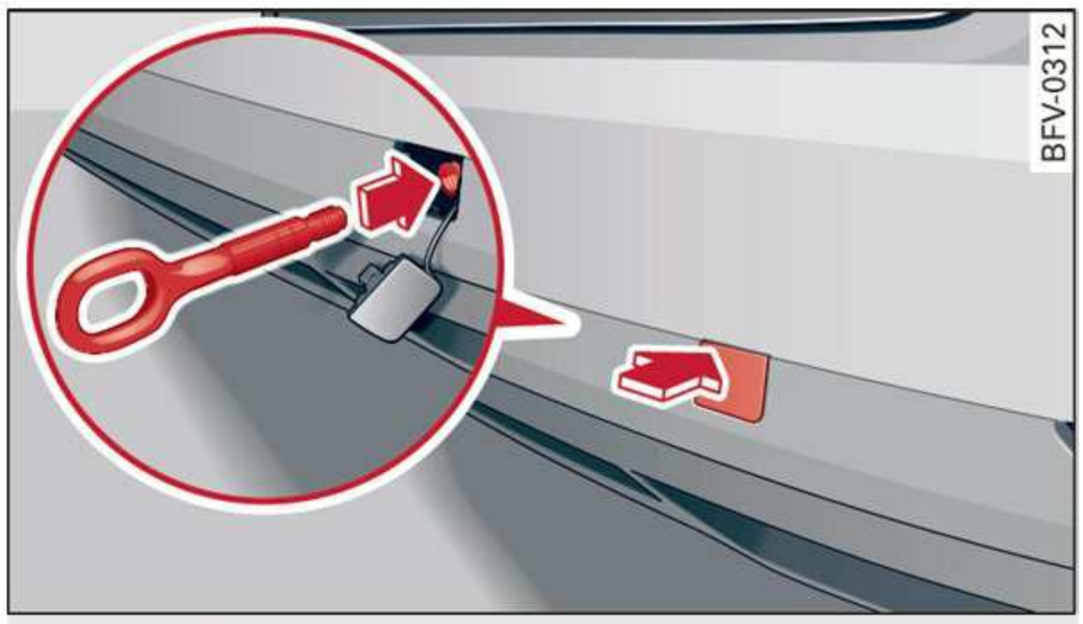


Fig. 288 Right side of rear bumper: installing the towing loop

The towing loop threaded opening is located in the right of the rear bumper cover under a cover.

- ▸ Remove the towing loop from the vehicle tool kit ⇨ *page 348*.
- ▸ To remove the cap from the bumper, press in on the *upper* area of the cap with brief, strong pressure and lift it up from the *lower* area ⇨ *fig. 288*.
- ▸ Tighten the towing loop in the threaded opening until it stops and then tighten it with a wheel wrench.
- ▸ After using, place the towing loop back in the vehicle tool kit.

Depending on the model, the shape of the cover can vary.

WARNING

If the towing loop is not tightened until it stops when installing, the threads may be pulled out when towing the vehicle and result in an accident.

Tips

Depending on the model, the shape of the cover can vary.

Loading the vehicle onto a flatbed truck



Fig. 289 Vehicle on flatbed truck (example)

Front hook up

- ▸ Align the vehicle with the centerline of the car carrier ramp.
- ▸ Attach the winch hook to the front towline eye previously installed.

Rear hook up

- ▸ Align the vehicle with the centerline of the car carrier ramp.
- ▸ Attach the winch hook to the rear towline eye previously installed.

Tips

Check carefully to make sure the hook-up is secure before moving the car up the flatbed truck ramp.

Raising the vehicle

Lifting with workshop hoist and with floor jack

The vehicle may only be lifted at the lifting points illustrated.

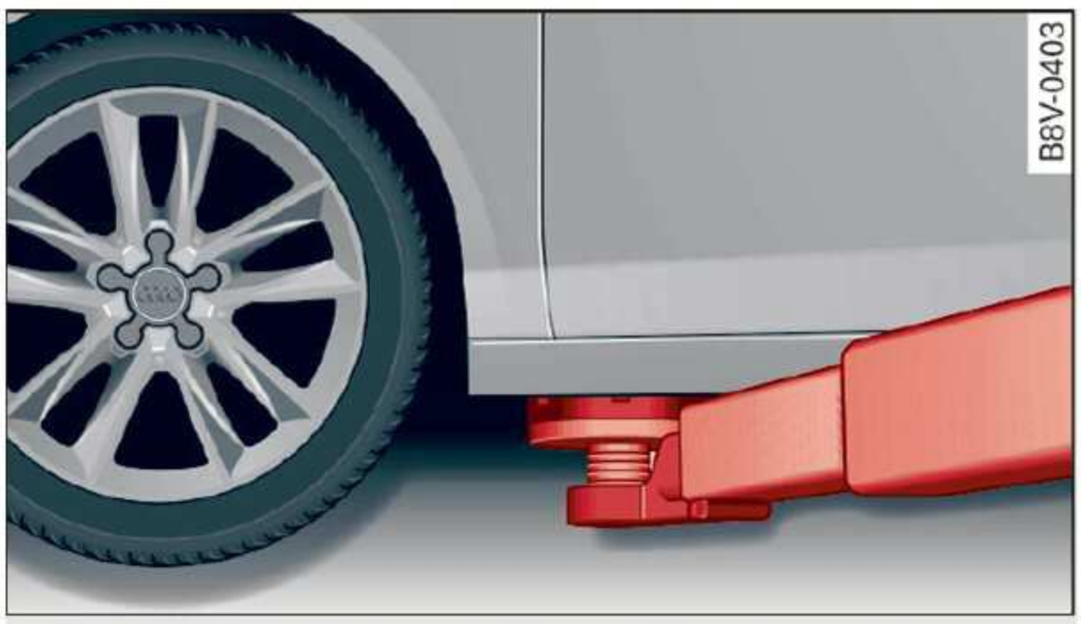


Fig. 290 Front lifting point (example)

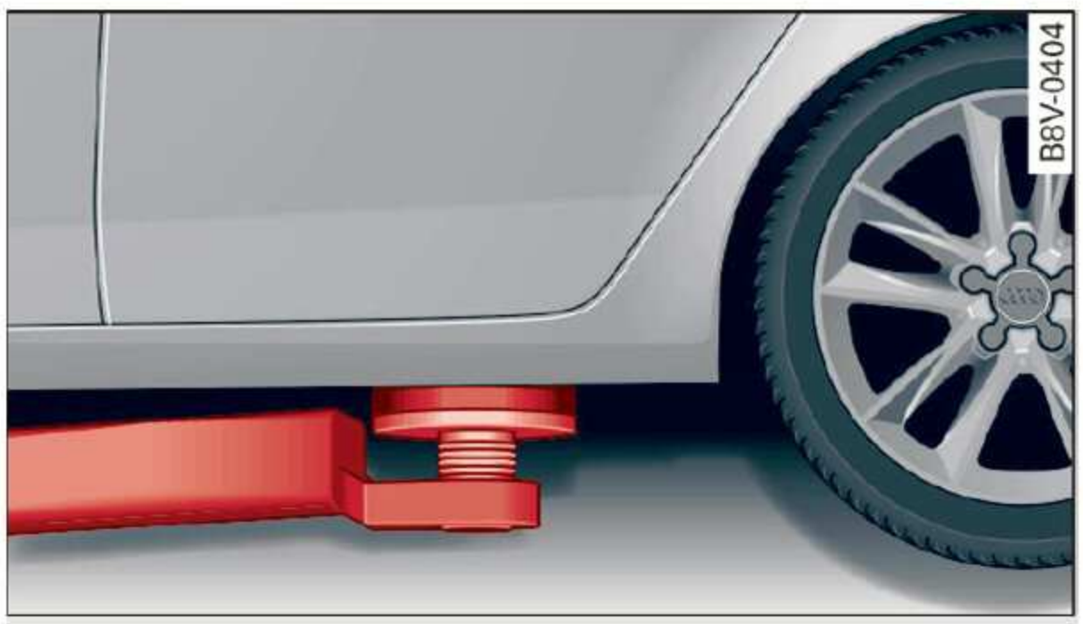


Fig. 291 Rear lifting point (example)

- ▸ Read and heed WARNING ⇨ ⚠.
- ▸ Locate lifting points ⇨ *fig. 290* and ⇨ *fig. 291*.
- ▸ Adjust lifting arms of workshop hoist or floor jack to match vehicle lifting points.
- ▸ Insert a rubber pad between the floor jack/ workshop hoist and the lifting points.

If you must lift your vehicle with a floor jack to work underneath, be sure the vehicle is safely supported on stands intended for this purpose.

Front lifting point

The lifting point is located on the floor pan reinforcement about at the same level as the jack mounting point ⇨ *fig. 290*. **Do not lift the vehicle at the vertical sill reinforcement.**

Rear lifting point

The lifting point is located on the vertical reinforcement of the lower sill for the on-board jack ⇨ *fig. 291*.

Lifting with vehicle jack

Refer to ⇨ *page 354*.

WARNING

– To reduce the risk of serious injury and vehicle damage.
  – Always lift the vehicle only at the special workshop hoist and floor jack lift points illustrated ⇨ *fig. 290* and ⇨ *fig. 291*.
  – Failure to lift the vehicle at these points could cause the vehicle to tilt or fall from a lift if there is a change in vehicle weight distribution and balance. This might happen, for example, when heavy components ▶

such as the engine block or transmission are removed.

– When removing heavy components like these, anchor vehicle to hoist or add corresponding weights to maintain the center of gravity. Otherwise, the vehicle might tilt or slip off the hoist, causing serious personal injury.

Note

– Be aware of the following points before lifting the vehicle:
  – **The vehicle should never be lifted or jacked up from underneath the engine oil pan, the transmission housing, the front or rear axle or the body side members. This could lead to serious damage.**
  – **To avoid damage to the underbody or chassis frame, a rubber pad must be inserted between the floor jack and the lift points.**
  – **Before driving over a workshop hoist, check that the vehicle weight does not exceed the permissible lifting capacity of the hoist.**
  – **Before driving over a workshop hoist, ensure that there is sufficient clearance between the hoist and low parts of the vehicle.**

Data privacy

Image recording

Surrounding area monitoring

Applies to: vehicles with surrounding area monitoring

Some vehicle functions require the vehicle's path to be detected and evaluated. This is done by cameras installed permanently on the vehicle that detect objects in the vehicle's surroundings (such as obstacles or guard rails). The live images from the cameras are transmitted to the applicable control module.

The camera images are transmitted to the applicable control module and stored for processing. The control module analyzes the current camera image using image evaluation software. This image evaluation software detects anonymized technical measurements, such as distances to objects. The control module evaluates these technical measurements and makes it possible for the assist systems to control the vehicle, if necessary.

Data memories

Vehicle control modules

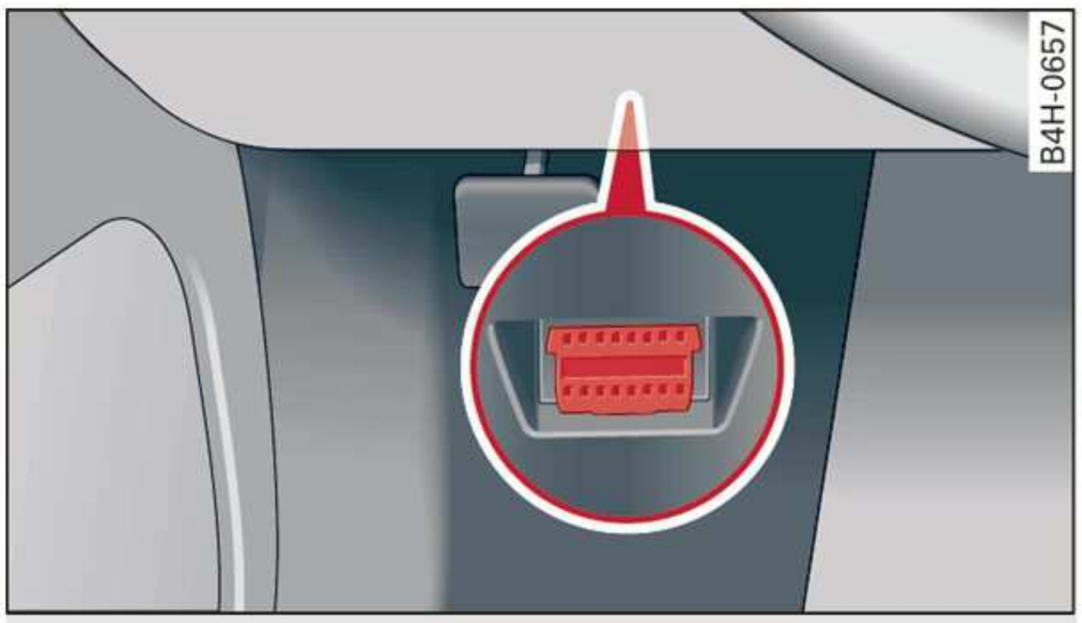


Fig. 292 Driver's side footwell: connection port for the On Board Diagnostic System (OBD)

Your vehicle is equipped with electronic control modules for various vehicle systems such as the airbags. These vehicle control modules store data while driving normally that is required by an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility for diagnosis and repair purposes. Only certain types of data are recorded for a very short period of time if a control module has detected a system event. No noises, conversations, or images will be recorded in the vehicle.

The data may include information such as the vehicle speed, the direction of travel, and information about the brake system, or also the behavior of the restraint system in the event of an accident. The stored data can be exported and downloaded with special devices, which must be connected directly to the vehicle.

On Board Diagnostic System (OBD)

There is a diagnostic connector socket in the driver's side footwell to read out the various control modules and the event data recorder. Data regarding the function and condition of the electronic control modules is stored in the event memory. Only have an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility read out and delete the event memory.

WARNING

- Incorrect use of the connection port for the On Board Diagnostic System can cause malfunctions, which can then result in accidents and serious injuries.
- Only allow an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility to read out the engine data.

Crash data recorder

Event Data Recorder

This vehicle is equipped with an Event Data Recorder (EDR). The main purpose of an EDR is to record, in certain crash or near crash-like situations, such as an airbag deployment or hitting a road obstacle, data that will assist in understanding how a vehicle's system performed. The EDR is designed to record data related to vehicle dynamics and safety systems for a short period of time, typically 30 seconds or less. The EDR in this vehicle is designed to record such data as:

- How various systems in your vehicle were operating;
- Whether or not the driver and passenger safety belts were buckled/fastened;
- How far (if at all) the driver was depressing the accelerator and/or brake pedal; and,
- How fast the vehicle was traveling.

These data can help provide a better understanding of the circumstances in which crashes and injuries occur. NOTE: EDR data are recorded by your vehicle only if a non-trivial crash situation occurs; no data are recorded by the EDR under normal driving conditions and no personal data (e.g. name, gender, age, and crash location) are recorded. However, other parties, such as law enforcement, could combine the EDR data with the type of personally identifying data routinely acquired during a crash investigation.

To read data recorded by an EDR, special equipment is required, and access to the vehicle or the EDR is needed. In addition to the vehicle manufacturer, other parties, such as law enforcement, that have the special equipment, can read the information if they have access to the vehicle or the EDR.

Data usage

Audi can read out the information stored in the data memories or similar data, or give this information to third parties, especially in the following situations:

– If the vehicle owner or lessee agrees
– If there is an official request from the police
– If a court or authorities request it

If legally permitted, Audi can also use the data for analysis of vehicle operation and safety performance or provide this data to third parties for research purposes.

Transmitted information

Privacy settings

Applies to: vehicles with Audi connect

► Select: MENU button > **Audi connect** > right control button > **Privacy**.

Requirement: the ignition must be switched on.

Location, vehicle, and personal data are transmitted when using Audi connect services.

Allowing sending of data

– Select and confirm **Activate data connection**. The data module for the use of all Audi connect services will be active.

Restricting sending of data

– Select and confirm **Activate privacy**. The data connection is limited or deactivated depending on the equipment. The majority of Audi connect services will not be available.

The following interfaces are not affected by this setting: Bluetooth, Bluetooth Low Energy (BLE), Wi-Fi connection, Audi smartphone interface (ASI), Near Field Communication (NFC), charging communication (high-voltage system), Electronic Toll Collect (ETC), On-Board Diagnostic System (OBD) if equipped.

Note

You are responsible for all precautions taken for data protection, anti-virus protection, and protection against loss of data on mobile devices that are used to access the Internet through the Wi-Fi hotspot.

Tips

If the transmission of data is limited, data will still be transmitted to verify subscriptions.

Audi connect

Applies to: vehicles with Audi connect Infotainment

AUDI AG collects, uses, stores and shares your personal information, such as contact data, vehicle data, usage data, driving data and precise geolocation, in order to provide you with the products and services you have purchased or requested, and for a number of other purposes, for example, to track quality issues, to performance and safety, to meet our internal compliance or legal requirements and to market to customers and potential customers. For a more complete list of the data we collect, how we use it and with whom we share it, please visit your Audi national/sales region website at www.audi.com.

The collection, use and sharing may vary depending on your model and model year, your subscription status, or the service offering. For example, collection, use and sharing may vary between Audi connect services, if you have designated a key user, or if you are driving a model equipped ▶

with persistent data logging. Please review the complete Privacy Statement to understand our data handling practices with respect to a particular service.

You can find additional information about our data privacy practices in your MMI.

► Select: MENU button > **Audi connect** > right control button > **About Audi connect**.

Information about our privacy practices in conjunction with the mobile Audi connect application can be found in the Application's Privacy Statement.

For additional information about the privacy practices relating to Audi connect, myAudi, or other websites, applications or online services as well as your obligations with respect to using these services, and for additional information regarding Audi connect terms and conditions, please visit your Audi national/sales region website at www.audi.com.

8V2012721BK

Accessories and technical changes

Warranty

Your vehicle is covered by various warranties:

- New Vehicle Limited Warranty
- Limited Warranty Against Corrosion Perforation
- Emissions Control System Warranties: *Federal Emissions Control System Defect Warranty, Federal Emissions Performance Warranty*
- Applies to: USA models: Kansas Safety Belt Limited Warranty
- Applies to: USA models: California Emissions Control Warranties: *Short-term Emissions Defects Warranty, Long-term Emissions Defects Warranty, TZEV models Emissions Defects Warranty, California Emissions Performance Warranty*

You can find detailed information in your Warranty & Maintenance Booklet and in the California Emissions Booklet*.

Audi Literature Shop

Service information is made available as soon as possible after a model is introduced and can be ordered in the Audi Literature Shop: http://literature.audiusa.com

Driving in other countries

Government regulations in the United States and Canada require motor vehicles to comply with emissions regulations and safety standards. Therefore, vehicles that were produced for the U.S. and Canadian markets are different from vehicles produced for other countries.

If you plan to use your vehicle outside of the United States or Canada, it is possible that:

- Fuel may have a significantly lower octane rating. Unsuitable fuels can cause engine damage.
- Proper maintenance and repair work may not be possible because special service equipment, tools, or measuring devices needed for your vehicle may not be available.
- Replacement parts may not always be available.
- Navigation systems for vehicles built for the U.S.A. and Canada will not necessarily work in Europe, and may not work in other countries.

Note

Audi is not liable for damage to the vehicle resulting from these country-specific differences.

Maintenance, repairs, and technical modifications

Note the safety precautions ⇨ *page 304, General information* and ⇨ *page 354, Raising the vehicle*.

General information

Due to the increasing complexity of technology in these vehicles, as well as the safety and environmental standards that apply, you can only perform a very limited amount of repairs and modifications to the vehicle yourself.

Proof of maintenance work may be required to submit a claim within the warranty period.

We recommend that you have your vehicle serviced by an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility and that Audi Genuine Parts and Audi Genuine Accessories are used. This helps to ensure that your vehicle's functionality, performance, and safety are not impaired.

Maintenance and repairs

Your vehicle was designed to help keep maintenance requirements to a minimum. Some regular maintenance is required to help ensure that your vehicle runs in a safe, economical, and reliable manner. Please refer to your Warranty & Maintenance Booklet for more detailed information about vehicle maintenance.

When operating the vehicle under more extreme operating conditions, for example when outside temperatures are very low or in very dusty environments, certain maintenance should be performed between the specified intervals. ▶

Usually maintenance and repair work requires special tools, measuring devices, and other equipment that is available to trained vehicle technicians in order to help ensure that your vehicle and all of its systems operate correctly, reliably, and safely. Performing work on the vehicle incorrectly can impair the operation and reliability of your vehicle and may void one or more of your vehicle's warranties.

Technical Modifications

Interference with electronic components, their software, the wiring, and data transfer may cause malfunctions. Because of the way electronic components are interconnected, such malfunctions can also impair systems that are not directly involved. This means that you risk both a substantial reduction in the operational safety of your vehicle and increased wear of vehicle components.

Some convenience functions, such as the convenience turn signal function, individual door opening function, and displays, can be reprogrammed using special workshop equipment. If functions are reprogrammed, the information and descriptions about these functions in this Owner's Manual may no longer apply to the changed functions. Audi recommends that an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility perform and verify any reprogramming procedures.

WARNING

Maintenance procedures, repairs, or technical modifications that are performed incorrectly increase the risk of an accident and can lead to serious injuries.

WARNING

The engine compartment of any motor vehicle is a potentially dangerous area and can cause serious personal injury.

- Always use extreme caution when doing any work in the engine compartment. Always follow commonly accepted safety practices and use common sense. Never risk personal injury.
- Never perform any work in the engine compartment unless you know exactly how to carry out the job and have the correct technical information and the correct tools.
- If you are uncertain about what to do, have the work performed by an authorized Audi dealer, an authorized Audi Service Facility, or another qualified workshop. Serious personal injury may result from improperly performed work.

Note

- Maintenance procedures, repairs or technical modifications that are performed incorrectly can cause damage to the vehicle, such as corrosion.
- If emergency repairs must be performed, take your vehicle to an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility as soon as possible.
- Audi is not liable for damage to the vehicle resulting from failure to comply with these guidelines.

For the sake of the environment

- Regular maintenance can help protect the environment.
- Technical modifications to the vehicle can have a negative impact on fuel consumption and vehicle emissions.

For the sake of the environment

Undeployed airbag modules and pretensioners are classified as Perchlorate Material – special handling may apply, See www.dtsc.ca.gov/hazardouswaste/perchlorate. When the vehicle or parts of the restraint system including airbag modules and safety belts with pretensioners are scrapped, all applicable laws and regulations must be observed. Your authorized Audi dealer is familiar with these requirements and we recommend that you have your dealer perform this service for you.

Tips

Because of your vehicle's aluminum body design, all service and repair procedures affecting the body should be performed by an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi ▶

Service Facility, who will perform the work according to Audi factory specifications. Only Audi Genuine Parts are used when Audi experts perform repair or service procedures. Failure to use Audi Genuine Parts or Audi Genuine Accessories or performing repairs incorrectly may result in severe vehicle damage, such as corrosion.

Accessories and parts

Consult with an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility before purchasing accessories or replacement parts. We recommend that you have your vehicle serviced by an authorized Audi dealer or authorized Audi Service Facility and that Audi Genuine Parts and Audi Genuine Accessories are used.

Audi does not endorse the use of products and accessories that it has not evaluated, even if the product is approved by a certified testing agency or government agency.

WARNING

- Installing unapproved accessories or incorrect replacement parts can cause vehicle damage and can increase the risk of an accident.
- Never attach accessories, such as telephone holders or cup holders, to the airbag covers or within the airbag deployment zone, because this increases the risk of injury if the airbag deploys.
- Do not use a license plate bracket different from the one installed by the factory in the front of the vehicle, because it may impair the function of some systems.

Note

A correctly-installed exterior antenna is required for operating radio equipment in the vehicle. Otherwise, the increased electromagnetic waves can cause malfunctions in the vehicle. Observe the regulations in the country where the vehicle is being operated and the instructions from the radio equipment manufacturer.

Reporting Safety Defects

Applicable to U.S.A.

If you believe that your vehicle has a defect which could cause a crash or could cause injury or death, you should immediately inform the National Highway Traffic Safety Administration (NHTSA) in addition to notifying

Audi of America, Inc.
2200 Ferdinand Porsche Drive
Herndon, VA 20171

If NHTSA receives similar complaints, it may open an investigation, and if it finds that a safety defect exists in a group of vehicles, it may order a recall and remedy campaign. However, NHTSA cannot become involved in individual problems between you, your dealer, or Audi of America, Inc.

To contact NHTSA, you may call the Vehicle Safety Hotline toll-free at 1–888–327–4236 (TTY: 1–800–424–9153); go to http://www.safercar.gov; ▶

or write to:

Administrator NHTSA
1200 New Jersey Ave.,
S.E. West Building
Washington, DC
20590.

You can also obtain other information about motor vehicle safety from http://www.safercar.gov.

Applicable to Canada

If you live in Canada and you believe that your vehicle has a defect that could cause a crash, injury or death, you should immediately inform Transport Canada, Defect Investigations and Recalls. You should also notify Audi Canada.

Canadian customers who wish to report a safety-related defect to Transport Canada, Defect Investigations and Recalls, may either call Transport Canada toll-free at:

Tel.: 1-800-333-0510 or
Tel.: 1-819-994-3328 (Ottawa region and from other countries)
TTY for hearing impaired:
1-888-675-6863

or contact Transport Canada by mail at:

Transport Canada
Motor Vehicle Safety Investigations Laboratory
80 Noel Street
Gatineau, QC
J8Z 0A1

For additional road safety information, please visit the Road Safety website at:

English:
http://www.tc.gc.ca/eng/motorvehiclesafety/menu.htm

French:
http://www.tc.gc.ca/fra/securiteautomobile/menu.htm

Declaration of compliance for telecommunications equipment and electronic systems

The manufacturer is not liable for radio malfunctions that are caused by unauthorized changes to the equipment.

Equipment

The following equipment complies with FCC section 15 and RSS-Gen:

– Audi adaptive cruise control*
– Audi side assist*
– Remote control key
– Cell phone package*
– Tire pressure monitoring system*
– WLAN hotspot*

FCC Part 15.19

This device complies with part 15 of the FCC Rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) This device may not cause harmful interference, and (2) this device must accept any ▶

8V2012721BK

interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

FCC Part 15.21

Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.

RSS-Gen

This device complies with Industry Canada's licence-exempt RSSs. Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

(1) This device may not cause interference; and

(2) This device must accept any interference, including interference that may cause undesired operation of the device.

Audi e-tron charging system* – Additional conformity declarations and statements

This equipment has been tested and found to comply with the limits for a Class B digital device, pursuant to part 15 of the FCC Rules. These limits are designed to provide reasonable protection against harmful interference in a residential installation. This equipment generates, uses and can radiate radio frequency energy and, if not installed and used in accordance with the instructions, may cause harmful interference to radio communications. However, there is no guarantee that interference will not occur in a particular installation. If this equipment does cause harmful interference to radio or television reception, which can be determined by turning the equipment off and on, the user is encouraged to try to correct the interference by one or more of the following measures:

– Reorient or relocate the receiving antenna.
– Increase the separation between the equipment and receiver.
– Connect the equipment into an outlet on a circuit different from that to which the receiver is connected.
– Consult the dealer or an experienced radio/TV technician for help.

This Class B digital apparatus complies with Canadian ICES-003.

Technical data

Identification data

Vehicle identification label

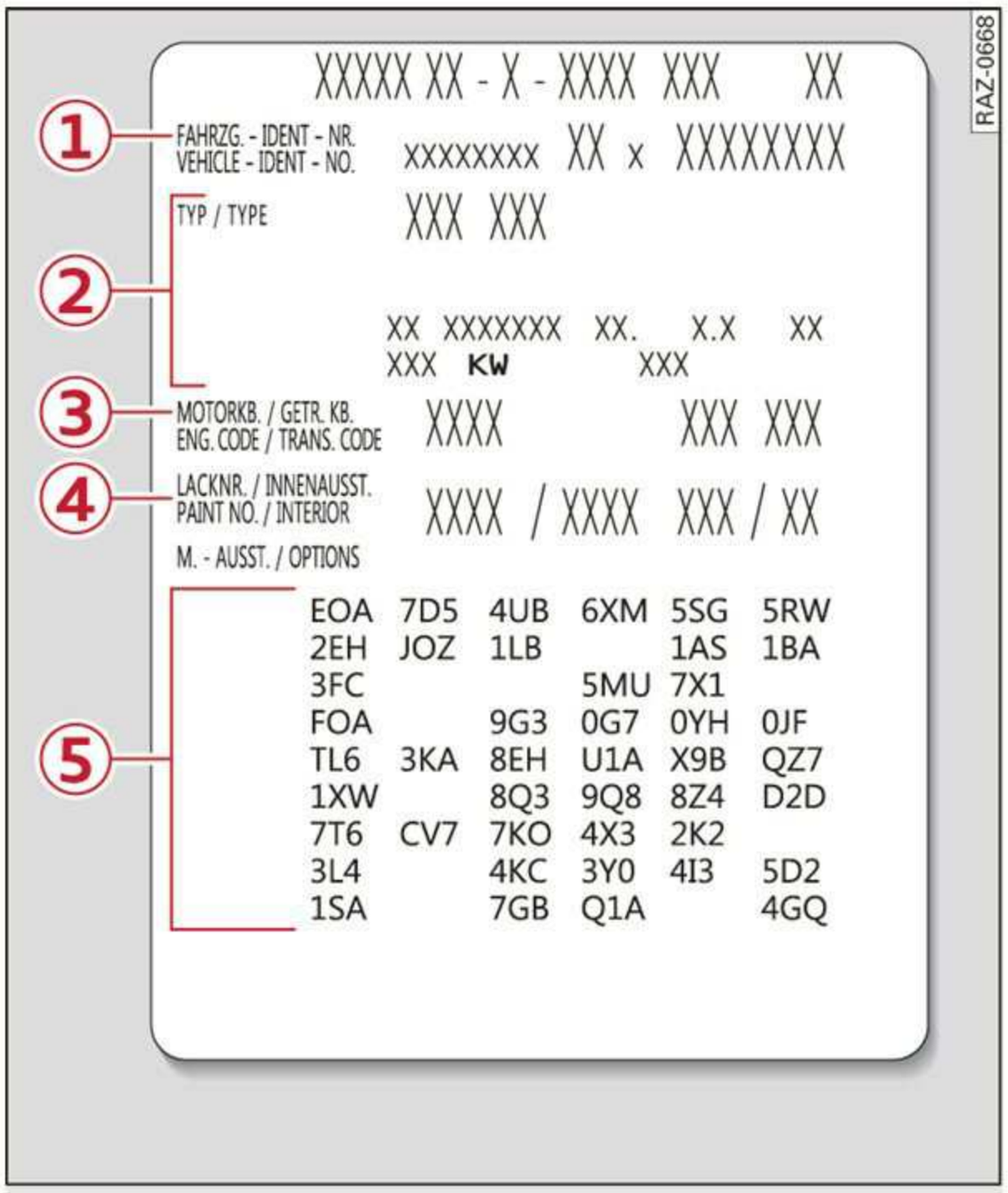


Fig. 293 Vehicle identification label

The vehicle identification label ⇨ *fig. 293* is located in the luggage compartment under the cargo floor cover.

The vehicle identification label information can also be found in the Warranty and Maintenance booklet.

The sticker contains the following vehicle data:

① Vehicle Identification Number (VIN)
② Vehicle type, engine output, transmission
③ Engine and transmission codes
④ Paint and interior codes
⑤ Optional equipment numbers

Vehicle identification number (VIN)

The VIN is located in the following areas:

– Select: the MENU button > **Vehicle** > left control button > **Service & checks** > **Vehicle information**.
– On the vehicle identification label
– At the front behind the windshield*

Notes about technical data

The values may vary based on special equipment as well as market-specific equipment and measuring methods.

Please note that the specifications listed in the vehicle documentation always take precedence.

Tips

Any technical data that is missing was not available at the time of printing.

Vehicle data

Dimensions

	Length (in (mm))	Width (in (mm))	Width across the mirrors (in (mm))	Height at curb weight (in (mm))
A3 Cabriolet	174.4 (4,430)	70.5 (1,793)	77.1 (1,960)	55.4 (1,409)
A3 sedan	175.8 (4,465)	70.7 (1,796)	77.1 (1,960)	55.7 (1,416)
A3 Sportback e-tron	169.6 (4,311)	70.2 (1,785)	77.4 (1,966)	56.1 (1,426)
RS3 sedan	176.3 (4,479)	70.9 (1,802)	77.1 (1,960)	55.0 (1,397)
S3 sedan	176.1 (4,472)	70.7 (1,796)	77.1 (1,960)	54.8 (1,392)

Capacities

	Approximate capacities
Fuel tank, front wheel drive	13.2 gal (50.0 L)
Fuel tank, all wheel drive	14.5 gal (55.0 L)
Plug-in hybrid drive fuel tank	10.5 gal (40.0 L)
Windshield washer system	3.2 qt (3.0 L)
Windshield and headlight washer system*	5.0 qt (4.7 L)
Windshield and headlight washer system*, S models	4.2 qt (4.0 L)
Windshield and headlight washer system*, RS models	3.7 qt (3.5 L)

Weights

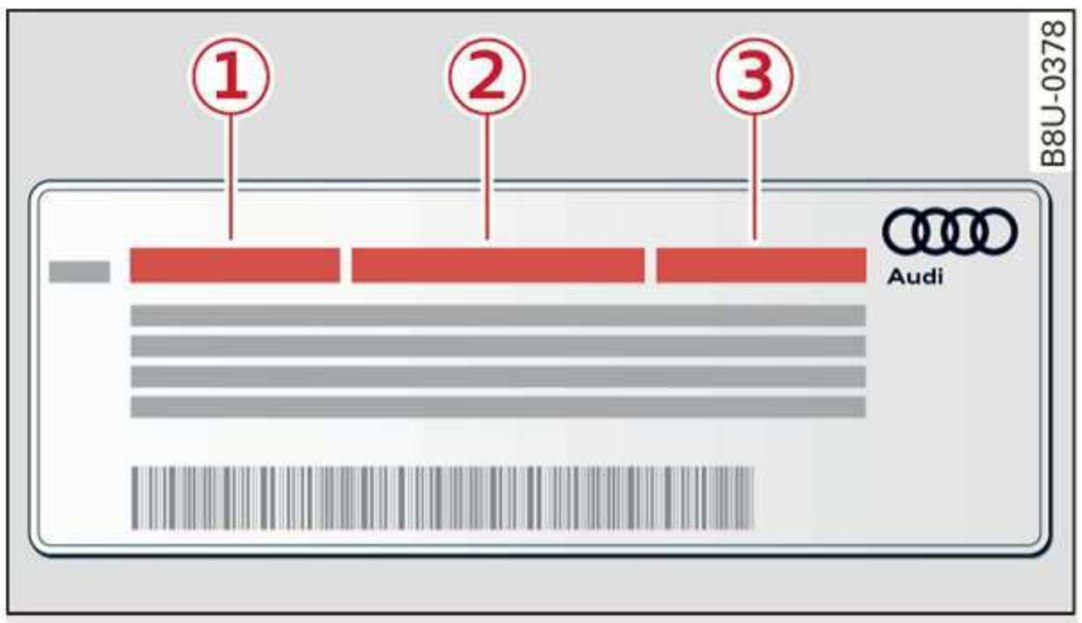


Fig. 294 Safety certificate

Gross Vehicle Weight Rating (GVWR)

The maximum permitted total weight ① of the vehicle is listed on the safety certificate on the side area of the door or on the driver's door pillar.

Gross Axle Weight Rating (GAWR)

The maximum permitted load on the front axle ② or the rear axle ③ is listed on the safety certificate on the side area of the door or on the driver's door pillar.

Load

The maximum permitted load is listed on the tire pressure label on the driver's door pillar.

Roof load

The maximum permissible roof load is 165 lbs (75 kg).

Numbers and Symbols

2-zone deluxe automatic climate control 66

A

A/C 66
A/C cooling mode 66
Accelerator pedal 76
also refer to Accelerator pedal 76
Accessories 59, 376
Active lane assist
refer to Audi active lane assist 128
Active rollover protection system 242
Retracting rollover protection 243
Adaptive cruise control
refer to Audi adaptive cruise control 118
Adaptive dampers 92
Adjusting the additional display 19
Adjusting the air distribution 67
Adjusting the sound 234
Adjusting the temperature 66
Adjusting the vents 68
Airbag 253
Airbag system 253, 273
Advanced Airbag System components 260
Care 268
Children 280
Child restraints 280
Components (front airbags) 260
Danger of fitting a child seat on the front passenger seat 254
Disposal 268
Front airbags 258
How do the front airbags work? 263
How many airbags does my vehicle have? . 260
How the Advanced Airbag System components work together 262
Important safety instructions on the knee airbag system 271
Knee airbags 269
Monitoring 265
PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF light 265
Repairs 268
Safety instructions 267
Side airbags 271
Warning/Indicator lights 265
When must the system be inspected? 265
Air pressure
Tire Pressure Monitoring System indicator . 337
Air transport 97
Alarm system
refer to Anti-theft alarm system 30
Alignment pin (tire change) 348
All season tires 335
All weather lights 43
All wheel drive
refer to quattro 93
AMI
refer to Audi music interface 217
Android Auto
refer to Audi smartphone interface 228
Anti-freeze
Windshield washer system 317
Anti-lock braking system 93
Anti-Slip Regulation 93
Anti-theft alarm system 30
Apple CarPlay
refer to Audi smartphone interface 228
ASR
refer to Anti-Slip Regulation 93
Audi active lane assist 128
Cleaning the camera area 343
Messages 130
Audi adaptive cruise control 118
Cleaning the sensor 343
Distance display, distance warning 124
Messages 124
Audi adaptive light 43
Audi connect
refer to connect 182
Audi connect Infotainment
Services overview 184
Audi connect Remote & Control
refer to Vehicle control services 185
Audi drive select 91
Audi e-tron compact charging system 105
Audi music interface 217
Audi music stream
refer to Wi-Fi 187, 214
Audio files 219

Audio player
Bluetooth audio player 214
Wi-Fi audio player 214
Audio track 222
Audi phone box 171
Audi pre sense 125
Messages 124, 128
Audi side assist 131
Cleaning the sensors 343
Messages 135
Rear cross-traffic assist 134
Audi smartphone interface 228, 233
Audi virtual cockpit
refer to Instrument cluster 14
AUTO
Automatic headlights 43
Climate control system 66
Auto Lock (central locking system) 25
Automatic belt retractor 248
Automatic transmission 75
Automatic wipe/wash system 49
Auxiliary climate control 68
AUX input 217
Average consumption 22
Average speed 22

B

BACK button 146
Bag hooks 60
Balance (sound) 234
Band
refer to Frequency band 206
Bass (sound) 234
Battery 315
Charge level display 14
Charging 316
High-voltage battery 96
Winter operation 315
Battery (vehicle)
refer to High-voltage battery 96
Before driving 237
Belt tensioners 252
Better route (navigation) 205
Blower 66
Bluetooth
Audio player 214
Connecting a cell phone 169
Settings 233
Boost 23
Booster seats 287
Boost function 76
Boost pressure indicator 23
Brake fluid
Checking brake fluid level 313
Brakes 85
Brake assist 93
Brake fluid 313
Emergency braking function 87
Hot 89
New brake pads 85
Break-in security feature 30
Breaking in
New brake pads 85
New tires 326
New vehicle 78
Browser
refer to Media center 220
Bulbs 362
Buttons
Control panel (MMI) 146
Multifunction steering wheel 17, 20
Programming (multifunction steering wheel) 19
Switching the Infotainment system display on/off 147

C

Cable (USB adapter/AUX connector cable) . . 217
California Proposition 65 Warning 305
Battery specific 315
Call list 173
Call options 180
Capacities
Fuel tank 380
Washer fluid reservoir 380
Car key 26
Car wash 342
Catalytic converter 303
CD drive (media drives) 212

Cell phone
refer to Telephone 169
Cell phone compartment
refer to Audi phone box 171
Central locking 25
Convenience key 28
Convenience opening and closing 34
Mechanically unlocking and locking 30
Message 29
Remote control key 27
Setting 29
Central locking switch 29
Certification 377
Changing the scale 18
Charging
refer to Power sources 59
Charging clip 103
Charging the battery (mobile devices) 171, 217, 218
Charging (plug-in hybrid drive) 97
Child restraints
Danger of using child restraints in the front seat 254
Where can I get additional information about child restraints and their use? 297
Child restraint system anchors 292
Child safety 278
Important safety instructions for using child safety seats 282
Tether anchors 294
Tether straps 294
Child safety lock
Power windows 33
Rear doors 33
Child safety seats 284
Booster seats 287
Convertible child seats 285
Convertible locking retractor 290
How do I properly install a child safety seat in my vehicle? 282
Infant seats 284
Installing a child restraint using the LATCH system 293
LATCH system 293
Mounting and releasing the anchorage hook 293
Safety instructions 282
Securing 289
Unused safety belts on the rear seat 284
Child seats
Lower anchorages 293
Classic view 19
Cleaning 342
Cleaning/removing ice from windows 344
Cleaning Alcantara 345
Cleaning artificial leather 345
Cleaning carbon components 344, 345
Cleaning controls 345
Cleaning decorative parts/trim 344
Cleaning exhaust tail pipes 344
Cleaning plastic parts 345
Cleaning textiles 345
Cleaning the tail lights 343
Cleaning the windshield 49
Climate control system
refer to 2-zone deluxe automatic climate control 65, 66
Clock 230
Closing
Convenience closing 34
Hood 305
Luggage compartment lid 31
Panoramic glass roof 35
Power top 36
Windows 33
Coasting 78
Cockpit (overview) 8
Color number 379
Coming home/Leaving home
refer to Entry/exit lighting 45
Command (voice recognition system) 162
Compartments 60
Compass in the mirror 52
Compliance 377
connect 182
Audi connect e-tron services 185
Data plans 187
Data Privacy 372
Infotainment 182
Infotainment services 183
connect e-tron services 185
Connection manager 231

Connections
refer to Media 211, 219
Consumer information 374
Consumption
Reducing 81
Consumption (fuel) 22
Contacts 178
Additional directory 232
Importing/exporting 179
Memory capacity 180
Storing as destination 196
Control buttons (operating the MMI) 148
Control knob with joystick function (MMI operation) 151
Convenience key 26
Unlocking and locking 28
Convenience opening and closing
Windows or roof 34
Convertible child safety seats 285
Convertible locking retractor
Activating 290
Deactivating 291
Using to secure a child safety seat 290
Coolant temperature display 15
Cooling mode 66
Cooling system
Adding coolant 312
Checking coolant level 312
Coolant 311
Cruise control system 115
Cup holders 59
Current consumption 22

D

Data plans 187
Data Privacy 372
Date 230
Date display 230
Daytime running lights 43
Declaration of compliance 377
Defrosting (windows) 67
DEF (instrument cluster) 14
Demo mode
refer to Presentation mode 197
Determining correct load limit 334
Digital compass 52
Digital Rights Management 211
Dimensions 379
Dimming the exterior mirrors 48
Dimming the rearview mirror 48
Directory
refer to Contacts 178
Display 17
Cleaning 345
Infotainment system display 147, 231
Instrument cluster 20
Multifunction steering wheel 17
Disposal 374
Distance 22
Doors
Child safety lock 33
Door contact switch 46
Mechanically unlocking and locking 30
Driver information system
Changing views 17
Economy tips (analog instrument cluster) . . 23
Efficiency program 23
Energy consumers (Audi virtual cockpit) . . . 22
Trip computer (analog instrument cluster . . 22
Trip computer (Audi virtual cockpit) 22
View 19
Driver seating position 238
Drives
refer to Media 211, 219
Drive select
refer to Audi drive select 91
Drive system 78
Driving down hills 89
Driving safely 237
Driving through water 90
Driving time 22
Driving tips
Driving through water 90
Efficient driving 81
Uphill and downhill 89
Driving track 89
Driving up hills 89
Dust filter
refer to Pollutant filter 65
DVD drive (media drives) 212

Dynamic volume
refer to System volume 235

E

E-mail 177
eco mode (climate control system) 66
Economical route 197
EDL
refer to Electronic Differential Lock 93
EDR
refer to Event Data Recorder 371
Efficiency program 23
Electrical system 314
Electromechanical parking brake 87
Electronic Differential Lock 94
Electronic immobilizer 26
Electronic Stabilization Control 93
Embedded SIM card 183
Emergency assistance 348
Emergency braking function 87
Emergency flashers 45
Emergency mode 77
Emergency operation
Doors 30
Fuel filler door 301
Luggage compartment lid 32
Panoramic glass roof 35
Emergency starting 364
Emissions control system 303
Energy consumers 22
Energy management 82
Energy recovery
refer to Recuperation 78
Engine
Breaking in 78
Coolant 311
Emergency stop 71
Jump starting 364
Jump starting (plug-in hybrid drive) 365
Start/Stop system 83
Starting and stopping 71
Engine braking effect
refer to Recuperation 78
Engine compartment
Opening and closing the hood 305
Overview 307
Safety precautions 304
Engine data
refer to Sport displays 24
Engine oil
Adding 307
Changing 310
Checking oil level 307
Consumption 307
Dipstick 307
Indicator light 308
Replacement interval 318
Temperature display 23
Engine start system 73
Engine stop
Coasting 78, 83
Enhanced view 19
Entering characters/numbers (speller) 153
Entering letters (speller) 153
Entertainment sliding menu 151
Entry/exit lighting 45
Entry assistance
refer to Seats 55
Environment
Unleaded gasoline 298
EPB
refer to Electromechanical parking brake . . 87
eSIM
refer to Embedded SIM card 183
Event Data Recorder 371
Exterior lighting 43
Exterior mirrors 47
Folding 47
Folding settings 29
External voice operation 168

F

Factory default settings
Multi Media Interface 231
Fader (sound) 234
Fastening
Booster seats 287
Convertible child safety seats 285
Infant seats 284

Fast forwarding and rewinding (audio/video file) 219
Fast forwarding (audio/video file) 219
Fast route 197
Favorites
Media 222
Navigation 191
Telephone 175
Federal Communications Commission (FCC) . 377
File formats (media drives) 224
Finding charging stations 192
Floor mats 242
Folding the rear seats 62, 63
Foot pedals 241
For the sake of the environment
Disposing of engine oil 310
Fueling 299
Leaks 305
Roof rack 64
Forward gear
refer to Gears 75
Free text search 154
Media 221
Navigation 189
Radio 207
Telephone 179
Freeze protection
Coolant 311
Frequency band 206, 209
also refer to Frequency band 206
Front airbags
Description 257
How they work 263
Frontal collisions and the laws of physics . . . 246
Front center armrest 56
Front seats 54
Adjusting 239
Child restraints in the front seat 254
Fuel 298
Additives 299
Current consumption 22
Fuel gauge 14
Fuel tank capacity 380
Gasoline 298
Reducing consumption 81
Fueling
Fuel filler door emergency release 301
Fuel tank capacity 380
Opening the fuel filler door 299
Fuses 360

G

Garment hooks 60
Gas discharge lamps 362
Gasoline 298
Additives 299
Gasoline mixture 298
GAWR
refer to Gross Axle Weight Rating (GAWR) . 380
Gears 75
Glossary of tire and loading terminology . . . 322
Glove compartment 60
G meter
refer to Sport displays 24
Gross Axle Weight Rating (GAWR) 380
Gross Vehicle Weight Rating (GVWR) 380
GVWR
refer to Gross Vehicle Weight Rating (GVWR) 380

H

Handsfree 170
Hands Free Profile 170
Headlight range control 43
Headlights 43
Cleaning 343
Headlight range control 43
Washer system 49
Head restraints 56
Adjusting 56, 57
Removing and installing 57
Heated
Exterior mirrors 47
Rear window 67
Seats 67
Washer fluid nozzles 49
Heated steering wheel 68
Heavy clothing and safety belts 248
Hex socket 348

HFP
refer to Hands Free Profile 169
High-voltage battery 96
Audi e-tron compact charging system 105
Charging 111
Not running for long periods of time 100
High-voltage system 96
High beams 44
High beam assistant 44
Hill descent control 89
Hill hold assist 74
Home address 191, 196
Horn 8
Hotspot
refer to Wi-Fi 187, 214
How are child restraint system anchors related to child safety 292
How many airbags does my vehicle have? . . 260
How safety belt pretensioners work 252

I

Idle
refer to Gears 75
Ignition
Switching on and off 71
Imbalance (wheels) 328
Immobilizer
refer to Electronic immobilizer 26
Important things to do before driving 237
Importing and exporting (contacts) 179
Improperly worn safety belts 251
Indicator lights 10
Airbag system 265
PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF 265
Infant seats 284
Input
Using the MMI touch 149
Using the speller 153
Input level (media) 222
Inspection interval 318
Installing the upper tether strap on the anchorage 295
Instrument cluster 14
Cleaning 345
Failure 14
Service interval display 318
Instruments
Adjusting illumination 47
Interference-Causing Equipment Standard (ICES) 378
Interior lighting 46, 47
Interior monitoring 30
International travel 187
Internet
refer to connect 182
Internet radio 215
Interval mode (windshield wipers) 49
iPhone
refer to Audi music interface 217
iTunes tagging 206

J

Jukebox 213
Jump start 365
Jump starting 364, 365

K

Key 26
Convenience opening and closing 34
Key replacement 26
Replacing the battery 27
Unlocking and locking 27, 28
Kick-down 76
Knee airbags 269
Description 269
How they work 270
Important safety instructions 271

L

Lane assist
refer to Audi active lane assist 128
Lap timer 117
LATCH 292
Description 293
Installing a child restraint 293
Location 292
Mounting and releasing the anchorage hook 293
Launch Control 77
Leather care and cleaning 345
Left control button 18

License plate bracket 376
Licensing agreements (MMI) 235
Lifting jack 354
Light/rain sensor
Automatic headlights 43
Switching the rain sensor on/off 49
Lighting
Exterior 43
Interior 46
Lights 43
Interior/reading lights 46
Listening to music
refer to Media 211, 219
Load 380
Locking and unlocking
By remote control 27
With the convenience key 28
Low beam headlights 43
Lowering the cargo floor 62
Luggage compartment 60
Cover 61
Power sources 59
Tie-downs 62
also refer to Luggage compartment 60
Luggage compartment lid
Mechanically unlocking 32
Opening and closing 31
Luggage compartment net 62
Lumbar support 54

M

Maintenance 374
Maintenance intervals 318
Making an emergency call 175
Malfunction Indicator Lamp (MIL) 303
Manual shifting 76
Map
Operating 199
Settings 200
Update 189
Map update 202
Massage function 54
Media 211, 219
Drives 212
Supported formats 224
Media center 220
Memory capacity
Directory 179
Jukebox 213
Memory card
SD card reader (MMI) 212
Supported types and formats 224
MENU button 146
Menu language
refer to Setting the language 230
Menu paths (Owner's Manual) 148
Menus/symbols 155
Messages 175
Mirrors 47
Compass 52
Dimming 48
MMI
refer to Multi Media Interface 146
MMI search
refer to Free text search 154, 221
MMI touch 149
Mobile device
refer to Telephone 169
Mobile device reminder signal 230
MODE button 20
Monitoring the Advanced Airbag System . . . 265
Mountain passes 89
Mountain roads 89
MP3
refer to Jukebox 213
Multifunction steering wheel
Changing views 17
Operating 17, 20
Switching tabs 17, 20
Voice recognition system 19
Multi Media Interface 146
Music collection
refer to Jukebox 213
Mute 234
myAudi 183, 193

N

NAV/MAP button 189
Navigation 189
Announcements 198
Charging stations 192

Plug-in hybrid drive range 201
also refer to Map 199
Navigation (instrument cluster) 159, 160
NHTSA 376
Number of seats 245

O

Occupant protection 125
Occupant seating positions 238
Octane rating (gasoline) 298
Odometer 17
Resetting 17
Oil
refer to Engine oil 307
On/Off knob (MMI) 146
On Board Diagnostic System (OBD) . . . 303, 371
Online destinations
refer to Point of interest search 193
Online map 202
Online map update 203
Online media 215
Online services
refer to connect 182
Opening 25
Convenience opening 34
Fuel filler door 299
Hood 305
Luggage compartment lid 31
Panoramic glass roof 35
Power top 36
Windows 33
Opening and closing
refer to Unlocking and locking 25, 27, 28
Operating
Multifunction steering wheel 17, 20
Multi Media Interface 147
Voice recognition system 162
Options menu 18, 148, 152
Outside noise 81
Overview (Cockpit) 8

P

Paint damage 344
Paint number 379
Panic button 27
Panic function 27
Panoramic glass roof 35
Convenience opening and closing 34
Emergency closing 35
Parental control
DVD 222
Park assist 140
Parking aid 136
Adjusting 144
Cleaning the sensors and camera 343
Malfunction 145
Park assist 140
Rearview camera 138
Parking brake
refer to Electromechanical parking brake . . 87
Parking lights 43
Parking lock
Manually releasing 88, 89
also refer to Gears 75
Pass-through 63
PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF light 265
Pause (audio/video file) 219
Pedals 76, 241
Perchlorate 374
Performance/torque display
refer to Sport displays 24
Personal route assistance 195
Phonebook
refer to Contacts 178
Physical principles of a frontal collision 246
Picture format (video) 222
Playback (media) 219
Playlist 222
Plug-in-Hybrid-Drive
High-voltage battery 96
Plug-in hybrid drive 78
12 volt vehicle battery 365
Adjusting the modes 79
Charging 97
Charging clip 103
Charging dock 102
Charging the high-voltage battery 101
Charging time 104
Climate control 68
Coolant 312
E-max (power availability) 80
Energy flow display 80

8V2012721BK

EV mode/hybrid mode 79
High-voltage battery 111
Inserting the fuel pump nozzle 302
Jump start 365
Jump starting 365
Power meter 16
Refueling 302
Status displays 107
Tire mobility kit 349
Transport 97
Vehicle tool kit 349
Point of interest 191
Point of interest search 193
also refer to Point of interest 191
Polishing 344
Pollen filter
refer to Pollutant filter 65
Pollutant filter 65
Power entry assistance
refer to Seats 55
Power meter 14, 16
Power seat adjustment 54
Power sources 59, 171, 217, 218
Power top 36
Cleaning 344
Power top storage compartment 38
Power windows 33
Malfunction 34
Pregnant women
Special considerations when wearing a safety belt 250
pre sense
refer to Audi pre sense 125
Presentation mode 198
Presets (climate control system) 65
Presets (radio) 209
Pressure
Tire pressure monitoring system 339
Tires 330
Program guide
Radio 207
Progressive steering 92
Proper occupant seating positions 238
Proper safety belt position 249
Proper seating position
Front passenger 239
Occupants 238
Rear passengers 240
Pyrotechnic elements 374

Q

quattro 93
Selective wheel torque control 94
Question
What happens to unbelted occupants? . . . 246

R

Radio 206
Additional station information 208
Presets 209
Radio text 207
Station list 206
Radio communications equipment 376
Radio equipment 376
Radio Standards Specification (RSS) 377
Rain/light sensor
Automatic headlights 43
Switching the rain sensor on/off 49
Random
refer to Shuffle 222
Range display 201
Range monitor 81
Range potential 81
Range (tank level) 22
Reading lights 46
Rear
Cleaning the rear window 49
Rear center armrest
refer to Cup holders 59
Rear cross-traffic assist 134
Rear lid
Escape latch 348
also refer to Luggage compartment lid 31
Rearview camera 138
Rear window heating 67
Recirculation mode 67
Recuperation 22, 78
Refresh station list (radio) 209

Refueling 299
Plug-in hybrid drive 302
Remote control key 26
Convenience opening and closing 34
Key replacement 26
LED 27
Replacing the battery 27
Synchronization 27
Repairs 374
Airbag system 268
Replacement key 26
Replacement parts 376
Replacing
Light bulbs 362
Replacing wiper blades 51
Reporting Safety Defects 376
Reset
refer to Restart (MMI) 235
Restart (MMI) 235
Retractor 248
Reverse gear
refer to Gears 75
Rewinding (audio/video file) 219
Right control button 18
Rims 334
Cleaning 343
Ringtone settings 180
Road carrier 97
Rollbar
refer to Active rollover protection system . 242
Roof load 63, 380
Roof rack 63
also refer to Roof rack 63
Route criteria 198
Route guidance
refer to Navigation 160, 189

S

Safe driving habits 237
Safety
Airbag system 253
Belts 245
Correct seating position 238
Pedal area 241
Telephone 169
Safety belt position 249
Safety belt height adjustment 251
Safety belts worn by pregnant women 250
Safety belt pretensioner
Service and disposal 252
Safety belts 245, 248
Adjusting 251
Cleaning 345
Danger to passengers who do not wear a safety belt 246
Fastening 248
Height adjustment 251
Improperly worn 251
Not worn 246
Safety belt position 249
Safety instructions 248
Securing child safety seats 289
Special considerations for pregnant women 250
Unfastening 250
Warning/indicator light 245
Worn properly 247
Safety belt warning light 245
Safety instructions
for side curtain airbags 276
for using child safety seats 282
for using safety belts 248
Monitoring the Advanced Airbag System . . 267
Saving fuel
Coasting 78
Economy tips (analog instrument cluster) . . 23
Efficiency program (analog instrument cluster) 23
Energy consumers (Audi virtual cockpit) . . . 22
Recuperation 22
Scan (radio) 207
Screen
refer to Display 17, 20
Screwdriver 348
SD card reader (MMI) 212
Search area (point of interest) 191
Search function
refer to Free text search 154, 221
Seat adjustment
Head restraints 56
Seating capacity 245

Seating position
Driver 238
Front passenger 239
How to adjust the front seats 239
Incorrect seat position 240
Occupants 238
Rear passengers 240
Sea transport 97
Seats
Adjusting 54
Cleaning 345
Correct seating position 238
Easy seat entry 55
Folding 62, 63
Number of seats 245
Seat heating 67
Secondary phone 170, 232
Selecting a source (media) 219
Selection menu 18, 148, 152
Selective door unlocking 25
Selector lever 75
Self-learning navigation
refer to Personal route assistance 195
Service and disposal
Safety belt pretensioner 252
Service interval display 318
Service position
refer to Replacing wiper blades 51
Settings
Directory 180
Map 200
Media 222
Navigation 197
Radio 209
System (MMI) 230
Telephone 180
Voice recognition system 231
Wi-Fi hotspot 187
Setting the language 230
Shift light indicator 24
Shift paddles 76
Ship carrier 97
Shuffle 222
Side airbags
Description 271
How they work 273
Side assist
refer to Audi side assist 131
Side curtain airbags 274
Description 274
How they work 276
Safety instructions 276
SIM card 183
SiriusXM alert notifications 208
Sliding/tilting sunroof
refer to Panoramic glass roof 35
Smartphone
refer to Telephone 169
Snow chains 335
Socket
refer to Power sources 59
Software update
refer to System update (MMI) 234
Software (MMI)
Licensing agreements 235
Update 234
Version 234
Sources of information about child restraints and their use 297
Space-saving spare tire (compact spare tire) . 357
Spare tire 357
Spare wheel 357
Speed-dependent volume adjustment 234
Speedometer 14
Speed warning system 115
Speller 153
Sport displays 24
Sport view 19
Sporty driving 89
Start/Stop system 83
Starting to drive 73
Station scanning (radio)
refer to Refresh station list (radio) 209
Steering 92
also refer to Steering 92
Steering lock 71, 72, 92
Steering wheel
Adjusting 58
Shift paddles 76
Steering wheel heating 68
also refer to Multifunction steering wheel 17, 19, 20

Steps for determining correct load limit . . . 334
Stopover (navigation) 194
Storage options 60
Streaming
refer to Online media 215
Subtitles (DVD) 222
Subwoofer 234, 358
Sun visors 49
Surround 234
Suspension 92
Swap call 174
Switching tabs
refer to Multifunction steering wheel 17, 19, 20
Symbols 155
Navigation 199
also refer to Indicator lights 10
Synchronization (climate control system) 66
System settings (MMI) 230
System update (MMI) 234
System volume 235

T

Tachometer 14, 15
Tail light(s) 43
Technical data 379
Technical modifications 374
Telephone 169
Audi phone box 171
Connecting a cell phone 169
Dialing a number 173
Options during a phone call 174
Playing music 214
Settings 180
Temperature display (outside temperature) . . 17
Temperature gauge
Coolant 14
Tether anchors 294
Tether strap 294
Text messages 175
also refer to Text messages 175
Tie-downs 62
Time 230
tiptronic
refer to Manual shifting 76
Tire Mobility System (tire mobility kit) 349
Tires 319
Low-profile tires 336
Mobility kit 349
Repair set 348
Replacing 352
Service life 328
Tire pressure 330
Tire pressure monitoring system 337, 339
Tire pressure table 331
Tire pressure (trailer towing mode) 113
Treadwear indicators 328
Unidirectional 321
Uniform tire quality grading 336
Tires and wheels
Glossary of tire and loading terminology . . 322
Tires and vehicle load limits 332
Tone (sound)
refer to Adjusting the sound 234
Tool 348
Torn or frayed safety belts 248
Touch
refer to MMI touch 149
Towing
Front towing loop 368
Rear towing loop 368
Tow trucks 367
Towing protection monitor 30
TPMS
Tire pressure monitoring system 337
also refer to Tires 337
TPMS (tire pressure monitoring system)
Indicator light 341
Tire pressure monitoring system 339
Traffic information 204
Trailer mode (navigation) 197
Trailer towing 113
Trailer towing mode
Tongue weight 113
Trailer load 113
Treble (sound) 234
Trip computer (analog instrument cluster) . . . 22
Trip computer (Audi virtual cockpit) 22
Trunk lid
Trunk escape latch 348
Turn signal 44

U

Unfastening safety belts 250
Uniform tire quality grading 336
Unlocking and locking
By remote control 27
Using the lock cylinder 30
With the central locking switch 29
With the convenience key 28
Updating stations (radio) 206
USB charging port 59, 217, 218
USB stick
refer to Audi music interface 217

V

Vanity mirror 49
Vehicle
Care/cleaning 342
Dimensions 379
Identification data 379
Out of service 347
Raising 369
Starting 71
Transport 97
Vehicle care 342
Vehicle control services 185
Vehicle identification number 379
Vehicle jack 348, 354
Vehicle sound 81
Vehicle tool kit 348
Version information 234
VIEW button 17
Voice guidance
refer to Multifunction steering wheel 17, 19, 20
Voicemail 178
Voice recognition system 162
Commands 163
External 168
Multifunction steering wheel 19
Operating 162
Settings 231
Volume 235
Volume 234

W

Warning/Indicator lights
Airbag system 265
Warning lights
refer to Indicator lights 10
Washing matte finish paint 342
Wave band
refer to Frequency band 206
Weights 380
What happens if you wear your safety belt too loose? 249
What happens to unbelted occupants? 246
What impairs driving safety? 237
Wheel bolts 334
Wheels 319
Cleaning 343
Glossary of tire and loading terminology . . 322
Replacing 352
Tire pressure monitoring system 339
Tires and vehicle load limits 332
Wheel wrench 348
When must a safety belt be replaced? 248
When must the airbag system be inspected? .265
Where are lower anchorages located? 293
Wi-Fi
Audi music stream 214
Audio player 214
Hotspot settings 187
Online media 215
Using a hotspot 183
also refer to Wi-Fi 187, 214
Wind deflector 39
Cleaning 344
Windows
Child safety lock 33
Cleaning/removing ice 344
Convenience opening and closing 34
Opening and closing 33
Power windows 33
Windshield washer system 49, 317
Reservoir capacity 380
Windshield wipers 49
Replacing wiper blades 51
Winter operation
Battery 315
Car washes 342

Cooling system 311
Defrosting the windows 67
Rear window heating 67
Removing ice from windows 344
Seat heating 67
Snow chains 335
Steering wheel heating 68
Windshield washer system 317
Winter tires 335

X

Xenon headlights 43, 362

Z

Zoom (map) 199

It has always been Audi's policy to continuously improve its products. AUDI AG reserves the right to make changes in design and specifications, and to make additions or improvements in its products without incurring any obligation to install them on products previously manufactured. This owner's manual is based on the current data available when it was printed. Text, illustrations, and specifications in this owner's manual are based on the most current information available at the time of printing, and shall not constitute a basis for liability claims.

These instructions may not be reproduced or translated in whole or in part without written consent of AUDI AG. All rights reserved by AUDI AG.

For the sake of the environment

Printed on eco-friendly paper (bleached without chlorine, recyclable).

Owner's Manual
Englisch Nordamerika 07.2019
8V2012721BK

8V2012721BK

www.audi.com